



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

LONDON :

—  
WILLIAM WATTS, CROWN COURT, TEMPLE BAR.

## PREFACE.

---

THE study of Comparative Philology has of late years been cultivated in Germany, especially, with remarkable ability and proportionate success. The labours of GRIMM, POTT, BOPP, and other distinguished Scholars, have given a new character to this department of literature; and have substituted, for the vague conjectures suggested by external and often accidental coincidences, elementary principles, based upon the prevailing analogies of articulate sounds and the grammatical structure of language.

But although the fact that a material advance has been made in the study of Comparative Philology is generally known, and some of the particulars have been communicated to the English public through a few works on Classical Literature, or in the pages of periodical criticism; yet the full extent of the progress which has been effected, and the steps by which it has been attained, are imperfectly appreciated in this country. The study of the German language is yet far from being extensively pursued; and the results which the German Philologists have developed, and the reasonings which have led to them, being accessible to those only who can consult the original writers, are withheld from many individuals of education and learning to whom the affinities of cultivated speech are objects of interest and inquiry. Translations of the works, in which the information they would gladly seek







186.26

X 20 G

יהודה





A  
**COMPARATIVE GRAMMAR**

OF THE  
SANSKRIT, ZEND,  
GREEK, LATIN, LITHUANIAN, GOTHIC, GERMAN,  
AND SCLAVONIC LANGUAGES.

BY  
PROFESSOR F. BOPP.

---

TRANSLATED FROM THE GERMAN  
PRINCIPALLY BY  
LIEUTENANT EASTWICK, M.R.A.S.

---

CONDUCTED THROUGH THE PRESS  
BY H. H. WILSON, M.A. F.R.S.  
BODEN PROFESSOR OF SANSKRIT IN THE UNIVERSITY OF OXFORD.

---

LONDON:  
MADDEN AND MALCOLM,  
LEADENHALL STREET.

---

1845.

LONDON :

—  
WILLIAM WATTS, CROWN COURT, TEMPLE BAR.

## PREFACE.

---

THE study of Comparative Philology has of late years been cultivated in Germany, especially, with remarkable ability and proportionate success. The labours of GRIMM, POTT, BOPP, and other distinguished Scholars, have given a new character to this department of literature; and have substituted, for the vague conjectures suggested by external and often accidental coincidences, elementary principles, based upon the prevailing analogies of articulate sounds and the grammatical structure of language.

But although the fact that a material advance has been made in the study of Comparative Philology is generally known, and some of the particulars have been communicated to the English public through a few works on Classical Literature, or in the pages of periodical criticism; yet the full extent of the progress which has been effected, and the steps by which it has been attained, are imperfectly appreciated in this country. The study of the German language is yet far from being extensively pursued; and the results which the German Philologists have developed, and the reasonings which have led to them, being accessible to those only who can consult the original writers, are withheld from many individuals of education and learning to whom the affinities of cultivated speech are objects of interest and inquiry. Translations of the works, in which the information they would gladly seek

for, is conveyed, are necessary to bring within their reach the materials that have been accumulated by German industry and erudition, for the illustration of the history of human speech.

Influenced by these considerations Lord FRANCIS EGERTON was some time since induced to propose the translation of a work which occupies a prominent place in the literature of Comparative Philology on the Continent—the *Vergleichende Grammatik* of Professor BOPP of Berlin. In this work a new and remarkable class of affinities has been systematically and elaborately investigated. Taking as his standard the Sanscrit language, Professor BOPP has traced the analogies which associate with it and with each other—the Zend, Greek, Latin, Gothic, German, and Sclavonic tongues : and whatever may be thought of some of his arguments, he may be considered to have established beyond reasonable question a near relationship between the languages of nations separated by the intervention of centuries, and the distance of half the globe, by differences of physical formation and social institutions,—between the forms of speech current among the dark-complexioned natives of India and the fair-skinned races of ancient and modern Europe ;—a relationship of which no suspicion existed fifty years ago, and which has been satisfactorily established only within a recent period, during which the Sanscrit language has been carefully studied, and the principles of alphabetical and syllabic modulation upon which its grammatical changes are founded, have been applied to its kindred forms of speech by the Philologists of Germany.

As the *Vergleichende Grammatik* of Professor BOPP is especially dedicated to a comprehensive comparison of languages, and exhibits, in some detail, the principles of the Sanscrit as the ground-work and connecting bond of the comparison, it was regarded as likely to offer most interest to the Philologists of this country, and to be one of



the most acceptable of its class to English students: it was therefore selected as the subject of translation. The execution of the work was, however, opposed by two considerations—the extent of the original, and the copiousness of the illustrations derived from the languages of the East, the Sanscrit and the Zend. A complete translation demanded more time than was compatible with Lord F. EGERTON's other occupations; and as he professed not a familiarity with Oriental Literature, he was reluctant to render himself responsible for the correctness with which the orientalisms of the text required to be represented. This difficulty was, perhaps, rather over-rated, as the Grammar itself supplies all the knowledge that is needed, and the examples drawn from the Sanscrit and Zend speak for themselves as intelligibly as those derived from Gothic and Slavonic. In order, however, that the publication might not be prevented by any embarrassment on this account, I offered my services in revising this portion of the work; and have hence the satisfaction of contributing, however humbly, to the execution of a task which I consider likely to give a beneficial impulse to the study of Comparative Philology in Great Britain.

The difficulty arising from the extent of the original work, and the consequent labour and time requisite for its translation, was of a more serious description. This, however, has been overcome by the ready co-operation of a gentleman, who adds a competent knowledge of German to eminent acquirements as an Oriental Scholar. Having mastered several of the spoken dialects of Western India, and made himself acquainted with the sacred language of the Parsees during the period of his service under the Presidency of Bombay, Lieutenant EASTWICK devoted part of a furlough, rendered necessary by failing health, to a residence in Germany, where he acquired the additional qualifications enabling him to take a share in the transla-

tion of the *Vergleichende Grammatik*. He has accordingly translated all those portions of the *Comparative Grammar*, the rendering of which was incompatible with the leisure of the Noble Lord with whom the design originated, who has borne a share in its execution, and who has taken a warm and liberal interest in its completion.

The *Vergleichende Grammatik*, originally published in separate Parts, has not yet reached its termination. In his first plan the author comprised the affinities of Sanscrit, Zend, Greek, Latin, Gothic, and its Teutonic descendants. To these, after the conclusion of the First Part, he added the Slavonic. He has since extended his researches to the analogies of the Celtic and the Malay-Polynesian dialects, but has not yet incorporated the results with his general Grammar. The subjects already treated of are quite sufficient for the establishment of the principles of the comparison, and it is not proposed to follow him in his subsequent investigations. The first portions of the present Grammar comprise the doctrine of euphonic alphabetical changes, the comparative inflexions of Substantives and Adjectives, and the affinities of the Cardinal and Ordinal Numerals. The succeeding Parts contain the comparative formation and origin of the Pronouns and the Verbs: the latter subject is yet unfinished. The part of the translation now offered to the public stops with the chapter on the Numerals, but the remainder is completed, and will be published without delay.

With respect to the translation, I may venture to affirm, although pretending to a very slender acquaintance with German, that it has been made with great scrupulousness and care, and that it has required no ordinary pains to render in English, with fidelity and perspicuity, the not unfrequently difficult and obscure style of the original.

H. H. WILSON.

*October, 1845.*

## PREFACE.

---

I CONTEMPLATE in this work a description of the comparative organization of the languages enumerated in the title page, comprehending all the features of their relationship, and an inquiry into their physical and mechanical laws, and the origin of the forms which distinguish their grammatical relations. One point alone I shall leave untouched, the secret of the roots, or the foundation of the nomenclature of the primary ideas. I shall not investigate, for example, why the root *I* signifies "go" and not "stand"; why the combination of sounds *STHA* or *STA* signifies "stand" and not "go." I shall attempt, apart from this, to follow out as it were the language in its stages of being and march of development; yet in such a manner that those who are predetermined not to recognise, as explained, that which they maintain to be inexplicable, may perhaps find less to offend them in this work than the avowal of such a tendency might lead them to expect. In the majority of cases the primary signification, and, with it, the primary source of the grammatical forms, present themselves to observation in consequence of the extension of the circle of our knowledge of languages, and of the confronting of sister bases separated for ages, but bearing indubitable features of their family connection. In the treatment, indeed, of our European tongues a new epoch could not fail to open upon us in the discovery of

another region in the world of language, namely the Sanscrit,\* of which it has been demonstrated, that, in its grammatical constitution, it stands in the most intimate relation to the Greek, the Latin, the Germanic, &c.; so that it has afforded, for the first time, a firm foundation for the comprehension of the grammatical connection between the two languages called the Classical, as well as of the relation of these two to the German, the Lithuanian, and Slavonic. Who could have dreamed a century ago that a language would be brought to us from the far East, which should accompany, *pari passu*, nay, sometimes surpass, the Greek in all those perfections of form which have been hitherto considered the exclusive property of the latter, and be adapted throughout to adjust the perennial strife between the Greek dialects, by enabling us to determine where each of them has preserved the purest and the oldest forms?

The relations of the ancient Indian languages to their European kindred are, in part, so palpable as to be obvious to every one who casts a glance at them, even from a distance: in part, however, so concealed, so deeply implicated in the most secret passages of the organization of the language, that we are compelled to consider every language subjected to a comparison with it, as also the language itself, from new stations of observation, and to employ the highest powers of grammatical science and method in order to recognise and illustrate the original unity of the different grammars. The Semitic languages are of a more compact nature, and, putting out of sight lexicographical and syntactical features, extremely meagre in contrivance; they had little to part

---

\* *Sanskṛita* signifies "adorned, completed, perfect"; in respect to language, "*classic*"; and is thus adapted to denote the entire family or race." It is compounded of the elements *sam*, "with," and *kṛita* (nom. *kṛitas*, *kṛitā*, *kṛitam*), "made," with the insertion of a euphonic *s* (§§. 18. 96.).

with, and of necessity have handed down to succeeding ages what they were endowed with at starting. The triconsonantal fabric of their roots, which distinguishes this race from others, were of itself sufficient to designate the parentage of every individual of the family. The family bond, on the other hand, which embraces the Indo-European race of languages, is not indeed less universal, but, in most of its bearings, of a quality infinitely more refined. The members of this race inherited, from the period of their earliest youth, endowments of exceeding richness, and, with the capability, the methods, also, of a system of unlimited composition and agglutination. Possessing much, they were able to bear the loss of much, and yet to retain their local life; and by multiplied losses, alterations, suppressions of sounds, conversions and displacements, the members of the common family are become scarcely recognisable to each other. It is at least a fact, that the relation of the Greek to the Latin, the most obvious and palpable, though never quite overlooked, has been, down to our time, grossly misunderstood; and that the Roman tongue, which, in a grammatical point of view, is associated with nothing but itself, or with what is of its own family, is even now usually regarded as a mixed language, because, in fact, it contains much which sounds heterogeneous to the Greek, although the elements from which these forms arose are not foreign to the Greek and other sister languages, as I have endeavoured partly to demonstrate in my "System of Conjugation."

The close relationship between the Classical and Germanic languages has, with the exception of mere comparative lists of words destitute of principle and critical judgment, remained, down to the period of the appearance of the Asiatic intermediary, almost entirely unobserved, although the acquaintance of philologists with the Gothic, dates now from a century and a half; and that language is so perfect in its Grammar and so clear in its affinities, that had it been

earlier submitted to a rigorous and systematic process of comparison and anatomical investigation, the pervading relation of itself, and, with it, of the entire Germanic stock, to the Greek and Roman, would necessarily have long since been tracked through all its variations, and by this time been understood and recognised by every philologist.\* For what is more important, or can be more earnestly desired by the cultivator of the classical languages, than their comparison with our common parent in her oldest and most perfect form? Since the Sanscrit has appeared above our horizon, that element can no longer be excluded from a really profound investigation of any district of language related to it; a fact, however, which sometimes escapes the notice of the most approved and circumspect labourers in this department.† We need not fear that practical solidity in

---

\* Rask has been the first to afford a comprehensive view of the close relationship between the Germanic and the Classical Languages, in his meritorious prize treatise "On the Thracian Tribe of Languages," completed in 1814 and published in 1818, from which Vater gives an extract in his Comparative Tables. It cannot be alleged as a reproach against him that he did not profit by the Asiatic intermediary not then extensively known; but his deficiency in this respect shews itself the more sensibly, as we see throughout that he was in a condition to use it with intelligence. Under that deficiency, however, he almost everywhere halts halfway towards the truth. We have to thank him for the suggestion of the law of displacement of consonants, more acutely considered and fundamentally developed by Grimm (§. 87. see Vater, §. 12.).

† We refer the reader to the very weighty judgment of W. von Humboldt on the indispensable necessity of the Sanscrit for the history and philosophy of language (*Indische Bibl.* I. 133). We may here borrow, also, from Grimm's preface to the second edition of his admirable Grammar some encouraging words (I. vi.): "The dialect which history demonstrates to be the oldest and least corrupted must, in the end, present the most profound rules for the general exposition of the race, and thus lead us on to the reformation, without the entire subversion of the rules hitherto discovered, of the more recent modes of speech."

*utrâque lingua*, on which the philologer mainly depends, can suffer prejudice by extension over too many languages; for the variety vanishes when the real identity is recognised and explained, and the false light of discrepancy is excluded. It is one thing, also, to learn a language, another to teach one, *i.e.* to describe its mechanism and organization. The learner may confine himself within the strictest limits, and forbear to look beyond the narrowest boundaries of the language to be studied: the teacher's glance, on the contrary, must pass beyond the narrow limits of one or two members of a family, and he must summon around him the representatives of the entire race, in order to infuse life, order, and organic mutual dependency into the mass of the languages spread before him. To attempt this appears to me the main requirement of the present period, and past centuries have been accumulating materials for the task.

The Zend Grammar can only be recovered by the process of a severe regular etymology, calculated to bring back the unknown to the known, the much to the little; for this remarkable language, which in many respects reaches beyond, and is an improvement on, the Sanscrit, and makes its theory more attainable, would appear to be no longer intelligible to the disciples of Zoroaster. Rask, who had the opportunity to satisfy himself on this head, says expressly (V. d. Hagen, p. 33) that its forgotten lore has yet to be rediscovered. I am also able, I believe, to demonstrate that the Pehlvi translator (tom. II. pp. 476, et seq.) of the Zend Vocabulary, edited by Anquetil, has frequently and entirely failed in conveying the grammatical sense of the Zend words which he translates. The work abounds with singular mistakes; and the distorted relation of Anquetil's French translation to the Zend expressions is usually to be ascribed to the mistakes in the Pehlvi interpretations of the Zend original. Almost all the oblique cases, by degrees, come to take rank as nominatives; the

numbers are sometimes mistaken. We afterwards find forms of cases produced by the Pehlvi translator as verbal persons, and next these also confounded with each other, or translated by abstract names.\* Anquetil makes, as far as I know, no remark on the age of the Vocabulary to which I advert; while he ascribes to another, in which the Pehlvi is interpreted through the Persian, an antiquity of four centuries. The one in question cannot therefore be ascribed to any very late period. The necessity, indeed, of interpretation for the Zend must have been felt much sooner than for the Pehlvi, which remained much longer current among the Parsee tribes. It was therefore an admirable problem which had for its solution the bringing to light, in India, and, so to say, under the very eye of the Sanscrit, a sister language, no longer understood, and obscured by the rubbish of ages;—a solution indeed not hitherto fully obtained, but beyond doubt destined to be so. The first contribution to the knowledge of this language which can be relied on—that of Rask—namely, his treatise “On the age and authenticity of the Zend Language and the Zend-Avesta,” published in 1826, and made generally accessible by V. d. Hagen’s translation, deserves high honour as a first attempt. The Zend has to thank this able man for the more natural appearance which it has derived from his rectification of the value of its written characters, making us the more regret his premature decease. Of three words of different declensions he gives us the singular inflections, and although with some sensible deficiencies, yet especially in particulars of the highest interest, and displaying that independence of the Sanscrit which Rask claims, perhaps in too high a degree, for the Zend; a language

---

\* Instances of these mistakes are here given by Professor Bopp in a note, which it has not been thought necessary to translate, as irrelevant to the general purport of the Preface.”—*Editor*.



we are, however, unwilling to receive as a mere dialect of the Sanscrit, and to which we are compelled to ascribe an independent existence, resembling that of the Latin as compared with the Greek, or the Old Northern with the Gothic. For the rest, I refer the reader to my review of Rask's and Bohlen's *Zendschriften* in the *Annual of Scientific Criticism* for December 1831, as also to an earlier work (March 1831) on the able labours of E. Burnouf in this newly-opened field. My observations, derived from the original texts edited by Burnouf in Paris, and by Olshausen in Hamburgh, already extend themselves, in these publications, over all parts of the Zend Grammar; and nothing therefore has remained for me, but further to establish, to complete, and to adjust the particulars in such a manner that the reader may be conducted on a course parallel with that of the known languages, with the greatest facility towards an acquaintance with the newly-discovered sister tongue. In order to obviate the difficulty and the labour which attends the introduction of the learner to the Zend and Sanscrit—difficulty sufficient to alarm and to exhaust—I have appended to the original characters the pronunciation, laid down on a consistent method, or in places where, for reasons of space, one character alone is given, it is the Roman. This method is also perhaps the best for the gradual introduction of the reader to the knowledge of the original characters.

As in this work the languages it embraces are treated for their own sakes, *i.e.* as objects and not means of knowledge, and as I aim rather at a physiology of them than at an introduction to their practical use, it has been in my power to omit many particulars which contribute nothing to the character of the whole; and I have gained thereby more space for the discussion of matters more important, and more intimately incorporated with the vital spirit of the language. By this process, and by the strict observance of a method which brings under one view all points mutually

dependent and mutually explanatory, I have, as I flatter myself, succeeded in bringing together under one whole, and in a reasonable space, the leading incidents of many richly-endowed languages or grand dialects of an extinct original stock. Special care has been bestowed throughout on the German. This care was indispensable to one who, following Grimm's admirable work, aimed at applying to it the correction and adjustment that had become necessary in his theory of relations, the discovery of new affinities, or the more precise definition of those discovered, and to catch, with greater truth, at every step of grammatical progress, the monitory voices of the Asiatic as well as the European sisterhood. It was necessary, also, to set aside many false appearances of affinity; as, for example, to deprive the *i* in the Lithuanian *geri*, of its supposed connection with the *i* of Gothic, Greek, and Latin forms, such as *góðai*, *ἀγαθοί*, *boni* (see p. 251, Rem. †, and compare Grimm I. 827. 11); and to disconnect the Latin *is* of *lupis* (*lupibus*) from the Greek *ις* of *λύκοις* (*λύκοι-σι*). As concerns the method followed in treating the subject of Germanic grammar, it is that of deducing all from the Gothic as the guiding star of the German, and at the same time of placing it in juxta-position with the older languages and the Lithuanian. At the close of each lecture on the cases, a tabular view is given of the results obtained, in which every thing naturally depends on the most accurate distinction of the terminations from the base, which ought not, as usually happens, to be put forward capriciously, so that a portion of the base is drawn into the inflection, by which the division becomes not merely useless, but injurious, as productive of positive error. Where there is no real termination none should be appended for appearance sake: thus, for example, we give, §. 148, the nominatives *χώρα*, *terra*, *giba*, &c., as without inflection §. 137. The division *gib-a* would lead us to adopt the erroneous notion that *a* is the termination, whereas it is only

the abbreviation of the  $\delta$  (from the old  $\acute{a}$ , §. 69.) of the theme.\* In certain instances it is extraordinarily difficult in languages not now thoroughly understood to hit on the right divisions, and to distinguish apparent terminations from true. I have never attempted to conceal these difficulties from the reader, but always to remove them from his path.

The Old High German, especially in its oldest period (from the eighth to the eleventh century), I have only mentioned in the general description of forms when it contributes something of importance. The juxta-position of it in its three main periods with the Gothic, grammatically explained at the close of each chapter, is sufficient, with a reference also to the treatise on sounds intended to prepare and facilitate my whole Grammar, after the model of my Sanscrit Grammar. Wherever, in addition, explanatory remarks are necessary, they are given. The second division

---

\* The simple maxim laid down elsewhere by me, and deducible only from the Sanscrit, that the Gothic  $\delta$  is the long of  $a$ , and thereby when shortened nothing but  $a$ , as the latter lengthened can only become  $\delta$ , extends its influence over the whole grammar and construction of words, and explains, for example, how from *dags*, "day" (theme *DAGA*), may be derived, without change of vowel, *dógs* (*DŌGA*), "daily"; for this derivation is absolutely the same as when in Sanscrit *rājata*, "argenteus," comes from *rājata*, "argentum," on which more hereafter. Generally speaking, and with few exceptions, the Indian system of vowels, pure from consonantal and other altering influences, is of extraordinary importance for the elucidation of the German grammar: on it principally rests my own theory of vowel changes, which differs materially from that of Grimm, and which I explain by mechanical laws, with some modifications of my earlier definitions, while with Grimm it has a dynamic signification. A comparison with the Greek and Latin vocalism, without a steady reference to the Sanscrit, is, in my opinion, for the German more confusing than enlightening, as the Gothic is generally more original in its vocal system, and at least more consistent than the Greek and Latin, which latter spends its whole wealth of vowels, although not without pervading rules, in merely responding to a solitary Indian *a* (*septimus* for *septamas*, *quatuor* for *chatvār-as*, *τέσσαρ-ες*, *momordi* for *mamarda*).



will, therefore, be treated in this point of view among the pronominal adjectives.\* It is likely that a chasm in our literature, very prejudicial to inquiries of this kind, may be shortly filled up by a work ready for the press, and earnestly looked for by all friends of German and general philology, the Old High German Treasury of Graff. What we may expect from a work founded on a comprehensive examination of the MS. treasures of libraries national and foreign, as well as on a correction of printed materials, may be gathered from a survey of the amount contributed to knowledge in a specimen of the work, small, but happily selected, "The Old High German Prepositions."

---

older *a* is so far to be corrected according to my later conviction, that nothing but a retrospective influence is to be ascribed to the liquids; and the *u* and the *o*, in forms like *plintemu* (*mo*), *plintyu*, are to be excepted from the influence of the antecedent consonants."

\* The arrangement thus announced, as intended, has undergone, as will be seen, considerable modification.—*Editor*.

F. BOPP.

BERLIN, 1833.



# COMPARATIVE GRAMMAR.

## CHARACTERS AND SOUNDS.

SANSKRIT writing distinguishes the long from their corresponding short vowels by particular characters, slightly differing from each other. We propose to distinguish the long vowels, and the diphthongs ए *e* and ओ *o*, which spring from *i* and *u* united with an antecedent *a*, by a circumflex. The simple vowels are, first, the three, original and common to all languages, *a*, *i*, *u*, short and long; secondly, a vowel *r*, peculiar to the Sanskrit, which I distinguish by *r*, and its long sound by *r̄*. The short *r* (ऋ) is pronounced like the consonant *r* with a scarcely-distinguishable *i*, and in European texts is usually written *ri*; the long *r̄* (ॠ) is scarcely to be distinguished from the union of an *r* with a long *i*. Both vowels appear to me to be of later origin; and *r* presents itself generally as a shortening of the syllable *ar* by suppression of the *a*. The long *r̄* is of much rarer occurrence. In declension it stands only for a lengthening of the *r*, where, according to the laws of the formation of cases, a short vowel at the end of the inflective base must be lengthened; and in the conjugation and formation of words, those roots to which grammarians assign a terminating ऋ *r̄* almost always substitute for this unoriginal vowel अर *ar*, इर *ir*, ईर *īr*, or, after labials, उर *ur*. The last simple vowel of the Sanskrit writing belongs more to the grammarians than to the language: it is in character, as well as in pronunciation, an union of an ल *l* with ऋ *r* (ॡ), or lengthened with ऋ *r̄* (ॢ). We require no representative for this vowel, and shall not further advert to it.

2. Sanscrit possesses two kinds of diphthongs. In the one, a short *a* united with a following *i* becomes ए *é* (equivalent to the French *ai*), and with *u* becomes औ *ó* (equivalent to the French *au*); so that neither of the united elements is heard, but both melt into a third sound. In the second kind, a long *ā* with a following *i* becomes ऐ *ai*, and with *u*, औ *au*, as in the German words *weise, baum*; so that the two elements form indeed one syllable, but are both audible. In order, however, to fix the observation on the greater weight of the *a* in this diphthong, we write *āi* for ऐ, and *āu* for औ. That in ए *é* and औ *ó* a short, in ऐ *ai* and औ *au*, a long *a* is bound up I infer from this, that where, in order to avoid a hiatus, the last element of a diphthong merges into its corresponding semi-vowel, out of ए *é* and औ *ó* proceed the sounds अय् *ay* and अव् *av* (with short *a*), but out of ऐ *ai* and औ *au* proceed आय् *āy* and आव् *āv*. If, according to the rules of combination, a concluding आ *ā*, with an इ *i*, ई *ī*, or उ *u*, ऊ *ū* of a following word, be combined, like the short *a*, into ए *é* and औ *ó*, but not into ऐ *ai* and औ *au*, this, in my view, is to be understood as if the long *a*, before its combination with the initial vowel of the following word, had shortened itself. This should the less surprise us, as the long *a* before a dissimilar vowel of an inflexion or a suffix entirely disappears; and, for example, ददा *dadā* with उस् *us* makes neither ददौस् *dadāus*, nor ददौस् *dadós*, but ददुस् *dadus*. The opinion I have already expressed on this point I have since found confirmed by the Zend; in which 𐬀𐬀 *āi* always stands in the place of the Sanscrit ऐ *ai*, and 𐬀𐬀𐬀 *āu* or 𐬀𐬀𐬀 *āu* for औ *au*. In support, also, of my theory, appears the fact, that a concluding *a* (short or long) with a following ए *é* or औ *ó*, becomes ऐ *ai* and औ *au*; of which it is to be understood, that the short *a* contained in *é* and *ó* merges with the antecedent *a* into a long *a*, which then, with the *i* of the diphthong *é*, becomes *āi*, and with the *u* of *ó*, becomes *āu*. For example,



ममैतत् *mamāitat*, from मम एतत् *mama état*, is to be understood as if the diphthong ए *é* united its first element *a* with the preceding *a* into *ā*, and with this, further united its last element (*i*) into ऐ *ai*.

3. Among the simple vowels the old Indian alphabet is deficient in the designation of the Greek epsilon and omicron ( $\epsilon$  and  $\omicron$ ), whose sounds, if they existed when the Sanscrit was a living language, yet could only have evolved themselves, subsequently to the fixing of its written character, out of the short  $a$ ; for an alphabet which lends itself to the subtlest gradations of sound would assuredly not have neglected the difference between  $\check{a}$ ,  $\check{e}$ , and  $\check{o}$ , if the sounds had been forthcoming.\* It is important here to observe, that in the oldest Germanic dialect, namely, the Gothic, the sounds and characters of the short  $e$  and  $o$  are also wanting, and that either  $a$ ,  $i$ , or  $u$  correspond, in that dialect, to our German short  $e$ . For example, *faltha*, "ich falte," *giba*, "ich gebe." In the Zend the Sanscrit अ  $a$  remains usually ऌ  $a$ , or has changed itself, according to certain rules, into ए  $\check{e}$ . Thus, for example, before a concluding  $m$  ए  $\check{e}$  remains fast; compare the accusative ए॒॑ꣳꣳꣳ *puthrē-m* "filium" with पुत्रम् *putra-m*; and its genitive ए॒॑ꣳꣳꣳꣳꣳꣳꣳ *puthra-hé* with पुत्रस्य *putra-sya*. In Greek the Sanscrit  $a$  becomes  $\alpha$ ,  $\epsilon$ , or  $\omicron$ , without presenting any certain rules for the choice between these three vowels; but the prevailing practice is, that in nominal terminations the Greek  $\omicron$  answers to the Indian  $a$ , except in the vocatives, where an  $\epsilon$  is substituted. In the Latin, besides  $\alpha$ ,  $\check{e}$ , and  $\check{o}$ ,  $u$  is also employed, in the terminations of nouns of the second declension and of the first person plural, as also in some adverbial suffixes, to replace the Sanscrit  $a$ .

**4. As in the Greek the short Sanscrit *a* is oftener replaced**

\* Grimm, Vol. i. p. 594 ; with whom I entirely concur in this matter ; having long abandoned a contrary opinion, which I maintained in 1819 in the *Annals of Oriental Literature*.

by  $\epsilon$  or  $o$  than by a short  $a$ , so the long  $\bar{a}$  आ is oftener represented by  $\eta$  or  $\omega$  than by a long alpha: and if in the Doric the long  $\alpha$  has maintained itself in places where the ordinary dialect employs an  $\eta$ , no similar trace of the long  $\bar{a}$  has been retained where  $\omega$  usually prevails. दद्यामि *dadhāmi*, "I place," becomes τίθημι; ददामि *dadāmi*, "I give," δίδωμι; the Dual termination ताम् *tām* answers to  $\tau\eta\nu$ , and only in the imperative to  $\tau\omega\nu$ : on the other hand, the आम् *ām* of the genitive plural is always represented by  $\omega\nu$ . Never, if we except peculiarities of dialect, does either  $\eta$  or  $\omega$  stand for the Indian diphthong formed by an इ  $i$  or an उ  $u$  following a long  $\bar{a}$ , ए  $\acute{e}$  or ओ  $\acute{o}$ : for the first the Greek substitutes  $\epsilon\iota$  or  $o\iota$ , because for  $a$  repeated  $\epsilon$  and  $o$  are the substitutes, and for the last  $eu$  or  $ou$ . Thus, एमि *émi*, "I go," becomes  $\epsilon\acute{\iota}\mu\iota$ ; पतेस् *patés*, "thou mightest fall," πίπτοῖς; वेद *véda*, "I know," οἶδα; गो *go*, "a bull," βοῦς. From this dropping of the  $i$  or  $u$  in the Indian diphthongs  $\acute{e}$  and  $\acute{o}$  it may happen that  $a$ ,  $\epsilon$ , or  $o$ , answer to these diphthongs; thus, एकतारस् *ékataras*, "one of two," becomes  $\acute{\epsilon}\kappa\acute{\alpha}\tau\epsilon\rho\omicron\varsigma$ ; देवृ *dévri*,\* "brother-in-law," Latin, *levir* (nom. देवा *déva*, accus. देवस् *devar-am*), becomes  $\delta\alpha\acute{\eta}\rho$ ; देवस् *déva-s*, "God,"  $\Theta\acute{\epsilon}\omicron\varsigma$ ; and the  $o$  in  $\beta o\acute{o}\varsigma$ ,  $\beta o\acute{\iota}$ , stands for  $\beta o\nu\acute{o}\varsigma$ ,  $\beta o\nu\acute{i}$ , the  $u$  of which must have passed into  $f$ , and certainly did so at first, as is proved by the transition into the Latin *bovis*, *bovi*, and the Indian गवि *gavi*, from  $g\acute{o}-i$ .

5. In Latin we sometimes find the long  $e$ , which, however, may be shortened by the influence of the following consonant, arising from the mixture of  $\bar{a}$  and  $i$ , as in the above-mentioned word *levir*, and in the conjunctive *amémus*. कामयेम *kāmayéma* from *kāmaya-ima*.

6. If we inquire after the greater or less relative Weight

---

\* The original has *devr*, but, as observed in p. 1, in European texts it is usual to write  $\acute{r}i$  for चृ; and the absence of any sign for the vowel sound is calculated to cause embarrassment: it seems advisable, therefore, to express चृ by  $\acute{r}i$ —Editor.

of the vowels of different quality, I have discovered, by various but sure appearances, which I shall further illustrate in my treatise on Forms, that in Sanscrit *a* and *ā* are graver than the corresponding quantity of the vowel *i*; and this discovery is of the utmost importance for every Treatise on special as well as comparative Grammar. It leads us, in particular, to important discoveries with respect to the Germanic modification of vowels. In Latin, also, the *i* may be considered as lighter than *a*, and generally takes the place of the latter when a root with an original *a* would otherwise be burthened with a reduplication of sound. Hence, for example, *abjicio* for *abjacio*, *tetigi* for *tetagi*. I am compelled by this view to retract an earlier conjecture, that the *i* in *tetigi* was produced by a virtue of assimilation in the termination *i*. I have also to relieve myself from my former theory, that the *e* in words like *inermis*, *imberbis*, instead of *inarmis*, *imbarbis*, springs from a retrospective power of assimilation in the following *i*, after the fashion of the modification of the vowel in German (Grimm, p. 80), and must place it in the same class with the *e* in such forms as *abjectus* and *tubicen*. The Latin radical *a*, for instance, is subject to a double alteration, when the root is burthened with antecedent syllables or words: it becomes *i* in open syllables, but *e* if the vowel is pressed upon by a following consonant unattended by a vowel. Hence we have *tubicen*, *abjectus*, in contrast to *tubicinis*, *abjicio*; and *inermis*, *imberbis*, not *inirmis*, *imbirbis*: on the contrary, *inimicus*, *insipidus*, not *inemicus*, *insepidus*. In connection with this stands the transition of the first or second declension into the third. As *us* is the masculine form for *a*, we ought to say, *inermus*, *imberbus*; but these, and other such forms, owe their origin to the lesser weight of the *i*. With the displacement of the accent, where it occurs, this change of the vowel has nothing to do; but the removal of the accent and the weakening of the vowel are nearly related, and are both governed together by their mutual position. In the

Lithuanian we find similar appearances; as, for example, *pónas*, "lord," at the end of compounds, is weakened into *ponis*, as *rótponis*, "councillor," Germ. *rathsherr*.

Sanscrit Grammar gives no certain indication of the relative weight of the *u* with regard to the other original vowels. The *u* is a vowel too decided and full of character to allow of its being exchanged in this language, in relief of its weight, for any other letter. It is the most obstinate of all, and admits of no exclusion from a terminating syllable, in cases where *a* and *i* admit suppression. Nor will it retire from a reduplicated syllable in cases where *a* allows itself to be weakened down to *i*. Thus in Latin we have *pupugi*, *tutudi*; while *a*, in cases of repetition, is reduced to *i* or *ě* (*tetigi*, *fefelli*, &c.) In the Gothic, also, the *u* may boast of its pertinacity: it remains firm as the terminating vowel of classes of nouns where *a* and *i* have undergone suppression, and in no single case has it been extinguished or transmuted. No power, however, exists which will not yield at last to time; and thus in the High German whose oldest records are nearly four centuries younger than Ulphilas, the *u* has, in many cases, given way, or become in declension similar to *i*.

8. If, in the matter of the relative dignity of the vowels, we cast a glance at another race of languages, we find in Arabic the *u* taking precedence in nobility, as having its place in the nominative, while the declension is governed by the change of the terminating vowel; *i*, on the contrary, shews its weakness, by having its place in the genitive, the most dependent case of the Arabic, and one which cannot be separated from the governing word. *I*, also, is continually used in cases where the grammatical relation is expressed by a preposition. Compare, also, in the plural, the *úna* of the nominative with the *ina* of the oblique cases. *A* stands between the strong *u* and the weaker *i*; and under the three-fold change of vowels stands in the accusative, which admits of more freedom than the genitive. In the oblique cases,

however, of nouns, and in the two-fold change of vowels, it stands opposed to the *u* of the nominative, and in the dependent conjunctive of the verb to the *u* of the independent indicative.

9. Between the vowels and the consonants, or at the close of the list of vowels, are commonly placed two signs, the sounds of which are rather to be considered as appendages to, or modifications of, the preceding vowels, than as independent sounds, and take, also, no place in the alphabet of the Native Grammarians, inasmuch as they are considered neither as consonants nor vowels, but rather as complements to the latter. The first, which we distinguish by a *n̄*, is called *Anusvâra*, "echo;" and is, in fact, a thick nasal echo, which I think is best represented by the nasal *n* at the end of a French syllable. The weakness of its expression is discernible in the fact that it does not, like a consonant, impede the euphonic influence of an *i* or a *u* on a following *s*. (See Sanscrit Grammar, p. 101.) It has its place before semi-vowels (य् *y*, र् *r*, ल् *l*, व् *v*), sibilants, and *h*; and we might thence term it the nasal of the two last lists of consonants, and assign its alphabetical place between them. A concluding म् *m*, followed by one of these, passes into *Anusvâra*; for example, तस्याम् *tasyâm*, "in this," becomes तस्यां *tasyân̄*, with the French nasal pronunciation of the *n*, if such a word रात्रौ *râtrâu*, "in the night," come after. In connection with the स् *s* of a verbal termination, a radical न् *n* also passes into *Anusvâra*; as, हंसि *hañsi*, "thou killest," from हन् *han*. Great confusion, however, has arisen from the circumstance that the Indian copyists allow themselves to express the unaltered concluding म् *m*, as well as all the nasal alterations, and, in the middle of words, each of the six nasal sounds (the proper *Anusvâra* included), by *Anusvâra*.\* I have

---

\* The practice is not unauthorized by rule. A final म् *m* is convertible to *Anusvâra* before *any* consonant (Pân. 8. 3. 23.); and a medial न् *n* or म् *m* is convertible

endeavoured, in my Grammar, to remedy this confusion in the simple theory of Anusvâra. My predecessors in the treatment of Sanscrit Grammar make no distinction between the real and the supposititious Anusvâra. Colebrooke gives it, in general, the pronunciation of a *n*, and calls it "the shortening of the nasal consonants at the end of a syllable," which leads to the error, that each of the nasal characters, even the concluding ण *n*, may be mutilated into Anusvâra. Forster expresses it by the *n* in the English word *plinth*; Carey and Yates by the English combination *ng*; Wilkins by *m*. All substitute it for the concluding ण of grammatical terminations; and as they give rules for the transition of the Anusvâra into ण or ण, the necessary consequence occurs, that we must write *abhavan* or *abhavang*, "I was;" *dantan* or *dantang*, "a tooth;" not *abhavam*, *dantam*. Colebrooke, on the other hand, expressing a Sanscrit inscription in Roman letters (*Asiatic Transactions*, Vol. VII.) gives the proper termination *m*, and before *t*, *n*, by an euphonic rule; but he maintains the original *m* before sibilants and half vowels where Anusvâra is due; as, *vidvishâm śrīmad*, for विद्विषां *vidvishân*. On the other hand, F. von Schlegel and Frank write *n*, for the value of Anusvâra, in the place of *m* in several grammatical terminations. The first, for example, gives *danon*, "a gift," for *dānam*; the second, *ahan* for *aham*, "I." A. W. Schlegel gives rightly *m* instead of a spurious or representative Anusvâra at the end of words; and lets, for example, the infinitive terminate in *tum*, not in *tun* or *tung*. He nevertheless, on this important point of grammar, retains the erroneous opinion, that the Anusvâra is a variable nasal, which, before vowels, must of necessity pass into *m* (*Preface to the Bhag. Gita*, p. xv); while the direct converse is the fact, that the concluding *m* is the

---

convertible to Anusvâra before any consonant except a semi-vowel or a nasal. (Ib. 8. 3. 24.) Such are the rules. In practice, the mutation of the final ण is constant: that of the medial nasal is more variable, and in general the change occurs before the semi-vowels and sibilants.—*Editor*.

variable nasal, which also, under certain conditions, passes into the proper Anusvâra; but before vowels is necessarily retained, both in writing and pronunciation. That Von Schlegel also still considers the original ण् *m* at the end of words as an euphonic alteration of the dead sound of Anusvâra appears from his mode of printing Sanscrit text, in which he makes no division between a concluding ण् *m* and the commencing vowel of the following word; while he does make a division after न् *n*, and thereby shews that he admits a division after terminating letters which remain unaffected by the influence of the letters which follow. If, however, we write तान् अब्रवीत् *tân abravît*, "he said to them," we must also write ताम् अब्रवीत् *tâm abravît*, "he said to her;" not तामब्रवीत् *tâmbravît*, for the ण् of ताम् *tâm* is original, and not, as Von Schlegel thinks, begotten out of Anusvâra. The conjecture of C. Lassen (Ind. Bibl. Book III. p. 39), that the Anusvâra is to be understood, not as an after sound (*nachlaut*), nor as an echo (*nachhall*), but as a sound which regulates itself by that which follows—as it were the term *Nachlaut*, with the accent on *laut*\*—appears to me highly improbable. Schlegel's *nasalis mutabilis* would indeed be justified by this view, and the imputation of error removed from the Indian Grammarians, to whom we willingly concede a knowledge of the value of the Sanscrit signs of sound, and whom we are unwilling to censure for designating a half sound as mutable, in a language whose termi-

---

\* This seems intended for an explanation, for Lassen has nothing like it. I have not found an etymological explanation of the term in any grammatical commentary; but it may be doubted if the explanation of the text, or that given by Lassen, be correct. Anusvâra may indeed be termed *sequens sonus*; but by that is to be understood the final or closing sound of a syllable. Any other nasal may be used as the initial letter of a syllable; but the nasal Anusvâra is exclusively an "after" sound, or final. It is not even capable of blending, as it were, with a following vowel, like a final *n* or *m*, as in *tân-* or *tâmbravît*. It is the legitimate representative of either of the other nasals when those are absolutely terminal,

nating sounds are almost always governed by the following words. It is true the half sound owes its being to the mutability of a concluding *m*, but is not mutable itself, since it never has an independent existence of its own at the end of any word: in the middle, however, of a radical syllable, as दंम् *danís*, हिंम् *hínis*, it is susceptible of expulsion, but not of alteration. That the Indian Grammarians, however, consider the *m* and not the *n* as the original but mutable letter in grammatical terminations, like अम् *am*, भ्याम् *bhyám*, &c., appears from the fact that they always write these terminations, where they give them separate, with the labial nasal, and not with Anusvâra. If it be objected that this is of no importance, as dependent on the caprice of the editor or copyist, we can adduce as a decisive proof of the just views of the Indian Grammarians in this respect, that when they range the declensions of words in the order of their terminating letters, the Pronouns इदम् *idam*, and किम् *kim*, in which they consider the *m* as primitive, are treated when the turn comes of the labial nasal *m*, and together with प्रज्ञाम् *prasám*, "quiet," from the root ज्ञम् *śam*. (Laghu-Kaumudî, p. 46.)

The deadened nasal, which is expressed in the Lithuanian by particular signs over the vowel which it follows, appears to be identical with the Sanscrit Anusvâra; and we write it in the same manner with *n̄*. At the end of words it stands for the remainder of an ancient *m*, in the accusative singular for example; and the deadening of *n* before *s* into *n̄* presents

---

terminal, and in pronunciation retains their respective sounds, according to the initial consonant of the following word. Again, with regard to its relation to the semi-vowels and sibilants, it may be regarded as appropriate to them merely in as far as neither of the other nasals is so considered. In this sense Anusvâra may be termed a subsidiary or supplemental sound, being prefixed with most propriety to those letters which, not being classed under either of the five series of sounds, have no rightful claim to the nasals severally comprehended within each respective series.—*Editor*.



a remarkable accordance with the Sanscrit rule of euphony before mentioned. From *laupsin-u*, "I praise," therefore comes *laupsinsu*, "I shall praise;" as in Sanscrit, *हंस्यामि* *hansyāmi*, "I shall kill," from the root *हन्* *han*. In the Prakrit, not only the म *m*, but the न् *n*, at the end of words, has always fallen into Anusvāra, without regard to the following letters. Thus we read in Chezy's edition of the *Sacontala*, p. 70, भवव, which is certainly to be pronounced, not *bhaavam*, but *bhaavan*, for भगवन् *bhagavan*; कुधं *kudhan*, for कुथम् *kutham*.\*

11. The second of the signs before mentioned is named Visarga, which signifies abandonment. It expresses a breathing, which is never primitive, but only appears at the end of words in the character of an euphonic alteration of स *s* and र् *r*. These two letters (*s, r*) are very mutable at the end of words, and are changed into Visarga before a pause or the deadened letters of the guttural and labial classes (§ 12). We write this sign *h* to distinguish it from the true ह *h*.

12. The proper consonants are classed in the Sanscrit alphabet according to the organs used in their pronunciation; and form, in this division, five classes. A sixth is formed by the semi-vowels, and a seventh by the sibilants and the ह *h*. In the first five ranks of these consonants the single letters are so arranged, that the first are the surd or hard consonants, the thin, *tenués*, and their aspirates; next, the sonant or soft, the medials, and their aspirates, each class being completed by its nasal. The nasals belong, like the vowels and semi-vowels, to the sonants; the sibilants to the surd or hard. Every thin and every medial letter has its corresponding aspirate. The aspirates are pronounced, like their

---

\* No native scholar would read these as *bhaavan* or *kudhan*, as the text affirms, but *bha-avam*, *kudham*, agreeably to the final म represented by Anusvāra.—*Editor*.

respective non-aspirates, with a clearly audible *h*; thus, for example, च् *th*, not like the English *th*; प् *ph*, not *f* or *φ*; and क् *kh*, not like the Greek χ.\* In an etymological point of view it is important to observe that the aspirates of different organs are easily exchanged with each other; thus, भर् *bhar*, धर् *dhar*, (भृ *bhri*, धृ *dhri*, § 1.) “to bear,” “to hold,” are perhaps originally identical. धूमस् *dhúma-s*, “smoke,” is, in Latin, *fumu-s*. In Greek, θάνω, as well as φένω, is related to हन् *han*, from धन् *dhan*, “to kill.” The Gothic *thliuhan* is the German *fliehen*, Old High German *vliuhan*.

13. The first class is that of the gutturals, and includes the letters क् *k*, क् *kh*, ग् *g*, घ् *gh*, ङ् *n*. The nasal of this class is pronounced like the German *n* before gutturals, as in the words *sinken*, *enge*, so as to prepare for the following guttural. In the middle of words it is only found before gutturals; and, at the end, supplies the place of म् *m* when the following word begins with a guttural.† We write it without the distinctive sign, as its guttural nature is easily recognised by the following consonant. The aspirates of this class are not of frequent use, either at the beginning or end of words. In some Greek words we find χ in the place of क् *kh*: compare ὄνυξ, ὄνυχ-ος, with *nakha*, “nail;” κόρυνη, κόρυχος, with *śankha*, “shell;” χαίνω, χανῶ, with *khan*, “to

---

\* The original here adds—“We designate the aspirate by a comma, as *t'*, *d'*, *b'*.” The use of such a mark is, however, unsightly, and appears likely to cause occasional perplexity and doubt. It seems therefore preferable to adhere to the usual mode of expressing the aspirated letters, as *dh*, *bh*, and the like. It is only necessary to remember that *th* and *ph* are the letters *t* and *p* with an aspiration, and not the *th* and *f* of the English alphabet.—*Editor*.

† A careful examination will perhaps shew that the several nasals of the Sanscrit alphabet are mere modifications of one sound, according to the manner in which that is affected by a succeeding letter; and that the modifications prevail equally in most languages, although it has not been thought necessary to provide them with distinct symbols.—*Editor*.

dig." As regards the sonant aspirates, the घ *gh* of *gharma*, "heat" (in Greek *θέρμη*), has passed into the aspiration of another organ; लघु *laghu*, "light," has laid aside the guttural in the Latin *levis*, and, in virtue of the *i*, changed the *u* into *v*. The guttural has kept its place in the German *leicht*, the English *light*, and the Old High German *lihti*.

14. The second class is that of the palatals; and includes the sounds *ch* and *j*, with their aspirates and nasal. We write च *ch*, छ *chh*, ज *j*,\* ञ *jh*,\* ञ *n*. This class is an offshoot from the preceding, and to be considered as a softening of it. It is only found before vowels and weak consonants (semi-vowels and nasals), and before strong consonants; and at the end of a word generally retires into the class from which it springs. Thus, for example, the वाच् *vāch*, "speech," "voice" (i.e. *vox*), makes, in the uninflected nominative, वाक् *vāk*; in the instrumental and locative plurals, वाग्भिस् *vāg-bhis*, वाक्षु *vakshu*. In the kindred languages we have to look for, in the place of the letters of this class, first, gutturals; next labials, on account of their mutual affinity; thirdly, the sounds of *t*, as, according to pronunciation, the first element of the palatals is a *t* or *d*; fourthly, sibilants, as being the last element in the letters of this class. Compare पचामि *pachāmi*, "I cook," (inf. *paktum*, part. pass. *pakta*), with *coquo*, πέπω (πέπτω, πέττω, πέσσω); चतुर् *chatur*, "four," nom. चत्वारस् *chatvāras*, with *quatuor*, τέτταρες, τέσσαρες, Gothic *fidvōr*, Lithuanian *ketturi*; पञ्चन् *panchan*, "five" (nom. accus. *pancha*), with *quinque*, πέντε, πέμπε, Gothic *fimf*, Lithuanian *penki*; राजन् *rājan*, "king," with *rex*, *regis*; राजत *rājata*, nom. *rājatam*, "silver" (from *rāj*, "to shine"), with *argentum*, ἄργυρος; जानु *jānu*, "knee," with *genu*, γόνυ. With regard to the aspirates of this class, the *chh*, as an initial letter in some words, answers to *sc*, σκ; छिन्वस् *chhind-*

---

\* The original has *g* and *g'*; but the appropriate symbols in English are *j* and its aspirate.

*mas*, “we cleave,” छिन्मि *chhinadmi*, “I cleave,” answers to the Latin *scindo*; छाया *chhāyā*, “shadow,” to the Greek *σκιά*. As the terminating letter of a root *chh* answers, in प्रश् *prachh*, “to ask,” to the Gothic *h* in *frāh*, “I or he asked,” to the Latin and German *g* in *frage*, *rogo*, in case that the latter, as I suspect, is a modification of *progo*. The nasal of this class, for which we require no distinctive sign, as it only precedes palatals, deviates but slightly from the sound of the guttural *n*, and is pronounced nearly like *ng*.

15. The third class is called that of the linguals or cerebrals, and embraces a peculiar kind of sounds of *t*, together with its nasal; a kind not original, but which has developed itself from the ordinary class of *t* sounds. We distinguish them by a point under the letter, thus, ढ़ *ṭ*, ढ़ *ṭh*, ढ़ *ḍ*, ढ़ *ḍh*, ण *ṇ*. In the Prakrit this class has obtained great supremacy, and has frequently supplanted the ordinary *t*. It says, for example, भोढु *bhódu*, for भवतु *bhavatu*, “let it be;” and पढम *padhama*, for प्रथम *prathama*, “the first.” With regard to the nasal, the substitution of ण for न् is nearly universal. The Indian Grammarians approach the Prakrit nearer than the Sanscrit, when at the beginning of roots they use the same substitution. The practice, also, which we have condemned (§ 9.), of using Anusvāra for न् *m*, at the end of words, is more Prakrit than Sanscrit. At the beginning of words these letters are never found in Sanscrit, but they are found as terminations to a certain number of roots; for example, अढ *aṭ*, “to go.” They are pronounced by bending back the tongue against the roof of the mouth, by which a hollow sound is expressed, as if from the head.\* The nasal of this class has sometimes overstepped the limits of its usual laws: it is found before vowels, which

---

\* Here, also, it may be doubted if similar modifications of the dental sounds are not discoverable in languages which do not express them by separate symbols. The *t* of the Italian *tutto* is the Sanscrit ढ़.—*Editor*.

is not the case with the nasals of the preceding classes ; yet never at the beginning of words.

16. The fourth class embraces the dentals, or the sounds which properly answer to the common *d* and *t*, together with the common *n*, which belongs to them, ण् *t*, थ् *th*, द् *d*, ध् *dh*, न् *n*. Of the aspirates of this organ, we have to remark, that थ् *th*, in an etymological respect, never—at least in no instance of which we are aware—is represented in Greek by *θ*, but always like the natural *t*, by *τ*. On the other hand, ध् *dh* does correspond to *θ*, which also sometimes represents द् *d*. Thus the imperative ending धि *dhi*, in Greek becomes *θι*; मधु *madhu* “honey,” “wine,” is μέθυ; दधामि *dadhāmi*, “I place,” τίθημι; दुहितृ *duhitār* (दुहितृ *duhitri*, § 1.) “daughter,” θυγάτηρ; द्वार् *dvār*, f. and *dvāra*, neut. (nom. *dvāram*) “door,” θύρα; देव *dēva*, Lithuan. *diemas*, “God,” Θεός. With regard to the hard aspirate, compare the terminations τε and τον with थ् *tha* and चस् *thas*, the first in the plural, the second in the dual of the present and future; στήσω with स्थास्यामि *sthasyāmi*, “I shall stand”; ὀστέον with अस्थि *asthi*, “bone”; in the Latin, *rota* with रथ् *rātha*, “carriage”; and in the Gothic, the ending *t*, in the second person singular of the preterite, with *tha*; for example, *vais-t*, “thou knewest,” with वेत्थ *vēt-tha*. From the beginning of words in the Sanscrit this aspirate is nearly excluded.

17. The interchange of *d* and *l* is well known. Upon it, among other instances, is founded the relation of *lacryma* to δάκρυ, δάκρυμα. In Sanscrit, also, an apparently original द् *d* often corresponds to the *l* of kindred European languages; for example, दीप् *dīp*, “to light,” दीप *dīpa*, “lamp,” becomes λάμπω, λαμπάς; देह *dēha*, “body,” Gothic *leik*. On this relation also rests, as I have shewn elsewhere, the relation of our *lf*, Gothic *lif*, in *elf*, *zwölf*, Gothic *tvalif*, to दशन् *dasān*, δέκα. As also the second consonant has undergone alteration, and has migrated from the gutturals

into the labials; and as, moreover, the number "ten," taken alone, is, in Gothic, *taihun*, in German *zehn*, its origin from *lif* was deeply concealed; and even the Lithuanian *lika*, which accompanies the simple numbers in their compounded forms from eleven to twenty, remained long under my notice without result. The fact, however, that one and the same word can, in the course of time, assume various forms for various objects, proved, as it is, by numberless examples, requires no further support. With respect to the affinity of *λίκος* in *ἡλίκος*, &c., and of the Gothic *leiks* in *hvēleiks*, "like to whom?" to *दृश* *drīśa*, Prakrit *दिस्* "like," I refer the reader to my Treatise on the Pronoun and its influence (Berlin, published by Dümmler); and only remark, in addition, that by this analogy of *λίκος*, *leiks*, I was first led to that of *lif* to *δέκα*; while the Lithuanian *lika* had not yet attracted my observation.

18. The labial class comes next, namely, *प* *p*, *फ* *ph*, *ब* *b*, *भ* *bh*, *म* *m*. The hard aspirate *ph* is among the rarer letters; the most usual words in which it occurs are, *फल* *phala*, "fruit," *फेन* *phēna*, "foam," and the forms which come from the root *फुल्* *phull*, "to burst, blow, bloom." The sonant aspirate *bh* belongs, together with *dh*, to the most frequent of the aspirates. In the Greek and Latin, *φ* and *f* are the letters which most frequently correspond to this *bh*, especially at the beginning of words; for example, *भृ* *bhṛi*, "to bear," *fero*, *φέρω*; *भू* *bhū*, "to be," *fu-i*, *φύ-ω*. *bh* is also often represented by *b* in Latin, especially in the middle of words. The *f* of *fero* becomes *b* in certain compounds which rank as simple words with a derivable suffix, as *ber*, *brum*, *brium*, in words like *saluber*, *candelabrum*, *manubrium*. Thus the *f* of *fu* appears as *b* in the forms *amabam*, *amabo*, which I have detected as compounds, and which will be hereafter explained. The dative and ablative termination plural *भ्यस्* *bhyas*, becomes *bus* in Latin. The nasal of this class, *म* *m*, is subject, at the end of a word, to several alterations, and only remains fast before a pause, a

vowel, or letters of its own class: it otherwise governs itself according to the nature of the following letters, and may pass, in this manner, into any of the four preceding nasals, and weakens itself into the softened nasal sound of the proper Anusvâra, if followed by a semi-vowel, a sibilant, or ह् *h*. *M* has also a full right to the name of a mutable nasal. It is, however, not befitting, when, in editions of a text otherwise conspicuous for accuracy, we find म्, though protected in its original condition by a pause, or by the following letters, written as Anusvâra.

19. The semi-vowels follow next: य् *y*, र् *r*, ल् *l*, व् *v*. We distinguish *y* by the sound of our German *j*, or the English *y* in the word *year*. As the Latin *j* in English has the sound of a softened *g*, so in Prakrit य् *y* often passes into ज् *j*; and in Greek, upon this exchange of sound rests the relation of ζεύγνυμι, ζυγός, &c. to the युज् *yuj*, "to bind," and that of the verbs in άζω to the Indian verbs in अयामि *ayāmi*; for ζ is *ds*, but the sound *dsch* is not to be looked for in Greek. The relation of the Persian جوان *juvān*, "young," to the Sanscrit Thema युवन् *yuvan*, Lat. *juvenis*, belongs to this place. By *v* we here designate the sound of the German *w* and English *v*. After consonants, as त्वाम् *tvām*, "thee," this letter takes the pronunciation of the English *w*. The occasional hardening of the *v* into a guttural deserves mention here; thus, in Latin, *vic-si* (*vixi*), *victum*, spring from *viv*; and in *facio* I recognise the Sanscrit causal भावयामि *bhāv-ayā-mi*, "I make to be," from the root भू *bhū*. The connection between *fac-tus* and *fio* is practically demonstrated. Refer back, in the Old and Modern Greek, to the occasional hardening of the Digamma into γ. (C. G. Schmidt in the Berlin Jahrbuch, 1831, p. 613.) The voice cannot dwell on *v* or *y*; and the two letters व् and य् are therefore, as in the Semitic languages, excluded from the end of words: therefore the word दिव् *div*, "Heaven," forms its nominative, which ought to be *div* (as *divs* is forbidden,

see §. 94.), into द्यो *dyô*. Nominal roots in *y* do not exist. र् *r* at the end of a word is subject to many alterations, and is interchangeable with स् *s*. In places where the concluding *s*, by favour of the following letter, is retained, र् becomes स् *s*; and, on the other hand, remains unaltered in places where स् *s* becomes र् *r*, namely, before vowels and sonant consonants.

20. The semi-vowels, by reason of their tractable and fluent nature, are easily interchanged. For instance, in the more recent Sanscrit works ल् *l* often stands for र् *r*.<sup>\*</sup> We often, also, find in the cognate European languages *l* for *v*. On this interchange is founded the relation of the Latin suffix *lent* (for instance, *opulens*), and of the Gothic *laud* (*a*)-*st* (see §. 116.), in *hvélauds*, “quantus,” *svalauds*, “tantus,” *sama-lauds*, “just so much,” to the Sanscrit वन् *vant* (in the strong case, §. 129.), in words like धनवन् *dhanavant*, “endowed with wealth,” तावन् *tāvant*, “so much,” यावन् *yāvant*, “how much?” On the change between *v* and *r* is founded, as I believe, the relation of the Old High German *pir-u-mēs*, “we are” (sing. *pim* भवामि *bhav-ā-mi*), to भवामस् *bhav-ā-mas*; as also that of *scir-u-mēs*, “we shriek,” to श्रावयामस् *śrāv-ayā-mas*, “we make to hear” (§. 109.); as also that of *triusu*, “I fall,” from the root *trus*, to the Sanscrit ध्वस् *dhvans*, “to fall.”† The semi-vowel *l* is also exchanged with the nasals; thus, अन्यस् *anya-s*, “the other,” becomes *alius* in

\* It is scarcely correct to say “often,” as the instances are rare: nor are they restricted to recent works. Menu has *aslika* for *asriku*.—*Ed.*

† Grimm (iii. p. 46) admits *lauds*, “great,” as an adjective; which, as far as the Gothic at least is concerned, might be dispensed with, as it is of the greatest antiquity as a suffix, and does not appear alone as an adjective, even in later periods.

‡ *Dh*, according to § 16, = the Greek *θ*; and the *θ*, according to §. 87, is answered to by the Old High German *t*. The *u* of *trus*, from the old *a*, may be produced by the influence of the *r*, or of the dropped nasal.



Latin, and अन्तरस् *antara-s*, “the other,” *alter*; वद् *vad*, “to speak,” answers to the Gothic *lathôn*, “called,” “invited,” *ga-lathôn*, “called together”; आ *dhma*, “to blow,” answers to *flare*. (§. 109.) Compare, also, *balbus* with βαλβαίνω.

21. The last class embraces the sibilants and *h*: श् *ś*, ष् *ṣh*, स *s*, and ह् *h*. The first sibilant is spoken with a slight aspiration, and usually written by the English *sh*.\* It belongs to the palatal class, and thence supplies the place of the third or proper स *s* when a hard palatal च् *ch* or छ् *chh* follows; for instance, रामश् चरति *rāmas'charati*, instead of रामस् चरति *rāmascharati*, “Rāmas goes.” By its origin, श् *ś* appears to be a son of *k*; and in Greek and Latin we find *κ* and *c* regularly corresponding to the Sanscrit श् *ś*. The Gothic substitutes *h* in pursuance of the law of change of sound; but the Lithuanian stands the nearest to the Sanscrit with reference to this letter, and has in its stead a sibilant compound *sz*, pronounced like *sh*. Compare *decem*, δέκα, Gothic *taihun* Lithuan. *dészimtis*, with दशन् *daśan* (nom. दश *daśa*); *canis*, κύων, Gothic *hunds*, Lithuan. *szuo* (gen. *szuns*), with च्वन् *śvan* (nom. च्वा *śvā*, gen. चुनस् *śunas*, κυνός), “dog;” δάκρυ, *lacrima*, *aszara*, f. with अश्रु *aśru* n. “tear;” *equus* (= *ecvus*), Lith. *aszwa* f. “mare,” with अश्व *aśva* (nom. अश्वस् *aśvas*), “horse;” *szaka* f. with शाखा *śākhā* f. “bough.” The Lith. *szwenta-s*, “holy,” answers to the Zend 𐬰𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬚𐬭𐬀 *špēnta* (§. 50.). At the end of a word, and in the middle before strong consonants, श् *ś* is not allowed, although admitted as an euphonic substitute for a concluding स् *s* before an initial hard palatal. Otherwise श् *ś* usually falls back into the sound from which it appears to have originated, namely, *k*. In some roots, however, श् *ś* passes into ट *ṭ*; for instance, दृश् *dṛś*, “seeing,” and विश *viś*, “a man of the third caste,” form, in the uninflected nominative, दृक् *dṛik*, विट् *viṭ*. The second sibilant, ष् *ṣh*, is pronounced like our *sch*, or *sh* in English, and

---

\* More usually *ś*; the *sh* is reserved for the cerebral sibilant.—Editor.

belongs to the lingual class. It often steps, according to certain rules into the place of स् *s*; thus, for instance, after क *k*, स् *s* never follows, but only च *sh*; and the ξ, *x*, in Greek and Latin, are regularly represented by क्ष *ksh*. Compare दक्षिण *dakshina*, with *dex-ter*, δεξιός, Lithuanian *dészine*, “the right hand.” Of the vowels, *i*, *u*, and *ri*, short or long, are averse from स् *s*, to which *a* and *ā* alone are inclined. After the first-named vowels, स् *s* passes into च; for instance, तनोषि *tanóshi*, instead of तनोसि *tanósi* (*extendis*). As an initial, च *sh* is extremely rare: the Indian grammarians, however, write the roots which, under certain circumstances, change स् *s* into च *sh*, from the first with a च *sh*. A word which really begins with च *sh* is चक् *shash*, “six;” to which the Lith. *szeszi*, a plural nominative, answers most nearly, while other cognate languages indicate an original ordinary *s*. At the end of a word, and in the middle before other strong consonants, such as ट *t*, ठ *th*, च *sh* is not permitted, but in most roots passes into क *k*, but with some into ट *t*: the number six, mentioned above, becomes, in the uninflected nominative, षट् *shat*.

22. The third sibilant is the ordinary *s* of all languages, but which, at the end of Sanscrit words, holds a very insecure position, and by certain rules is subjected to transmutation into श् *ś*, च *sh*, र् *r*, : *ah* or *h* Visarga (§ 11.), and *u*; and only remains unaltered before *t* and *th*. We write, for example, सूनुस् तरति *sūnus tarati*, “the son passes over,” but तरति सूनुः *tarati sūnuh*, सूनुश् चरति *sūnuś charati* (*it*), सूनूर् भवति *sūnur bhavati* (*est*). This sensitiveness against a concluding स् *s* can only have arisen in the later period of the language, after its division; as in the cognate languages the concluding *s* remains unaltered, or where it has been changed for *r* does not return into its original form. Thus, in the decree against Timotheus (Maittaire, §. 383-4.), ρ everywhere stands for σ: Τιμόσεορ ὁ Μιλήσιορ—παραγινόμενορ—λυμαίνεται τὰρ ἀκοὰρ τῶν νέων, &c. The Sanscrit could not endure *r* be-

fore *t*. The Latin protects the *s* usually at the end of words; but in the classical period generally sacrifices it, when between two vowels, to the *r*; for instance, *genus*, *generis*, for *genesis*; a contrast to forms found in Varro and Festus, such as *plusima*, *faedesum*, *meliose*, *majosibus*, in which the *s* evinces its original existence in the history of the language (see §. 127.). The accusative form *arbose*, recorded by Festus, is more startling, for here *r* is the original form, if, as I can hardly doubt, *arbor*, *arbos*, is related to the word of such frequent occurrence in the Zend-Avesta, *urvara*, “tree.” This expression is not wanting in the Sanscrit, (उर्वरा *urvárā*;) but it signifies, according to Wilson, “fruitful land,” and land in general.

23. ह *h* belongs to the letters which, in Sanscrit, are never admitted at the end of words, or in the middle before strong consonants. In these places it passes, by certain rules, into इ *i*, इ *d*, क *k*, or ग *g*. In Greek we often find χ in the place of the Sanscrit ह *h*: compare χειμών, *hiems*, with हिम *hima*, “snow,” “rime;” χαίρω with हृष्यामि *hṛish-yāmi*, *gaudeo*; χήν with हंस *hanṣa*, “goose;” χθές, *heri*, with ह्यस् *hyas*, “yesterday;” ὄχος with वह् *vah*, “to go,” “to travel.” We also find κ, *c* for *h*: compare καρδία, *cor*, Gothic *hairlō*, with हृद् *hṛid* (n. हृदय *hṛidaya*), “heart.” We sometimes, but rarely, find the spiritus asper substituted for *h*; for instance, αἰρέω, हरामि *harāmi*, “I take away.” The Lithuanian exhibits sometimes *sz* for *h*; for instance, *asz*, “I,” for अहम् *aḥam*, *szirdis* f. “heart,” for हृद् *hṛid*. This letter stands sometimes in Sanscrit for a mutilation of other aspirated consonants, of which the aspiration alone has been suppressed; thus, instead of the imperative ending धि *dhi*, we generally find हि *hi*; on which account the grammarians accept हि *hi*, and not धि *dhi*, as the original ending, and assume that *hi* passes into *dhi*, for euphonic reasons, after consonants. The root ग्रह् *grah*, “to take,” is written in the Vedas ग्रभ् *grabh*, and answers thus more nearly to the German *greifen*, and the Persian *giriften*.

We give here a general view of the Sanscrit characters, with their respective values.

## VOWELS.

अ *a*, आ *ā*, इ *i*, ई *ī*, उ *u*, ऊ *ū*, ए *ri*, औ *ri*.

## ANUSVÂRA AND VISARGA.

· *n̄*,                      : *ah̄*.

## CONSONANTS.

Gutturals . . . . . क *k*, ख *kh*, ग *g*, घ *gh*, ङ *n*.  
 Palatals . . . . . च *ch*, छ *chh*, ज *j*, झ *jh*, ञ *n*.  
 Lingual . . . . . ट *ṭ*, ठ *ṭh*, ड *ḍ*, ढ *ḍh*, ण *ṇ*.  
 Dental . . . . . त *t*, थ *th*, द *d*, ध *dh*, न *n*.  
 Labial . . . . . प *p*, फ *ph*, ब *b*, भ *bh*, म *m*.  
 Semi-Vowels . . . . . य *y*, र *r*, ल *l*, व *v*.  
 Sibilants and Aspirates, श *ś*, ष *ṣh*, स *s*, ह *h*.

The vowel characters given above are found only at the beginning of words; and in the middle or end of a word are supplied in the following manner: अ *a* is left unexpressed, but is contained in every consonant which is not distinguished by a sign of rest (◌) or connected with another vowel. क *k* is thus read *ka*; and *k* by itself, or the absence of the *a*, is expressed by क्. इ *i*, ई *ī*, are expressed by ि, ी, and the first of these two is placed before, the second after, the consonant to which it relates; for instance, कि *ki*, की *kī*. For उ *u*, ऊ *ū*, ए *ri*, औ *ri*, the signs ु, ू, े, ै, are placed under their consonants; as, कु *ku*, कू *kū*, कृ *kṛi*, कृ *kṛi*. For ए *é* and ऐ *āi*, े and ै are placed over their consonants; as, के *ké*, कै *kāi*. ओ *ó* and औ *āu* are written by omission of the अ, which is here only a fulcrum; as, को *kó*, कौ *kāu*. The consonants without vowels, instead of appearing in their entire shapes, and with the sign of rest, are usually written so that their distinctive sign is connected with the following consonant; for instance, for त्, स्, य्, we have त्, स्, य्; and thus *matsya*

is written मत्स्य, not मत्स्य; for ज् + झ् we have झ; and for क् + झ् we have झ्.

25. The Sanscrit letters are divided into hard or surd, and soft or sonant. Surd are, all the tenues, with their corresponding aspirates; and in fact, according to the order given above, the first two letters in each of the first five rows, also the three sibilants. Soft are, the medials, with their aspirates, the ह्, the nasals, semi-vowels, and all vowels. Another division also appears to us convenient—that of the consonants into strong and feeble; in which the nasals and semi-vowels come under the denomination of feeble; the remaining consonants under that of the strong. The weak consonants and vowels exercise no influence, as initial letters of inflections and suffixes, in the formation of words, on the terminating letters of a root; while they themselves are compelled to accommodate themselves to a following strong consonant.

26. With regard to the vowels, it is of consequence to direct the observation to two affections of them, of frequent occurrence in the development of forms of Sanscrit; of which the one is called Guna, or virtue; the other Vriddhi, increase or augmentation. My predecessors in grammatical inquiry have given no information as to the essence, but have only expounded the effects of these vowel alterations; and it was only in my critical labours upon Grimm's German Grammar that I came upon the trace of the true nature and distinctive qualities of these affections, as also of the law by which Guna is usually produced and governed, and at the same time of its hitherto undetected existence in the Greek and Germanic, and, most conspicuously, in the Gothic. My views in this particular have since derived remarkable confirmation from the Zend, with relation to which I refer to §. 2, in which, as I flatter myself, I have dealt successfully with an apparent contradiction to my explanation. Guna consists in the putting forward of a short *a*, and Vriddhi in

that of a long one: in both, however, the *a* melts into a diphthong with the primitive vowel, according to certain euphonic laws. इ *i*, namely, and ई, melt with the अ *a* of Guna into ए *é*; उ *u*, ऊ *ú*, into ओ *ó*. These diphthongs, however, dissolve again before vowels into अय् *ay* and अव् *av*; अरि *ri* and अरि *ri* become, in virtue of the action of Guna, अर् *ar*; by that of Vriddhi, अर् *ár*. As in Greek the short Sanscrit *a* is frequently replaced by *e*; so we find the Guna here, when a radical *i* or *u* is prolonged by the appearance of an *e*. As in the Sanscrit the root इ *i*, "to go," forms, by the Guna modification, एमि *émi* (from *a-imi*), "I go," in contrast to *imas*, "we go;" thus, in Greek also we have εἶμι in contrast to ἴμεν. As the root बुद् *budh*, in several tenses in the three numbers, rises, in virtue of Guna, into बोद् *bódh* (from *baudh*), for instance, बोधामि *bódhāmi*, "I know;" so in the Greek the root φυγ (*ἐφύγον*), in the present becomes φεύγω. In the Gothic, in the strong form of Grimm's 8th and 9th conjugations, the radical vowel, strengthened by *a* in the singular of the preterite, stands in the same contrast to the *i* and *u* of the plural, as is the case in the corresponding tense of the Sanscrit. Compare *baug*, "I bent," in contrast to *bugum*, "we bent," with the Sanscrit form of the same signification, singular बुभोज *bubhója*, plural बुभुजिम *bubhujima*, of the root भुज् *bhuj*; compare *vait*, "I know," in contrast with *vitum*, "we know," with the Sanscrit forms of the same signification, वेद *véda* (from *vaïda*), विदिम *vidima*, from the root विद् *vid*, "know," which, like the corresponding Gothic and Greek root, employs the terminations of the preterite with a present signification.

27. We have, however, the Sanscrit Guna in yet another form in the Gothic—a form which I have but lately discovered, but of which the historical connection with the Sanscrit modification appears to me not the less certain. I once thought that I had accounted in a different manner for the relation existing between *biuga*, "I bend," and its root

*bug*, and I conceived myself bound to ascribe generally, in the present tense, to the prevalent *i* of terminations a retro-active influence. It now, however, seems to me indisputable that Grimm's 8th and 9th conjugations of the first class correspond to my first Sanscrit conjugation (v. 326.); so that the Guna *a* of the special tenses has been weakened to *i*, while the monosyllabic preterite maintains the Guna vowel in the more important shape of *a*; just as in the 10th, 11th, and 12th conjugations, according to Grimm's division, the radical *a*, which has remained in the preterite singular in the present and other tenses, is weakened to *i*; so that, for instance, *at*, "I" and "he eat," corresponds to the root अद् *ad*, "to eat;" but in the present, *ita* stands in place of the form अस्मि *admi*, "I eat."\*

28. The Zend possesses, besides the Sanscrit Guna, which has remained everywhere where it stands in Sanscrit, a vowel application peculiar to itself, which likewise consists in  $\mathfrak{a}$  *a*, and which was first observed by Mr. E. Burnouf. The vowels which admit this addition in the interior, but not at the end of words, are, first, the short  $\mathfrak{i}$  *i*,  $\mathfrak{u}$  *u*,  $\mathfrak{o}$  *o*; 2dly, the Guna diphthongs  $\mathfrak{e}$  *e* and  $\mathfrak{o}$  *o*. The two latter are the most usually befriended by this addition, and  $\mathfrak{e}$  takes it in all cases where the opportunity occurs, both as an initial letter, and even at the end of words wherever the dependent particle  $\mathfrak{cha}$  *cha*, "and," is appended to it; hence, for example,  $\mathfrak{nairé}$ , "*homini*,"  $\mathfrak{áthré}$ , "*igni*"; but  $\mathfrak{naraécha}$ , "*hominique*,"  $\mathfrak{áthraécha}$ , "*ignique*." Also where an *e* stands in two consecutive syllables, an *a* is placed before each. Hence, for instance,  $\mathfrak{aétaéibyó}$ , from इतेभ्यस् *étebhyaś*. The only case in which,

---

\* It would be difficult to adduce a better instance of the phonetic deficiencies of our English alphabet than this sentence, in which I am forced to translate the present and past tenses of *essen* by the same characters. What foreign student could guess or remember that the one is pronounced *eet*, the other *ett*?—*Translator*.





and ੳ ੳ. Compare ੳੳੳ *raoch*, “light,” with ੳੳ *ruch*; ੳੳੳੳੳੳੳੳ *śaochantāim* (*lucentium*) with ੳੳੳੳੳ *śuchyātām*; ੳੳੳੳ *aocā*, “he spoke,” with ੳੳ *ukta*, which I form, by theory, after the analogy of ੳੳੳ *akshipta* (Gram. Crit. r. 389.), leaving out the augment.

29. In the Vridhhi modification, the vowels ੳ *i*, ੳ *ī*, melt with the preceding ੳ *ā* into ੳ *ai*; ੳ *u*, ੳ *ū*, into ੳ *au*; ੳ *ri*, ੳ *ṛi* into ੳ *ār*. The simple vowel ੳ *a*, as also the diphthongs ੳ *e* and ੳ *o*, which, in virtue of Guna, would produce the same effect as by Vridhhi—for *a + a*, like *ā + a*, makes *ā*; *a + ē*, like *ā + ē*, makes *ai*; *a + ō*, like *ā + ō*, makes *au*—and thereby are capable of only one higher modification, reserve this one for cases where grammatical laws demand the highest step, namely, Vridhhi, and remain in the cases of Guna unaltered, unless extraordinary grounds of exception occur. It may be convenient here to give a connected summary of the results produced by Guna and Vridhhi.

Primitive Vowels,	ਅ	ਆ	ੳ	ੲ	ੳ	ਊ	ਊ	ਊ	ਰਿ
Guna . . . . .	...	...	ੲ	ੲ	ਊ	ਊ	ਊ	ਊ	ਅਰ
Vridhhi . . . . .	ਆ	ੲ	ੲ	ੲ	ਊ	ਊ	ਊ	ਊ	ਅਰ,*

Primitive Vowels,	ਊ	ੲ	ੲ	ਊ	ਊ
Guna . . . . .	ਅਰ	...	...	...	...
Vridhhi . . . . .	ਅਰ	ੲ	ੲ	ਊ	...

30. We now proceed to the exposition of the Zend writing, which, like the Semitic, proceeds from right to left, and towards the comprehension of which Rask has contributed valuable corrections, which give the language an appearance more natural and more in consonance with the Sanscrit than

---

\* According to original Grammars the Guna letters are *a*, *e*, *o*; the Vridhhi *a*, *ai*, *au*; the two first, *a* and *ā*, being severally substituted for the vowel sounds of *ri*, *ṛi*, in combination with the semi-vowels *r* and *l*, as *ar*, *al*, *ār*, *āl*.—Editor.

it assumed in the hands of former commentators, Anquetil's pronunciation having admitted much that was heterogeneous, especially in the vowels. We follow the order of the Sanscrit alphabet in giving the corresponding value of each letter in the Zend. The Sanscrit short **अ** *a* has two, or rather three, representatives; the first is **अ**, which Anquetil pronounces as *a* or *e*, but Rask, certainly with truth, limits to *a*. The second is **ए**, which Rask pronounces like the short *æ* of the Danish, or like the short German *ä*, as in *Hände*, or as *a* in *cane* in English, and *e* in the French *après*. I consider this **ए** as the shortest vowel, and write it *ě*. We often find it between two consonants connected in the Sanscrit; for instance, **ददरेश** *dadarēša* (pret. redupl.), for the Sanscrit **ददृशे** *dadarśa*, "he" or "I saw;" **ददमहि** *dadēmahī* (V. S. p. 102), "we give," for the Veda form **ददमसि** *dadmasi*. This shortest *ě* is also always appended to an originally terminating *r*. Thus, for instance, **अन्तर** *antarě*, "between," **दातर** *dātarě*, "giver," "creator," **हवर** *hvarě*, "sun," stand for the corresponding Sanscrit forms **अन्तर** *antar*, **दातर** *dātar*, **स्वर** *svar*, "heaven." It is worthy also of remark, that always before a terminating **म** *m*, and generally before a terminating **न** *n*, and frequently before an intermediate vowelless **न** *n*, the older **अ** *a* becomes **ए** *ě*. Compare, for instance, **पुत्र** *puthř-m*, "filium" with **पुत्रम्** *putra-m*; **अन** *anh-ěn*, "they were," with **आसन्** *āsan*, **अस्त** *ast*; **हन्त** *hěnt-ěm*, "the existing one," with **सन्तम्** *sant-am*, **प्रसन्तम्** *præ-sentem*, **असन्तम्** *ab-sentem*. This retro-active influence of the nasal reminds us of the shortening power of the Latin termination *m*; as, for instance, *stēm*, *stēmus* (Sansk. **तिष्ठेयम्** *tishthēy-am*, **तिष्ठेम** *tishthēma*.)

31. Anquetil entirely refuses to admit into his alphabet a letter differing but little from the **ए** *ě* above discussed, but yet distinct from it by rule in practice, namely, **ए**, which Rask teaches us to pronounce like a long Danish *æ*. We find this letter usually in connection with a following **न** *n*,

and this vowel appears to admit only this  $\xi$  before it, with the exception of the long  $\omega$   $\bar{a}$ . We write this  $\xi$   $e$  without the diacritic sign, inasmuch as we represent the  $\omega$ , like the Sanscrit  $\text{ए}$ , by  $\acute{e}$ .  $Eu$   $\text{,}\xi$  corresponds etymologically to the Sanscrit  $\text{औ}$   $\acute{o}$ , or diphthong formed by  $\text{अ}$   $a$  and  $\text{उ}$   $u$ ; thus, for example, the nominal stems in  $u$ , which in the Sanscrit genitive, by the influence of Guna, i.e. by the prefixing of a short  $a$ , make  $\acute{o}$ -s, make, in Zend,  $\omega\text{,}\xi$   $eus$ . compare, for instance,  $\omega\text{,}\xi\omega\omega$   $pa'eus$  with  $\text{पशोस्}$   $pa's\acute{o}s$ , from  $pa'su$ , "*pecus*." And yet the Sanscrit  $\acute{o}$  does not universally become  $eu$  in Zend, but often remains as it is, and specially in cases where it arises out of the termination  $as$ , by the solution of the  $s$  into  $u$ . According to its pronunciation,  $\text{,}\xi$   $eu$  would appear to be a diphthong, and equally to form but one syllable, as in our German words *heute*, *Leute*, &c. The long  $a$  ( $\bar{a}$ ) is written  $\omega$ .

32. Short and long  $i$  are represented, as are long and short  $u$ , by special characters,  $\text{,} i$ ,  $\text{,} \acute{i}$ ,  $\text{,} u$ ,  $\text{,} \acute{u}$ : Anquetil, however, gives to the short  $i$  the pronunciation  $e$ , and to the short  $u$  ( $\text{,}$ ) that of  $o$ ; while, according to Rask, only  $\text{,}$  is pronounced as short  $o$ . This short  $o$  frequently holds the etymological place of the Sanscrit  $\text{उ}$   $u$ , and never corresponds to any other Sanscrit vowel. For the diphthong  $\text{औ}$ , in particular, we have generally the Zend  $\xi\omega$   $\acute{a}o$ : we yet find, sometimes, also  $\text{,}\omega$   $\acute{a}u$ ; for instance,  $\omega\text{,}\omega\omega$   $g\acute{a}us$  "*bos*" is more frequent than  $\omega\xi\omega\omega$   $g\acute{a}os$ , for the Sanscrit  $\text{गौस्}$   $g\acute{a}us$ .

33. The Sanscrit diphthong  $\acute{e}$ , formed out of  $a + i$ , is represented by  $\omega$ , which also, especially as a terminating letter, is written  $\omega$ , and which we, as in Sanscrit, represent by  $\acute{e}$ . We must here, however, observe, that the Sanscrit  $\text{ए}$   $\acute{e}$  is not always preserved as  $\omega$   $\acute{e}$  in the Zend, but is sometimes replaced by  $\text{,}$   $\acute{o}i$ , which appears to prevail particularly after a preceding  $\text{,}\text{,}$   $y$ , especially at the end of words. The Vriddhi diphthong  $\text{ऐ}$   $\acute{a}i$  (out of  $\bar{a} + i$ ) is always represented by  $\omega\omega$   $\acute{a}i$ ;  $\acute{o}$ , either by the equivalent  $\text{,}$ —for

which we often find 𐬨 𐬀 substituted by the neglect of copyists—or by the above-mentioned 𐬎 𐬀 *eu*, which, according to rule, before a terminating 𐬭 *s* replaces the Indian 𐬵 𐬀 *ó*; so that a termination in 𐬭𐬨 𐬀 *os* is unheard of in the Zend. For the Vridhhi diphthong 𐬵 𐬀 *du* (out of *d + u*) we generally find 𐬀 *do*, for which there is a special character 𐬎 𐬀; more rarely 𐬎 𐬀 *du*. It would appear that 𐬎 𐬀 *di*, 𐬎 𐬀 *ao*, 𐬎 𐬀 *du*, and the 𐬨𐬨 𐬀 *oi* which replaces 𐬭 *é*, should be pronounced as diphthongs, *i.e.* as monosyllables.

34. Anusvâra and Visarga do not exist in Zend, unless we admit the nasal specified in §. 61 as answering to the sound of the Sanscrit Anusvâra. We proceed meanwhile, for the present, to the proper consonants. The first letter of the Sanscrit guttural class has divided itself into two characters bearing reference to different functions, 𐬎 and 𐬵; of which the first, which we represent by *k*, only appears before vowels and » *v*; the other, which we write *c*, precedes especially consonants, excepting » *v*. Compare, for instance, 𐬨𐬎 *kó*, 𐬎𐬎 *ká*, 𐬎𐬎𐬎 *kaí* (*quis, quæ, quid*), 𐬎𐬎𐬎𐬎𐬎 *hakerēt*, “once,” 𐬎𐬎𐬎𐬎𐬎 *karóiti*, “he made,” 𐬎𐬎𐬎 *kva*, “where,” with 𐬵𐬵 *kó*, 𐬵𐬵 *ká*, 𐬵𐬵𐬵 *kim*, 𐬵𐬵𐬵 *sakrit*, 𐬵𐬵𐬵 *karóti*, and 𐬵𐬵 *kva*: on the other hand, 𐬎𐬎𐬎𐬎𐬎 *csathra*, “king,” with 𐬵𐬵𐬵 *kshatra*; 𐬎𐬎𐬎𐬵 *hicti*, “pouring out” (V. S. p. 198), with 𐬵𐬵𐬵 *sikti* (from 𐬵𐬵𐬵 *sich*). In what mannner the pronunciation of this 𐬵 *c* differs from that of the 𐬎 *k* can indeed hardly be defined with certainty: it is probably softer, weaker than that of the 𐬎 *k* fenced in by no strong consonants. Rask selects for it the character *q*, without observing that this letter prefers only to precede consonants, and in this position always corresponds to the Sanscrit 𐬵 *k*. Burnouf considers 𐬵 as an aspirate, and writes 𐬵𐬵𐬵𐬵𐬵 *takhmahé*. He writes, on the other hand, the letter 𐬵, which Rask treats as an aspirate, with *q*. Burnouf has not yet given his reason, which I think, however, I can guess, namely, that 𐬵 *c* is found before *r*, which, according to

Burnouf's just remark, generally confers an aspirate upon a preceding consonant. I consider this reason, however, as insufficient; and think that 𑀓 *c* stands before *r*, because, as we have before remarked, all consonants, *v* excepted, only admit before them that modification of the *k* sound which is expressed by 𑀓. It would be impossible for 𑀓 *r*, and the other letters of similar agency, to convey aspiration to the preceding hard guttural if 𑀓 *kh* be not extant in Zend; so that, for instance, the root 𑀓𑀭 *khan*, "to dig," sounds 𑀓𑀭 *kan* in Zend. There are, however, some words in which 𑀓 *kh* is represented by 𑀓. From 𑀓𑀭 *khara*, "ass," we find the accusative 𑀓𑀭𑀓𑀓 *carēm*; and we find, also, the 𑀓 *kh* of 𑀓𑀭 *sakhi*, "friend," replaced by *c*; the accusative, for instance, 𑀓𑀭𑀓𑀓𑀭 *sakhāyam* transformed into 𑀓𑀭𑀓𑀓𑀓𑀓 *hacdim*. It may therefore remain a question whether 𑀓 *k* or 𑀓, in respect of their sounds, have the better right to be referred to 𑀓 *kh*; but this much is certain, that 𑀓 *k* before vowels and before 𑀓 *v* is only represented by 𑀓 in Zend; before other consonants only by 𑀓; which latter we shall, till better advised, continue to render by *c*.

35. Anquetil ascribes to 𑀓 the value of 𑀓, and to both the pronunciation *kh*; while Rask considers the latter alone, by reason of the aspiration stroke which he recognises, as aspirated, and compares it to the Spanish *x* and the Arabic ځ, and our German *ch*. Burnouf renders 𑀓 by *q*; and observes (l. c. p. 345) that the Sanscrit syllable 𑀓 *sva* becomes *qa* in Zend, namely, in 𑀓𑀭 *svapna*, "sleep," written, according to Burnouf, *qafna*, and in 𑀓 *sva* (*suus*) "his." We are inclined to add to these examples, 𑀓𑀭𑀓𑀓𑀓 *khanha*, (nom.) accus. 𑀓𑀭𑀓𑀓𑀓𑀓 *khanhrēm*, from 𑀓𑀭𑀓 *svasā*, "sister," (*soror*); 𑀓𑀭𑀓𑀓𑀓𑀓 *svasāram* (*sororem*); and 𑀓𑀭𑀓𑀓𑀓𑀓 *kharēno*, "splendour," as related to 𑀓𑀭 *sva*, "heaven," and 𑀓𑀭 *sur*, "to shine." We must, however, at the same time, remark, that 𑀓 *sv* does not universally become 𑀓 *kh*, and that 𑀓 *sva* in particular, in an isolated position and with a possessive

signification, much oftener appears in the shape of **هوا** *hva*, or that of **هوا** *hava*. We render **ه** by *kh*, and in regard of its aspiration lay more stress than on Rask's mark of aspiration on the fact, that in modern Persian it corresponds frequently to **خ**, our *ch*. This modern Persian **خ** is pronounced, indeed, at present, without aspiration, like an Italian *c* before *a*, *o*, *u*; but its value in Arabic, and the choice of this letter, so powerfully aspirated in the Arabic to designate a special guttural sound, in true Persian words seems to indicate an intrinsic stronger or milder aspiration. As **ه** *kh* is derived from the Sanscrit **ह** *sva*, it was not applied to replace the **क** *k* before letters, which would without it produce an aspiration. It may also be here convenient to remember that either *u* or *v* (**و**) accompanies the Persian **خ** when the latter replaces at the beginning of a word the Sanscrit **ह** *sv*. It is true that **و** is no longer sounded before long vowels, but it must originally have had its influence on the pronunciation, and cannot have been introduced into writing entirely without object, and for the mere employment of the copyist. Compare **خدا** *khodā*, "God," with **स्वदत्त** *svadatta*, "self-given;" for which, in Zend, we have, under a more regular participial form (see Gramm. Crit. r. 608), **खदाता** *khadāta*; which Anquetil, or his Parsee teacher, always understands in the sense of, "given through God," deceived, probably, by the resemblance of sound to **خدا** *khodā*; while Neriosengh properly translates it by **स्वयन्दत्त** *svayandatta*. The Persian **خدا** is, however, as Burnouf correctly assumes, actually related to the Zend **खदाता** *khadāta*, so as to bear its ground for its name in the idea, "created by itself," and in its form has been mutilated of one syllable. That, however, as has often been maintained, our word "God" is really related to **خدا** *khodā*, and that its primal signification has thus been discovered through the Zend, we are forced still to doubt. We will here only call to mind that the Germanic forms, especially in the older

dialects, are, by rule, much more approximate to the Sanscrit than to the modern Persian. ख् *sv*, in particular, in the Gothic, either remains unaltered, or becomes *sl* (§. 20). The pronominal syllable ख् *sva* exhibits itself in the Gothic as a pronominal adverb, *sva* (*so*) "thus;" and with an instrumental form, *srē* (*wie*) "how." The neuter substantive *svēs* (Thema *svēsa*) means. *Eigenthum* "property," as in Sanscrit the neuter ख् *sva*. I know of no certain form in which a Germanic *g* or *k* corresponds to a Sanscrit ख् *sv*, or a Persian خ *kh*. To return, however, to the Persian خ *kh* = ख् *sv*: compare خفتن *khuf̄ten*, "to sleep," with खप् *svap*; خواب *kh(v)āb*, "sleep," with खाप *svāpa*; خواندن *kh(v)ān-den*, "to sing," with खन् *svan*, "to sound;" خواهر *kh(v)āher*, "sister," with खसु *svasr*, Gothic *svistar*; خورشید *khur-schid*, "sun," Zend هوارē *hvarē*, with खर् *svar*, "heaven." In some words خ corresponds to a Sanskrit *k* before *r*, in which position the Zend loves an aspiration; in the modern Persian, however, a vowel intrudes between the guttural and the *r*; thus, خرامیدن *khirām-iden*, "to proceed with pomp," corresponds to the Sanscrit क्रम् *kram*, "to go," "to step;" and خریدن *khiriden*, "to buy," to the Sanscrit equivalent root क्री *kri*. The Persian خ answers to the Sanscrit aspirated ख् *kh*, in the word خر *kher*, "ass" (Sansk. खर *khara*).

36. The guttural ग्, and its aspirate घ्, are represented by گ *g* and گھ *gh*. The Sanscrit घ् *gh* has, however, sometimes dismissed the aspiration in Zend; at least गरēma, "heat" (θέρμη and wärme), answers to the Sanscrit घर्म *gharma*: on the other hand, the گھ *ghna* in گھرازان *vērēthraghna*, "victorious," corresponds to the Sanscrit घ्न *ghna* at the end of composites; for instance, in शत्रुघ्न *śatru-ghna*, "enemy slayer." The Zend گھرازان *vērēthraghna* properly signifies, like the word so often used in the same sense گھرازان *vērēthra-zan*, "killer of Vritra," and proves a connection between the Zendish and Indian mythologies, which, however, in consequence of the obscuration





excepting *n*, the succeeding half-vowel is thereby deprived of its retro-active power. We find, for instance, *vastra*, not *vaṣṭra*, “garment,” “vest”; but we have *manthra*, not *mantra*, “speech,” from the root *man*. At the end of a word, and, which rarely occurs, before strong consonants, (§. 25.) at the beginning also, and middle of a word, the Sanscrit *t* (त) is represented by a special letter, namely, by *ṭ*, which we, with Burnouf, write *t*, but formerly wrote with a simple *t* undotted below, because no change is possible with *ṣ* or *ḥ*. Rask represents it by *th*, because he recognises the sign of aspiration. I am unable, however, to assent to the universal validity of this sign of Rask’s, and I incline to rejecting the aspirate, as in Sanscrit, from the end of words. We should also remember that the diphthong *é* is written *æ* as well as *ey*; the last, which prevails at the end of words, with a stroke similar to that which distinguishes our *ṣ* from *ṣ*. Before consonants, for instance, in the word *ikaēshō*, the sounding of *th* would be more precarious than that of *t*, in case this *th* did not somewhat partake of a sibilant sound. I think, however, that *ṭ t* has merely a feebler pronunciation than *ṣ t*, and is, so to say, the last breathing of *t*; as, in Sanscrit, *s* and *r*, at the end of words, are diluted to Visarga (§. 11.); and as *t*, in Prâkrit, and also in Greek, is, at the end of words, altogether suppressed.

39. *ḍ* is the ordinary *d ḍ*, and *ḍh* according to Rask’s just remark, its aspirate *dh*. This represents the Sanscrit *dh*, for instance, in the imperative ending *dh*. The Zend, moreover, favours *ḍh* for *d* in the middle of words between two vowels. We find, for instance, *dāta*, “given,” but *dadhāmi*, Sanscrit *dadāmi*, “I give;” and *mazda-dhāta*, “given by Ormusd,” “created;” *yēdhi*, “if,” Sanscrit *yadi*; *pādha*, “foot,” Sansc. *pāda*.

40. The labial class embraces the letters *p*, *f*, *b*.



\* Or more immediately from the Sanscrit ordinal तुर्यं *turyya* or तुरीय *turiya*, "fourth."—*Editor*.

\* Or more immediately from the Sanscrit ordinal तुर्यं *turyya* or तुरीय *turiya*, "fourth."—*Editor*.

not मयि *maihi*, corresponds to the Veda termination मसि *masi*; and in the genitive of the Stems, or inflective Bases, in अ a, अह *a-hé*, not अहि *aihé*, stands for अस्य *a-sya*.

42. य *y* sometimes also exerts that disturbing influence on a following अ *a* or इ *i*, which is equivalent to the insertion of a vowel, or of *i*, and consequently effects their transmutation into *e*\*; thus the Bases of nouns in य *ya* form, in

---

\* The expression of the text is “äufsert umlautenden Einfluss.” It is hardly possible to render into English without circumlocution certain terms which the philologists of Germany have invented and adopted to express the various modifications of the Indo-Germanic vowel; such as, *Ablaut*, *Auflaut*, *Inlaut*, *Umlaut*. Whether these terms have in themselves the virtue of suggesting to a Teutonic ear the particular modification of the vowel to which they are respectively applied may be doubted; but if to the student and the teacher they answer the purpose of a *memoria technica*, their use is fully justified by the necessity of the case, and the practice of a language which possesses a singular and inexhaustible power of progress and adaptation to exigencies. In our language, it seems to us that the uncouthness of such compounds as Upsound, Offsound, and Insound, could hardly be compensated by any advantage to be derived from their use; and we therefore purpose, in the course of this work, where any of these terms occur in the original, to retain them in their German shape. Of these terms, *Ablaut* and *Umlaut* are those which chiefly, if not alone, are used by our author. *Inlaut* is, we believe, merely the Sanscrit *Guna*. The meaning of the two former, and their distinction from each other, may best be explained by the following extract from our author's excellent work the *Vocalismus*, p. 10.

“I designate,” he says, “by the term *Ablaut*, a change of the root vowel, which is distinguished from the *Umlaut* by the fact that it is not produced by the influence of the vowel of the termination; for *Umlaut* is a mere affection, disturbance (*Trübung*) of the primary sound, through which that sound becomes more homogeneous with the vowel of the termination; while in the *Ablaut*, without any *recognised* external cause, it makes room for another, and, in general, totally different sound; as in Gothic, *nima*, ‘I take’; *nam*, ‘I took.’ I say, without any *recognised* external cause; because I think I can shew that the *Ablaut* also is produced by the particular quality and condition of the termination. Whether, however, we seek for the radical vowel in the present or the preterite, the change

the genitive,  $\text{ယှဉ်းယှဉ်း } yé-hé$ , instead of  $\text{ယှဉ်းယှဉ်း } ya-hé$ ; and, with the verb, the old Sanscrit  $y$   $ya$  or  $yá$  of the fourth and tenth classes, in the present singular becomes  $yé$ . Compare  $\text{အတုပေးမိ } átápáyémi$ ,  $\text{အတုပေးမိ } átápáyéhi$ ,  $\text{အတုပေးမိ } átápáyéiti$ , with the Sanscrit  $\text{आतापयामि } átápayámi$ ,  $\text{आतापयसि } átápayasi$ ,  $\text{आतापयति } átápayati$ . In the last syllable,  $y$  before  $m$ , according to rule, becomes  $i$ ; and after the same analogy,  $vam$  becomes  $úm$ . We find therefore, for instance,  $\text{တတိယ } túirím$ , “*quartum*,” from  $\text{တတိယ } túirya$ ; and  $\text{တတိယ } thrishúm$ , “*tertiam partem*,”  $\text{တတိယ } chathrushúm$ , “*quartam partem*,” from  $\text{တတိယ } thrishva$ ,  $\text{တတိယ } chathrushva$ . This appearance is to be thus understood, that the antecedent semi-vowel, after the suppression of the  $a$ , passes into its corresponding vowel, which, however, according to the rule of §. 64, must be a long one. The  $y$ , after its influence has transformed  $a$  into  $e$ , is often itself suppressed; thus we find  $\text{ပြာဠာဠာ } frádaésaém$ , “I shewed,” out of  $\text{प्रादेशयन् } prádésáyam$ , which, according to the rule of the tenth class, would be formed

---

change is equally one quite different from that of the Indian *Guna* or *Vṛiddhi*, and in this respect, that it is a positive change; while in Sanscrit the root vowel is not in fact changed, but only receives an increment, and that increment always one and the same, with which it diphthongizes itself, as in Greek, and  $\nu$  with  $\epsilon$ ,  $\lambda ε ι π ω$ ,  $\phi ε υ γ ω$ . In respect of signification, likewise, there is a difference between the Indian *Guna* and *Vṛiddhi* and Germanic *Ablaut*; for the *Ablaut* has acquired for itself a signifiatory power for grammatical purposes, even if, as I conjecture, it did not originally possess such: the contrast between the present and the past seems to rest upon it, and there are indications that the latter is expressed by this change. In Sanscrit, *Guna* and *Vṛiddhi* present no indication of this signifiatory power, but, merely in the character of diphthongizing modifications, accompany those inflections which do signify grammatical relations.”

Further illustration of these latter remarks are to be found in the Note 4, which Professor Bopp has appended to the above passage of the *Vocalismus*.—*Trans.*

from *दि॒* *dis*. The genitive termination *स्य* *syā* appears everywhere reduced into *ह्य* *hē*. The semi-vowels *y* and *v* are generally suppressed after preceding consonants; and thus, also, the imperative ending *स्व* *sva* gives up its *v*.

43. In Sanscrit, *y* is sometimes, for euphony, interposed between two vowels (Gram. Crit. rr. 271. 310. 311.); but this does not uniformly occur. In Zend, the interposition of *y* between *u*, *ū*, and a following *e*, seems to amount to a law. Thus the Sanscrit *ब्रुवे* *bruvē*, "I say" (from *ब्रू* and *वृ*, Gram. Crit. r. 55.), becomes, in Zend, *म्रु॒य॑* *mrūyē* (§. 63.); and the neutral form *द्वे* *dvē*, "two," after the vocalization of the *v* into *u*, takes the form *दु॒य॑* *duyē*.

44. We have already remarked (§. 30.) with respect to *r*, that at the end of a word an *ē* is always appended to it; for instance, *द॒तार॑* *dātarē*, "Creator," "Giver"; *ह॒व॑* *hvarē*, "Sun," instead of *द॒तार* *dātar*; *ह॒व* *hvar*. In the middle of a word, where an *h* is not introduced according to §. 48, the union of *r* with a following consonant is mostly avoided; so, indeed, that to the originally vowelless *r* an *ē* is appended: thence, for instance, *द॒द॒र॑* *dadarēša*, out of *द॒द॒र॑* *dadarśa*, "vidi," "vidit"; or the *r* is transposed, in the same manner as is usual in the Sanscrit for the avoidance of the union of *r* with two following consonants. (Gram. Crit. r. 34<sup>b</sup>.) Hence, for instance, *अ॒थ॒र॑* *āthrava*, "priests" (nominative), accus. *अ॒थ॒र॑* *āthra*, "fire," stands instead of *अ॒थ॒र॑* *āthra*.\*

---

\* By *Stämme*, the author here evidently means the crude derivative words

𐬀𐬀𐬌 *ry* 𐬀𐬌, *urv* are only permitted where a vowel follows, 𐬀𐬌 *ars* only at a termination, and in the middle of a word before 𐬀 *t*; for instance, 𐬀𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬌 *tūrya*, "the fourth"; 𐬀𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬌 *vairya*, "strong"; 𐬀𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬌 *urvan*, "soul"; 𐬀𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬌 *haurva*, "whole" (?); 𐬀𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬌 *ātars*, "fire" (nominative), 𐬀𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬌 *nars*, "of a man"; 𐬀𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬌 *karsta*, "ploughed"; but 𐬀𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬌 *chathrus*, "four times," for 𐬀𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬌 *chathurs*, since here no *a* precedes the *rs*.

45. It is worthy of remark, that in the Zend the *l* is wanting, as in Chinese the *r*, while, nevertheless, it exists in the modern Persian, and shews itself in words which are not of Semitic origin. The Sanscrit 𑖑 *v* has three representatives in the Zend, 𐬀, 𐬀𐬌, and 𐬀𐬌. The two first are so far distinguished from each other in their use, that 𐬀 corresponds to the Sanscrit *v* only at the beginning, and 𐬀𐬌 only in the middle of words; for instance, 𐬀𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬌 *vaēm*, "we," = 𑖑𑖑𑖑𑖑 *vayam*, 𐬀𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬌 *tava* (*taī*) = 𑖑𑖑𑖑 *tava*. This distinction, as Rask justly assumes, is only graphic. 𐬀𐬌, which I, with Burnouf, render by *m*, most frequently occurs after 𐬀𐬌 *th*, so that 𐬀𐬌 never accompanies an antecedent 𐬀𐬌. On the other hand we find 𐬀𐬌 much oftener than 𐬀𐬌 after the aspirated medials of this class. Perhaps the law here obtains that the 𐬀𐬌 *dh*, which, according to §. 39, stands for 𐬀𐬌 *d* (𑖑), is only followed by 𐬀𐬌, while an original 𐬀𐬌 *dh*, corresponding to a Sanscrit 𑖑 *dh*, only appears in conjunction with 𐬀𐬌. Thus, 𐬀𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬌 *dadhrāo*, "having created," "given," from the root 𐬀𐬀𐬌 *dā*, answers to the Sanscrit nom. 𑖑𑖑𑖑𑖑 *dadvān*; while the accusative, of frequent occurrence in the Vendidad, 𐬀𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬌 *adhvānēm*, seems to be identical with the Sanscrit 𑖑𑖑𑖑𑖑𑖑𑖑 *adhvānam*, "*viam*." (Vend. Olsh. p. 18.) After other consonants than 𐬀𐬌 *th* and 𐬀𐬌 *dh*, 𐬀𐬌 *m* appears not to be admitted, but only

---

words which serve as Stems or Bases to inflected words, or those in combination with inflectional terminations; thus, *āthra* for *āthar*, forms *āthrava*, *āthravanēm*, not *ātharva*, *ātharvanam*, &c.—Editor.





» *v*. The only example of this case is the feminine 𐬯𐬀𐬭𐬀 *šuvrā*, “sword,” “dagger,” in which we believe we recognise the Sanscrit 𑖦𑖯 *śubhṛa*, “glancing.”\* As to the pronunciation of the 𐬀 *m*, I think, with Burnouf, that it accords with the English *m*, which also is akin to the Sanscrit 𑖠 *v* after consonants. Rask reverses the powers, pronouncing the Zend 𐬀 as the English *v*, and the letters 𐬌 and » as the English *m*.

46. I have not detected in the *v* and *m* a power of attraction similar to that which belongs to the 𐬪 *y*, as described in §. 41, unless the term 𐬯𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀 *haurva*, “all,” which often occurs, as well as 𐬯𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬌 *višpa*, is derived from the Sanscrit 𑖦𑖯 *sarva*, “all.” I have, however, already elsewhere ascribed to the corresponding vowel 𐬭 *u* a power of attraction, howbeit sparingly exerted; in virtue of which, for instance, the root 𐬌𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀 *atarvan*, “priests,” in the feeble cases (see §. 129.), after that 𐬌𐬀𐬭 *van* has contracted itself into 𐬌𐬭 *un*, by the influence of this *u*, also converts the *a* of the preceding syllable into *u*; hence, for instance, in the dative, 𐬌𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀 *aturunē* for 𐬌𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀 *atarunē*. The Sanscrit 𑖠𑖯𑖻 *taruna*, “young,” is, in Zend, 𐬌𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀 *turuna* or 𐬌𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀 *tauruna* (§. 28.); and 𑖠𑖯𑖻 *vasu*, “thing,” “riches,” has, by the influence of the concluding *u*, converted itself into 𐬌𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀 *vōhu*.

47. Burnouf was the first to remark on the fact, peculiar to the Zend, that the semi-vowels are fond of communicating an aspiration to a preceding consonant; and we (§. 40.) have ascribed a similar influence to 𐬯 *s* and 𐬌 *n*, and find ourselves compelled to assign the same also to the

---

\* The accusative 𐬌𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀 *šuvraim*, appears in Olshausen, p. 13, with the variation 𐬌𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀 *šufraim*. (§. 40.) Then we often find the instrumental 𐬌𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀 *šuvrya*, for which, however, we must read 𐬌𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀 *šuvraya*, if *šuvrya* be not derivable from a Theme 𐬌𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀 *šuvrī*, after the analogy of 𑖦𑖯𑖻 *sundarī*, from 𑖦𑖯𑖻 *sundara*. (Gramm. Crit. r. 270.)

labial nasal, by which, for instance, the female participle **जग्मुषी** *jagmushi* has changed itself to **जग्मुष्य** *jaghmushi*. The dental medial is free from this influence, for we find **द्व** *dva*, "two," **द्रु** *drucs*, "a demon," (accus. **द्रुज्** *drujēm*.) not **ध्रु** *dhruks*, **ध्रुज्** *dhrujēm*. The guttural medial is, however, exposed to this influence, as in the abovementioned instance of *jaghmúshī*. We have, on the other hand, adduced, in §. 38, a limitation of this appearance. The aspirating virtue of the **य** *y* is less potent than that of the **र** *r* and **व** *v* and we find *y* often preceded by the un-aspirated *t*; for instance, in **द्वि** *bitya*, "the second," **द्वि** *thritya*, "the third": on the other hand, we have **मर्त्य** *měřethyu*, "death," Sansc. **मृत्यु** *mṛityu*.

48. In connection with the above rule stands the phenomenon, that before *r*, when followed by any consonant not a sibilant, an *h* is usually placed; for instance, **मर्त्य** *mahrka*, "death," from the root **मृ** *mar*, (**मृ** *mṛi*.) "to die"; **के** *kehrpēm*, or **के** *kěrepēm*, "the body" (nom. **के** *kěřēs*); **वर्** *věhrka*, or **वर्** *věřeka*, "wolf," (**वृ** *vrika*.) The semi-vowel *y* also, which only appears before vowels, sometimes attracts an *h*: thus, **तथा** *thmahya*, "through thee," corresponds to the Sanscrit **तथा** *tvayā*; and the word **सा** *csahya*, (nom. **सा** *csahyō*.) adduced by Rask, stands for **सा** *csaya*, and comes from the root **सि** *csi*, "to rule," (**सि** *kshi*.)

49. We come now to the sibilants. The first, a palatal, pronounced in Sanscrit with a gentle aspiration, **श**, which we express by *ś* in Sanscrit, and *š* in Zend, is written **ञ** in the latter. Its exact pronunciation is scarcely ascertainable. Anquetil assigns it that of the ordinary *s*. It in general occurs in those positions in which the Sanscrit in corresponding words has its **श** *ś*; thus, for instance, *daśa*, "ten," *śata*, "hundred," *paśu*, "beast," are common to both languages. In this respect **ञ** *ś* has spread itself wider in Zend than in Sanscrit; that before several consonants,

namely, *ṣ* *t*, *ṭ* *th*, *ṣ* *k*, and *ṣ* *n*, as well at the beginning as in the middle of words—in the latter place, however, only after *ṣ* *a*, *ṣ* *ā*, and *ṣ* *an*—it corresponds to the Sanscrit dental or ordinary *s* *ś*. Compare *ṣṭārō*, “the stars,” with *stāras*; *ṣṭōmi*, “I praise,” with *stāumi*; *ṣṭi*, “he is,” with *asti*; *ṣṭhanim*, “ossium,” with *asthi*; *ṣṭanda*, “shoulder,” (?) with *skandha*; *ṣṇā*, “to purify,” with *śnā*, “to bathe.” We might infer from this circumstance that *ṣ* *ṣ* was pronounced as a simple *s*, yet it may have to do with a dialectical preference for the sound *sh*, as happens with the German *s* in the Suabian dialect, and pretty universally at the beginning of words before *t* and *p*. It is further to be remarked, that *ṣ* *ṣ* occurs also at the end of words after *ṣ* *an*. The occasion for this presents itself in the nom. sing. masc. of Bases in *ṣṣnt*.

50. The semi-vowel » *v* is regularly hardened into *ɔ* *p* after *ɔ* *š*; hence, for instance, *ɔ* *ɔ* *špā*, “*canis*,” *špānēm*, “*canem*,” *ɔ* *ɔ* *vīšpa*, “*all*,” *ɔ* *ɔ* *ašpa*, “*horse*,” corresponding to the Sans. *śva śvā*, *śvanam śvānam*, *viśva*, *aśva*. *ɔ* *ɔ* *špenta*, “*holy*,” is not corresponded to by a Sanscrit *śvanta*, which must have originally been in use, and which the Lithuanian *szanta-s* indicates. From the Zend *ɔ* *ɔ* *ašpa*, the transition is easy to the Greek *ἵππος*, which is less obvious in the case of the Indian *aśva*.

51. For the Sanscrit lingual sibilant श् *śh*, the Zend supplies two letters, *𐬰* and *𐬱*. The first, according to Rask, is pronounced like the ordinary *s*, and therefore like the Sanscrit dental स *ś*; while *𐬱* has the sound of श् = *śh*, and marks this by a stroke of aspiration. We therefore write it *śh*. Rask observes that these two letters are often interchanged in MSS.; which he accounts for by the circumstance that *𐬰* is used in the Pehlevi for *śh*, and that the Parsí copyists have been long better acquainted with the Pehlevi than the Zend. We find, also,

in the Codex edited by Burnouf,  $\omega$  almost everywhere corresponding to  $\text{ॠ}$ . We recognise, however, from the text edited by Olshausen of a part of the Vendidad, and the variations appended, that although in etymological respects  $\omega$  as well as  $\text{ॠ}$  corresponds to the Sanscrit  $\text{ॠ}$ , the principal position of  $\omega$  is before strong consonants (§. 25.) and at the end of words; a position of much importance in Zend, and which requires attention in the cases of other classes of letters. In this respect  $\omega$  resembles, among the dentals,  $\text{ॢ}$   $t$ , among the gutturals  $\text{ॡ}$   $c$ , and among the nasals principally  $\text{ॣ}$   $n$ . At the end of words, indeed,  $\omega s$  corresponds to the Sanscrit  $\text{ॠ} s$ , but yet only after such letters as, in the middle of a word, would, after the 101st rule (\*) of my Sanscrit Grammar, change an original  $\text{ॠ} s$  into  $\text{ॠ} sh$ ; namely, after vowels other than  $a$  and  $\acute{a}$ , and after the consonants  $\text{ॡ}$   $c$  and  $\text{ॢ}$   $r$ . Hence, for instance, the nominatives  $\omega\text{ॢ}\omega\omega\omega$  *paitis*, "Lord,"  $\omega\text{ॢ}\omega\omega\omega$  *pasus*, "beast,"  $\omega\text{ॢ}\omega\omega\omega$  *átars*, "fire,"  $\omega\text{ॢ}\omega\omega\omega$  *druce*, "dæmon," from the thema  $\omega\text{ॢ}\omega\omega$  *drug*. On the other hand,  $\omega\text{ॢ}\omega\omega\omega$  *barans*, "bearing," from  $\text{ॢ}\omega\omega\omega\omega$  *barant*.\* In the word  $\omega\omega\omega\omega\omega\omega$  *cevas*, "six," it is true a terminating  $\omega s$  stands after  $a$ ; but it does not here replace a Sanscrit  $\text{ॠ} s$ , but the original  $\text{ॠ} sh$  of  $\text{ॢ}\omega\omega$  *shash*. As evidence of the use of  $\omega s$  for  $\text{ॠ} sh$  before strong consonants, we may adduce the very usual superlative suffix  $\omega\omega\omega\omega$  *ista* (i.e.  $\iota\sigma\tau\omicron\varsigma$ ), corresponding to the Sanscrit  $\text{ॠ}\text{ॢ}$  *ishtha*. Other examples are  $\omega\omega\omega\omega\omega$  *karsta*, "ploughed," for  $\text{ॢ}\omega\omega$  *krišta*. In the word  $\omega\text{ॢ}\omega\omega\omega\omega\omega$  *sayana*, "camp,"  $\omega$  stands irregularly for  $\omega s$ , which latter was to be anticipated from the Sanscrit  $\text{ॠ}\text{ॢ}\text{ॢ}$  *śayana* (i.e. *sañtē*, §. 54). In the fem. word of number  $\omega\text{ॢ}\omega\omega\omega\omega$  *tisaró*, "three" (Olsh. p. 26), the  $\omega$  might seem questionable, for the Sanscrit form is  $\text{ॢ}\text{ॢ}\text{ॢ}\text{ॢ}$  *tisras*, and  $\text{ॠ}$  according

---

\* I retain here the original  $t$ , since the Thema of the word does not appear in use.  $\text{ॢ}$   $t$  must otherwise have been changed for  $\text{ॢ}$   $t$ .

§. 53, becomes *h*. The *ś*, however, here is in a position (after *i*) in which the Sanscrit favours the conversion of *ś s* into *ś sh*; and on this rests the Zend form *tisarō*. That it does not, however, stand as *tisharō*, as we might expect from §. 52, is certainly not to be ascribed to the original existence of *a*, for *tisarō* stands for *tisrō*.

52. *sh* stands for the Sanscrit *ś* before vowels and the semi-vowels *y* and *v*; *aētaēshanīm* and *aētaēshva*, with *etēshām*, "horum," and *etēshu*, "in his"; *mashya*, "man," with *manushya*. Yet *sh* does not unite itself with an antecedent *c*; but for the Sanscrit *ksh* we find almost everywhere in Olshausen's text, and without variation, *cs*; hence, for instance, *csathra*, "king," Sansc. *kshatra*, "a man of the warlike or royal caste." The word of frequent occurrence, *csشناoma*, and the third person connected with it, *csشناmayēiti*, we must, on a double ground, reject, and prefer the variation given at p. 33, since *s* here is prolonged, as well by the preceding *c* as by the following *n*. It is, however, worthy of remark, that the Sanscrit *ksh* in many Zend words abandons the guttural, and appears as *sh*. For instance, *dakshina*, "dexter," becomes *dashina* (Lithuan. *dészine*, "the right hand"), and *akshi*, "eye," becomes *ashi*, which, however, seems only to occur at the end of possessive compounds (Bahuvrīhi).

53. *h* is never, in etymological respects, the representative of the Sanscrit *h*, but of the pure and dental sibilant *ś s*. Before vowels, semi-vowels, and *m*, in Zend, this letter invariably becomes *h*, possibly because *ś sv* (§. 35.) takes the shape *kh*; while before *n*, and such consonants as cannot unite with a preceding *h*, (§. 49.) it is to be looked for in the shape of *s*. The roots which begin with *sp* and *spḥ* have not yet been detected by me

in the Zend; but I am convinced that स्पर्श *spriś*, for instance, "to affect," could not begin otherwise in Zend than with 𐬯𐬀 *sp*. Compare, for instance—

ZEND.	SANSKRIT.
𐬀𐬀𐬀 <i>hā</i> , "they,"	सा <i>sā</i> .
𐬀𐬯𐬀𐬀 <i>hapta</i> , "seven,"	सप्त <i>sapta</i> .
𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬀 <i>hakērē</i> , "once,"	सकृत् <i>sakṛit</i> .
𐬀𐬀𐬀 <i>ahi</i> , "thou art,"	असि <i>asi</i> .
𐬀𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬀 <i>ahmāi</i> , "to this,"	अस्मै <i>asmai</i> .
𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬀𐬀 <i>hvarē</i> , "sun,"	स्वर् <i>sva</i> , "heaven."
𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬀𐬀 <i>hva</i> , "his,"	स <i>sva</i> .

The word 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬀𐬀 *hizva*, "tongue," from जिह्वा *jihva*, deserves mention, because the sibilant quality of the ज *j* is treated as स *s*, and replaced by 𐬀 *h* (§. 58.).

54. I do not remember to have met with an instance of the combination 𐬀𐬵 *hr*; the Sanscrit word सहस्र *sahasra*, "thousand," which might give occasion for it, has rejected the sibilant in the last syllable, and taken the shape 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀 *hazanra*. If, in the word 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀 *huska*, "dry," Sansc. शुष्क, 𐬀 replaces the Sansc. श्र *ś*, we must remember that the Latin *siccus* indicates a Sansc. श्र *ś*, because *c* regularly answers to श्र *ś*. In many instances of Sanscrit roots beginning with श्र *ś*, the corresponding Zend form may be grounded on the change which is effected on an initial श्र *ś* by the influence of certain prepositions. (Gramm. Crit. r. 80.) Thus I believe I have clearly ascertained the existence of the Sanscrit participle सिद्ध *siddha*, "perfected," in the term of frequent occurrence in the Vendidad 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀 *shāistēm*; after the analogy of 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀 *irista*, "deceased," from 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬀 *irith* (see §. 99.) Olshausen notifies (p. 29) the variations of *shāistēm*—*shāistēm*, *shāistim*, *shāistīm*, and *shāistēm*. In all these forms, the long *a* presents a difficulty; for, according to §. 28, 𐬀𐬵𐬀 *shidh* would give the form 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀 *shaidh*; and this, with the suffix *ta*, 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀 *shaišta*, in the nom. and accus. neut.

հհրաաաքս *shâistēm*. What Anquetil (vol. II. p. 279) translates, *Juste juge du monde qui existe par votre puissance, vous qui êtes la pureté même, quelle est la première chose qui plaise à cette terre (que nous habitons), et la rende favorable* runs in the original (Olshausen, p. 29. Burnouf, p. 137) հրաաաաքս աքք . հաաքս հհրաաաքս հհրաաաքս հհրաաաքս հհրաաաքս հհրաաաքս *Dâtarë gaëthanaim aïtvaitinaim ashâum ! kvâ paoirim anhâo zëmô shâistēm ?* “*Creator mundorum existentium, pure ! ubi (quid) primum hujus terræ perfectum (bonum ?)*”

55. The nominative pronominal Base **स्य** *sya* (Gramm. Crit. r. 268), in the Veda dialect, is under the influence of the preceding word; and we see in Rosen’s specimen, p. 6, this pronoun, when it follows the particle **उ** *u*, converted into **श्या** *shya*, after the analogy of rule 101<sup>a</sup> of my Grammar. I have detected a similar phenomenon in the Zend pronouns; for we find **ከ** *hé*, “*ejus*,” “*ei*,” which is founded on a lost Sanscrit **से** *sé* (cf. **मे** *mé*, “*mei*,” “*mihi*,” and **ते** *té*, “*tui*,” “*tibi*”), when it follows **य** *yézi*, “*if*,” taking the form **स्य** *sé* (more correctly, perhaps, **श्य** *shé*); for instance, at p. 37 of Olshausen: while on the same page we find **ከ** *yézicha hé*, (*und wenn ihm*), “*and if to him*.” In the following page we find a similar phenomenon, if, as I can hardly doubt, **հաաքս** *shâo* (thus I read it with the variation), corresponds to the Sanscrit **असौ** *asâu* (“*ille*,” “*illa*”): **արեսնոյս սղգնոյս ալ հաաքս հաս հր չ հոյի**, *Nôit xi im xâo shâo yâ* (text, **հաաքս** *yâo*) *darëgha akarsta* (text, **արեսնոյս** *adarsta*), “*For not this earth which lies long unploughed*.”

56. An **h** standing between *a* or *â* and a following vowel is usually preceded by a guttural nasal (**չ** *n*); and this appendage seems indispensable—I remember, at least, no exception—in cases where the following vowel is *a*, *â*, or *ë*. We find, for instance, **սաչապապապա**, *usâzayanha*, “*thou wast born*”; while in the active the personal ending





57. Two letters remain to be mentioned, namely,  $\zeta$  and  $\text{𐬰}$ , of which the former was probably pronounced like the French *z*, and may therefore be replaced by that letter. Etymologically this letter answers to the Sanscrit  $\text{ह}$  *h* for the most part, which never corresponds to the Zend  $\text{𐬰}$  *h*. Compare, for example,

SANSKRIT.	ZEND.
अहम् <i>aham</i> , "I,"	𐬀𐬵𐬭𐬀 <i>azēm</i> .
हस्त <i>hasta</i> , "hand,"	𐬀𐬵𐬭𐬀𐬀 <i>zašta</i> .
सहस्र <i>sahasra</i> , "thousand,"	𐬀𐬵𐬭𐬀𐬀𐬀 <i>hazaṇra</i> .
हन्ति <i>hanti</i> , "he strikes."	𐬀𐬵𐬭𐬀𐬀𐬀 <i>zainti</i> .
वहति <i>vahati</i> , "he travels,"	𐬀𐬵𐬭𐬀𐬀𐬀 <i>vazaiti</i> .
"bears."	
हि <i>hi</i> , "for,"	𐬵 <i>zi</i> .
जिह्वा <i>jihvā</i> , "tongue,"	𐬀𐬵𐬭𐬀𐬀 <i>hizva</i> , (§. 53.)
महत् <i>mahat</i> , "great,"	𐬀𐬵𐬭𐬀𐬀 <i>mazó</i> (from <i>mazas</i> , acc. 𐬀𐬵𐬭𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀 <i>mazaṇhēm</i> .)

58. Sometimes  $\zeta$  *z* appears also in the place of the Sanscrit  $\text{ज}$  *j*; so that the sibilant portion of this letter, pronounced *dsch*, is alone represented, and the *d* sound suppressed (see §. 53.) Thus  $\text{𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬀}$  *yaz*, "to adore," answers to the Sanscrit  $\text{यज्}$  *yaj*;  $\text{𐬀𐬵𐬭𐬀𐬀𐬀}$  *zaōsha*, "to please," springs from the Sanscrit root  $\text{जुष्}$  *jush*, "to please or gratify." Thirdly, the Zend *z* represents also the Sanscrit  $\text{ग}$  *g*, which is easily accounted for by the relationship between *g* and *j*. The Indian *gó*, (accus. *gám*,) *bos* and *terra*, has, in Zend, as also in Greek, clothed itself in two forms; the first

---

the Nouveau Journ. Asiatique, tom. iii. p. 342, speaking of the relation of *māonho* to *manaṇhō*, without noticing the analogies which occur in cases of repetition, *māosh-cha*, "lunaque," *urvāraosh-cha*, "arboresque," he says, "In *māonghō*, there is perhaps this difference, that the *ng* does not replace the Sanscrit *s*, for this letter has already become *o* in consequence of a change of frequent occurrence which we have lately noticed.

signification has maintained itself in Zend, but in Greek has given way to the labial; and βούς and γῆ γῆος *gâos*, or γῆ γῆος *gâus*, correspond to the Sanscrit nom. गौस् *gâus*. For the signification "earth" the Greek has preserved the guttural, which in Zend is replaced by *z*. The nom. γῆος *zâo* supposes an Indian form गास् *gâs*, for गौस् *gâus*; in the accusative, γῆν *zanm* agrees, in respect of inflection, as closely as possible with गाम् *gâm* and γῆν.

59. *zh* is of less frequent use, and was probably pronounced like the French *j*: we write it *zh*. It is observable, that as the French *j* in many words corresponds to the Latin semi-vowel *j*, and derives from it its own developement, so also sometimes, in Zend, *zh* has arisen out of the Sanscrit य *y*. Thus, for instance, यूयम् *yûyam*, "you," (*vos*), becomes *γῆζḥēm*. Sometimes, also, *zh* has sprung from the sound of the English *j*, and corresponds to the Sanscrit ज *j*, as in *γḥenu*, Sanscrit जानु *jânu*, "knee." Finally, it stands as a terminating letter in some prefixes, in the place of the Sanscrit dental स *s* after *i* and *u*; thus, *nizh-baraiti*, "he carries out"; *duzh-ûctēm*, "ill spoken": on the other hand, *dus-matēm*, "ill thought."

60. We have still to elucidate the nasals, which we have postponed till now, because for them a knowledge of the system of the other sounds is indispensable. We must first of all mention a difference from the Sanscrit, that in Zend not every organ has its particular nasal; but that here, in respect of *n*, two main distinctions are established, and that these mainly depend on the circumstance whether *n* precedes a vowel or a consonant. In this manner *j* and *zh* are so contrasted, that the first finds its place chiefly before whole and half-vowels, and also at the end of words; the latter only in the middle of strong consonants. We

find, for instance, *հանձանալ* *hankârayêmi*, "I glorify"; *պանիս* *pancha*, "five"; *բնշխանութիւն* *bûshyantēm*: on the other hand, *մարդ* *nâ* (nom.) "man"; *չ* *nôit*, "not"; *հանձնարարեն* *barayēn*, "they might bear"; *մյուս* *anya*, "the other." Concerning the difference between *յ* and *ք*—a difference not recognised in European alphabets—it is probable that *ք*, being always fenced in by strong consonants, must have had a duller and more suppressed sound than the freer *յ*; and by reason of this weak and undecided character of its pronunciation, would appear to have applied itself more easily to every organ of the following letter.

61. Still feebler and more undecided than  $\text{𑂔}$ , perhaps an equivalent to the Indian Anusvâra, we conjecture to have been the nasal  $\text{𑂔}$ , which is always involved with  $\text{𑂔} a$ , and which seems from its form to have been a fusion of  $\text{𑂔}$  and  $\text{𑂔}$ . We find this letter, which we write *an*, first, before sibilants, before  $\text{𑂔} h$ , like the Anusvâra, and before the aspirates  $\text{𑂔} th$  and  $\text{𑂔} f$ ; for instance,  $\text{𑂔𑂔𑂔𑂔𑂔𑂔} csayan's$ , "regnans," accus.  $\text{𑂔𑂔𑂔𑂔𑂔𑂔} csayantēm$ ;  $\text{𑂔𑂔𑂔𑂔𑂔𑂔} zanhyamāna$ , a part of the middle future of the root  $\text{𑂔} zan$ , "to beget," but, as seems to me, with a passive signification ("qui nascetur," Vend. S. pp. 28 and 103.);  $\text{𑂔𑂔𑂔𑂔} manthra$ , "speech," from the root  $\text{𑂔} man$ ;  $\text{𑂔𑂔𑂔𑂔} janīnu$ , "mouth," probably from the Sanscrit  $\text{𑂔𑂔} jap$ , "to pray," §. 40, and with the nasal inserted. Secondly, before a terminating  $\text{𑂔} m$  and  $\text{𑂔} n$ . We have here to observe that the Sanscrit termination  $\text{𑂔𑂔} ām$  is always changed to  $\text{𑂔𑂔} anm$  in Zend; for instance,  $\text{𑂔𑂔𑂔𑂔} dadhanm$ , "I gave," Sanscrit  $\text{𑂔𑂔𑂔𑂔} adadām$ ;  $\text{𑂔𑂔𑂔𑂔} pādhananm$ , "pedum," Sans.  $\text{𑂔𑂔𑂔𑂔} pādānām$ ; and that the third person plural, ending  $\text{𑂔𑂔} an$ , provided the  $a$  do not pass into  $\text{ē}$ , always appears as a double nasal,  $\text{𑂔𑂔} anm$ .

62. For the nasal, which, according to §. 56, is placed as an euphonic addition before the *h*, which springs from *ṣ*, the Zend has two characters, *ṣ* and *ṣ̌*, to both which

Anquetil assigns the sound *ng*.\* We write them *n*, in order to avoid giving the appearance of a *g* preceded by a guttural *n* to this guttural, a nasal precursor of the following *h*. As to the difference in the use of these two letters, *ɣ* always follows *a* and *do*; *ɳ*, on the contrary, comes after *i* and *e*, for which the occasion is rare. For instance, in the relative plural nom. *𐎧𐎡𐎴𐎠𐎶 yēnhē*, “*qui*,” and in the fem. pron. genitives, as *𐎧𐎡𐎴𐎠𐎶 ainhāo*, “*hujus*,” which often occurs, but as often without *ɳ* *i*, and with *ɣ* *n*, *𐎧𐎡𐎴𐎠𐎶 anhāo*. What phonetic difference existed between *ɣ* and *ɳ* we cannot venture to pronounce. Anquetil, as we have seen, assigns the same pronunciation to each; while Rask compares *ɳ* with the Sanscrit palatal न *n*, and illustrates its sound by that of the Spanish and Portuguese ñ.

63. The labial nasal *ɕ* *m* does not differ from the Sanscrit मः: it must, however, be remarked, that it sometimes takes the place of *b*. At least the root 𐎧𐎡𐎴 *brū*, “*speak*,” in Zend becomes *𐎧𐎡𐎴 mru*; as, *𐎧𐎡𐎴 mraóm*, “*I spoke*,” *𐎧𐎡𐎴 mraót*, “*he spoke*”: in a similar manner is the Indian मुख *mukha*, “*mouth*,” related to the Latin *bucca*; and not much otherwise the Latin *mare* to the Sanscrit वारि *vāri*, “*water*.” I consider, also, *multus* related to बहुल *bahula*, the Greek πολύς, and the Gothic *filu*.

64. A concluding *ɕ* *m* operates in a double manner on a preceding vowel. It weakens (see §. 30.) the *ɔ* *a* to *ɛ* *ě*; and, on the other hand, lengthens out the vowels *i* and *u*; thus, for instance, *𐎧𐎡𐎴 paitim*, “*the Lord*,” *𐎧𐎡𐎴 tanúm*, “*the body*,” from the bases *𐎧𐎡𐎴 paiti*, *𐎧𐎡𐎴 tanu*. In contradiction to this rule we find the vocative of frequent occurrence, *𐎧𐎡𐎴 ashám*, “*pure*.” Here, however, *ɔ* *au*, as a diphthong, answers to the Sanscrit औ *au*, the last element of which is not capable of further lengthening

---

\* Burnouf also writes the first of these *ng*. I have done the same in my reviews in the *Jahrbuch für Wissenschaft Krit.*

The form in question is a contraction of the Thema 𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬎𐬀 *ashavan*; with an irregular conversion of the concluding 𐬎 *n* into 𐬌 *m*.

65. We give here a complete summary of the Zend characters.

Simple Vowels: 𐬀 *a*, 𐬁 ă, 𐬂 *e*; 𐬃 *ā*; 𐬄 *i*, 𐬅 ī; 𐬆 *u*, 𐬇 *o*, 𐬈 ū.

Diphthongs: 𐬉 *ē*, 𐬊 *oi*; 𐬋 *ai*; 𐬌 *ō*, 𐬍 *āo*, 𐬎 *āu*.

Gutturals: 𐬏 *k* (before vowels and » *v*), 𐬐 *c* (principally before consonants), 𐬑 *kh* (out of 𐬒 *sv* before vowels and 𐬓 *y*); 𐬔 *g*, 𐬕 *gh*.

Palatals: 𐬖 *ch*, 𐬗 *j*.

Dentals: 𐬘 *t* (before vowels and 𐬓 *y*), 𐬙 *t* (before consonants and at the end of words), 𐬚 *th* (before whole and semi-vowels), 𐬛 *d*, 𐬜 *dh*.

Labials: 𐬝 *p*, 𐬞 *f* (the latter before vowels, semi-vowels, nasals, and 𐬟 *s*), 𐬟 *b*.

Semi-vowels: 𐬠, 𐬡, 𐬢 *y* (the two first initial, the last medial), 𐬣, 𐬤 *r* (the last only after 𐬞 *f*), 𐬥, » *v* (the first initial, the last medial), 𐬦 *m*.

Sibilants and *h*: 𐬧 *ś*, 𐬨 *sh*, 𐬩 *s*, 𐬪 *zh*, 𐬫 *z*, 𐬬 *h*.

Nasals: 𐬭 *n* (before vowels, semi-vowels, and ending words), 𐬮 *n* (before strong consonants), 𐬯 *an* (before sibilants, 𐬬 *h*, 𐬚 *th*, 𐬞 *f*, 𐬌 *m*, and 𐬭 *n*), 𐬰 *n* (between 𐬀 *a* or 𐬍 *āo*, and 𐬬 *h*), 𐬱 *n* (between 𐬄 *i* or 𐬁 *ē*, and 𐬬 *h*), 𐬲 *m*.

Remark also the Compounds 𐬳 for 𐬬𐬀 *ah*, and 𐬴 for 𐬳𐬀 *st*.

66. We refrain from treating specially of the Greek, Latin, and Lithuanian systems of sounds, but must here devote a closer consideration to the Germanic. The Gothic *a*, which, according to Grimm, is always short, answers

completely to the Sanscrit *a*; and the sounds of the Greek *ε* and *ο* are wanting, in their character of degeneration from *a*, in Gothic as well as in Sanscrit. The ancient *a* has not, however, always maintained itself in Gothic; but in radical syllables, as well as in terminations, has often weakened itself down to *i*, or has undergone suppression; often, also, by the influence of a following liquid, has been converted into *u*. Compare, for instance, *sibun*, "seven," with सप्तन् *saptan*; *taihun*, "ten," with दशन् *daśan*.

67. We believe ourselves authorized to lay down as a law, that *a* in polysyllabic words before a terminating *s* is everywhere weakened into *i*, or suppressed; but before a terminating *th* generally appears as *i*. A concluding *a* in the Gothic either remains unaltered, or disappears: it never becomes *i*.

68. In the Old High German the Gothic *a* either remains unaltered, or is weakened to *e*, or is changed by the influence of a liquid to *u* = perhaps *o*. According to this, the relation of the unorganic *e* to the Gothic *a* is the same as that of the Gothic *i* (§. 66.) to *a*; compare, for instance, in the genitive of the bases in *a*, वृकस्य *vrika-sya*, Gothic *vulfi-s*, Old High German *wolfe-s*. In the dative plural *wolfu-m* stands to *vulfa-m* in the same relation as above (§. 66.), *sibun* to *saptan*. The precedence of a liquid has also, in Old High German, sometimes converted this *a* into *u* or *o*; compare *plinte-mu(mo)*, *cæca*, with the Gothic *blindamma*. Also after the German *j* or *y*, which in Sanscrit (य *y*) belongs as a semi-vowel to the same class as *r*, the Old High German seems to prefer *u* to *a*; thence *plintju*, without *j* also *plintu*, "cæca," as a fem. nom. sing., and the neuter nom. acc. voc. plural *plinta*, "cæcam." The *u* of the first person present, as *kipu*, "I give," Gothic *giba*, I ascribe to the influence of the dropped personal letter *m*. Respecting the degeneration of the original *a* sound to *u* compare also §. 66. In the inseparable Old High German preposition *ki* (our

German *ge*) = Gothic *ga*, Sanscrit स *sa* or सम् *sam*, we have an example in which the Gothic-Sanskrit *a* has become *i*.

69. For the Sanscrit ञ् *ā*, the Gothic, which has no long *a*, almost always substitutes *ō* (§. 4.), and this *ō*, in cases of abbreviation, falls back into the short *a*. Thus, for instance, in Grimm's first fem. declension of the strong form, nom. and accus. sing. *ō* is softened to *a*, thence *giba*, *gibō-s* (§. 118.). Generally in the Gothic polysyllabic forms, the concluding ञ् *ā* shortens itself into *a*; and where *ō* stands at the termination, an originally succeeding consonant has been dropped; for instance, in the gen. plur. fem. *ō* stands for ञम् *ām*. Sometimes, also, in the Gothic, *ē* corresponds to the Sanscrit *ā*, as in gen. plur. masc. and neut. In the Old High German the Gothic *ō* either remains such, as in gen. plur., or divides itself into two short vowels; and, according to differences of origin, into *oa*, *ua*, or *uo*; of which in the Middle High German, *uo* prevails; while in the Modern High German the two divided vowels are contracted into *ü*. For the Gothic *ē* = ञ् *ā*, the Old, Middle, and Modern High German have preserved the old *ā*, except in gen. plur.

70. For इ *i* and ई *ī* the Gothic has *i* and *ei*; which latter, as Grimm has sufficiently shewn, is everywhere to be considered as long *i*, and also in Old and Middle High German is represented by such. We, together with Grimm, and as in the case of the other vowels, designate its prolongation by a circumflex. In the Modern High German the long *ī* appears mostly as *ei*; compare, for instance, *mein* with the Gothic genitive *meina*, and the Old and Middle High German *mīn*. Sometimes a short *i* is substituted, as in *lich*, answering to the Gothic *leiks*, "like," at the end of compounds. On the long *ī*, in *mīr*, "nos," Gothic *veis*, we can lay no stress, as we match the dat. sing. *mīr* also with the Gothic *mis*. It is scarcely worth remarking that we

usually, in writing, designate the elongation of the *i* and other vowels by the addition of an *h*.

71. While the original *a* has undergone many alterations in the Germanic languages, and has produced both *i* and *u*, I have been able to detect no other alterations in *i* or *u* than that *i* is as often suppressed as *a*; but it never happens, unless some rare exceptions have escaped me, that *i* is replaced by a heavier vowel *a* or *u*.\* We may lay down as a rule, that, as a terminating vowel, *i* has given way in German everywhere, as it has generally in Latin. Compare,

SANSKRIT.	GREEK.	LATIN.	GOTHIC.
परि <i>pari</i> ,	περί,	<i>per</i> ,	<i>fair</i> . (§. 82.)
उपरि <i>upari</i> ,	ὑπέρ,	<i>super</i> ,	<i>ufar</i> .
अस्ति <i>asti</i> ,	ἐστί,	<i>est</i> ,	<i>ist</i> .
सन्ति <i>santi</i> ,	ἐντί,	<i>sunt</i> ,	<i>sind</i> .

72. Where a concluding *i* occurs in Gothic and Old High German it is always a mutilation of the German *j* or *y* together with the following vowel; so that *j*, after the suppression of this vowel, has vowelized itself. Thus the uninflected Gothic accus. *hari*, “*exercitum*,” is a mutilation of *harja*. The Sanscrit would require *harya-m*; and the Zend, after §. 42, meeting the Germanic half way, *harí-m*. Before a concluding *s* also, in the Gothic, *i* is usually suppressed; and the Gothic terminating syllable *is*, is mostly a weakening of *as*, §. 67. In Old High German, and still more in Middle and Modern High German, the Gothic *i* has often degenerated into *e*, which, where it occurs in the accented syllable, is expressed in Grimm by *ë*. We retain this character. We have also to observe of the Gothic, that, in the old text, *i*

---

\* The Sanscrit पितृ *pitṛi*, “father,” probably stands for पातृ *patṛi*, “ruler”; and the European languages have adhered to the true original. (Gramm. Crit. r. 178, Annot.)



at the beginning of a syllable is distinguished by two dots above, which Grimm retains.

73. As in Zend (§. 41.), by the attractive force of *i*, *î*, or *y* (= *j*), an *i* is introduced into the antecedent syllable; so also, in Old High German, the corresponding sounds have obtained an assimilating power; and frequently an *a* of the preceding syllable is converted into *e*, without any power of prevention on the part of either a single or double consonant. Thus, for instance, we find from *ast*, "branch," the plural *esti*; from *anst*, "grace," the plural *ensti*; and from *vallu*, "I fall," the second and third persons *vellis*, *vellit*. This law, however, has not pervaded the Old High German universally: we find, for instance, *arpi*, "*hereditas*," not *erpi*; *zahari*, "*lacrymæ*," not *zaheri*.

74. In the Middle High German, the *e*, which springs from the older *i*, has both retained and extended the power of modification and assimilation; inasmuch as, with few limitations, (Grimm, p. 332,) not only every *a* by its retrospective action becomes *e*, but generally, also, *ä*, *u*, and *o* are modified into *æ*, *ü*, and *ö*; *ö* into *æ*, and *uo* into *ue*. Thus the plurals *geste*, *dræte*, *brüche*, *köche*, *læne*, *gruese*, from *gast*, *drât*, *bruch*, *koch*, *lôn*, *gruoz*. On the other hand, in the Old High German, the *e* which has degenerated from *i* or *a* obtains no such power; and we find in the genitive singular of the above words, *gaste-s*, *drate-s*, &c., because the Old High German has already, in the declension of the masculine *i* class, reduced to *e* the *i* belonging to the class, and which in Gothic remains unaltered.

75. The *e* produced in Old and Middle High German by the modification of *a*, is retained in the Modern High German, in cases where the trace of the original vowel is either extinguished or scarcely felt; as, *Ende*, *Engel*, *setzen*, *netzen*, *nennen*, *brennen*; Goth. *andi*, *aggilus*, *satjan*, *natjan*, *namnjan*, *brannjan*. Where, however, the original vowel is distinctly opposed to the change, we place *ä*, short or

long, from short or long *a*; and, in the same relation, *ü* from *u*, *ö* from *o*, *ä* from *au*; for instance, *Brände, Pfäle, Dünste, Flüge, Köche, Töne, Bäume*, from *Brand, Pfäl, &c.*

76. For *u*, *û*, the Gothic has *u*, which is generally short. Among the few examples cited by Grimm, p. 41, of long *u*, we particularize the comparative *sûti:ô*, the essential part of which corresponds to the Sansc. स्वादु *svādu*, "sweet" (ऽदु-स्), and in which the long *u* may stand as a compensation for the absence of the *v*, which becomes vowelized. In Old High German it seems to me that *pûam*, "to dwell," and *trûên*, "to trust," correspond to the Sanscrit roots भू *bhû*, "to be," ध्रु *dhrû*, "to stand fast"—from which ध्रुव *dhruva*, "fast," "constant," "certain" (Gramm. Crit. r. 51.)—to the Guna form of which (§. 26.) the Goth. *bauan, trauan* adjoins itself; i. e. भवितुम् *bhav-itum*, "to be," ध्रुवितुम् *dhrav-i-tum*, "to stand fast." The Middle High German continues the Gothic Old High German *û*, but the Modern High German substitutes *au*, whence *bauen, trauen, Taube* (Gothic *dûbô*).

77. As out of the Sansc. *u*, in Zend, the sound of a short *u* has developed itself (§. 32.), thus, also, the Gothic *u* shews itself, in the more recent dialects, oftener in the form of *o* than in its own. Thus have the Verbs in the Old and Middle High German (Grimm's 9th conjug.) preserved a radical *u* in the plur. of the pret., but replaced it by *o* in the passive part. Compare, for instance, *bugum*, "we bend," *bugans*, "bent," with Old High German *pukumês, pokanêr*, Middle High German *bugen, bogen*. The example adduced shews, also, the softening of the old *u* to *e*, in unaccented syllables, in Middle High German as in Modern High German; so that this unaccented *e* can represent all original vowels—*a, i, u*; and we may lay down as a rule, that all long and short vowels in the last syllable of polysyllabic words, are either worn away or softened down to a mute *e*.

78. For the diphthongs ए  $\acute{e}$  ( $a + i$ ) and औ  $\acute{o}$  ( $a + u$ ), the Gothic has *ai* and *au*, which are also monosyllabic, and were perhaps pronounced like ए  $\acute{e}$  and औ  $\acute{o}$ . Compare *bavaima*, “*ædificemus*,” with भवेम *bhavéma*, “*simus*”; *sunau-s*, “of a son,” with its equivalent सुनोस् *sunó-s*. Where these Gothic diphthongs *ai* and *au* have maintained themselves unaltered in value, they then appear, in writing, as  $\acute{e}$  and  $\acute{o}$ ,\* which must be considered as contractions of  $a + i$  and  $a + u$ ; as in the Latin *amémus*, from *amaïmus* (§. 5.); and as in the almost solitary case of *bóts*, the long *o* of which is the result of a contraction of  $a + u$ , whose latter element appears again before vowels in the independent shape of *v* (*bovis*, *bovem*), while the first element  $\acute{a}$ , in its degeneration, appears as  $\acute{o}$  (§. 3.). Compare,

SANSKRIT.	GOTHIC.	OLD HIGH GERMAN.
चरेम <i>charéma</i> ( <i>eamus</i> ),	<i>faraima</i> ,	<i>varémés</i> .
चरेत <i>charéta</i> ( <i>eatis</i> ),	<i>faraiθ</i> ,	<i>varét</i> .
तेभ्यस् <i>tébhyas</i> ( <i>his</i> ),	<i>thaim</i> ,	<i>dém</i> .

79. In like manner, in all conjunctives, and in the nominal declension in which the adjective bases in *a* take part, an Old High German  $\acute{e}$  corresponds to the Sanscrit ए  $\acute{e}$  and Gothic *ai*. The Middle High German has shortened this  $\acute{e}$ , as standing in an unaccented terminating syllable (*varen*, *varet*). Besides this, the Middle High German has, in common with the Old High German, preserved the diphthong  $\acute{e}$  where it stood in radical syllables

---

\* If, however, the Gothic diphthongs in question were not pronounced like their etymological equivalents ए  $\acute{e}$  and औ  $\acute{o}$ , but, as Grimm conceives, approximate to the Vriddhi-change (§. 26.) ऐ  $\acute{ai}$  and औ  $\acute{au}$ : in such case the High German  $\acute{e}$ ,  $\acute{o}$ , as opposed to the Gothic *ai*, *au*, are not merely continuations of these Gothic diphthongs; but the pronunciation assigned by the Sanscrit to the union of *a* with *i* or *u*, must have been first introduced into the Germanic, under certain conditions, in the eighth century.

under the protection of a following *u*, *r* (out of the older *s*), or *h* (*ch*), even in cases where one of these letters had been dropped, or where *u* had vowelized itself into *v* or *o*. (Grimm. pp. 90. 343.). Compare,

GOthic.	OLD HIGH GERMAN.	MIDDLE HIGH GERMAN.
<i>aiv</i> , "ævium,"	<i>êwîn</i> .	
<i>snaives</i> , "nix,"	<i>snêo</i> ,	<i>snê</i> .
<i>mais</i> , "magis,"	<i>mêr</i> ,	<i>mê</i> .
<i>laisjan</i> , "docere,"	<i>lêran</i> ,	<i>lêren</i> .
<i>laihv</i> , "commodavit,"	<i>lêh</i> ,	<i>lêch</i> .

In the Modern High German this *é* is partly preserved, partly replaced; for instance, *mêr* (*mehr*), *Schnê* (*Schnee*). *Sêle* (Gothic *saivala*) *ich lieh, gedieh*. (Grimm. p. 983.).

80. As the *é* for the Gothic *ai*, so the *ô* for *au*, in the Old and Middle High German, is favoured by certain consonants; and those which favour the *ô* are the more numerous. They consist of the dentals (according to the Sanscrit division, §. 16.) *t*, *d*, *z*, together with their nasal and sibilant (*n*, *s*); further, the semi-vowel *r*; and *h*, which, as a termination in Middle High German, becomes *ch*. (See Grimm, pp. 94. 345.). The roots, which in the Gothic admit the Guna modification of the radical *u* through the influence of an *a*, in the pret. sing., oppose to the Gothic *au*, in Middle and Old High German, a double form; namely, *ô* under the condition above mentioned, and next *ou*, §. 34, in the absence of the letter which protects *ô*. For instance, Old High German *zôh*, Middle High German *zôeh* (*traxi, traxit*), Gothic *tauþ*, Sanscrit दुदोह *dudôha* (*mulxi, mulsit*); but *pouc, bouc, flexi, flexit*, Gothic *baug*, Sanscrit बुभोग *bu-bhôga*. The Modern High German exhibits the Gothic diphthong *au*, either, like the Middle and Old High German, as *ô*, and in a more extended degree, and subject to the modification of §. 75; or next, shortened to *o*, the particulars of which will be explained under

the verb; or, thirdly, as *au*; for instance, *daupja*, "I baptize," *hlaupa*, "I run"; or, fourthly, as *eu*, §. 83.

81. As Ulfilas, in proper names, represents both *e* and *ai* by *ai*, and likewise *o* and *au* by *au* (*Paitrus*, *Galeilaia*, *apaustaulus*, *Paulus*); and as, in the next place, not every Gothic *ai* and *au* in kindred dialects is represented in like manner, but in some cases the Gothic *ai* is replaced in Old High German by a simple *i* or *ë*, and *au* by *u* or *o* (§. 77.); but in the others, *ai* is replaced by *ê*, or (§. 85.) by *ei*, and *au* by *ô* or (§. 84.) *ou*, therefore Grimm deduces from these facts a double value of the diphthongs *ai* and *au*; one with the stress on the last element (*aí*, *aú*), another with the stress on the *a* (*ái*, *áu*). We cannot, however, give implicit belief to this deduction of the acute author of the German system of sounds, and prefer assuming an equal value in all cases of the Gothic *ai* and *au*, although we might support Grimm's view by the fact, that, in Sanscrit, *इ ई*, *ओ ऌ* never replace his *aí* and *aú*, but everywhere, where occasion occurs, do replace *ái* and *áu*. We think, however, that the difference is rather phonetic than etymological. As concerns the *ai* and *au* in proper names, it may be accounted for, inasmuch as the Gothic was deficient in equivalents for these non-primitive vowels, which have degenerated from the original *𐌰 a*. Could Ulfilas have looked back into the early ages of his language, and have recognised the original identity of *e* and *o* with his *a*, he would perhaps have used the latter as their substitutes. From his point of sight, however, he embraced the *ai* and *au*, probably because these mixed diphthongs passed with him as weaker than the long *ê* and *ô*, *ejusdem generis*, = (*𐌰 á*). It is important here to observe, that in Greek also *αι* is felt as weaker than *η* and *ω*, as is proved by the fact that *αι* does not attract the accent towards itself (*τύπτομαι* not *τυπτόμαι*). The expression of the Greek *αι* and *αυ* by the Gothic *ai* and *au* requires the less justification, because

even if *ai* was pronounced like *है*, and *au* like *औ*, yet the written character presents these diphthongs as a still perceptible fusion of *a* with a following *i* or *u*.

82. As to the other statement, namely, that not every Gothic *ai* and *au* produces the same effect in the younger dialects, nor have the same foundation in the older Sanscrit, it might be sufficient to observe upon one feature of dialect peculiar to the Gothic, that *h* and *r* do not content themselves with a pure preceding *i*, but require it to be affected by Guna (§. 26.); thus, *ai* for *i*, and *au* for *u*; while other dialects exhibit the *i* and *u* before *h* and *r* in the same form as before every other consonant. The relation of the Gothic to their Sanscrit equivalents,

GOTHIC.	SANSKRIT.
<i>saihs</i> , "six,"	षष् <i>shash</i> ,
<i>taihun</i> , "ten,"	दशन् <i>daśan</i> ,
<i>faihu</i> , "cattle,"	पशु <i>paśu</i> ,
<i>svairha</i> , "father-in-law,"	स्वशुर <i>śvaśura</i> ,
<i>taihsvo</i> , "dextera,"	दक्षिणा <i>dakshinā</i> ,
<i>hairtó</i> , "heart,"	हृद् <i>hṛid</i> , (from <i>hard</i> , §. 1.)
<i>bairan</i> , "to bear,"	भर्तुम् <i>bhartum</i> ,
<i>distairan</i> , "to tear,"	दरितुम् <i>dar-i-tum</i> ,
<i>stairnô</i> , "star,"	तार <i>tārā</i> ,

is not so to be understood as though an *i* had been placed after the old *a*, but that, by the softening down of the *a* to *i* (§. 66.), the forms *sihs*, *tihun*, had been produced; out of which, afterwards, the Guna power arising from *h* and *r* had produced *saihs*, *taihun*, *bairan*. The High German has, however, remained at the earlier stage; for Old High German *sēhs*, (Anglo-Saxon, "six,") and *tēhan* or *tēhun*, &c. rest upon an earlier Gothic *sihs*, *tihun*. Thus, *tohtar* rests on an earlier Gothic *duhtar*, for the Guna form *dauhtar*, Sanscrit दुहितृ *duhitar*, (दुहितृ *duhitri*, §. 1.) "daughter." Where the Sanscrit *a* has preserved itself in Gothic unaltered, that

is, not weakened to *i*, the occasion is absent for the development of the diphthong *ai*, since it is not the *a* before *h* and *r* which demands a subsequent addition, but the *i* which demands a precedent one; compare *ahtau*, "eight," with *अष्टौ ashtāu*.\*

83. The alterations to which the simple vowels have been subjected appear again in the simple elements of the diphthongs, as well in the relation of the Gothic to the Sanscrit, as in that of the younger Germanic dialects to the Gothic. Thus the *a* element of the diphthong *𐌳𐌹* *ô*, shews itself often in the Gothic, and in certain places in a regular manner, as *i* (§. 27.); and in the same places the *a* contained in *𐌹* *ê* (*a + i*) becomes *i*, which, with the second element of the diphthong, generates a long *i* (written as *ei*, §. 70.) The Gothic *iū* has either retained that form in Old High German, or has altered sometimes one, sometimes both of its constituents. Thus have arisen *io*, *ëo*. There is a greater distance to be passed in Otfrid's theory of the substitution of *ia* for *iū*, which cannot fail to surprise, as we know that a simple *u* never becomes *a*.† In Middle High German *iū* has either remained unaltered, or has been changed to *ie*, which is as old as the latest Old High German, as it is found in Notker. In Modern High German the substitution of *ie* for the old *iū* is that which princi-

---

\* *Ahtau* = *ashtāu* is perhaps the only case in which the Gothic *au* corresponds to the Sanscrit Vṛiddhi diphthong *औ* *āu*; on the other hand, *au* often answers to *औ* *ô* = (*a + u*)

† There is yet another *ia* in Old High German, namely, that which Grimm (p. 103) very acutely represents as the result of a contraction, and formerly dissyllabic, to which, therefore, there is no counterpart diphthong in Gothic. The most important case will be discussed under the head of the verb, in preterites, such as *hialt*, "I held," Gothic *haihald*. After this analogy *fiar*, "four," (according to Otfrid,) arose out of the Gothic *fidvor*, in this way, that, after the extrusion of the *dv*, the *ô* passed into its corresponding short vowel.—*Grimm*. p. 103.

pally prevails, in which, however, the *e* is only retained for the eye, since, phonetically, it is absorbed by the *i*. Compare *ich biete* with the Gothic *biuda*, *giesse* with *giuta*. Besides this form, we also find *eu* in place of the old *iu* or still older *au*, in cases, namely, where *e* can be accounted for as the result of a no longer perceptible modification (Grimm, p. 523, §. 75.); compare *Leute* with the Gothic *laudeis*, Old High German *liuti*, "people"; *Heu*, "hay," with Goth. *havi*, "grass." Usually, however, the Gothic has already acquired an *iu* in place of this *eu*, and the original *au* (which becomes *av* before vowels) is to be sought in the Sanscrit; for instance, *Neune*, "nine," Old High German *niumi*, Gothic *niuneis*, Sanscrit नवन् *navan*; "New," Old High German *nimi* (indeclinable), Gothic *nivi-s*, Sanscrit नवस् *nava-s*. This *e*, however, is difficult to account for, in as far as it is connected with the *Umlaut*, because it corresponds to an *i* in Middle and Old High German; and this vowel, of itself answering to an *i* or *j* in the following syllable, is capable of no alteration through their power of attraction. Long *u* for *iu*, equivalent to a transposition of the diphthong, is found in *lügen*, "to lie," *trügen*, "to deceive," Middle High German *liugen*, *triugen*.

84. Where the *a* element of the Sanscrit जो *ô*, retains its existence in the Gothic, making *au* the equivalent of *ô*, the Middle High German, and a part of the Old High German authorities, have *ou* in the place of *au*, although, as has been remarked in §. 80, under the influence of certain consonants *ô* prevails. Compare Old High German *pouc*, Middle High German *bouc*, with the Gothic preterite *baug*, "*flexi*." The *o* of the High German *ou* has the same relation to the corresponding Gothic *a* in *au*, as the Greek *o* in *βοῦς* bears to the Sanscrit व *a*, which undergoes a fusion with उ *u* in the जो *ô* of the cognate word गो *gô*. The oldest Old High German authorities (Gl. Hrab. Ker. Is.) have *au* for the *ou* of the later (Grimm, p. 99); and as,



under the conditions specified in §. 80, they also exhibit *ô*, this tells in favour of Grimm's assumption, that *au* in the Gothic and oldest High German was pronounced like our German *au*, and thus not like the Sanscrit *औ* *ô* (out of *a + u*). In this case, in the Gothic *ai*, also, both the letters must have been sounded, and this diphthong must be only an etymological, and not a phonetic equivalent of the Sanscrit *ए* *é*.

85. In the Gothic diphthong *ai* the *a* alone is susceptible of alteration, and appears in High German softened down to *e*, in the cases in which the *é*, contracted from *ai*, (§. 78.) does not occur. In Modern High German, however, *ei*, in pronunciation, = *ai*. Compare

GOthic.	OLD HIGH GERMAN.	MIDDLE HIGH GERMAN.	MODERN HIGH GERMAN.
<i>haita</i> , "voco,"	<i>heizu</i> ,	<i>heize</i> ,	<i>heisse</i> .
<i>skaida</i> , "separo,"	<i>skeidu</i> ,	<i>scheide</i>	<i>scheide</i> .

86. (1.) Let us now consider the consonants, preserving the Indian arrangement, and thus the gutturals first. Of these, the Gothic has merely the *tenuis* and the medial (*k, g*); and Ulfilas, in imitation of the Greeks, places the latter as a nasal before gutturals; for instance, *drigkan*, "to drink"; *briggan*, "to bring"; *tuggó*, "tongue"; *juggs*, "young": *gaggs*, "a going." (subst.) For the compound *kv* the old writing has a special character, which we, like Grimm, render by *qv*, although *q* does not appear elsewhere, and *v* also combines with *g*; so that *qv* (= *kv*) plainly bears the same relation to *gv* that *k* bears to *g*; compare *sigqvan*, "to sink," with *siggvan*, "to read," "to sing." *H* also, in Gothic, willingly combines with *v*; and for this combination, also, the original text has a special character; compare *saihvan*, *leihvan*, with our *sehen*, *leihen*. In respect of *h* by itself we have to observe that it often appears in relations in which the dentals place their *th* and the labials their *f*, so that in this case it takes the place of

*kh*, which is wanting in the Gothic. In this manner is *aih* related to *aigum*, "we have," *bauth* to *budum*, and *gaf* to *gēbum*. Probably the pronunciation of the Gothic *h* was not in all positions the same, but in terminations, and before *t* and *s*, if not generally before consonants, corresponded to our *ch*. The High German has *ch* as an aspirate of the *k*; for this *tenuis*, however, either *k* or *c* stands in the older dialects, the use of which, in Middle High German, is so distinguished, that *c* stands as a terminating letter, and in the middle of words before *t*, and *ch* also stands for a double *k*. (Grimm, p. 422.) This distinction reminds us of the use of the Zend *ϙ* *c* in contrast to *ϑ* *k*, as also of the *ϥ* *t* in contrast to *ϣ* *t*. (§§. 34. 38.)

(2.) The palatals and linguals are wanting in Gothic, as in Greek and Latin; the dentals are, in Gothic, *t*, *th*, *d*, together with their nasal *n*. For *th* the Gothic alphabet has a special character. In the High German *z* (= *ts*) fills the place of the aspiration of the *t*, so that the breathing is replaced by the sibilation. By the side of this *z* in the Old High German, the old Gothic *th* also maintains its existence.\* There are two species of *z*, which, in Middle High German, do not agree with each other. In the one *t* has the preponderance, in the other *s*; and this latter is written by Isidor *zs*, and its reduplication *zss*, while the reduplication of the former he writes *tz*. In the Modern High German the second species has only retained the sibilant, but in writing is distinguished, though not universally, from *s* proper. Etymologically, both species of the Old and Middle High German *z* fall under the same head, and correspond to the Gothic *t*.

(3.) The labials are, in Gothic, *p*, *f*, *b*, with their nasal

---

\* Our Modern High German *th* is, according to Grimm, (p. 525,) inorganic, and to be rejected. "It is, neither in pronunciation nor origin, properly aspirated, and nothing but a mere *tenuis*."

*m.* The High German supplies this organ, as the Sanscrit does all, with a double aspiration, a surd ( $f = \text{ṣ} ph$ ) (see §. 25.) and a sonant, which is written *v*, and comes nearer to the Sanscrit  $\text{ṣ} bh$ . In Modern High German we perceive no longer any phonetic difference between *f* and *v*; but in Middle High German *v* shews itself in this manner softer than *f*, in that, first, at the end of words it is transformed into *f*, on the same principle by which, in such a position, the medials are converted into tenues; for instance, *wolf* not *wolv*, but genitive *wolves*; second, that in the middle before surd consonants it becomes *f*, hence *zwelve* becomes *zwelfte*, *fünve* becomes *funfte*, *funfzic*. At the beginning of words *f* and *v*, in Middle High German, seem of equal signification, and their use in the MSS. is precarious, but *v* preponderates (Grimm, pp. 339, 400.) It is the same in Old High German; yet Notker uses *f* as the original primarily existing breath-sound, and *v* as the softer or sonant aspiration, and therefore employs the latter in cases where the preceding word concludes with one of those letters, which otherwise (§. 93.) soften down a tenuis to its medial (Grimm, pp. 135, 136); for instance, *demo vater*, *den vater*, but not *des vater* but *des fater*. So far the rule is less stringent (observes Grimm), that in all the prescribed cases it changes the *v* to *f*, but the converse is not invariable. Many Old High German authorities abandon altogether the initiatory *v*, and write *f* for it constantly, namely, Kero, Otfrid, Tatian. The aspiration of the *p* is sometimes, in Old High German, also rendered by *ph*, but, in general, only at the beginning of words of foreign origin, *phorta*, *phenning*; in the middle, and at the end occasionally, in true Germanic forms, such as *wërphan*, *warph*, *wurphumés* in Tatian; *limphan* in Otfrid and Tatian. According to Grimm, *ph*, in many cases, has had the mere sound of *f*. "In monumental inscriptions, however, which usually employ *f*, the *ph* of many words had indisputably the sound of *pf*; for example, if Otfrid

*kh*, which is wanting in the Gothic. In this manner is *aih* related to *aigum*, "we have," *bauth* to *budum*, and *gaf* to *gēbum*. Probably the pronunciation of the Gothic *h* was not in all positions the same, but in terminations, and before *t* and *s*, if not generally before consonants, corresponded to our *ch*. The High German has *ch* as an aspirate of the *k*; for this *tenuis*, however, either *k* or *c* stands in the older dialects, the use of which, in Middle High German, is so distinguished, that *c* stands as a terminating letter, and in the middle of words before *t*, and *ch* also stands for a double *k*. (Grimm, p. 422.) This distinction reminds us of the use of the Zend *ϙ* *c* in contrast to *ϑ* *k*, as also of the *ϕ* *t* in contrast to *ϕ* *t*. (§§. 34. 38.)

(2.) The palatals and linguals are wanting in Gothic, as in Greek and Latin; the dentals are, in Gothic, *t*, *th*, *d*, together with their nasal *n*. For *th* the Gothic alphabet has a special character. In the High German *z* (= *ts*) fills the place of the aspiration of the *t*, so that the breathing is replaced by the sibilation. By the side of this *z* in the Old High German, the old Gothic *th* also maintains its existence.\* There are two species of *z*, which, in Middle High German, do not agree with each other. In the one *t* has the preponderance, in the other *s*; and this latter is written by Isidor *zs*, and its reduplication *zss*, while the reduplication of the former he writes *tz*. In the Modern High German the second species has only retained the sibilant, but in writing is distinguished, though not universally, from *s* proper. Etymologically, both species of the Old and Middle High German *z* fall under the same head, and correspond to the Gothic *t*.

(3.) The labials are, in Gothic, *p*, *f*, *b*, with their nasal

---

\* Our Modern High German *th* is, according to Grimm, (p. 525,) inorganic, and to be rejected. "It is, neither in pronunciation nor origin, properly aspirated, and nothing but a mere *tenuis*."

*m.* The High German supplies this organ, as the Sanscrit does all, with a double aspiration, a surd ( $f = \text{ṣ} ph$ ) (see §. 25.) and a sonant, which is written *v*, and comes nearer to the Sanscrit  $\text{ṣ} bh$ . In Modern High German we perceive no longer any phonetic difference between *f* and *v*; but in Middle High German *v* shews itself in this manner softer than *f*, in that, first, at the end of words it is transformed into *f*, on the same principle by which, in such a position, the medials are converted into tenses; for instance, *wolf* not *wolv*, but genitive *wolves*; second, that in the middle before surd consonants it becomes *f*, hence *zwelve* becomes *zwelfte*, *fünve* becomes *funfte*, *funfzic*. At the beginning of words *f* and *v*, in Middle High German, seem of equal signification, and their use in the MSS. is precarious, but *v* preponderates (Grimm, pp. 339, 400.) It is the same in Old High German; yet Notker uses *f* as the original primarily existing breath-sound, and *v* as the softer or sonant aspiration, and therefore employs the latter in cases where the preceding word concludes with one of those letters, which otherwise (§. 93.) soften down a tenuis to its medial (Grimm, pp. 135, 136); for instance, *demo vater*, *den vater*, but not *des vater* but *des fater*. So far the rule is less stringent (observes Grimm), that in all the prescribed cases it changes the *v* to *f*, but the converse is not invariable. Many Old High German authorities abandon altogether the initiatory *v*, and write *f* for it constantly, namely, Kero, Otfrid, Tatian. The aspiration of the *p* is sometimes, in Old High German, also rendered by *ph*, but, in general, only at the beginning of words of foreign origin, *phorta*, *phenning*; in the middle, and at the end occasionally, in true Germanic forms, such as *wërphan*, *warph*, *wurphumê*s in Tatian; *limphan* in Otfrid and Tatian. According to Grimm, *ph*, in many cases, has had the mere sound of *f*. "In monumental inscriptions, however, which usually employ *f*, the *ph* of many words had indisputably the sound of *pf*; for example, if Otfrid

writes *kuphar*, "*cuprum*," *scepheri*, "Creator," we are not to assume that these words were pronounced *kufar*, *sceferi*" (p. 132). In Middle High German the initial *ph* of foreign words of the Old High German has become *pf* (Grimm, p. 326). In the middle and at the end we find *pf*, first, always after *m*, *kampf*, "*pugna*," *tampf*, "*vapor*," *krempfen*, "*contrahere*." In this case *p* is an euphonic appendage to *f*, in order to facilitate a union with *m*; second, in compounds with the inseparable preposite *ent*, which, before the labial aspirates, lays aside its *t*, or, as seems to me the sounder supposition, converts that letter, by assimilation, into the labial tenuis. Hence, for instance, *enp-finden*, later and more harmonious *emp-finden*, for *ent-finden*. Standing alone, nevertheless, it appears, in Middle High German, *vinden*, but *v* does not combine with *p*, for after the surd *p* the surd aspirate is necessary (see Grimm, p. 398). Thirdly, after short vowels the labial aspirates are apt to precede their tenses, as well in the middle as at the end of words: just as in Sanscrit (Gramm. Crit. r. 88.) the palatal surd aspirate between a short and another vowel or semi-vowel is preceded by its tenuis; and, for instance, पृच्छति *prichchhati* is said for पृच्छति *prichhati*, "*interrogat*," from the root प्रच्छ् *prachh*. Thus I conceive the Middle High German forms *kopf*, *kropf*, *tropfe*, *klopfen*, *kripfen*, *kapfen* (Grimm, p. 398). In the same words we sometimes find *ff*, as *kaffen*, *schuffen*. Here, also, *p* has assimilated itself to the following *f*; for *f*, even though it be the aspirate of *p*, is not pronounced like the Sanscrit पृ *ph*, that is, like *p* with a clearly perceptible *h*; but the sounds *p* and *h* are compounded into a third simple sound lying between the two, which is therefore capable of reduplication, as in Greek φ unites itself with θ, while *ph* + *th* would be impossible.

(4.) The Sanscrit semi-vowels are represented in Gothic by *j* (= *y*), *r*, *l*, *v*; the same in High German; only in Old High German Manuscripts the sound of the Indo-Gothic *v*

(our *u*) is most usually represented by *uu*, in Middle High German by *vv*: *j* in both is written *i*. We agree with Grimm in using *j* and *u* for all periods of the High German. After an initial consonant in Old High German, the semi-vowel *u* in most authorities is expressed by *u*; for instance, *xuelif*, "twelve," Gothic *twalif*; as in the Sanscrit and Zend the semi-vowels *y* (= *j*) and *v* often arise out of the corresponding vowels *i* and *u*, so also in the Germanic; for instance, Gothic *suniv-ē*, "*filiolum*," from the base *sunu*, with *u* affected by *guna* (*iu*, §. 27.). More usually, however, in the Germanic, the converse occurs, namely, that *j* and *v*, at terminations and before consonants, have become vowelized (see §. 72.), and have only retained their original form before terminations beginning with a vowel; for if, for instance, *thius*, "servant," forms *thivis* in the genitive, we know, from the history of the word, that this *v* has not sprung from the *u* of the nominative, but that *thius* is a mutilation of *thivas* (§. 116.); so that after the lapse of the *a* the preceding semi-vowel has become a whole one. In like manner is *thivi*, "maid-servant," a mutilation of the base *thivjō* (§. 120.), whose nominative, like the accusative, probably was *thivja*, for which, however, in the accusative, after the *v* had become vowelized, *thivja* was substituted.

(5.) Of the Sanscrit sibilants, the Germanic has only the last, namely, the pure dental *ṣ*. Out of this, however, springs another, peculiar, at least in use, to the Gothic, which is written *z*, and had probably a softer pronunciation. This *z* is most usually found between two vowels, as an euphonic alteration of *s*, but sometimes also between a vowel and *v*, *l*, or *n*; and between liquids (*l*, *r*, *n*) and a vowel, *j* or *n*, in some words also before *d*; finally, before the guttural medial, in the single instance, *azgō*, "ashes"; everywhere thus before sonants, and it must therefore itself be considered as a sonant sibilant, §. 25, while

*s* is the surd. It is remarkable, in a grammatical view, that a concluding *s* before the enclitic particles *ei* and *uh*, and before the passive addition *a*, passes into *z*; hence, for instance, *thizei* “*cujus*,” from *this* “*hujus*,” *thanzei* “*quos*,” from *thans* “*hos*,” *vileizuh* “*visne*,” out of *vileis* “*vis*,” *haitaza* “*vocaris*,” out of *haitis* “*vocas*,” or rather out of its earlier form *haitas*. The root *slép*, “to sleep,” forms, by a reduplication, in the preterite, *saizlép*, “I or he slept.” Other examples are, *izvis*, “*vobis*,” “*vos*,” *razn*, “house,” *talxjan*, “to teach,” *marxjan*, “to provoke,” *fairzna*, “heel.” The High German loves the softening of *s* into *r*, especially between two vowels (see §. 22.); but this change has not established itself as a pervading law, and does not extend over all parts of the Grammar. For instance, in Old High German, the final *s* of several roots has changed itself into *r* before the preterite terminations which commence with a vowel; on the other hand, it has remained unaltered in the uninflected first and third pers. sing. indicative, and also before the vowels of the present. For instance, from the root *lus*, comes *liusu*, “I lose,” *lós*, “I or he lost,” *lurumés*, “we lost.” While in these cases the termination takes *s* under its protection, yet the *s* of the nominative singular, where it has not been altogether dropped, is everywhere softened down to *r*; and, on the other hand, the concluding *s* of the genitive has, down to our time, remained unaltered, and thus an organic difference has arisen between two cases originally distinguished by a similar suffix. For instance,

	GOthic.	OLD HIGH GERMAN.	MODERN HIGH GERMAN.
Nominative . .	<i>blind'-s,</i>	<i>plintê-r,</i>	<i>blinde-r.</i>
Genitive . . .	<i>blindi-s,</i>	<i>plinte-s,</i>	<i>blinde-s.</i>

87. The Germanic tongues exhibit, in respect of consonants, a remarkable law of displacement, which has been first recognised and developed with great ability by Grimm. According to this law, the Gothic, and the other dialects,



with the exception of the High German, in relation to the Greek, Latin, and, with certain limits, also to the Sanscrit and Zend, substitute aspirates for the original tenues, *h* for *k*, *th* for *t*, and *f* for *p*; tenues for medials, *t* for *d*, *p* for *b*, and *k* for *g*; finally, medials for aspirates, *g* for *χ*, *d* for *θ*, and *b* for *φ*. The High German bears the same regular relation to the Gothic as the latter to the Greek, and substitutes its aspirates for the Gothic tenues and Greek medials; its tenues for the Gothic medials and Greek aspirates; and its medials for the Gothic aspirates and Greek tenues. Yet the Gothic labial and guttural medial exhibits itself unaltered in most of the Old High German authorities, as in the Middle and Modern High German; for instance, Gothic *biuga*, "*flecto*," Old High German *biugu* and *piuku*, Middle High German *biuge*, Modern High German *biege*. For the Gothic *f*, the Old High German substitutes *v*, especially as a first letter (§. 86. 3). In the *t* sounds, *z* in High German (= *ts*) replaces an aspirate. The Gothic has no aspiration of the *k*, and either replaces the Greek *κ* by the simple aspiration *h*, in which case it sometimes coincides with the Sanscrit *क्* *h*; or it falls to the level of the High German, and, in the middle or end of words, usually gives *g* instead of *k*, the High German adhering, as regards the beginning of words, to the Gothic practice, and participating with that dialect in the use of the *h*. We give here Grimm's table, illustrating the law of these substitutions, p. 584.

Greek . . . . .	<i>P</i>	<i>B</i> <i>F</i>	<i>T</i> <i>D</i> <i>Th</i>	<i>K</i> <i>G</i> <i>Ch</i>
Gothic . . . . .	<i>F</i>	<i>P</i> <i>B</i>	<i>Th</i> <i>T</i> <i>D</i>	<i>K</i> <i>G</i>
Old High German, <i>B</i> ( <i>V</i> )	<i>F</i> <i>P</i>	<i>D</i> <i>Z</i> <i>T</i>	<i>G</i> <i>Ch</i> <i>K</i>	

## EXAMPLES.\*

SANSKRIT.	GREEK.	LATIN.	GOthic.	OLD HIGH GERM.
पादस् <i>pāda-s</i> ,	πούς, ποδ-ός,	<i>pes, pedis</i> ,	<i>fōtus</i> ,	<i>vuoz</i> .
पञ्चन् <i>panchan</i> ,	πέμπε,	<i>quinque</i> ,	<i>finf</i> ,	<i>vinf</i> .
पूर्णं <i>pūrṇa</i> ,	πλέος,	<i>plenus</i> ,	<i>fulls</i> ,	<i>vol</i> .
पितृ <i>pitri</i> ,	πατήρ,	<i>pater</i> ,	<i>fadrein</i> <sup>†</sup> ,	<i>vatar</i> .
उपरि <i>upari</i> ,	ὑπέρ,	<i>super</i> ,	<i>ufar</i> ,	<i>ubar</i> .
	κάνναβις,	<i>cannabis</i> ,	. .	<i>hanaf</i> .
भञ्ज <i>bhanj</i> ,	. .	<i>frangere</i> ,	<i>brikan</i> ,	<i>prēchan</i> .
भुज् <i>bhuḥj</i> ,	. .	<i>frui, fructus</i> ,	<i>brūkōn</i> ,	<i>prūchōn</i> .
भ्रातृ <i>bhrātri</i> ,	. .	<i>frater</i>	<i>brōthar</i> ,	<i>pruoder</i> .
भृ <i>bhri</i> ,	φέρω,	<i>fero</i> ,	<i>baira</i> ,	<i>piru</i> .
भू <i>bhrū</i> ,	ὀφρύς,	. .	. .	<i>prawa</i> .
कपाल <i>kapāla</i> , m. n.,	κεφαλή,	<i>caput</i> ,	<i>haubith</i> ,	<i>houpit</i> .
त्वम् <i>tvam</i> (nom.),	τύ,	. .	<i>thu</i> ,	<i>du</i> .
तम् <i>tam</i> (acc.),	τόν,	<i>is-tum</i> ,	<i>thana</i> ,	<i>dēn</i> .
त्रयस् <i>trayas</i> (n. pl.),	τρεῖς,	<i>tres</i> ,	<i>threis</i> ,	<i>drī</i> .
अन्तर <i>antara</i> ,	ἕτερος,	<i>alter</i> ,	<i>anthar</i> ,	<i>andar</i> .
दन्तम् <i>danta-m</i> (acc.),	ὀδόντ-α,	<i>dentem</i> ,	<i>thuntu-s</i> ,	<i>zand</i> .
द्वौ <i>dvau</i> (n. du),	δύο,	<i>duo</i> ,	<i>tvai</i> ,	<i>zuēné</i> .
दक्षिणा <i>dakshinā</i> ,	δεξιά,	<i>dextra</i> ,	<i>taihsvō</i> ,	<i>zēsawa</i> .
उद <i>uda</i> ,	ὔδωρ,	<i>unda</i> ,	<i>vatō</i> ,	<i>wazar</i> .
दुहितृ <i>duhitri</i> ,	θυγάτηρ,	. .	<i>daughtar</i> ,	<i>tohtar</i> .
द्वार <i>dvār</i> ,	θύρα,	<i>fores</i> ,	<i>daur</i> ,	<i>tor</i> .
मधु <i>madhu</i> ,	μέθυ,	. .	. .	<i>mēto</i> .
श्वन् <i>śvan</i> ,	κύων,	<i>canis</i> ,	<i>hunths</i> ,	<i>hund</i> .
हृदय <i>hridaya</i> ,	καρδία,	<i>cor</i> ,	<i>hairtō</i> ,	<i>hērza</i> .
अक्ष <i>aksha</i> ,	ὄκος,	<i>oculus</i> ,	<i>augō</i> ,	<i>ouga</i> .
अश्रु <i>asru</i> ,	δάκρυ,	<i>lacrima</i> ,	<i>tagr m.</i> ,	<i>zahar</i> .
पशु <i>paśu</i> ,	. .	<i>pecus</i> ,	<i>faihu</i> ,	<i>vihu</i> .

\* The Sanscrit words here stand, where the termination is not separated from the base, or the case not indicated, in their crude or simple form (thema); of the verb, we give only the naked root.

† "Parents."

SANSKRIT.	GREEK.	LATIN.	GOOTHIC.	OLD HIGH GERM.
श्वशुर <i>śvaśura</i> ,	ἐκυρός,	<i>socer</i> ,	<i>svaihra</i> ,	<i>suehur</i> .
दशन् <i>daśan</i> ,	δέκα,	<i>decem</i> ,	<i>taihun</i> ,	<i>zëhan</i> .
ज्ञा <i>jñā</i> ,	γνῶμι,	<i>gnosco</i> ,	<i>kan</i> ,	<i>chan</i> .
जाति <i>jāti</i> *,	γένος,	<i>genus</i> ,	<i>kuni</i> ,	<i>chuni</i> .
जानु <i>jānu</i> ,	γόνυ,	<i>genu</i> ,	<i>kniu</i> ,	<i>chniu</i> .
महत् <i>mahat</i> ,	μέγαλος,	<i>magnus</i> ,	<i>mikils</i> ,	<i>mihil</i> .
हंस <i>haṇsa</i> ,	χήν,	<i>anser</i> ,	<i>gans</i> ,	<i>kans</i> .
ह्यस् <i>hyas</i> ,	χθές,	<i>heri</i> ,	<i>gistra</i> ,	<i>këstar</i> .
लिह् <i>lih</i> ,	λείχω,	<i>lingo</i> ,	<i>laigô</i> ,	<i>lëkôm</i> .

88. The Lithuanian has left the consonants without displacement in their old situations, only, from its deficiency in aspirates, substituting simple tenues for the Sanscrit aspirated tenues, and medials for the aspirated medials. Compare,

LITHUANIAN.	SANSKRIT.
<i>rata-s</i> , "wheel,"	रथस् <i>ratha-s</i> , "waggon."
<i>bûsu</i> , "I would be,"	भविष्यामि <i>bhavishyāmi</i> .
<i>ka-s</i> , "who,"	कस् <i>ka-s</i> .
<i>dūmi</i> , "I give,"	ददामि <i>dadāmi</i> .
<i>pats</i> , "husband," "master,"	पतिस् <i>pati-s</i> .
<i>penki</i> , "five,"	पञ्चन् <i>panchan</i> .
<i>trys</i> , "three,"	त्रयस् <i>trayas</i> (n. pl. m.)
<i>keturi</i> , "four,"	चत्वारस् <i>chatvāras</i> (n. pl. m.)
<i>ketvirtas</i> , "the fourth,"	चतुर्थस् <i>chaturtha-s</i> .
<i>szakà</i> , f. "bough,"	शाखा <i>śākhā</i> .

Irregular deviations occur, as might be expected, in individual cases. Thus, for instance, *naga-s*, "nail" (of the foot or finger), not *naka-s*, answers to the Sanscrit नखस् *nakhas*. The Zend stands, as we have before remarked, in the same rank, in all essential respects, as the Sanscrit,

\* From *jan*, "to be born."



GOTHIC.	ZEND.
<i>thu</i> , "thou,"	𐬢𐬀𐬭𐬀 <i>túm.</i>
<i>fidvôr</i> , (ind.) "four,"	𐬫𐬀𐬯𐬭𐬀𐬢𐬀 <i>chathwârô</i> (n. pl. m.)
<i>fimf</i> ,	𐬫𐬀𐬯𐬭𐬀𐬢𐬀 <i>pancha.</i>
<i>fulls</i> , "full,"	𐬫𐬀𐬯𐬭𐬀𐬢𐬀 <i>përĕnô</i> (n. m.)
<i>fadrein</i> , "parents,"	𐬫𐬀𐬯𐬭𐬀𐬢𐬀 <i>paitar-ĕm</i> ( <i>patrem</i> ).
<i>faths</i> , "master,"	𐬫𐬀𐬯𐬭𐬀𐬢𐬀 <i>paiti-s.</i>
<i>faihu</i> , "beast,"	𐬫𐬀𐬯𐬭𐬀𐬢𐬀 <i>pašu-s.</i>
<i>farjith</i> , "he wanders,"	𐬫𐬀𐬯𐬭𐬀𐬢𐬀 <i>charaiti.</i>
<i>fôtu-s</i> , "foot,"	𐬫𐬀𐬯𐬭𐬀𐬢𐬀 <i>pâdha</i> (§. 39.)
<i>fraihiþ</i> , "he asks,"	𐬫𐬀𐬯𐬭𐬀𐬢𐬀 <i>përĕsaiti.</i>
<i>ufar</i> , "over,"	𐬫𐬀𐬯𐬭𐬀𐬢𐬀 <i>upairi</i> , (§. 41.)
<i>af</i> , "from,"	𐬫𐬀𐬯𐬭𐬀𐬢𐬀 <i>apa.</i>
<i>thai</i> , "these,"	𐬫𐬀𐬯𐬭𐬀𐬢𐬀 <i>tê.</i>
<i>hvas</i> , "who,"	𐬫𐬀𐬯𐬭𐬀𐬢𐬀 <i>kô.</i>
<i>twai</i> , "two,"	𐬫𐬀𐬯𐬭𐬀𐬢𐬀 <i>dva.</i>
<i>taihun</i> , "ten,"	𐬫𐬀𐬯𐬭𐬀𐬢𐬀 <i>daša.</i>
<i>taihsvô</i> , "right hand,"	𐬫𐬀𐬯𐬭𐬀𐬢𐬀 <i>dashina</i> , "dexter."

In the Sanscrit and Zend the sonant aspirates (even *h* is sonant, see §. 25.) correspond, according to rule, to the Gothic medials, not to the mute, as in Greek : as, however, in the Zend the *bh* is not found, *u b* answers to the Gothic *b*. Compare,

GOTHIC.	ZEND.	SANSKRIT.
<i>bairith</i> , "he carries,"	𐬫𐬀𐬯𐬭𐬀𐬢𐬀 <i>baraiti,</i>	बिभर्ति <i>bibharti.</i>
<i>brôthar</i> , "brother,"	𐬫𐬀𐬯𐬭𐬀𐬢𐬀 <i>brâtareĕm</i> (acc.)	भ्रातरम् <i>bhrâtaram</i> (acc.)
<i>bai</i> , "both,"	𐬫𐬀𐬯𐬭𐬀𐬢𐬀 <i>uba,</i>	उभौ <i>ubhâu</i> (n. ac.v. du.)
<i>brûkan</i> , "to use,"		भुज् <i>bhuj</i> , "essen."
<i>bi</i> (prep.)	𐬫𐬀𐬯𐬭𐬀𐬢𐬀 <i>abi</i> , 𐬫𐬀𐬯𐬭𐬀𐬢𐬀 <i>aimi,</i>	अभि <i>abhi.</i>
<i>midja</i> , "middling,"	𐬫𐬀𐬯𐬭𐬀𐬢𐬀 <i>maidhya,</i>	मध्य <i>madhya.</i>
<i>bindan</i> , "bind,"	𐬫𐬀𐬯𐬭𐬀𐬢𐬀 <i>bandh,</i>	बन्ध् <i>bandh.</i>

89. Violations of the law of displacement of sounds, both by persistence in the same, or the substitution of irregular sounds, are frequent in the middle and at the end of words.

Thus, in the Old High German *vatar*, the *t* of the Greek *πατήρ* remains; in the Gothic *fadrein*, "*parentes*," *d* is substituted irregularly for *th*. The same phenomenon occurs in the cases of the Old High German *alpenta*, and the Gothic *ulbandus*, *ἐλεφанта*; thus, also, the *t* of चतुर् *chatur*, "*quatuor*," has become the *d* in the Gothic *fidvōr* instead of *th*; but in High German has entirely disappeared. The *p* of the Sanscrit root स्वप् *svap*, (Latin *sopio*,) "*sleep*," has been preserved in the Gothic *slēpa*, and the Old High German *slāfu* stands in the Gothic category, but the Sanscrit root is more faithfully preserved in the Old High German in *in-suepju* (*sopio*, see §. 86. 4.)

90. Nor have the flexions or grammatical appendages everywhere submitted to the law of displacement, but have, in many instances, either remained faithful to the primary sound, or have, at least, rejected the particular change prescribed by §. 87. Thus the Old High German has, in the third person, as well singular as plural, retained the original *t*; compare *hapēt*, "*he has*," *hapēnt*, "*they have*," with *habet*, *habent*: the Gothic, on the contrary, says *habaiθ*, *haband*; the first in accordance with the law, the last in violation of it, for *habanθ*. Thus, also, in the part. pres., the *t* of the old languages has become, under the influence of the preceding *n*, not *th* but *d*; the *t* of the part. pass., however, is changed before the *s* of the nom. into *th*, but before vowel terminations, by an anomalous process, into *d*; after the same principle by which the *th* of the third person before the vowel increment of the passive is softened to *d*; so that *da*, instead of *tha*, corresponds to the Greek *το*, of *ἐτύπτετ-ο*, and to the Sanscrit *त* *ta*, of *अभवत्* *abhavata*. The Old High German, on the other hand, has preserved the original *t* in both participles: *hapēntēr*, *hapēlēr*, Gothic *habands*, genitive *habandins*; *habaiθs*, gen. *habaidis*.

91. Special notice is due to the fact, that in the middle of words under the protection of a preceding consonant,

the old consonant often remains without displacement, sometimes because it chimes in well with the preceding sound, sometimes because, in regard for the preceding letters, alterations have been admitted other than those which the usual practice as to displacement would lead us to expect. Mute consonants (§. 25.), among which, in the Germanic, the *h* must be reckoned, where it is to be pronounced like our *ch*, protect a succeeding original *t*. Thus, अष्टौ *ashtaú*, "eight," ὀκτώ, "*octo*," is in Goth. *ahtau*, in Old High German *ahtô*: नक्तम् *naktam* (adverbial accusative), "night," νύξ, νυκτός, "*nox*," "*noctis*," is in Gothic *nahts*, Old High German *naht*. The liquids, on the other hand, like the vowels, which they approach nearest of all consonants, affect a *d* or *th* after themselves. From these euphonic causes, for instance, the feminine suffix *ति* in Sanscrit, in Greek *σις*, as ποίησις, which designates abstract substantives, appears in Gothic in three forms, *ti*, *di*, and *thi*. The original form *ti* shews itself after *f*, into which *p* and *b* mostly resolve themselves, and also after *s* and *h*; for instance, *anst(i)s* (§. 117.), "grace," from the root *an*, Old High German *unnan*, "to be gracious," with the insertion of an euphonic *s*: *fralust(i)s*, "loss," (from *lus*, pres. *liusā*): *maht(i)s*, "strength," (from *magan*): *fra-gift(i)s*, "betrothment," (from *gib*, *gaf*), also *fragibts*, perhaps erroneously, as *b* has little affinity with *t*: *ga-skaf(i)s*, "creation," (from *skap-an*.) The form *di* finds its place after vowels, but is able, where the vowel of the suffix falls away, *i. e.* in the nom. and accus. sing., to convert *d* into *th*, because *th* can, more easily than *d*, dispense with a following vowel, and is converted at the end of words and before consonants, even if *d* be tolerated in such a position. Hence the root *bud*, "to bid," (pres. *biuda*, §. 27.) forms, in the uninflected condition of the pret., *bauth*, in the plur. *bud-um*; and the nominal base, *mana-sê-di*, "world," (according to Grimm's well-founded interpretation, "seed, not seat, of man,") forms in the nom.

and accus. *mana-sêths*, *mana-sêth*, or *mana-sêds*, *mana-sêd*; but in the dat. *mana-sêdai*, not *sêthai*. On the other hand, after liquids the suffix is usually *thi*, and after *n*, *di*: the dental, however, once chosen, remains afterwards in every position, without a vowel as before vowels; for instance, *gabaurths*, "birth," dat. *gabaurthai*; *gafaurds*, "gathering" (from *far-jan*, "to go"), gen. *gafaurdais*; *gakunths*, "esteem," gen. *gakunthais*; *gamunds*, "memory," gen. *gamundais*; *ga-gvumths*, "meeting," dat. *gaqvumthai*, dat. plur. *gaqvumthim*. From the union with *m*, *d* is excluded. On the whole, however, the law here discussed accords remarkably with a similar phenomenon in modern Persian, where the original *t* of grammatical terminations and suffixes is maintained only after mute consonants, but after vowels and liquids is changed into *d*: hence, for instance, *girif-ten*, "to take," *bes-ten*, "to bind," *dâsh-ten*, "to have," *pukh-ten*, "to cook": on the other hand, *dâ-den*, "to give," *ber-den*, "to bear," *âm-den*, "to come." I do not, therefore, hesitate to release the Germanic suffix *ti*, and all other suffixes originally commencing with *t*, from the general law of substitution of sounds, and to assign the lot of this *t* entirely to the controul of the preceding letter. The Old High German, in the case of our suffix *ti*, as in that of other suffixes and terminations originally commencing with *t*, accords with the original *t* a far more extensive prevalence than does the Gothic; inasmuch as it retains that letter, not only when protected by *s*, *h*, and *f*, but also after vowels and liquids—after *m* an euphonic *f* is inserted;—and the *t* is only changed after *l* into *d*. Hence, for instance, "*ans-t*, "grace," *hlouft*, *lauf*, "course," *maht-t*, *macht*, "might," *sâ-t*, "seed," *kipurt*, *geburt*, "birth," *var-t*, "journey," *mun-t*, "protection," *ki-mal-t*, *gewalt*, "force," *scul-t*, *schuld*, "guilt," *chumft*, "arrival."

92. The law of substitution shews the greatest pertinacity at the beginning of words, and I have found it every-



where observed in the relation of the Gothic to the Greek and Latin. On the other hand, in some roots which are either deficient or disfigured in the Old European languages, but which are common to the Germanic and the Sanscrit, the Gothic stands on the same footing with the Sanscrit, especially in respect of initial medials. Thus, बन्ध् *bandh*, "to bind," is also *band* in Gothic, not *pand*; ग्रह् *grah*, in the Vedas ग्रब् *grabh*, "to take," "seize," is *grip* (pres. *greipa* with Guna, §. 27.) not *krip*;\* गा *gā* and गम् *gam*, "to go," correspond with *gagga*, "I go," and *ga-tvō*, "street;" दह् *dah*, "to burn," is, in Old High German, *dahan* (δαῖω), "to burn," "to light." I can detect, however, no instance in which Gothic tenues correspond to Sanscrit as initial letters.

93. We return now to the Sanscrit, in order, with relation to the most essential laws of sound, to notice one adverted to in our theory of single letters; where it was said of several concurrent consonants that they were tolerated neither at the end of words, nor in the middle before strong consonants, and how their places were supplied in such situations. It is besides to be observed, that, properly, tenues alone can terminate a Sanscrit word; but medials, only before sonants, (§. 25.) can either be retained, if they originally terminate an inflective base, or take the place of a tenuis or an aspirate, if these happen to precede sonants in a sentence. As examples, we select हरिः *harit*, (*viridis*), "green," वेदविद् *vêda-vid*, "skilled in the Vêda," धनलभ् *dhana-labh*, "acquiring wealth." These words are, according to §. 94, without a nominative sign. We find, also, अस्ति हरिः *asti harit*, "he is green," अस्ति वेदवित् *asti vêda-vit*, अस्ति धनलप् *asti dhana-lap*; on the other hand, हरिद् अस्ति *harid asti*, वेदविद् अस्ति *vedavid asti*, धनलप् अस्ति *dhana-lab asti*; also, हरिद् भवति

---

\* The Latin *prehendo* is probably related to the Sanscrit root ग्रह् *grah*, through the usual interchange between gutturals and labials.

*harid bhavati*, &c. With this Sanscrit law the Middle High German is very nearly in accordance, which indeed tolerates aspirates at the end of words, contrary to the custom of the Sanscrit, only with a conversion of the sonant *v* into the mute *f*, see §. 86. 3.; but, like the Sanscrit, and independent of the law of displacement explained in §. 87, supplies the place of medials at the end of words regularly by tenses. As, for example, in the genitives *tages*, *eides*, *wibes*, of which the nom. and accus. sing., deprived of the inflexion and the terminating vowel of the base, take the forms *tac*, (§. 86. 1.) *eit*, *wip*. So also as to the verb; for instance, the roots *trag*, *lad*, *grab*, form, in the uninflected 1st and 3d pers. sing. pret., *truoc*, *luot*, *gruop*, plur. *truogen*, *luoden*, *gruoben*. Where, on the other hand, the tenuis or aspirate (*v* excepted) is radical, there no alteration of sound occurs in declension or in conjugation. For instance, *wort*, gen. *wortes*, not *wordes*, as in Sansc. ददन् *dadat*, "the giver," gen. ददन्स् *dadatas*, not ददद्स् *dadadas*, but विन् *vit*, "knowing," gen. विद्स् *vidas*, from the base विद् *vid*. In Old High German different monuments of the language are at variance with respect to the strict observance of this law. Isidor is in accordance with it, insomuch that he converts *d* at the end into *t*, and *g* into *c*; for instance, *wort*, *wordes*; *dac*, *dages*. The Gothic excludes only the labial medials from terminations, but replaces them, not by tenses, but by aspirates. Hence *gaf*, "I gave," in contrast to *gēbum*, and the accusatives *hlaif*, *lauf*, *thiuf*, opposed to the nominatives *hlaibs*, *laubs*, *thiubs*, gen. *hlaibis*, &c. The guttural and dental medials (*g*, *d*) are tolerated by the Gothic in terminations; yet even in these, in individual cases, a preference appears for the terminating aspirates. Compare *bauth*, "I or he offered," with *budum*, "we offered," from the root *bud*; *hailad-a* "nominatur" with *haitith* (§. 67.) "nominat;" *aih*, "I have," "he has," with *aigum*, "we have."

93. In a sense also opposed to that of the above-men-

tioned Sanscrit law, we find, in Old High German, yet only in Notker, an euphonic relation between terminating and initial letters of two words which come together. (Grimm pp. 130, 138, 181.) As in Sanscrit the tenuis appears as an essential consonant, fit for the conclusion of a sentence, but exchangeable, under the influence of a word following in a sentence, for the medials; so with Notker the tenuis ranks as a true initial; stands therefore at the beginning of a sentence, and after strong consonants; but after vowels and the weakest consonants the liquid is turned into a medial. Thus, for instance, *ih pin*, "I am," but *ih ne bin*; *ter dag*, "the day," but *tes tages*; *mit Kote*, "with God," but *minan Gott*, "my God."

94. Two consonants are no longer, in the existing condition of the Sanscrit, tolerated at the end of a word, but the latter of the two is rejected. This emasculation, which must date from an epoch subsequent to the division of the language, as this law is not recognised either by the Zend or by any of the European branches of the family, has had, in many respects, a disadvantageous operation on the Grammar, and has mutilated many forms of antiquity required by theory. In the High German we may view, as in some degree connected with this phenomenon, the circumstance that roots with double liquids—*ll*, *mm*, *nn*, *rr*—in forms which are indeclinable (and before the consonants of inflexions) reject the latter of the pair. In the case, also, of terminations in double *h* or *t*, one is rejected. Hence, for instance, from *stihhu* (*pungo*), *arprittu* (*stringo*), the 1st and 3d pers. pret. *stah*, *ar-prat*. In Middle High German, in declensions in *ck*, *ff*, the last is rejected; for instance, *boc*, gen. *bockes*; *grif*, *griffes*: *tz* loses the *t*; for instance, *schaz*, *schatzes*.

95. Between a terminating ण *n* and a succeeding *t* sound—as which the palatals also must be reckoned, for च *ch* is equivalent to *tsh*—in the Sanscrit an euphonic sibilant is

interposed, from the operation of the following *t*; and न्, by this sibilant, is converted, §. 9. into Anusvâra; for instance, अभवन् तत्र *abhavan̄s tatra*, (*abhavan̄-s-tatra*), "they were there." With this coincides the circumstance, that, in High German, between a radical *n* and the *t* of an affix, an *s*, in certain cases, is inserted; for instance, from the root *ann*, "to favour," comes, in Old High German, *an-s-t*, "thou favourest," *on-s-ta* or *onda*, "I favoured," *an-s-t*, "favour; from *prann* comes *prun-s-t*, "ardour"; from *chan* is derived *chun-s-t*, "knowledge," our German KUNST, in which, as in BRUNST and GUNST, (from GONNEN, probably formed from the *ann* before noticed, and the preposite *g(e)*), the euphonic *s* has stood fast. The Gothic exhibits this phenomenon nowhere, perhaps, but in *an-s-ts* and *allbrun-s-ts* 'holocaustum.' In Old High German we find still an *s* inserted after *r*, in the root *tarr*; hence, *tar-s-t*, "thou darest," *tor-s-ta*, "I dared."

96. In Sanscrit the interposed euphonic *s* has extended itself further only among the prefixed prepositions, which generally enter into most intimate and facile connection with the following root. In this manner the euphonic *s* steps in between the prepositions सम् *sam*, अव *ava*, परि *pari*, प्रति *prati*, and certain words which begin with क *k*. With this the Latin *s* between *ab* or *ob* and *c*, *q*, and *p*, remarkably accords\*, which *s*, *ab* retains even in an isolated position, when the above-mentioned letters follow. To this we also refer the *cosmittere* of Festus, instead of *committere* (Schneider, p. 475), unless an original *smitto*, for *mitto*, is involved in this compound. In the Greek, *ς* shews an inclination for connection with *τ*, *θ*, and *μ*, and precedes these letters as an euphonic link, especially after short vowels, in cases which require no special mention. In compounds like *σακες-πάλος* I reckon the *ς*, in opposition to the common theory, as belonging to the base of the first member (§. 128.).

\* We scarcely think it necessary to defend ourselves for dividing, with Vossius, *ob-solesco*, rather than with Schneider (p. 571.) *obs-olesco*.

We have yet to consider a case of the interpolation of an euphonic labial, which is common to the Old Latin and Germanic, and serves to facilitate the union of the labial nasal with a dental. The Latin places *p* between *m* and a following *t* or *s*; the Gothic and Old High German *f* between *m* and *t*. Thus, *sumpsi*, *prompsi*, *dempsi*, *sumptus*, *promptus*, *demptus*; Gothic *andanum-f-ts*, "acceptance"; Old High German *chum-f-t*, "arrival." In Greek we find also the interpolation of an euphonic  $\beta$  after  $\mu$ , of a  $\delta$  after  $\nu$ , of a  $\theta$  after  $\sigma$ , in order to facilitate the union of  $\mu$ ,  $\nu$ , and  $\sigma$  with  $\rho$  and  $\lambda$  (*μεσημβρία*, *μέμβλεται*, *ἀνδρός*, *ἰμάσθλη*—see Buttman, p. 80); while the Modern Persian places an euphonic *d* between the vowel of a prefixed preposition and that of the following word, as *be-d-ô*, "to him."

97. The Greek affords few specimens of variability at the end of words, excepting from peculiarities of dialect, as the substitution of  $\rho$  for  $\varsigma$ . The alteration of the  $\nu$  in the article in old inscriptions, and in the prefixes *σύν*, *έν*, and *πάλην*, seems analogous to the changes which, according to §. 18, the terminating  $\text{म्}$ , in Sanscrit, undergoes in all cases, with reference to the letter which follows. The concluding  $\nu$  in Greek is also generally a derivative from  $\mu$ , and corresponds to this letter, which the Greek never admits as a termination in analogous forms of the Sanscrit, Zend, and Latin. *N* frequently springs from a terminating  $\varsigma$ ; thus, for instance, *μεν* (Doric *μες*) and the dual *τον* answer to the Sanscrit personal terminations *मस् mas*, *थस् thas*, *तस् tas*. I have found this explanation, which I have given elsewhere, of the origin of the  $\nu$  from  $\varsigma$  subsequently confirmed by the Pracrit, in which, in like manner, the concluding *s* of the instrumental termination plural *भिस् bhis* has passed into the dull *ñ* (Anusvâra, §. 9.), and *हिं hin* is said for *bhis*. An operation, which has a prejudicial effect on many Greek terminations, and disturbs the relation to kindred languages, is the suppression of the *t*

sound at the end of words, where, in Sanscrit, Zend, and Latin it plays an essential part. In respect of the vowels, it is also worthy of notice, that in Sanscrit, but not in Zend, at the meeting of vowel terminations and commencements, a hiatus is guarded against, either by the fusion of the two vowels, or, in cases where the vowel has a kindred semi-vowel at its command, by its transition into this latter, provided the vowel following be unlike. We find, for instance, अस्तीद् *astīdam*, “*est hoc*,” and अस्त्य अयम् *asty ayam*, “*est hic*.” For the sake of clearness, and because the junction of two vowels might too often give the appearance of two or more words to one, I write in my most recent text अस्ती 'द्, in order, by an apostrophe which I employ as a sign of fusion, to indicate that the vowel which appears wanting in the द् *dam* is contained in the terminating vowel of the preceding word. We might, perhaps, still better write अस्ती~ 'द्, in order directly at the close of the first word to shew that its terminating vowel has arisen out of a contraction, and that the following word participates in it.\*

98. We have now to consider the alterations in the middle of words, i.e. those of the terminating letters of the roots and nominal bases before grammatical endings, and we find, with respect to these, most life, strength, and consciousness in the Sanscrit; and this language is placed on the highest point of antiquity, insomuch as the signification of every radical portion is still so strongly felt, that while it admits of moderate changes, for the avoiding of harshness, it never, if we except some vowel elisions, permits the radical sense to be obliterated, or

---

\* We cannot guide ourselves here by the original MSS., as these exhibit no separation of words, and entire verses are written together without interruption, as though they had only a series of senseless syllables, and no words of independent place and meaning. As we must depart from Indian practice, the more complete the more rational the separation.

rendered irrecongnisable by concessions too great, or transitions too daring. Yet does the Sanscrit, more than any of its kindred, afford a field for the conflict of unsociable consonants, a conflict, however, which is honourably and strenuously maintained. The Vowels and weak consonants (§. 25.) of grammatical endings and suffixes exert no influence over preceding consonants; but strong consonants, if surd (§. 25.), require a tenuis, and if sonant a medial, before them. Thus, *क्* *t* and *च्* *th* admit only, of gutturals, *क्* *k*, not *ख्* *kh*, *ग* *g*, *घ* *gh*; of dentals, only *त्* *t*, not *थ्* *th*, *द्* *d*, *ध* *dh*; while on the other hand, *ध* *dh* admits only *ग* *g*, not *क्* *k*, *ख्* *kh*, *घ* *gh*; or *द्* *d*, not *त्* *t*, *थ्* *th*, *ध* *dh*; or of labials, only *ब* *b*, not *प* *p*, *फ* *ph*, *भ* *bh*; before them respectively. The roots and the nominal bases have to regulate their terminating letters by this law; and the occasion frequently presents itself, since, in comparison with the kindred languages, a far greater proportion of the roots connect the personal terminations immediately with the root; and also among the case terminations there are many which begin with consonants (*भ्याम् bhyām*, *भिस् bhis*, *भ्यस् bhyas*, *सु su*). To cite instances, the root *अद् ad*, “to eat,” forms *अस्मि admi*, “I eat”; but not *अद्सि adsi* (for *s* is surd), nor *अद्ति ad-ti*, *अद्थ ad-tha*, but *अस्मि at-si*, *अस्मि at-ti*, *अत्थ at-tha*: on the other hand, in the imperative, *अद्धि ad-dhi*, “eat.” The base *पद् pad*, “foot,” forms, in the locative plural, *पासु pat-su*, not *पद्सु pad-su*; on the other hand, *महत् mahat*, “great,” forms, in the instrumental plural, *महद्भिस् mahad-bhis*, not *महत् भिस् mahat-bhis*.

99. The Greek and Latin, as they have come down to us, have either altogether evaded this conflict of consonants, or exhibit, in most cases, with regard to the first of any two contiguous consonants a disposition to surrender it, or at least an indifference to its assistance towards the signification of the word, since they either abandon it altogether, or violently alter it, *i.e.* convey it beyond the limits of its

proper organ. These two languages afford fewer occasions for harsh unions of consonants than the Sanscrit, principally because, with the exception of 'ΕΣ and 'ΙΔ in Greek, and *ES, FER, VEL* in Latin, as ἐς-τί, ἐσ-μέν, ἐσ-τέ, ἴδ-μεν, ἴσ-τε, *est, estis, fer-t, fer-tis, vul-t, vul-tis*, no root, terminated by a consonant, joins on its personal terminations, or any of them, without the aid of a connecting vowel. The Greek perf. pass. makes an exception, and requires euphonic alterations, which, in part, come within the natural limits recognised by the Sanscrit, and, in part, oversteps them. The gutturals and labials remain on the ancient footing, and before σ and τ observe the Sanscrit law of sound cited in §. 98.; according to which κ-σ (ξ), κ-τ, π-σ, π-τ are applied to roots ending in κ, γ, χ, or π, β, φ, because the mute σ or τ suffers neither medials nor aspirates before it; hence τέτριπ-σαι, τέτριπ-ται, from ΤΡΙΒ, τέτυκ-σαι, τέτυκ-ται, from ΤΥΧ. The Greek, however, diverges from the Sanscrit in this, that μ does not leave the consonant which precedes it unaltered, but assimilates labials to itself, and converts the guttural, tenuis and aspirate into medials. For τέτυμ-μαι, τέτριμ-μαι, πέπλεγ-μαι, τέτυγ-μαι, we should, on Sanscrit principles, write (§. 98.) τέτυπ-μαι, τέτριβ-μαι, πεπλεκ-μαι, τετυχ-μαι. The *t* sounds carry concession too far, and abandon the Sanscrit, or original principle, as regards the gutturals; inasmuch as δ, θ, and ζ (δσ), instead of passing into τ before σ and τ, are extinguished before σ, and before τ and μ become σ (πέπεισ-ται, πέπει-σαι, πέπεισ-μαι, instead of πέπειτ-ται, πέπειτ-σαι, πεπειθ-μαι, or πεπειδ-μαι. The Greek declension affords occasion for the alteration of consonants only through the ς of the nominative and the dative plural termination in σι; and here the same principle holds good as in the case of the verb, and in the formation of words; *kh* and *g* become, as in Sanscrit, *k* (ξ=κ-ς), and *b* and *ph* become *p*. The *t* sounds, on the other hand, contrary to the Sanscrit, and in accordance with the enfeebled condition, in this respect, of the Greek,



vanish entirely. We find  $\pi\acute{o}\upsilon\text{-}\varsigma$  for  $\pi\acute{o}\tau\text{-}\varsigma$ ,  $\pi\upsilon\text{-}\sigma\acute{\iota}$  for  $\pi\acute{o}\tau\text{-}\sigma\acute{\iota}$ , which latter naturally and originally must have stood for  $\pi\acute{o}\delta\text{-}\sigma$ ,  $\pi\acute{o}\delta\text{-}\sigma\acute{\iota}$ .

100. In Latin the principal occasion for the alteration of consonants presents itself before the *s* of the perfect and the *t* of the supine, or other verbal substantive or adjective (participles) beginning with *t*; and it is in accordance with the Sanscrit law cited §. 98, and the original condition of the language, that the sonant guttural passes, before *s* and *t*, into *c*, the sonant labial into *p*, as in *rec-si* (*rexi*), *rectum* from *reg*, *scripsi*, *scriptum*, from *scrib*. It is also in accordance with the Sanscrit that *h*, as a sonant (§. 25.), and incompatible with a tenuis, becomes *c* before *s* and *t*; compare *vec-sit* (*vexit*), with the word of like signification अवक्षीत् *a-vák-shít*. If of the two terminating consonants of a root the last vanishes before the *s* of the perfect tense (*mulsi* from *mulc* and *mulg*, *sparsi* from *sparg*), this accords with the Sanscrit law of sounds, by which, of two terminating consonants of a nominal stem, the last vanishes before consonants of the case terminations. *D* ought to become *t* before *s*; and then the form, so theoretically created, *claut-sit* from *claud*, would accord with the Sanscrit forms, such as अतौसीत् *a-tâut-sít*, "he tormented," from तुद् *tud*. Instead, however, of this, the *d* allows itself to be extinguished; so, however, that, in compensation, a short vowel of the root is made long, as *di-vī-si*; or, which is less frequent, the *d* assimilates itself to the following *s*, as *cessi* from *ced*. With roots in *t*, which are rarer, assimilation usually takes place, as *con-cus-si* from *cut*; on the other hand, *mī-si*, not *mis-si*, for *mit-si*, from *mit* or *mitt*. *B*, *m*, and *r* also afford instances of assimilation in *jus-si*, *pres-si*, *ges-si*, *us-si*.<sup>\*</sup> A third resource, for the avoidance

---

\* Compare with the Sanscrit, in which उष् *ush* signifies "burn": the sibilant must here pass for the original form.

of an union, very natural, but not endurable in this weakened state of the language, *ts*, is the suppression of the latter of these two letters, which is also compensated by the lengthening of a short radical vowel; thus, *sēdi* from *sēd*, *vīdi* from *vīd*. I believe, at least, that these forms are not derivable from *sedui*, *vidui*, and I class them with forms like *fōdi* from *fōd*, *lēgi*, for *lec-si*, from *lēg*, *fugi*, for *fuc-si*, from *fūg*. To these probably also belong *cāvi*, *fāvi*, *fōvi*, *pāvi*, *vōvi*, from *cāv*, &c. A *cavui*, &c. is hardly conceivable; *cavi* could never have had such an origin. I conjecture forms such as *cau-si*, *fau-si*, after the analogy of *cautum*, *fautum*; or *moc-si* (*moxi*), after the analogy of *vic-si*, *con-nic-si* (§. 19.) Possibly a *moc-si* form might derive probability from the adverb *mox*, as the latter probably is derived from *mov*, as *cito* is from another root of motion. The *c* of *fluc-si*, *struc-si*, (*fluxi*, &c.) *fluxum*, *structum*, must, in the same manner, be considered as an hardening of *v*; and a *flu-vo*, *stru-vo*, be presupposed, with regard to which it is to be remembered, that, in Sanscrit also, *uv* often develops itself out of *ꣳu* before vowels (Gram. Crit. r. 50.<sup>b</sup>); on which principle, out of *flu*, *stru*, before vowels, we might obtain *fluv*, *struv*, and thence before consonants *fluc*, *struc*. Thus, also, *fructus* out of *fruv-or*, for *fru-or*. In cases of *t* preceded by consonants, the suppression of *s* is the rule, and *ar-si* for *ard-i* an exception. *Prandi*, *frendi*, *pandi*, *verti*, &c. are in contrast to *ar-si* and other forms, like *mulsi* above mentioned, in their preserving the radical letter in preference to the auxiliary verb; and they accord in this with the Sanscrit rule of sound, by which the *s* of *अतोत्सम् atātut-sam*, *अक्षैषम् akshaip-sam*, &c., for the avoidance of hardness, is suppressed before strong consonants, and we find, for instance, *अतोत्त atātut-ta*, instead of *अतोत्स atātut-sta*. The perfects *scīdi*, *fīdi*, are rendered doubtful by their short vowel, and in their origin probably belong to the reduplicated preterites, their first syllable having

perished in the lapse of time : in other respects, *fīdi*, *scīdi*, correspond to *tutūdi*, *pupūgi*, not to say *tetīgi*, since the *i* of this latter is not original.

101. The suffixes employed in the formation of words and beginning with *t*, for the representation of which the supine may stand, deserve special consideration, in regard of the relations of sound generated by the conflict between *t* and the preceding consonant. According to the original law observed in the Sanscrit, a radical *t* ought to remain unaltered before *tum*, and *d* should pass into *t* ; as, भेदुम् *bhēttum*, “ to cleave,” from भिद् *bhid*. According to the degenerated practice of the Greek, a radical *d* or *t* before *t* would become *s*. Of this second gradation we find a remnant in *comes-tus*, *comes-tura*, analogous to *es-t*, *es-tis*, &c. from *edo* : we find, however, no *comes-tum*, *comes-tor*, but in their place *comesum*, *comesor*. We might question whether, in *comēsūm*, the *s* belonged to the root or to the suffix ; whether the *d* of *ed*, or the *t* of *tum*, had been changed into *s*. The form *com-es-tus* might argue the radicality of the *s* ; but it is hard to suppose that the language should have jumped at once from *estus* to *ēsus*, between which two an *essus* probably intervened, analogous to *cessum*, *fissum*, *quassum*, &c., while the *t* of *tum*, *tus*, &c. assimilated itself to the preceding *s*. Out of *essum* has arisen *ēsum*, by the suppression of an *s*, probably the first ; for where of a pair of consonants the one is removed, it is generally the first, (*εἰμί* from *ἐσμί*, *πο-σί* from *ποδ-σί*,) possibly because, as in §. 100, an auxiliary verb is abandoned in preference to a letter of the main verb. After that the language had, through such forms as *ē-sum*, *cā-sum*, *divī-sum*, *fis-sum*, *quasum*, habituated itself to an *s* in suffixes properly beginning with a *t*, *s* might easily insinuate itself into forms where it did not owe its origin to assimilation. *Cs* (*x*) is a favourite combination ; hence, *fic-sum*, *nec-sum*, &c. for *fic-tum*, *nec-tum*. The liquids, *m* excepted, evince special incli-

nation for a succeeding *s*, most of all the *r*; hence, *ter-sum*, *mer-sum*, *cur-sum*, *par-sum*, *ver-sum*, in contrast to *par-tum*, *tor-tum*: there are also cases in which *r*, by a conversion into *s*, accommodates itself to *t*, as in *ges-tum*, *us-tum*, *tos-tum*.<sup>\*</sup> This answers to the Sanscrit obligatory conversion of a concluding *r* into *s* before an initial *t*; as, भ्रातॄन् तारय माम् *bhrātās tāraya mām*, “brother save me,” instead of भ्रातॄन् *bhrātār*: on the other hand, in the middle of words *r* remains unaltered before *t*; hence, for instance, भरतुम् *bhartum*, not भरस्तुम् *bhastum*, “to bear.” *L* exhibits in the Latin the forms *fal-sum*, *pul-sum*, *vul-sum*, in contrast to *cul-tum*; *n* exhibits *ten-tum*, *can-tum*, opposed to *man-sum*. The other forms in *n-sum*, except *cen-sum*, have been mulcted of a radical *d*, as *ton-sum*, *pen-sum*.

102. In the Germanic languages, *t* alone gives occasion for an euphonic conversion of a preceding radical consonant; for instance, in the 2d pers. sing. of the strong preterite, where, however, the *t* in the Old High German is retained only in a few verbs, which associate a present signification with the form of the preterite. In the weak preterites, also, which spring from these verbs, the auxiliary *t*, where it remains unaltered, generates the same euphonic relations. We find in these forms the Germanic on the same footing as the Greek, in this respect, that it converts radical *t* sounds (*t*, *th*, *d*, and in Old and Middle High German *z* also) before a superadded *t* into *s*. Hence, for instance, in Gothic *maimais-t* (*abscidisti*), for *maimait-t*, *fai-fals-t* (*plicavisti*), for *fai-falth-t*, *ana-baus-t* (*imperasti*), for *ana-baud-t*. In Old and Middle High German *weis-t*, “thou knowest,” for *weiz-t*. The Gothic, in forming out of the root *vit*, in the weak preterite *vis-sa* (“I knew”), instead of *vista*, from *vitta*, re-

---

\* The obvious relationship of *torreo* with τέρεσθαι, and तृष् *trish* from तृश् *tash*, argues the derivation of the latter *r* from *s*. Upon that of *uro* from उश् *ush*, see §. 97.

sembles, in respect of assimilation, the Latin forms mentioned in §. 101., such as *quas-sum* for *quas-tum*, from *quat-tum*. The Old High German, however, which also adopts *mis-sa*, but from *muoz* makes not *muos-sa*, but *muo-sa*, corresponds, in the latter case, to such Latin forms, as *ca-sum*, *clau-sum*. The case is different in Old High German with those verbs of the first weak conjugation, which, having their syllables made long generally through two terminating consonants in the preterite, apply the *t* of the auxiliary verb directly to the root. Here the transition of *t* into *s* does not occur, but *t*, *z*, and even *d*, remain unaltered; and only when another consonant precedes them *t* and *d* are extinguished, *z* on the contrary remains; for instance, *leit-ta*, "DUXI," *ki-neiz-ta*, "AFFLIXI," *ar-ôd-ta*, "VASTAVI," *walz-ta*, "VOLVI," *liuh-ta*, "LUXI," for *liuht-ta*; *hul-ta*, "PLACAVI," for *huld-ta*. Of doubled consonants one only is retained, and of *ch* or *cch* only *h*; other consonantal combinations remain, however, undisturbed, as *ran-ta*, "CUCURRI," for *rann-ta*; *wanh-ta*, "VACILLAVI," for *wanch-ta*; *dah-ta*, "TEXI," for *dacch-ta*. The Middle High German follows essentially the same principles, only a simple radical *t* gives way before the auxiliary verb, and thus *lei-te* is opposed to the Old High German *leit-ta*; on the other hand, in roots in *ld* and *rd* the *d* may be maintained, and the *t* of the auxiliary be surrendered—as *dulde*, "TOLERAVI"—unless we admit a division of *dul-de*, and consider the *d* as a softened *t*. The change of *g* into *c* (§. 98.) is natural, but not universal; for instance, *anc-te*, "ARCTAVI," for *ang-te*; but against this law *b* remains unaltered. Before the formative suffixes beginning with *t*,\* both in Gothic and High German, guttural and labial tenues and medials are changed into their aspirates, although the tenuis accord with a following *t*.

---

\* With the exception of the High German passive part. of the weaker form, which, in the adjunction of its *t* to the root, follows the analogy of the pret. above described.

Thus, for instance, in Gothic, *vah-tvô*, "watch," from *vak*; *sauh-t(i)s*, "sickness," from *suk*; *mah-t(i)s*, "might," from *mag*; *ga-skaf-t(i)s*, "creation," from *skap*; *fragif-t(i)s*, "betrothment," from *gib*, softened from *gab*; Old High German *suht*, *maht*, *ki-skaft*, "creature," *kift*, "gift." The dentals replace the aspirate *th* by the sibilant (*s*), as is the case in Gothic before the pers. character *t* of the preterite, as *th* cannot be combined with *t*. The formation of words, however, affords few examples of this kind: under this head comes our *mast*, related to the Gothic *mats*, "food," and *matjan*, "to eat." In Gothic, the *s* of *blôstreis*, "worshipper," springs from the *t* of *blôtan*, "to worship": *beist*, "leaven," comes probably from *beit* (*beitan*, "to bite," Grimm, ii. p. 208.). The Zend accords, in this respect, with the Germanic, but still more with the Greek, in that it converts its *t* sounds into *ś*, not only before *t*, but also before *m*; for instance, *𐬕𐬀𐬭𐬀* *irista*, "dead," from the root *𐬕𐬀* *irith*; *𐬕𐬀𐬭𐬀* *bašta*, "bound," from *𐬕𐬀𐬭𐬀* *bandh*, with the nasal excluded; as in Modern Persian, *بسته* *besteh*, from *بند* *bend*; *𐬕𐬀𐬭𐬀* *al'sma*, "wood," from *𐬕𐬀𐬭𐬀* *idhma*.

103. It is a violation of one of the most natural laws of sound, that, in Gothic, the medial *g* does not universally pass into *k* or *h* (= *ch*), before the personal character *t* of the pret., but generally is retained; and we find, for instance, *ôg-t*, "thou fearest," *mag-t*, "thou canst";\* and yet, before other inflections formed with *t*, the *g* undergoes an euphonic transition into *h*, as for instance, *ôh-ta*, "I feared," *mah-ts*, "might."

104. When in Sanscrit, according to §. 98, the aspiration of a medial undergoes a necessary suppression, it falls back, under certain conditions and according to special laws, upon the initial consonant of the root, yet only upon a medial, or throws itself onward on the initial consonant of

---

\* No other roots in *g* in this person are to be found in Ulfilas.

the following suffix. We find, for instance, भोक्ष्यामि *bhot-syāmi*, "I shall know," for बोध्यामि *bōdh-syāmi*; वेदभुक् *vēda-bhut*, "knowing the vedas," for बुध् *budh*; बुद्ध *bud-dha*, "knowing," for बुध्ता *budhta*; धोक्ष्यामि *dhōk-shyāmi*, "I shall milk," for दोह्यामि *dōh-syāmi*; दुग्ध *dug-dha*, "milked," for दुह्ता *duh-ta*. In Greek we find a remarkable relic of the first part of the transposition of the aspirate,\* in the necessary suppression of the aspirate in some roots which begin with *t* and end with an aspirate before  $\sigma$ ,  $\tau$ , and  $\mu$ , letters which admit of no union with an aspirate, and in its being thrown back on the initial letter, by which process  $\tau$  becomes  $\theta$ . Hence, τρέφω, θρέπ-σω, (θρέψω), θρεπτήρ, θρέμ-μα; ταφή, θάπ-τω, ἐτάφην, τέθαμ-μαι; τρύφος, θρύπ-τω, ἐτρύφην, θρύμ-μα; τρέχω, θρέξομαι; θρίξ, τριχός, ταχύς, θάσσων. In the spirit of this transposition of the aspirate, ἐχ obtains the spiritus asper when  $\chi$  is obliged to merge in the tenuis, (ἐκτός, ἔξω, ἔξις).†

---

\* See J. L. Burnouf in the Asiatic Journal III. 368; and Buttman, pp. 77, 78.

† It is usual to explain this appearance by the supposition of two aspirations in the root of these forms, of which one only is supposed to appear in deference to the euphonic law which forbids the admission of two consecutive aspirated syllables. This one would be the last of the two, and the other would only shew itself when the latter had been forced to merge in the tenuis. Opposed, however, to this explanation is the fact, that, on account of the inconvenience of accumulated aspirates, the language has guarded itself in the original formation of its roots against the evil, and has never admitted an aspirated consonant at once for the initial and termination of a root. In Sanscrit, the collection of whose roots is complete, there is no such instance. The forms, however, ἐθάφθην, τεθάφθαι, τεθάφθω, τεθάφαται, τεθράφθαι, ἐθρέφθην, present a difficulty. These, perhaps, are eccentricities of usage, which, once habituated to the initial aspiration by its frequent occurrence under the suppression of the terminating, began to assume its radicality, and extended it wider than was legitimate. We might also say, that since  $\phi\theta$  (as  $\chi\theta$ ) is so favourite a combination in Greek that it is even substituted for  $\pi\theta$  and  $\beta\theta$ —while, according to §. 98, an original  $\phi\theta$  ought to become  $\pi\theta$ —on this ground the tendency to aspiration of the root remained unsatisfied by ἐτάφθην &c.; and as if the  $\phi$  only existed out of reference to the  $\theta$ , the original terminating aspirate necessarily fell back on the radical initial. This theory, which seems to me sound, would only leave τεθάφαται to be explained.

## OF THE ROOTS.

105. There are in Sanscrit, and the languages which are akin to it, two classes of roots: from the one, which is by far the more numerous, spring verbs, and nouns (substantives and adjectives) which stand in fraternal connection with the verbs, not in the relation of descent from them, not begotten by them, but sprung from the same shoot with them. We term them, nevertheless, for the sake of distinction, and according to prevailing custom, Verbal Roots; and the verb, too, stands in close formal connection with them, because from many roots each person of the present is formed by simply adding the requisite personal termination. From the second class spring pronouns, all original prepositions, conjunctions, and particles: we name them Pronominal Roots, because they all express a pronominal idea, which, in the prepositions, conjunctions, and particles, lies more or less concealed. No simple pronouns can be carried back, either according to their meaning or their form, to any thing more general, but their declension-theme (or inflective base) is at the same time their root. The Indian Grammarians, however, derive all words, the pronouns included from verbal roots, although the majority of pronominal bases, even in a formal respect, are opposed to such a derivation, because they, for the most part, end with *a*: one, indeed, consists simply of *a*. Among the verbal roots, however, there is not a single one in *ā*, although long *a*, and all other vowels, *औ* *āu* excepted, occur among the final letters of the verbal roots. Accidental external identity takes place between the verbal and pronominal roots; *e.g.* *इ* signifies, as a verbal root, “to go,” as a pronominal root, “he,” “this.”

106. The verbal roots, like those of the pronouns, are



monosyllabic; and the polysyllabic forms represented by the grammarians as roots contain either a reduplicate-syllable, as जागृ *jāgri*, “to wake,” or a preposition which has grown up with the root, as अवधीर् *ava-dhīr*, “to despise;” or they have sprung from a noun, like कुमार *kumār*, “to play,” which I derive from कुमार *kumāra*, “a boy.” Except the law of their being monosyllabic, the Sanscrit roots are subjected to no farther limitation, and their one-syllableness may present itself under all possible forms, in the shortest and most extended, as well as those of a middle degree. This free state of irrestriction was necessary, as the language was to contain within the limits of one-syllableness the whole body of fundamental ideas. The simple vowels and consonants were not sufficient: it was requisite to frame roots also where several consonants, combined in inseparable unity, became, as it were, simple sounds; e. g. स्था *sthā*, “to stand,” a root in which the age of the co-existence of the *s* and *th* is supported by the unanimous testimony of all the members of our race of languages. So also, in स्कन्द *skand*, “to go,” (Lat. *scand-o*) the age of the combination of consonants both in the beginning and ending of the root, is certified by the agreement of the Latin with the Sanscrit. The proposition, that in the earliest period of language a simple vowel is sufficient to express a verbal idea, is supported by the remarkable concurrence of nearly all the individuals of the Sanscrit family of languages in expressing the idea “to go” by the root *i*.

107. The nature and peculiarity of the Sanscrit verbal roots explains itself still more by comparison with those of the Semitic languages. These require, as far as we trace back their antiquity, three consonants, which, as I have already elsewhere shewn,\* express the fundamental

---

\* Trans. of the Hist. Phil. Class of the R. A. of Litt. of Berlin for the year 1824, p. 126, &c.

idea by themselves alone, without the aid of vowels; and although they may be momentarily compressed into one syllable, still, in this, the combination of the middle radical with the first or last cannot be recognised as original and belonging to the root, because it is only transitory, and chiefly depends on the mechanism of the construction of the word. Thus in Hebrew, *kátûl*, "slain," in the fem., on account of the addition *âh* contracts itself to *ktûl* (*ktûl-âh*); while *kôtêl*, "slaying," before the same addition, compresses itself in an opposite manner, and forms *kôllâh*. Neither *ktûl*, therefore, nor *kôll*, can be regarded as the root; and just as little can it be looked for in *ktôl*, as the *status constructus* of the infinitive; for this is only a shortening of the absolute form *kátûl*, produced by a natural tendency to pass hastily to the word governed by the infinitive, which, as it were, has grown to it. In the imperative *ktôl* the abbreviation is not external, subject to mechanical conditions, but more dynamic, and occasioned by the hurry with which a command is usually enunciated. In the Semitic languages, in decided opposition to those of the Sanscrit family, the vowels belong, not to the root, but to the grammatical motion, the secondary ideas, and the mechanism of the construction of the word. By them, for example, is distinguished, in Arabic, *katala*, "he slew," from *kutîla*, "he was slain;" and in Hebrew, *kôtêl*, "slaying," from *kátûl*, "slain." A Semitic root is unpronounceable, because, in giving it vowels, an advance is made to a special grammatical form, and it then no longer possesses the simple peculiarity of a root raised above all grammar. But in the Sanscrit family of languages, if its oldest state is consulted in the languages which have continued most pure, the root appears as a circumscribed nucleus, which is almost unalterable, and which surrounds itself with foreign syllables, whose origin we must investigate, and whose destination is, to express the secondary ideas of grammar which the root itself cannot express.

The vowel, with this or that consonant, and sometimes without any consonant whatever, belongs to the fundamental meaning: it can be lengthened to the highest degree, or raised by Guna or Vriddhi; and this lengthening or raising, and, more lately, the retention of an original *a*, opposed to its weakening to *i* or change to *u* (§§. 66, 67.), belongs not to the denoting of grammatical relations, which require to be more clearly pointed out, but, as I imagine I can prove, only to the mechanism, the symmetry of construction.

108. As the Semitic roots, on account of their construction, possess the most surprising capacity for indicating the secondary ideas of grammar by the mere internal moulding of the root, of which they also make extensive use, while the Sanscrit roots, at the first grammatical movement, are compelled to assume external additions; so must it appear strange, that F. von Schlegel\*, while he divides languages in general into two chief races, of which the one denotes the secondary intentions of meaning by an internal alteration of the sound of the root by inflexion, the other always by the addition of a word, which may by itself signify plurality, past time, what is to be in future, or other relative ideas of that kind, allots the Sanscrit and its sisters to the former race, and the Semitic languages to the second. "There may, indeed," he writes, p. 48, "arise an appearance of inflexion, when the annexed particles are melted down with the chief word so as to be no longer distinguishable; but where in a language, as in the Arabic, and in all which are connected with it, the first and most important relations, as those of the person to verbs, are denoted by the addition of particles which have a meaning for themselves individually, and the tendency to which suffixes shews itself deeply seated in the language, it may there be safely assumed that the same may have

---

\* In his work on the language and wisdom of the Indians.

occurred in other positions, where the annexation of particles of a foreign nature no longer admits of such clear discrimination: one may at least safely assume that the language, on the whole, belongs to this chief race, although in this single point, by admixture or artificial adornment, it has adopted another and a higher character." We must here preliminarily observe, that, in Sanscrit and the languages connected with it, the personal terminations of the verbs shew at least as great a similarity to isolated pronouns as in Arabic. How should any language, which expresses the pronominal relations of the verbs by syllables annexed either at the beginning or end of the word, in the choice of these syllables avoid, and not rather select, those which, in their isolated state, also express the corresponding pronominal ideas? By inflexion, F. von Schlegel understands the internal alteration of the sound of the root, or (p. 35) the internal modification of the root, which he (p. 48) opposes to addition from without. But when from  $\delta\sigma$  or  $\delta\omega$ , in Greek, comes  $\delta\acute{\iota}\delta\omega\text{-}\mu\iota$ ,  $\delta\acute{\omega}\text{-}\sigma\omega$ ,  $\delta\sigma\text{-}\theta\eta\sigma\acute{o}\mu\epsilon\theta\alpha$ , what are the forms  $\mu\iota$ ,  $\sigma\omega$ ,  $\theta\eta\sigma\acute{o}\mu\epsilon\theta\alpha$ , but palpable external additions to the root, which is not at all internally altered, or only in the quantity of the vowel? If, then, by inflexion, an internal modification of the root is to be understood, the Sanscrit and Greek &c. have in that case—except the reduplication, which is taken from the middle of the root itself—scarce any inflexion at all to shew. If, however,  $\theta\eta\sigma\acute{o}\mu\epsilon\theta\alpha$  is an external modification of the root  $\delta\sigma$ , simply because it is combined with it, touches it, with it expresses a whole; then the idea of sea and continent may be represented as an internal modification of the sea, and *vice versa*. P. 50, F. von Schlegel remarks: "In the Indian or Grecian language every root is truly that which the name says, and like a living germ; for since the ideas of relation are denoted by internal alteration, freer room is given for development, the fulness of which can be indefinitely

extended, and is, in fact, often wondrously rich. All, however, which in this manner proceeds from the simple root, still retains the stamp of its relationship, adheres to it, and thus reciprocally bears and supports itself." I find, however, the inference not established; for from the capability of expressing ideas of relation by internal alteration of the root, how can the capability be deduced of surrounding the (internally unalterable) root indefinitely, with foreign syllables externally added? What kind of stamp of relationship is there between *μι, σω, θησόμεθα*, and the roots to which these significative additions are appended? We therefore recognise in the inflections of the Sanscrit family of languages no internal involutions of the root, but elements of themselves significative, and the tracing of the origin of which is the task of scientific grammar. But even if the origin of not a single one of these inflections could be traced with certainty, still the principle of the formation of grammar, by external addition, would not, for that reason, be the less certain, because, at the first glance, in the majority of inflections, one discovers at least so much, that they do not belong to the root, but have been added from without. A. W. von Schlegel, also, who, in essential points, assents to the above-mentioned division of languages,\* gives us to understand, with regard to the so-called

---

\* Nevertheless in his work, "*Observations sur la langue et la littérature provençales*," p. 14, &c., he gives three classes, viz. *Les langues sans aucune structure grammaticale, les langues qui emploient des affixes, et les langues à inflexions*. Of the latter, he says: "Je pense, cependant, qu'il faut assigner le premier rang aux langues à inflexions. On pourroit les appeler les langues organiques, parce qu'elles renferment un principe vivant de développement et d'accroissement, et qu'elles ont seules, si je puis m'exprimer ainsi, une végétation abondante et féconde. Le merveilleux artifice de ces langues est, de former une immense variété de mots, et de marquer la liaison des idées que ces mots désignent, moyennant un assez petit nombre de syllabes qui, considérées  
séparément,

inflexions, that they are not modifications of the root, but foreign additions, whose characteristic lies in this, that regarded, *per se*, they have no meaning. In the Semitic, the appended grammatical syllables or inflections have no meaning, at least in so far that they do not, as in Sanscrit, occur isolated in a completely similar state. In Arabic, for instance, *antum*, and not *tum*, is said for "ye"; and in Sanscrit *ma*, *ta*, and not *mā*, *tā*, are the declinable bases of the first and third person; and *at-Ti*, "he eats," has the same relation to *TA-m*, "him," that in Gothic *IT-a*, "I eat," has to the monosyllabic *AT*, "I ate." The reason for weakening the *a* of the base to *i* is probably, in the different cases of the two sister languages, the same, viz. the greater extent of the form of word with *i* (comp. §. 6.). If, then, the division of languages made by F. von Schlegel is untenable, on the reasons on which it is founded, still there is much ingenuity in the thought of a natural history or classification of languages. We prefer, however, to present, with A. W. von Schlegel (l. c.), three classes, and distinguish them as follows: first, languages with monosyllabic roots, without the capability of contraction, and hence without organism, without grammar. This class comprises Chinese, where all is hitherto bare root, and the grammatical categories, and secondary relations after the

---

séparément, n'ont point de signification, mais qui déterminent avec précision le sens du mot auquel elles sont jointes. En modifiant les lettres radicales, et en ajoutant aux racines des syllabes dérivatives, on forme des mots dérivés de diverses espèces, et des dérivés des dérivés. On compose des mots de plusieurs racines pour exprimer les idées complexes. Ensuite on décline les substantifs, les adjectifs, et les pronoms, par genres, par nombres, et par cas; on conjugue les verbes par voix, par modes, par temps, par nombres, et par personnes, en employant de même des désinences et quelquefois des augmens qui, séparément, ne signifient rien. Cette méthode procure l'avantage d'énoncer en un seul mot l'idée principale, souvent déjà très-modifiée et très-complexe, avec tout son cortège d'idées accessoires et de relations variables.

main point, can only be discovered from the position of the roots in the sentence.\* Secondly, languages with monosyllabic roots, which are capable of combination, and obtain their organism and grammar nearly in this way alone. The chief principle of the formation of words, in this class, appears to me to lie in the combination of verbal and pronominal roots, which together represent, as it were, body and soul. (Comp. §. 100.) To this class belongs the Sanscrit family of languages, and moreover all other languages, so far as they are not comprehended under 1. and 3., and have maintained themselves in a condition which renders it possible to trace back their forms of words to the simplest elements. Thirdly, languages with dissyllabic verbal roots, and three necessary consonants as single supporters of the fundamental meaning. This class comprehends merely the Semitic languages, and produces its grammatical forms, not simply by combination, like the second class, but by a mere internal modification of the roots. We here gladly award to the Sanscrit family of languages a great superiority over the Semitic, which we do not, however, find in the use of inflections as syllables *per se* devoid of meaning, but in the copiousness of these grammatical additions, which are really significative, and connected with words used isolated; in the judicious, ingenious selection and application of them, and the accurate and acute defining of various relations, which hereby becomes possible; finally, in the beautiful adjustment of these additions to a harmonious whole, which bears the appearance of an organized body.

109<sup>a</sup>. The Indian Grammarians divide the roots according to properties, which extend only to the tenses which

---

\* We find this view of the Chinese admirably elucidated in W. von Humboldt's talented pamphlet, "*Lettre à M. Abet Remusat, sur la nature des formes grammaticales en général, et sur le génie de la langue chinoise.*"

I call the special tenses,\* and to the part. pres., into ten classes, all of which we have re-discovered in the Zend also, and examples of which are given in the following paragraph. We shall here give the characteristics of the Sanscrit classes, and compare with them those which correspond in the European sister languages.

(1.) The first and sixth class add **अ** *a* to the root ; and we reserve the discussion of the origin of this and other conjugational affixes for the disquisition on the verb. The point of difference between the first class of nearly 1000 roots (almost the half of the entire number) and the sixth class, which contains about 130 roots, lies in this, that the former raise the vowel of the root by Guna (§. 26.), while the latter retain it pure ; *e.g.* बोधति *bódhati*, “he knows,” from बुध् *budh* (1.); तुदति *tudati*, “he vexes” (comp. *tundit*), from तुद् *tud* (6.) As **अ** *a* has no Guna, no discrimination can take place through this vowel between the classes 1. and 6.: but nearly all the roots which belong to either, having **अ** *a* as the radical vowel, are reckoned in the first class. In Greek, *ε* (before nasals *ο*, §. 3.) corresponds to the affix **अ** *a* ; and λείπ-ο-μεν,† φεύγ-ο-μεν, from ΛΙΠ, ΦΥΓ (*ἔλιπον*, *ἔφυγον*), belong to the first class, because they have Guna (§. 26.); while, *e.g.* θίγ-ο-μεν, θλίβ-ο-μεν, &c., fall under the sixth class.‡ In Latin we recognise, in the third conjugation, which I would raise to the first, the cognate of the Sanscrit first and sixth class, since we regard the addition *i* as a

---

\* In Greek, the present (indic. imper. and optat., the form of the Greek conjunct. is wanting in Sanscrit) and imperfect correspond to them ; beyond which certain conjugation-signs do not extend. In German, the present of every mood corresponds.

† We give the plural, because the singular, on account of abbreviation, makes the thing less perspicuous.

‡ Sanscrit long vowels admit Guna only at the end of the root, but in the beginning and middle remain without admixture of the **अ** *a* ; so do short vowels before double consonants.



weakening of the old *a* (§. 8.); and *e.g.* *legimus* has the same relation to *λέγ-ο-μεν*, that the genitive *ped-is* has to *ποδ-ός*, where the Sanscrit has likewise *a* (*पदस् pad-as*). In *leg-u-nt*, from *leg-a-nti*, the old *a*, through the influence of the liquid, has become *u*. (Comp. §. 66.) In German, all the primitive (strong) verbs, with the exception of some remains of the fourth class (No. 2.), stand in clear connection with the Sanscrit first class, which is here, for the first time, laid down in its full extent.\* The *अ* *a* which is added to the root has, in Gothic†, before some personal terminations, remained unchanged; before others, according to §. 67, and as in Latin, been weakened to *i*; so, *hait-a*, “I am called,” *hait-i-s*, *hait-i-th*; 2d pers. du. *hait-a-ts*; pl. *hait-a-m*, *hait-i-th*, *hait-a-nd*. The root-vowels *i* and *u* keep the Guna addition, as in Sanscrit, only that the *a* which gives the Guna is here weakened to *i* (§. 27.), which, with a radical *i*, is aggregated into a long *i* (written *ei*, §. 70.): hence *keina* (= *kína*, from *kiina*), “I germinate,” from *KIN*; *biuga*, “I bend,” from *BUG*, Sanscrit *भुज् bhuj*, whence *भुज् bhugna*, “bent.” The diphthongs *ai*, *au*, as in Sanscrit *ए* and *ओ* (§. 2.), are incapable of any Guna; as are *ē* (= *आ*, §. 69.) and *a*. The Sanscrit radical vowel *अ* *a* has, however, in Gothic, experienced a threefold destiny. It has either remained unaltered in the special tenses, and is lengthened in the preterite, except in reduplicate roots (*i.e.* to *ó*, see §. 69.)—thus, *e.g.* *far-i-th*, “he wanders,” answers to *चरति charati*

---

\* I have already, in my Review of Grimm's Grammar, expressed the conjecture that the *a* of forms like *haita*, *haitam*, *haitaima*, &c. does not belong to the personal termination, but is identical with the *अ* *a* of the Sanscrit 1st and 6th classes; but I was not then clear regarding the Guna in the present in all roots with vowels capable of Guna. (See Ann. for Crit. of Litt. Book II. pp. 282 and 259.)

† We make frequent mention of the Gothic alone as the true starting-point and light of German Grammar. The application to the High German will hereafter present itself.

(§. 14.), and *fór*, "he wandered," to चचर *chachâra*; or, secondly, the old *a* shews itself in the special tenses weakened to *i*, but retained in the monosyllabic singular of the preterite: so that here the stronger *a* (§. 8.) corresponds to the weaker *i* in the same way that, in the first case, the *ô* (= आ *â*) does to the short *a*. The root चद् *ad*, "to eat," in Gothic, according to §. 87, forms *AT*; hence, in the present, *ita*; in the sing. pret., *at*, *as-t*, *at*. The third fate which befalls the *a* of the root in Gothic is a complete extirpation, and compensation by the weaker *i*, which is treated like an original *i*, existing in the Sanscrit; i.e. in the special tenses it receives Guna by *i*, and in the pret. sing. by *a* (§. 27.), but in the pret. pl. it is preserved pure. Here belongs the *KIN*, "to germinate," mentioned above, pres. *keina*, pret. sing. *kain*, pl. *kin-um*. The corresponding Sanscrit root is जन् *jan*, "to produce," "to be born" (see §. 87.); the same relation, too, has *greipa*, *graip*, *gripum*, from *GRIP*, "to seize," to जग् *grabh* (Vêda form): on the other hand, *BIT*, "to bite,"\* (*beita*, *bait*, *bitum*), has an original *i*, which exists in Sanscrit (comp. भिद् *bhid*, "to cleave"); just so, *VIT*, "to know," Sanscrit विद् *vid*.

(2.) The fourth class of Sanscrit roots adds to them the syllable य *ya*, and herein agrees with the special tenses of the passive; and from the roots which belong to it spring chiefly neuter verbs, as e.g. नश्यति *naśyati*, "he perishes." Their number amounts altogether to about 130. The German has preserved one unmistakeable remnant of this class, in those strong verbs which lay aside, in the preterite, the syllable *ja* (weakened to *ji*), which is added to the root in the special tenses; e.g. *vahs-ja* (Zend 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬭𐬀𐬎𐬭𐬀, *ucs-yain*, "crescebant," Vendidad S. p. 257), "cresco," *vahs-ji-th*, "crescit," pret. *vôhs*.

---

\* Occurs only with the prep. *and*, and with the meaning "to scold," but corresponds to the Old High German root *BIZ*, "to bite."

(3.) The second, third, and seventh classes add the personal termination direct to the root; but in the kindred European languages, to facilitate the conjugation, these classes have mainly passed over to the first class; *e.g.* *ed-i-mus*, not *ed-mus* (as a remnant of the old construction *es-t, es-tis*), Gothic *it-a-m*, Old High German *iz-a-mēs*, not *iz-mēs*, answering to the Sanscrit *अजस् ad-mas*. The second class, to which *अद् ad* belongs, leaves the root without any characteristic addition, with Guna of the vowels capable of Guna before light terminations, which must be hereafter explained; hence, *e.g.* *इमि émi*, corresponding to *इमस् imas*, from *इ i*, “to go,” as in Greek *εἶμι* to *ἵμεν*. It contains not more than about seventy roots, partly terminating in consonants, partly in vowels. The Greek exhibits, in this and the third-class roots, almost entirely ending in vowels, as the above mentioned *’Ι, ΦΑ, ΓΝΩ (γνῶ-θι), ΔΩ, ΣΤΑ, ΘΗ, ΦΥ (ἐφύν), ΔΥ, &c.* To the consonants the direct combination with the consonants of the termination has become too heavy, and *’ΕΣ* alone (because facile to *σμ, στ*) has remained in the Sanscrit second class, as the corresponding root in Latin, Lithuanian, and German. Hence, *अस्ति asti, ἐστὶ, Lithuan. esti, est, Gothic and High German ist*. In the Latin there fall also to the second class, *I, DA, STA*; also *In-quam*, whence *QUA*, weakened to *QUI*, is the root, which, in Gothic, appears as *QUAT*, weakened to *QUIT*, with the accretion of a *T*. *FER* and *VEL (VUL)* have preserved some persons of the ancient construction.\* The third class is distinguished from the second by a syllable of reduplication in the special tenses, and has maintained itself under this form in Greek also, and Lithuanian. In Sanscrit it comprehends about

---

\* Five roots of the second class introduce in Sanscrit, between the consonants of the root and the personal termination, an *इ i*, as *रोदिमि rôd-i-mi*, “I weep,” from *रुद् rud*. I can, however, no longer believe that the *i* of the Latin third conjug. is connected with this *इ i*, as there is scarce any doubt of its relationship with the *अ a* of the very copious first class.

twenty roots; e.g. ददामि *dadāmi*, δίδωμι, Lithuanian *dudu*; दधामि *dadhāmi*, τίθημι (§. 16.); जजन्मि *jajanmi*, "I beget," comp. γί-γν-ο-μαι. The seventh class, of about twenty-four roots, introduces, in the special tenses, a nasal into the root, which is extended from the light personal terminations to the syllable *na*; e.g. भिनस्मि *bhinadmi*, "I cleave," भिन्मस् *bhindmas*, "we cleave." The Latin has kept the weaker form of this nasalization, but has further added to the root the affix of the first class (p. 114); hence *findo*, *find-i-mus*. From the Greek come here to be regarded roots, like MAΘ, ΛAB, ΘIG, in which the inserted nasal has been repeated further on in the word, with the prefixed α, and, like the Latin *find-i-mus*, is connected with the affix of the first class; thus, μανθάν-ο-μεν, λαμβαν-ο-μεν, θιγγάν-ο-μεν.

(4.) The fifth class, of about thirty roots, has *nu*; and the eighth, with ten roots, which, excepting कृ *kṛi*, "to make," all terminate in न् *n* or ण् *ṇ*, has *u* for its characteristic addition: the *u*, however, of these two classes is lengthened before the light terminations by Guna, which in the corresponding Greek appended syllables, νν and υ, is supplied by lengthening the υ; thus, e.g. δεικνυμι δείκνυμεν, as in Sanscrit आप्नोमि *āp-nō-mi*, "ad-ip-is-cor," आप्नुमस् *āp-nu-mas*, "adipiscimur." An example of the eighth class is, तन् *tan*, "to extend," whence तनोमि *tan-ō-mi* = τάν-υ-μι, तनुमस् *tan-u-mas* = τάν-υ-μες. With the उ *u*, υ, of the eighth class, is probably connected the *v* in some Gothic strong verbs, where, however, it adheres so firmly to the root, that, in a German point of view, it must be regarded as a radical. Hence it is not dropped in the preterite, and receives, in the special tenses, like all strong verbs, the affix of the Sanscrit first class; e.g. *saihva*, "I see," *sahv*, "I saw."

(5.) The ninth class adds ना *nā* to the root, which syllable, before heavy terminations, instead of being shortened to न *na*, replaces the heavy आ *ā* by the lighter ई *ī* (§. 6.), and is thus weakened to नी *nī*. E.g. from मृद् *mṛid*, "to

grind," (comp. *mordeo*) comes मृदूनामि *mṛidnāmi*, मृदूनीमस् *mṛid-nīmas*. In this is easily perceived the relationship with Greek formations in νημι (*vāmi*) *vāμεν*; e.g. δάμνημι, δάμνα-μεν. As *ā*, *e*, and *o*, are originally one, formations like τέμ-νο-μεν belong to this class, only that they have wandered into the more modern *ω*-conjugation at a remote period of antiquity; for more lately *νew* would not have become *νω* from *νημι*.

(6.) The tenth class adds अय *aya* to the root, but is distinguished from the other classes in this farther important point, that this affix is not limited to the special tenses: the final *a* of अय *aya* is peculiar to them, but अय् *ay* extends, with very few exceptions, to all the other formations of the root. All causals, and many denominatives, follow this class, and, indeed, from every root a causal can be formed by the addition अय् *ay*, which is always accompanied by Guna of the middle vowel of the root capable of Guna, or by Vridhhi of every radical final vowel and of a middle *a* belonging to the root; e.g. वेदयति *véd-aya-ti* "he makes to know," from विद् *vid*; श्रावयति *śrāv-aya-ti*, "he makes to hear," from श्रु *śru*. We recognise, in German, the affix अय *aya* at least in two shapes: in the one the first *a*, in the other the last, is lost, and in the latter case *y* has become *i*; so that I have no longer any scruple in tracing back Grimm's first and third conj. of a weak form to a common origin. According to all probability, however, the verbs also with the affix *ē*, (as Old High German *manôn*, "to mention," "to make to think,") belong here, regarding which we will speak further under the verb. The Old High German gives *ē* as the contraction of *a + i*, (see §. 78.) but retains its *ē* more firmly than the Gothic its *ai*, which, in several persons, sinks into a simple *a*. Compare Gothic *haba*, *habam*, *habanl*, with Old High German *hapēm*, *hapēmes*, *hapēnt*. Very remarkable, however, is the concurrence of the Prâkrit with the Old High German and the Latin of the 2d conj. in this point, that it in like manner has

contracted the affix अय *aya* to ए *é*. Compare Sanscrit मानयामि *mānayāmi*, “I honour,” Prâkrit माणेमि *māṇēmi*,\* Old High German *var-manēm*, “I despise,” Latin *moneo*:

SANSKRIT.	PRAKRIT.	OLD HIGH GERMAN.	LATIN.
मानयामि <i>mānayāmi</i>	माणेमि <i>māṇēmi</i>	<i>var-manēm</i>	<i>moneo</i>
मानयसि <i>mānayasi</i>	माणेसि <i>māṇēsi</i>	<i>manēs</i>	<i>monēs</i>
मानयति <i>mānayati</i>	माणेदि <i>māṇēdi</i>	<i>manēt</i>	<i>monet</i>
मानयामस् <i>mānayāmas</i>	माणेम्ह <i>māṇēmha</i>	<i>manēmes</i>	<i>monēmus</i>
मानयथ <i>mānayatha</i>	माणेथ <i>māṇēdha</i>	<i>manēt</i>	<i>monētis</i>
मानयन्ति <i>mānayanti</i>	माणेन्ति <i>māṇēnti</i>	<i>manēnt</i>	<i>monent</i>

In regard to those weak verbs, which have suppressed the first vowel of the Sanscrit अय *aya*, and give therefore *ya* as affix, we will here further recall attention to the forms *iga* (*ige*), which occasionally occur in Old High German and Anglo Saxon, whose connection with अय *aya*, is to be traced thus, that the semi-vowel *y* has become hardened to *g*, (comp. §. 19.), and the preceding *a* weakened to *i*. In Greek, the cognate verbs to the Sanscrit of the tenth class are to

---

\* I am not at present able to adduce this verb from the edited texts; it is, however, certain, that *mānayāmi* in this dialect can have no other sound but *māṇēmi*. The conjugation is supported by other examples of this class, as *chintēmi*, “I think” (from *chintayāmi*), *ṇivédēmi* (from *ṇivēdayāmi*). In the plural the termination *mha* is nothing else than the appended verb subst. (Sansk. *smas*, “we are”). In the third pers. pl., together with *māṇēnti* also the forms *mānaanti* and *mānanti* are admissible. The Indian Grammarians assume for the Sanscrit a root *mān*, “to honour”; more probably, however, the verb, for which this root is supplied, is only a denominative from *māna*, “honour”; and this substantive itself a derivation from *man*, “to think,” whence *ava-man*, “to despise,” as in Old High German *var-MAN* (by Otfrid, *fir-MON*). The root, therefore, which is contained in *varmanem* is identical with the Gothic *MAN* (*mun*, “I mean,” “think,” pl. *munum*, see §. 66.). Here belongs, also, the Latin *monere*, as, “to make to think” (Old High German *ma-nôn*), the radical *o* for *a* of which we explain by the principle of §. 66. (see, also, §. 3.); while the *i* of *memin-i* is a weakening of the original *a*, explained by §. 6.

be looked for in those in  $\alpha\omega$ ,  $\epsilon\omega$ ,  $\omicron\omega$ ; in Latin, besides the 2d conjug. compared above, most verbs of the 1st and 4th also belong to this affinity. We shall recur to them when speaking of the verb.

109<sup>b</sup>. In order to adduce single examples of the multifiform construction of the roots, let us examine the order of the final letters; but we will select only such examples as are common to the Sanscrit and several sister languages. The greatest forbearance, however, is requisite, as an authenticated comparison of all that admits of comparison would easily swell to a book, which shall hereafter be devoted to this subject.\*

(1.) Roots ending with a vowel:—

“There are, as has been already remarked (§. 105.), no roots in  $\text{अ} a$ ; but roots in  $\text{आ} \acute{a}$  are numerous. Thus  $\text{ग}^3 g\acute{a}$ ,<sup>†</sup> “to go,” contained in the Latin *navi-ga-re*; also, perhaps, in *fati-gare*, the first member of which belongs to *fatiscor*, *fessus*; in Greek,  $\beta\acute{\iota}\beta\eta\mu\iota$  answers to  $\text{जगामि} jag\acute{a}mi$ , and rests on the frequent interchange of gutturals and labials; Goth. *ga-thvó*, “a street,” (see p. 102.); Zend  $\text{𐬔𐬀𐬭𐬀} g\acute{a}-tu$ , “a place,” (nom.  $\text{𐬔𐬀𐬭𐬀} g\acute{a}tus$ ); Old High German *g\acute{a}-m*, “I go,” =  $\text{जगामि} ja-g\acute{a}-mi$ ; not therefore, as Grimm conjectures (p. 868.), by syncope from *gangu*, but, with a more ancient and regular foundation, only with a suppression of the Sanscrit syllable of reduplication, introduced, therefore, from the third into the second class (see p. 117.), as in Latin, *da-mus* answering to  $\delta\acute{\iota}\delta\omicron-\mu\epsilon\nu$ . Thus, also, *st\acute{a}-m*, *st\acute{a}-s*, *st\acute{a}-t*, in like manner, with suppressed reduplication, corresponds to  $\text{ἴ-στη-μι}$  (for  $\sigma\acute{\iota}\sigma\tau\eta\mu\iota$ ), and to the Sanscrit root  $\text{स्था} sth\acute{a}$ , which is irregularly inflected,  $\text{तिष्ठामि} tish\acute{t}h\acute{a}mi$ ,  $\text{तिष्ठसि} tish\acute{t}hasi$ ,  $\text{तिष्ठति} tish\acute{t}hati$ , for *tasth\acute{a}mi*, *tasth\acute{a}si*, *tasth\acute{a}ti*,

---

\* Somewhat that pertains here I have already put together very concisely at the end of my Sanscrit Glossary.

† The attached cyphers denote the classes described in §. 109<sup>a</sup>.





the special form जानामि *jānāmi*, for ज्ञानामि *jñā-nā-mi*, may belong to the Gothic root *KANN*, Old High German *CHANN*, (*kann*, *chan*, “I know,” see §. 94, *kunnum*, *chunnum*, “we know,” see §. 66.) ध्मा<sup>1</sup> *dhmā*, “to blow,” alters itself in the special forms to धम् *dham*, Latin *FLA*, according to the second class (§. 117. 2.), Old High German *PLĀ* (§§. 12. 20.), whence *plā-ta*, *flavi*. As in Sanscrit, from the above-mentioned धम् *dham*, comes the nominal base धमनी *dhamanī*, “a vein”; so may the Gothic base *BLOTHA* (nom. acc. *blóth*, blood”) come here also under consideration. We pass on to roots in *i*, and have to remark that the root mentioned at p. 107, इ *i*, “to go,” is not unknown in German. We find it in the Gothic imperative *hir-i*, “come here”; du. *hir-jats*; pl. *hir-jūh*. I believe, too, that in the irregular preterite *iddja*, “I went,” the *i* alone can be assumed as the root. In Zend occurs 𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀 *aei-ti*, “he goes” (from 𐬀𐬀𐬀 *ēti*, according to §§. 28. 41.), Lithuan. *ei-ti*. 𐬀𐬀<sup>5</sup> *śri*, “to go,” with the prep. 𐬀𐬀 *ut*, “to raise itself”; hence 𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀 *uchchhrita*, “raised,” “high”; compare *cre-sco*, *cre-vi* (see §. 21.), Old High German, with the addition of a *t*—as in the case of *mat*, from मा *mā*—so *SCRIT*, “to step”: perhaps the Latin *gradior*, as well as *cresco*, might be here included, the Guna form of the vowel, as in 𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀 *śray-a-ti*, “he goes,” being observed. 𐬀𐬀 *smi*, “to laugh,” Old High German *SMIL*; 𐬀𐬀<sup>9</sup> *pri*, “to love,” Zend 𐬀𐬀𐬀 *frī* (§. 47.), Goth. *frijō*, “I love” (§. 87.), compare 𐬀𐬀𐬀 *priya*, “dear.” 𐬀𐬀<sup>3</sup> *bhī*, “to fear,” 𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀 *bibhē-mi*, “I feared”; Lithuan. *bijau*; Gothic *fija*, “I hate” (*fjais*, *fjaith*), *fjands*, “foe”; Old High German *viēm* or *fiēm*, “I hate”: the Greek *φέβ-ο-μαι* answers to the Sanscrit reduplication of *bibhēmi*; so that, contrary to the common rule, the aspirates have remained in the prefix, but in the base itself have become medials, and this has left only *β* as the whole root, as in Sanscrit *da-d-mas*, “we give,” for *da-dā-mas*, *δί-δο-μες*. Perhaps, also, *ΦΙΔ*, *φείδομαι*, is to be referred to the roots in *i*, so that an unorganic dental

affix would be to be assumed.  $\text{शी}^2$  *śi*, “to lie,” “to sleep,” with irregular Guna in the middle; hence  $\text{śē-tē} = \text{κεῖ-ται}$ .  $\text{ही}^3$  *hrī*, “to be ashamed”; Old High German *HRU*, “to repent” (*hrim-u*, *hrou*, *hru-umēs*, see p. 115). Of roots in *u*,  $\text{दृ}^1$  *dru*, “to run,”  $\text{दृषति}$  *drav-a-ti*, “he runs,” may furnish, through the Guna form, the Greek  $\delta\rho\acute{\alpha}\text{-}\sigma\kappa\omega$ ,  $\delta\iota\text{-}\delta\rho\acute{\alpha}\text{-}\sigma\kappa\omega$ , which appears to have its  $\alpha$  with suppression of the digamma: the  $\mu$  of  $\delta\rho\acute{\epsilon}\mu\omega$ , however, might pass as a hardening of the  $\varphi$   $\nu$  (§. 63.), and  $\delta\rho\acute{\epsilon}\mu\text{-}\sigma\text{-}\mu\epsilon\nu$ ,  $\delta\rho\acute{\epsilon}\mu\text{-}\epsilon\text{-}\tau\epsilon$ , &c., therefore represent most truly the forms *drav-ā-mas*, *drav-a-tha*.  $\text{प्लु}^1$  *plu*, “to go,” “to swim,” “to flow” ( $\text{प्लव}$  *plava*, “a ship”), Latin *FLU*. The Greek  $\pi\lambda\acute{\epsilon}\omega$ ,  $\pi\lambda\acute{o}\omega$  is again not to be so regarded as if the old *u* had been corrupted to  $\epsilon$  or  $o$ , but  $\pi\lambda\acute{\epsilon}(F)\omega$ ,  $\pi\lambda o(F)\omega$  supply the place of the Guna form in *plav-é* (of the middle voice), 3d pers. *plav-a-tē*: the future  $\pi\lambda\acute{\epsilon}\upsilon\sigma\omega$ , the  $\upsilon$  having the Guna (§. 26.), answers to  $\text{प्लोष्ये}$  *plō-shyē*; Lithuan. *plaukiu*, “I swim,” with a guttural added, as in Latin *fluc-si* from *fluv* (p. 98.) Old High German *VLUZ*, “to flow,” pre-supposes the Gothic *FLUT* (§. 87); with the favourite dental addition, with which all final vowels are so commonly invested.  $\text{श्रु}^5$  *śru*, “to hear,” *KAY* (§§. 20, 21.), Goth. *HLIU-MAN* (nominative *hliuma*), “ear,” as “hearer,” with weakened Guna (§. 27.). With regard to the *kl* for *śr*, compare, also, *clunis* with  $\text{श्रोणी}$  *śrōnī*, *f.* “hip,” Lithuan. *klausau*, “I hear.” Perhaps *erudio*, as “to make hear,” is to be referred to this class: the derivation from *e* and *rudis* is little satisfactory. Anquetil introduces a Zend *erodé*, *célebre*, ( $\kappa\lambda\upsilon\tau\acute{o}\varsigma$ ), which I have not yet found in the original text, but I meet with the causal form  $\text{श्रवयामि}$  *śrāvayāmi* (Sansk.  $\text{श्रावयामि}$  *śrāvayāmi*), “I speak,” “recite” (V. S. p. 38). The Old High German *serirumēs*, “we have exclaimed,” gives *SCRIR* as the root, and rests probably on the form *śrāv* (§. 20.), with a thinning of the *ā* to *i* (§. 66.); the present and sing. preterite, however, have lost the *r* (*scriu* for *scriru*,

*screi* for *screir*), like the Greek κλή-σω, κέκλη-κα, &c. The Latin *clamo*, however, has the same relation to आच् *śráv* that *mare* has to वारि *vári*, "water" (§. 63.), and δρεμ to द्रव् *drav*, from द्रु *dru*, "to run." 𐬔𐬀 *hu*<sup>5</sup>, "to extol," "to glorify" (𐬔𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬔𐬀 *humúta*, "he celebrated," V. S. p. 39.), is probably the root of the Greek ὕμνος (*ῥμ(ε)νος*), which I do not like to regard as an irregular derivative from ὕδω. पू *pú*<sup>1.9.</sup> "to purify," *PUrus*. This root is the verbal parent of the wind and fire, which are both represented as pure. पवन *pavana* (with Guna and *ana* as suffix) is "the wind," and the corresponding Gothic *FŌNA* (neut. nom. acc. *fōn*, see §. 116.) is "fire," which in Sanscrit is called पावक *pāv-a-ka*, with Vṛiddhi and *aka* as suffix. The relation of *FŌNA* to पवन *pavana* resembles that of the Latin *mālo* from *mauolo*; the loss of the syllable व *va* is replaced by lengthening the *a* (§. 69.). The Greek πῦρ and Old High German *VIURA* (nom. acc. *viur*), the latter with weakened Guna (§. 27.), and *ra* as suffix, both fall to the root पू *pú*. 𐬔𐬀<sup>2</sup> *brú*, "to speak," Zend 𐬔𐬀𐬭𐬀 *mrú* (e. g. 𐬔𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬔𐬀 *mraō-m*, "I spoke," V. S. p. 123.); the Greek ῥέ(F)ω rests on the Guna form ब्रवीमि *brav-i-mi*, and has, as often happens, lost the former of two initial consonants (cf. also ῥέω, ῥεύω, and *ruo*, with 𐬔𐬀 *srū*, "to flow"). The Old High German *SPRAH*, or *SPRAHH* (*sprihhu*, "I speak," *sprah*, "I spoke") appears to have proceeded from ब्रव् *brav*, by hardening the व *v* (see §. 19.), and prefixing an *s* akin to the *p*. भू *bhú*, "to be," Zend 𐬔𐬀𐬭𐬀 *bú*, Lithuan. *BU* (future *bú-su*, "I will be"), Latin *FU*, Greek ΦΥ. Probably, also, ΒΥ, in πρέσ-βυ-ς, πρεσβύτης, &c., is only another form of this root (cf. §. 18.); so that πρές would have to be regarded as a preposition from πρό (*pra*), essentially distinguished only by a euphonic Σ (cf. §. 96.). Moreover, the stem πρέσβυ has a striking resemblance to प्रभु *prabhu* (*excelsus, augustus*), literally, "being before." In Old High German, *pim* or *bim* corresponds to the



that, in Greek, *πίπτω, πετάω, πετάομαι, πέτομαι, πτήμι, &c.* belong to a common root *ΠΕΤ*; Latin *PET, peto, im-pelo, præpetes, penna* by assimilation for *pet-na*. In Gothic *FATH*, or, with the vowel weakened, *FITH*, might be looked for. To the latter corresponds, according to §. 87., Old High German *VĒD*, in *vēd-ara*, “feather.” *वद्*<sup>1. 10.</sup> *vad*, “to speak,” Latin *VAD*, contained in *vas, vad-is*. From *वद् vad* proceeds the abbreviated form *उद् ud*, to which pertains *‘ΥΔ* (*ῥῑδω, ῥῑδέω, ῥῑδης*). The Old High German gives *WAZ* (*var-wāzu* “maledico”), with *z* for *d*, according to §. 87, and the vowel of the base lengthened, as in *वादयामि vādayāmi*, according to the tenth class. *सद्*<sup>6</sup> *sad*, “to sink,” with the prep. *नि ni*, “to set oneself down;” Latin *SED, SID, sido, sedeo*; Greek *‘ΕΔ, ‘ΙΖ, ἔδος, ἔδρα, ἵζομαι*; Gothic *SAT* (§. 87.), *sita*, “I sit” (p. 116.). *अन्*<sup>2</sup> *an*, “to blow,” “to breathe,” *अनिल anila*, “wind,” Gothic *AN, us-ana*, “I expire,” cf. *ἄνεμος, “animus.”* *जन्*<sup>3</sup> *jan*, “to beget,” Zend *𐬵𐬀 zan* (§. 58.), *𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀 zaxāmi*, “I beget,” Sanscrit *जजन्मि jajanmi*, Greek *ΓΕΝ*, Latin *GEN* (*γίγνομαι, γένος, gigno, genus*), Gothic *KIN*, “to germinate,” (p. 116); *kuni*, “gender.” (§. 66.) *कर्*<sup>8</sup> *kar* (*कृ kri*), e.g. *करोति karōti*, “facit”: this root, in Zend, follows the fifth class; e.g. *𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬀𐬀 kēerēnōiti* (§. 41.), “facit,” *𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬀𐬀 kēreṇaōt*, “fecit,” *𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬀𐬀 kēreṇūidhi*, “fac”; Old High German *karan* or *garan*, “to prepare”; Latin *creo, cura* (cf. *कुरु kuru*, “fac”), *ceremonia*, and with *p* for *c* (§. 14.), *paro*; Greek *κραίνω, κρά-τος*; with *π*, *πράσσω, πρακ-σω, πρᾶγ-μα*, where the guttural appears to be a hardening of the *क्* *v* (§. 19.), e.g. from *कुर्वन्ति kurvanti*, “faciunt” (from *kur-u-anti*). *वह*<sup>1</sup> *vah*, “to drive,” “to carry,” Zend *𐬵𐬀 vaz* (§. 57.), Latin *VEH*, Greek *ὄχος*, “waggon,” as bearer, carrier, for *Φόχος*. *अस्*<sup>2</sup> *śvas*, “to breathe,” cf. *spiro*, according to §§. 50. and 22. *ग्रह*<sup>9. 10.</sup> *grah*, “to take”: the original form, occurring in the Vedas, is *ग्रम् grabh*. To this the Zend form belongs, according to the tenth class, and,



\* Vide Gram. Crit. p. 328.

fallen out (§. 14.); but βίος also belongs to this root, and finds a medium of comparison with जीव् *jív*, in the Latin *vivo*. Of roots with *u*, रुच्<sup>1</sup> *ruch*, "to shine," and रुद्<sup>2</sup> *rud*, "to weep," may serve as examples; the former, in Zend, is रुचस् *raoch*, (§§. 28. 32.), and follows the tenth class, e.g. रुचयति *raochayēiti*, "splendet." In Latin correspond *LUC*, *luc-s*, *luceo* (§. 20.), and *RUD*: the Greek has, in both roots, replaced the *r* by *l*, and presents, for comparison, ΛΥΚ (ἀμφι-λύκη, λυκόφως) and ΛΥΖ; to the former, λύχνος, λυχνέω, &c., has the same relation that, in Zend, तप् *tap* (§. 40.) has to the root तप् *tap* (§. 40.). We must assign λευκός also, with Guna, to the root ΛΥΚ. The Gothic gives *LUH* for *LUK*, according to §. 87.; whence, with the original, or with weakened Guna (§§. 26, 27.), spring forms like *lauhmóni*, "lightning," *lauhatjan*, "to lighten," *liuhath*, "light." Without Guna, and preserving the old smooth letter, stands *lukarn* (theme, *lukarna*, neut.), "lamp," rather isolated. A root corresponding to रुद् *rud* is wanting in Gothic, but the Old High German has for it, quite regularly according to §. 87., *RUZ*, "to weep" (*riuzu*, *rôz* for *rauz*, according to §. 80., *ruzumēs*). भूश्<sup>1</sup> *bhúsh*, "to adorn," is perhaps contained in the Latin *or-na*, with loss of the initial letter, as *amo* in relation to कामयामि *kāmayāmi*, "I love." With regard to the *r* for रुच् *sh*, advert to the relation of *uro* to रुच् *ush*, "to burn." सेव्<sup>1</sup> *sev*, "to honour," मेव् *mēdh*, "to think" (?). The latter cannot hitherto be quoted as a verb: it springs, however, from मेवस् *mēdhas* and मेवा *mēdhá*, "understanding," unless it should be preferred to assume for these words a root *midh*, which, however, the Grammarians do not exhibit. The Gothic has, for comparison, *MIT*, whence *mitô*, "I think": the Greek furnishes an analogous word to *sév*, viz. ΣΕΒ, σέβω. (§. 4.)

110. From the monosyllabic roots proceed nouns, substantive and adjective, by the annexation of syllables, which we should not, without examination, regard as not,



*per se*, significative and, as it were, supernatural mystic beings; to a passive belief in whose undiscoverable nature we are not willing to surrender ourselves. It is more natural to suppose that they have or had meaning, and that the organism of language connects that which has a meaning with what is likewise significative. Why should not language denote accessory ideas, by accessory words appended to the root? Language, which possesses both sense and body, infuses sense and imparts form to every word. The object of nouns is to represent persons or things, to which that which the abstract root expresses adheres; and hence it is most natural to look for pronouns in the elements used in the formation of words, as the bearers of qualities, actions, and conditions, which the root expresses *in abstracto*. There appears, too, in reality, as we shall develop in the chapter on the pronouns, a complete\* identity between the most important elements in the formation of words and some pronominal bases which are declined even in an isolated state. But it is not surprising that several of the elements of verbal formation, in the class of independent words, should not admit of more certain explanation; for these affixes have their origin in the most obscure and early epoch of language, and subsequently they have themselves lost all consciousness as to whence they have been taken, on which account the appended suffix does not always keep equal pace with the alterations which, in the course of time, occur in the corresponding isolated word; or it has been altered while the other remains unchanged. Still, in individual cases, we may remark the admirable exactitude with which the appended grammatical syllables have maintained themselves through thousands of years in an unaltered form;

---

\* I direct attention preliminarily to my treatise "On the Influence of Pronouns in the Formation of Words" (Berlin, by F. Dümmler).

I say, we may remark this from the perfect accordance which exists between various individuals of the Sanscrit family of languages, although these languages have been removed, as it were, from each other's eyes since time immemorial, and every sister dialect has, since that removal, been left to its own fate and experience.

111. There are also pure radical words, *i.e.* those of which the theme, without suffix of derivation or personality, represents the naked root, which are then united in declension with the syllables which denote the relations of case. Except at the end of compounds, such radical words are, in Sanscrit, few in number, and are all feminine abstracts; as, भ्री *bhī*, "fear," युद् *yudh*, "contest," मुद् *mud*, "joy." In Greek and Latin the pure root is the most rare form of the word; but it does not always appear as an abstract substantive. As, for instance, *e.g.* φλογ (φλόκ-ς), ὄπ (ὄπ-ς), νίφ (νίπ-ς), leg (*lec-s*), pac (*pac-s*), duc (*duc-s*), pel-lic (*pel-lec-s*). In German, commencing even with the Gothic, no pure radical words exist, although, by reason of the abbreviation of the base of the word in the singular, many words have assumed that appearance; for from the abbreviation of these verbal bases, which has been constantly extending during the lapse of time, it is precisely the most modern dialects which appear to exhibit the greatest number of naked roots as nouns. (cf. §. 116.) Naked roots seem most generally used at the end of compounds, on account of the clogging of the preceding part of the word. According to this principle, in Sanscrit, every root can, in this position, designate the agent by itself; as, *e.g.* धर्मविद् *dharma-vid*, "duty-knowing." In Latin, the use of these compounds is as frequent as in Sanscrit, only that, according to §. 6., a radical *a* is weakened to *i* or *e*; thus, *carni-fic* (*fec-s*), *tubi-cin* (*cen*). An example in Greek is χερνίβ (for -νίπ, from νίπ-τω). Sanscrit roots which end with short vowels, as जि *ji*, "to conquer," are, in compounds of this kind,

supported by the addition of a *t*, which so much the more appears to be a simple phonetic affix without signification, that these weakly-constructed roots appear to support themselves on an auxiliary *t* before the gerundial suffix *ya* also. Thus, *e.g.* स्वर्गजित् *svarga-jit*, "conquering the heaven," विजित्य *vi-jit-ya*, "by conquering." In Latin I find interesting analogies to these formations in *IT* and *STIT*, from the roots *I* and *STA*, the latter weakened to *STI* according to §. 6. Thus, *com-it* (*com-es*), "goer with"; *equ-it* (*equ-es*), "goer on horseback"; *al-it* (*al-es*), "goer with wings"; *super-stit* (*-stes*), "standing there." The German has in this way supported throughout with a *t* several roots terminating with a vowel, and hence given to this letter the character of radicalism, as above mentioned (p. 123) in *MAT*, from मा *mā*, "to measure."

---

## FORMATION OF CASES.

112. THE Indian Grammarians take up the declinable word in its primary form, *i.e.* in its state when destitute of all case-termination ; and this bare form of the word is given also in dictionaries. In this we follow their example ; and where we give Sanscrit and Zend nouns, they stand, unless it is otherwise specified, or the sign of case is separated from the base, in their primary form. The Indian Grammarians, however, did not arrive at their primary forms by the method of independent analysis, as it were by an anatomical dissection or chemical decomposition of the body of language ; but were guided by the practical use of the language itself, which, at the beginning of compounds—and the art of composition is, in Sanscrit, just as necessary as that of conjugation or declension—requires the pure primary form ; naturally with reservation of the slight changes of the adjoining limits of sound, rendered necessary at times by the laws of euphony. As the primary form at the beginning of compounds can represent every relation of case, it is, as it were, the case general, or the most general of cases, which, in the unlimited use of compounds, occurs more frequently than any other. Nevertheless, the Sanscrit language does not everywhere remain true to the strict and logical principle usually followed in composition ; and as if to vex the Grammarians, and put their logic to the test, it places as the first member of the compounds in the pronouns of the first and second person the ablative plural, and in those of the third person the nom. and acc. sing. of the neuter, instead of the true primary form. The Indian Grammarians, then, in

this point, have applied to the cases furnished to them by the language, and take the augmented अस्मत् *asmat* or अस्मद् *asmad*, "from us," युष्मत् *yushmat* or युष्मद् *yushmad*, "from you," as the starting-point in the declension, or as the primary form, although in both pronominal forms only अ *a* and यु *yu* belong to the base, which, however, does not extend to the singular. That, however, in spite of this error, the Indian Grammarians understand how to decline the pronouns, and that they are not deficient in external rules for this purpose, is a matter of course. That the interrogative, in its declension, resembles bases in *a*, cannot escape any one who holds the neuter किम् *kim* for the original indeclinable form of the word. Pânini settles the matter here with a very laconic rule, when he says (edit. Calc. p. 969) किमः कः *kimah kah*, i.e. *ka*\* is substituted for *kim*. If this strange method were to be followed in Latin, and the neuter *quid* in like manner regarded as the theme, then, in order to get at the dative *cu-i* (after the analogy of *fructui*), one would have to say, "*quidis cus*," or "*quidi-cus*." In another place (p. 825), Pânini forms from *idam*, "this" (which in like manner has the honour of passing for a base) and *kim*, "what?" a copulative compound; and by इदंकिमोर् ईश्वरी *idankimôr îškî*, the Grammarian teaches that the putative bases in the formations under discussion substitute for themselves the forms *î* and *kî*.

113. The Sanscrit, and the languages akin to it, which in this respect have still kept upon the old footing, distinguish, besides the two natural genders, another — the neuter, which the Indian Grammarians call Klîva, i.e. eunuch; which appears to be a peculiarity of the San-

---

\* He forms, namely, from *kim*, regarded as a base, *kim-as*, which in reality does not occur, and which has, for the sake of euphony, here become *kimah*.

sanscrit, or most perfect family of languages. According to its original intention, this gender had to represent inanimate nature, but it has not everywhere confined itself to these old limits: the language imparts life to what is inanimate, and, on the other hand, (according to the view then taken,) impairs the personality of what is by nature animate. The feminine in Sanscrit, both in the base and in the case-terminations, loves a luxurious fullness of form; and where it is distinguished from the other genders in the base or in the termination, it marks this distinction by broader, and more sonant vowels. The neuter, on the other hand, prefers the greatest conciseness, but distinguishes itself from the masculine, not in the base, but only, in the most conspicuous cases, in the nominative and its perfect counterpart the accusative; in the vocative, also, when this is the same as the nominative.

114. Number, in Sanscrit and its sister languages, is distinguished, not by a particular affix denoting the number, but by the selection or modification of the case-syllable, so that, with the case-suffix, the number is at once known; *e. g.* *bhṛyam*, *bhṛām*, and *bhṛas* are kindred syllables, and, among other relations, express that of the dative; the first in the singular (only in the pronoun of the 2d person), the second in the dual, the third in the plural. The dual, like the neuter, in course of time is the first to be lost with the weakening of the vitality of the view taken by the senses, or is more and more straitened in its use, and then replaced by the abstract plural expressive of infinite number. The Sanscrit possesses the dual most fully, both in the noun and in the verb, and employs it everywhere where its use could be expected. In the Zend, which otherwise approximates so closely to the Sanscrit, it is found very rarely in the verb, more frequently in the noun. The Pali has only as much left of it as the Latin, viz. a remnant of it in two words, which signify "two"

and “both”; in the Prâkrit it is entirely wanting. Of the German languages, only the eldest dialect, the Gothic, possesses it, but merely in the verb; while, on the contrary, in the Hebrew (speaking here of the Semitic languages) it is retained only in the noun, in disadvantageous contrast with the Arabic, which, in many other respects also, is a more perfect language, and which maintains the dual in equal fulness in the verb also; while in the Syriac it has been almost entirely lost in the noun as well as in the verb.\*

115. The case-terminations express the reciprocal relations of nouns, which principally and originally referred only to space, but from space were extended also to time and cause, the relations of the persons spoken of, to one another. According to their origin, they are, at least for the most part, pronouns, as will be more clearly developed hereafter. Whence could the exponents of the relations of space, which have grown up with the primary words into a whole, have better been taken, than from those words which express personality, with their inherent secondary idea of room, of that which is nearer or more distant, of that which is on this or that side? As also in verbs the personal terminations, *i. e.* the pronominal suffixes—although, in the course of time, they are no longer recognised and felt to be that which, by their demonstrable origin, they imply and are—are replaced, or, if we may use the expression, commented on by the isolated pronouns prefixed to the verb; so, in the more sunken, insensible state of the language, the spiritually dead case-terminations

---

\* Regarding the character, the natural foundation, and the finer gradations in the use of the dual, and its diffusion into the different provinces of language, we possess a talented inquiry, by W. von Humboldt, in the Transactions of the Academy for the year 1827; and some which have been published by Dümmler.

are, in their signification of space, replaced, supported, or explained by prepositions, and in their personal signification by the article.

116. Before we describe the formation of cases in the order in which the Sanscrit Grammarians dispose them, it appears desirable to give the different final sounds of the nominal bases with which the case-suffixes unite themselves, as well as to point out the mode in which the kindred languages are in this respect related to one another. The three primary vowels (*a, i, u*) occur in Sanscrit, both short and long, at the end of nominal bases; thus, अ *a*, इ *i*, उ *u*; आ *ā*, ई *ī*, ऊ *ū*. To the short *a*, always masculine or neuter, never feminine, *a*, corresponds in Zend and Lithuanian, also in German, where, however, even in the Gothic (in Grimm's first strong declension), especially in substantives, it is only sparingly retained: in more modern dialects it is commonly supplanted by a more recent *u* or *e*. In Greek, the corresponding termination is the *o* of the second declension (*e.g.* in λόγος): and *o* was also the termination of the Latin noun in ancient times; but in the classic period, although sometimes retained, it was commonly changed to *u* in the nom. and accus. sing. (of the second declension. An old *a*, however, is still left in *cola, gena, cida*, at the end of compounds; where, however, from the want of other analogies, it is used in declension similarly to the feminine originally long *a*, on which account the nominative is written, not *colas, genas, cidas*, but *cola, &c.* The Grecian masculines of the first declension in *ā-s*, with the *η-s* which has proceeded therefrom, must likewise, according to their origin, be compared with the Sanscrit masculine short *a*, to which, in regard of quality and preservation of the nominative sign, they have remained faithful, while the *o* of the second declension has preserved its old original brevity. Their identity with bases in *o* is excellently shewn by the genitive in *ov*, which



does not at all suit a theme in  $\alpha$  or  $\eta$ ; and further, from such compounds as  $\mu\upsilon\rho\omicron\pi\acute{\omega}\lambda\eta\text{-}\varsigma$ ,  $\pi\alpha\iota\delta\omicron\tau\rho\acute{\iota}\beta\eta\text{-}\varsigma$ , in which the vowel that has been added to the roots  $\Pi\Omega\Lambda$  and  $TPIB$  supplies the place of the Sanscrit  $a$  in similar compounds for which, in Greek,  $o$  usually stands.

117. To the short  $i$ , which occurs in the three genders, the same vowel corresponds in the kindred languages. In German it is to be looked for in Grimm's fourth strong declension, which I shall make the second; where, however, from the destructive alterations of time, it becomes nearly as hard as the  $a$  of the first declension. In Latin,  $i$  is interchanged with  $e$ ; hence *facile* for *facili*, *mare* for *mari*, Sanscrit  $\text{वारि } v\acute{a}ri$ , "water." In Greek, before vowels the  $i$  is generally weakened to the unorganic  $\epsilon$ . The short  $u$  also shews itself in Sanscrit in the three genders, as in Greek  $\upsilon$ , and  $u$  in Gothic, where it distinguishes itself from the  $a$  and  $i$  in that it has maintained itself as well before the  $s$  of the nominative as in the uninflected accusative. In Latin the corresponding letter is the  $u$  of the fourth declension.

118. The long vowels ( $\bar{a}$ ,  $\bar{i}$ ,  $\bar{u}$ ) belong, in Sanscrit, principally to the feminine (see §. 113.), are never found in the neuter, and occur in the masculine very rarely. In Zend the long final  $a$  has generally been shortened in polysyllabic words: as it has in Gothic, in which bases in  $\bar{o}$  correspond (§. 69.) to the Sanscrit feminine bases in  $\bar{a}$ , and the  $\bar{o}$  in the uninflected nom. and accus. sing. is shortened to  $a$ , with the exception of the monosyllabic forms  $s\bar{o}$ , "she," "this," Sanscrit  $\text{सा } s\bar{a}$ , Zend  $h\bar{a}$ ;  $kv\bar{o}$ , "which?" Sanscrit and Zend  $k\bar{a}$ . The Latin, also, in the uninflected nom. and voc., has shortened the old feminine long  $a$ ; but the Lithuanian has, in the nom., maintained the original at length. In Greek, the Doric  $\bar{\alpha}$  approaches most nearly to the Sanscrit feminine  $\text{सा } \bar{a}$ , which the common dialect has sometimes preserved, sometimes shortened, sometimes transformed into  $\eta$ .

119. The long  $\bar{i}$  appears, in Sanscrit, most frequently

as a characteristic addition in the formation of feminine bases; thus, the feminine base महती *mahatī* (*magna*) springs from महत् *mahat*. The same holds good in Zend. Moreover, the feminine character *ī* has been preserved most strictly in Lithuanian, where, for example, in the part. pres. and fut. an *i* is added to the old participial suffix *ant*, and *ésant-i*, “the existing,” *bú-sent-i*, “that that shall be,” correspond to the Sanscrit सती *sat-ī* (for *asati* or *asanti*), भविष्यन्ती *bhav-i-shyanti*. In Greek and Latin this feminine long *i* has become incapable of declension; and where it has still left traces, there a later unorganic affix has become the bearer of the case terminations. This affix is, in Greek, either  $\alpha$  or  $\delta$ ; in Latin, *c*. Thus, ἡδεῖα corresponds to the Sanscrit स्वाद्वी *svādv-ī*, from स्वादु *svādu*, “sweet”; -τρια, -τριδ, e.g. ὀρχήστρια, ληστρίς, ληστρίδ-ος, to the Sanscrit त्री *trī*, e.g. जनित्री *janitrī*, “genitress,” to which the Latin *genitrī-c-s*, *genitrī-c-is*, corresponds; while in the Greek γενέτειρα, and similar formations, the old feminine *i* is forced back a syllable. This analogy is followed by μέλαινα, τάλαινα, τέρεινα, and substantive derivations, as τέκταινα, Λάκαινα. In θεράπεινα, λέαινα, the base of the primitive is, as in the nom. masc., shortened by a  $\tau$ . In θέαινα, λύκαινα, it is to be assumed that the proper primitive in  $\nu$  or  $\nu\tau$  has been lost, or that these are formations of a different kind, and correspond to the rather isolated word in Sanscrit इन्द्रानी *Indrānī*, as the wife of Indra, as derived from इन्द्र *Indra*, is termed. The cases where the feminine *i* is solely represented by *a* are essentially limited to feminine derivatives from forms in  $\nu\tau$ , where  $\tau$  passes into  $\sigma$ : the preceding  $\nu$ , however, is replaced by  $\nu$  or  $\iota$ , or the mere lengthening of the preceding vowel, or it is assimilated to the  $\sigma$ :

hence,  $\text{ουσ-}\alpha$ ,  $\text{εισ-}\alpha$ ,  $\text{εσσ-}\alpha$ ,  $\bar{\alpha}\sigma\text{-}\alpha^*$ ,  $\bar{\upsilon}\sigma\text{-}\alpha$   
 for  $\text{οντ-}\alpha$ ,  $\text{εντ-}\alpha$ ,  $\text{εντ-}\alpha$ ,  $\text{αντ-}\alpha$ ,  $\text{υντ-}\alpha$ .

---

\* In Doric subsequent and original  $\alpha\iota\sigma\text{-}\alpha$ .

To this analogy belong, moreover, the feminine substantives, like *θάλασσα*, *βασίλισσα*, *μέλισσα*, which J. Grimm (II. 328.) very correctly, in my opinion, compares with forms like *χαρί-εσσα*, *μελιτό-εσσα*, and explains the double *σ* by germination or assimilation. These feminine formations by a simple *α* instead of the original *ι* are the most corrupt, and, relatively, the most recent; and herein the Greek is not supported by any of the kindred languages. The Latin, its twin-sister, which otherwise runs parallel to it, leaves, in the part. pres. and other adjective bases terminating with a consonant, the feminine undistinguished from the masculine through all the cases, since it has no longer the power of declining the old *ī*.

120. The German, too, can no longer fully decline the old feminine *ī*; and the Gothic, by a foreign affix, introduces it into the *θ* declension, but in the singular of substantives shortens the syllable *jō* in the uninflected nominative and vocative to *i*, in the adjective to *ja*. More commonly, however, the old bases in *ī* are introduced, by the frequently employed affix of an *n*, into the so-called weak declension; and as *ī* in Gothic is denoted by *ei*, so to the Sanscrit feminine participial bases in *अन्ती anti*, and to the fem. comparative bases in *ईयसी iyasī*, correspond the forms *ndein*, *izein*, regarding the nominative of which refer to §. 142.

121. The long *u* (*ū*) appears, in Sanscrit, rather seldom at the end of primary forms, and is for the most part feminine. The words most in use are *वधू vadhū*, "a wife," *भू bhū*, "earth," *स्वाश्रू śvaśrū*, "mother-in-law" (*socrus*), *भ्रू bhrū*, "eyebrow." To the latter corresponds *ὀφρύς*, likewise with the long *υ*, the declension of which, however, is not different from that of the short *υ*; while in Sanscrit the long *u* is distinguished from the short feminine *u* in the same way as *ई ī* from *इ i*. But few monosyllabic primary forms end, in Sanscrit, with diphthongs, not any at all with *ए ē*; with *ऐ ai* (from *ā + i*, see §. 2.) only *रै rai*, masc. "thing," "riches"; in

the nom. irregularly **रस** *rd-s* for **रैस** *rdi-s*. In this is recognised the Latin *re-s*. Still I do not believe that Latin bases in *ē* should therefore be looked upon as corresponding to the Sanscrit **रे** *di*; for, in the first place, the Latin *ē* corresponds elsewhere to the Sanscrit **ए** *ē* (from *ā + i*), never to *di*; secondly, the connection of the *ē* of the fifth declension with the originally long *a* of the first is not to be mistaken (to which it bears the same relation that the Ionic *η* does to the Doric *ᾱ*), for many words with the same meaning belong to the A and E declension; and, for example, a suffix which is employed for the formation of abstracts from adjectives is sounded as well *tiē* as *tia* (*planitie-s*, *planitia*, *canitie-s*, *canitia*); and *iē-s*, and *ia*, in the formation of primitive and derivative words—like *effigie-s*, *effigia*, *pauperie-s*, *pauperia*—are clearly one and the same suffix, identical with the Sanscrit **या** *yā*, which is used for the same purpose, and the Greek *ία*, Ionic *ίη*. Let us now consider the objections which are opposed to the original identity of the feminine *ē* and *a*. The most weighty is the *s* in the nom. sing. and pl.: *ē-s*, *ē-s* for *ē*, *ei*, as *musa*, *musæ* (*musai*), **κεφαλῇ**, **κεφαλαί**. As regards the *s* in the singular, it is, if the identity with the first declension be authentic, very remarkable; and forms like *species*, *cavities*, seem to be true lingual patriarchs: for the Sanscrit, like the Zend, Greek, Gothic, Lithuanian, exhibits the absence of the nominative sign in the corresponding feminine bases in *a*. I have, however, never considered as original the abandonment of the nominative sign, and the complete equalization with the primary form in **सुता** *sutā*, “daughter,” and similar words, although it has appeared to me as losing itself very deeply in far-distant ages. The Latin, however, in some other points of Grammar, shews greater antiquity than the Sanscrit and Greek, as, for example (to confine the present instance to the nominative case), participial nominatives, like *amans*, *legens*, are better and

older forms than the Sanscrit and Greek, like तुदन् *tudan*, λέγων, τιθείς, because they have preserved the nominative *s* together with the nasal, and therein stand on the same footing with Zend forms, like 𐬔𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬭𐬀 *bavan's*, "being." I cannot, therefore, find, in the retention of the nominative sign in the fifth declension, any decisive argument against its original identity with the first. We will treat hereafter of the *s* of the nominative plural. In the genitive singular the common form *ei* answers to *deae* (*deai*), the more rare, however, and better, in *ēs* to *familias*. Schneider searches, but fortunately without success, for genitives like *die-is*: we require them as little, perhaps, as a *familia-is*. Let *dies* be written with Greek letters διη-ς, and then, perhaps, a *die-is* will be as little required as a δικη-ος. Although a few bases of the third declension, by rejecting a consonant or an entire syllable, have passed into the fifth declension, we will not therefore infer that all bases in *ē* have arisen from such an abbreviation. If *QUIET*, after rejecting the *t*, could be declined according to the fifth declension, then must there necessarily have formerly been a fifth, *i.e.* there must have been bases in *ē*, otherwise from *QUIET* could only have come *QUII* (*quies*, *quiis*, like *cædes*); in spite of the rejection of the *t* it must have continued in the third declension. As regards the connection between *rē-s* and the abovementioned Sanscrit रै *rāi*, the connection, in my opinion, is to be arrived at through the irregular nominative एस् *rā-s*; and according to this *re-s* would lean on an old *ā*: it answers to एस् *rā-s*, as *rē-bus* to एभ्यस् *rā-bhyas*, and as in Greek γῆ-ν to the Sanscrit गम् *gām*, "*terram*," which, in the remaining cases, has गो *gō* for its base. In Lithuanian there are feminine primary forms in *e* (Ruhig's third declension) which resemble the Greek in *η* in the suppression of the singular nominative sign, but in the nominative plural in *e-s* approach more closely the Latin in *ē*.

122. Primary forms in **द्यो** *dyô* are rare in Sanscrit: the only ones known to me are **द्यो** *dyô*, "heaven," and **गो** *gô*: the former is feminine, and properly proceeds from **दि** *div* (a radical word from **दि** *div*, "to shine") by the vocalization of the **व** *v*, after which the vowel **इ** *i* becomes its semi-vowel **य** *y*. In the accusative the *ô* roots change this diphthong into *â*. To the *â* thus obtained in **द्याम्** *dyâ-m*, **गाम्** *gâ-m* corresponds the Latin *e* of *die-m*, the Greek *η*, Doric *α* of *γῆ-ν*, *γᾱ-ν*: the Latin *e*, however, is rendered short by the influence of the final *m*: the original language requires *diē-m*. In Sanscrit, also, from **दि** *div*, "to shine," are derived appellations of day; as on the other side, in Latin, those for the heaven—*divum*, *sub divo*, *sub dio*—viz. **दिवा** *divâ*, as an adverb, "by day," and used as a primary form at the beginning of compounds; and also **दिवस** *divasa*, masc., and **द्यु** *dyu*, neuter (a contraction from *div*), which latter signifies both "day" and "heaven." To **द्यु** *dyu* answers, after rejecting the *d* (as *viginti* for *dviginti*), the Latin *Ju* of *Ju-piter*, "heavens-lord or father": the oblique cases *Jov-is*, *Jov-i*, *Jov-em* answer better to the broader theme **द्यो** *dyô*, whence the dative **द्यवे** *dyav-ê*, and the locat. **द्यवि** *dyav-i*. The *Djovis*, moreover, furnished by Varro, deserves mention, as that which keeps most faithfully to the ancient form. The Grecian *Zeús* signifies, therefore, in accordance with its origin primarily, "heaven": I form its relation to **द्यो** *dyô* thus, that after dropping the **द** *d* the following semi-vowel **य** *y* became *ζ* (§. 19.). The oblique cases, on the contrary (*Δίος*, *Δίῳ*, &c.), belong to the Sanscrit **द्यु** *dyu*, and must originally have had a digamma, arisen by the natural law of sound from *u*, after which change the semi-vowel *j* must have become a vowel. *Δίος* has the same relation to *Δίφος*, that, in Latin, *sub dio* has to *sub divo*.

123. Let us now consider the second of the abovementioned primary forms in *ô*, viz. **गो** *gô*. It has several

meanings; but the most common are “bull,” as masculine, and “cow” and “earth” as feminine. Both significations have in Zend, as in Greek, divided themselves into two forms. The Greek has preserved for the meaning “earth” the old guttural. With regard to the vowel of  $\gamma\eta$ ,  $\gamma\hat{a}$  follows the example of the Indian accusative, where, as has been already remarked, गम् *gām* ( $\gamma\eta\nu$ ) stands for *gô-m* or *gav-am*. For the meaning “ox” the Greek has preserved the old diphthong—(for, for  $\delta = a + u$  may very well be expected, according to §. 4, *ov*)—but has exchanged the guttural medials for labials, as, p. 122,  $\beta\acute{\iota}\beta\eta\mu\iota$  for जगामि *jagāmi*. The stem BOY before vowels must originally have become BOF; thus, in the dative,  $\beta\omicron f-i$  would answer to the Sanscrit locat. गवि *gav-i*, and the Latin dative *bov-i*; but in the present state of the language the middle digamma between two vowels has always been dropped; and there is not, as with the initial digamma, the medium of metre for replacing it in the oldest writings. Only theory and comparative grammar can decide here. The Latin has, in the word *bō-s*, changed the vowels ( $a + u$ )—(which were originally of different kinds, but have been united into a diphthong)—into a homogenous mass (cf. §. 4.), the nature of whose contraction, however, discloses itself before vowel flections, since the *u*-half of *BŌ* becomes *v*, and the short *a* is resolved into the form of a short *o*; thus, *bov-i* answers to the Sanscrit locat. गवि *gav-i*. The Zend for the meaning “earth” has changed the guttural of the word under discussion into *z*, and gives in the nominative  $\text{𐬀𐬵𐬭𐬀}$  *zāo* for  $\text{𐬀𐬵𐬭𐬀}$  *zās* (§. 56<sup>b</sup>), in the accusative  $\text{𐬀𐬵𐬭𐬀}$  *zaim* (§. 61.): I am not able to adduce other cases. For the meaning “ox” the guttural has remained in Zend, and the nominative is then  $\text{𐬀𐬵𐬭𐬀}$  *gāu-s* or  $\text{𐬀𐬵𐬭𐬀}$  *gāo-s*.

124. I know only two words in Sanscrit which terminate in औ *āu*—नौ *nāu*, “ship,” and ग्लौ *glāu*, “moon”: the former has navigated very far on the ocean of our wide province

of language, without, however, in Sanscrit, having arrived at a secure etymological haven. I believe नौ *nāu* to be an abbreviation of *snau* (cf. *πέω*, *πέυω*, *ruo*, with *सु sru*, p. 125.); and that it therefore proceeds from the root स्ना *snā*, "to bathe," which originally, perhaps, may also have meant "to swim," and with which *νάω*, *νέω*, *na-to*, appear to be connected. नौ *nāu* would consequently be a radical word; and in regard to the vowel would stand for *nā*, according to the analogy of ददौ *daddāu* (*dedi*, *dedit*) for *daddā*, from *daddā-a*. As *a*, according to §. 6., is a grave vowel, the Greek cannot represent the Sanscrit Vridhhi-diphthong औ *āu* better than by *av*, while ओ *ō* (from short *a + u*) is commonly represented by *ev* or *ov*. Hence नौस् *nāu-s* and *ναῦ-ς* correspond as exactly as possible; the *υ* of *NAV*, however, like that of *BOY*, has maintained itself only before consonants; and the digamma, which replaces it, is lost before vowel inflections; *νῆ-ες*, *νᾶ-ες* are from *νᾶF-ες* (Sansk. नावस् *nāv-as*), as *βό-ες* from *βόF-ες*. The Latin has given this word a foreign addition, and uses *navi-s*, *navi-bus*, for *nau-s*, *nau-bus*\*. As the semi-vowel *v* is easily hardened to a guttural (§. 19.), we have here also, for *nau*, *nāv-am*, a sister form in our *nachen*, Old High German *naccho*, "ship," gen. dat. *nacchin*.

125. We pass over to the consonants: of these, *n*, *t*, *s*, and *r* appear in Sanscrit most frequently at the end of primary forms; all other consonants occur only in radical words, which are rare, and in some nominal bases of uncertain origin. We consider next the more rare or radical consonants. Of gutturals (*k*, *kh*, *g*, *gh*), we find none at

---

\* Thus in German an *i* has been added to the above-mentioned गो *gō*, which, however, according to §. 117., is suppressed, together with the case sign in Old High German; hence *chuo*, "cow," gen. *chuoī*, where the *i* does not belong to the case designations, but to their uninflected base.



the end of the nominal bases most in use; in Greek and Latin, on the contrary, they are of frequent occurrence; *c* is in Latin both radical and derivative, *g* only radical—*DUC*, *VORAC*, *EDAC*, *LEG*. In Greek,  $\kappa$ ,  $\chi$ , and  $\gamma$  are only radical, or occur in words of unknown origin, as  $\Phi\text{PIK}$ ,  $\text{KOPAK}$ , 'ONYX (Sanskrit *nakha*),  $\Phi\Lambda\text{O}\Gamma$ . Of the palatals, *ch* and *j* in Sanscrit occur most frequently in वाच् *vâch*, “speech, voice” (*VOC*, 'OΠ), राज् *rāj*, “king,” the latter only at the end of compounds; असृज् *asrij*, “blood” (*sanguis*); in Zend we have द्रुज् *druj*, f., as name of an evil demon, probably from the Sanscrit root द्रुह् *druh*, “to hate.” Of the two classes of the *T*-sound, the first, or lingual (ट् *t*, &c.), is not used at the end of nominal bases; and therefore the second, dental, or proper *T*-class, is so much the more frequently employed. Still द् *d*, ध् *dh*, occur only in radical words, and therefore seldom; थ् *th* perhaps only in पथ् *path*, as the secondary theme of पथिन् *pathin*, “way”; nom. पन्थास् *panthās*, from पन्थस् *panthas*, which I think I again recognise in the Latin *PONT*, *pons*. Other examples are, अद् *ad*, “eating,” at the end of compounds, and युध् *yudh*, f., “strife.” The letter त् *t* is so much the more common, that several of the most frequently employed suffixes end with it, as that of the part. pres. in अत् *at* or अन् *ant*, Greek and Latin *nt*. The Greek, besides τ, exhibits also δ and θ at the end of primary forms which are not radical; still  $\text{KOPY}\Theta$  and  $\text{'OPNI}\Theta$  appear to me to be properly compounds, and to contain the roots ΘH, ΘE (the vowel being dropped) as their last member; and according to this,  $\text{KOPY}\Theta$  would properly mean “what is placed on the hand”; so in Sanscrit, शारद् *śarad*, “autumn,” “rainy season,” which Grammarians explain by a suffix *ad*, in my opinion means nothing but “water giving,” and contains the root दा *dā*, “to give,” with *d* suppressed.  $\text{'OPNI}\Theta$  finds in Greek itself no etymology: the Sanscrit offers for its explanation अरणि *arani* (according to the pronunciation of Bengal, *oroni*), “wood”; and if  $\acute{o}\rho\upsilon\iota$  is con-

nected therewith, we must think of  $\theta\acute{\epsilon}\omega$ , "to run," in respect of the  $\theta$ : "bird" therefore would derive its name from its going in the wood; while in Sanscrit, from its passage through the air, it is called, amongst other names, विहग *viha-ga*. Regarding the later origin of the  $\delta$  in feminine stems in  $\iota\delta$ , an account is given in §. 119.; that is to say, patronymics in  $\iota\delta$  can be compared with Sanscrit ones in  $\acute{i}$ , e.g. भैमी *bhaimī*, "the daughter of Bhîma. Probably, too, the  $\delta$  in feminine patronymics in  $\alpha\delta$  is a later addition; they spring, like those in  $\iota\delta$ , not from their masculines, but directly from the primary word of the masculine, and, in my opinion, stand in sisterly, not in filial connection with them. In Latin *d* appears as a more modern affix in the base *PECUD*, which the Sanscrit, Zend, and Gothic terminate with *u* (Sans.-Zend *paśu*, Goth. *faihu*). In Gothic, primary forms with a final *T*-sound are chiefly limited to the part. pres. where the old *t* appears changed into *d*, which remains without extraneous addition: there only, however, where the form stands substantively; otherwise, with the exception of the nominative, it is conducted by the affix *an* into a more current province of declension. The more modern German dialects under no circumstances leave the old *T*-sound without a foreign addition commixed with the base. In Lithuanian the participial suffix *ant*, in regard of the nom. sing. *ans* for *ants*, rests exactly upon the Latin and Zend step, which extends beyond the Sanscrit; but in most of the remaining cases the Lithuanian cannot decline any more consonants, i.e. cannot unite them with pure case terminations, but it transports them always, by a more modern affix, into a vowel-declension; and, indeed, to the participial suffix *ant* is added the syllable *ia*, by the influence of which the *t* experiences the euphonic transformation into *ch* (= *tsch*\*). The nasal of this dental

---

\* This sound is expressed by *cz*, as in Mielcke's edition of Ruhig's Grammar.

*T*-class, viz. the proper *n*, belongs to those consonants which occur most frequently at the end of nominal bases. In the German all the words of Grimm's weak declension like the Sanscrit, and the masculine and feminine in Latin, reject in the nominative the *n* of the base, and thereby have a vowel termination. The Lithuanian presents the same appearance in the nominative, but in the oblique cases adds to a base in *en* sometimes *ia*, sometimes a simple *i*.

126. Primary forms with a final labial, including the nasal (*m*) of this organ, appear in Sanscrit only in naked roots, as the last member of compounds, and here, too, but seldom. In isolated use, however, we have अप् *ap* (probably from the root आप् *āp*, "to take in," "to comprehend"), "water," which is used only in the plural; in Zend, however, in the singular also.\* In Greek and Latin, also, bases in *p*, *b*, *φ* are either evidently radical, or of unknown origin, with probably radical letters at the end; or in Latin they have suppressed, in the nominative, a vowel belonging to the base; and so, as in German, the first and fourth strong declension, according to Grimm, have only the appearance of a stem terminating with a consonant. Of this kind is *plebs*, from *plebis*; to explain which it is not requisite to turn, with Voss, to the Greek *πληθος*: one must keep to the Latin root *PLE*. The derivative *bis*, *bēs*, I explain like *bus*, *bundus*, *bilis*, *bam*, *bo* (*ama-*

---

\* The Latin adds an *a* to this old consonant base, and thus arises, according to the frequent interchange of *p* with *qu* (cf. *quinque* with पञ्चन् *panchan*), *aqua*; on the other hand, *am-nis* rests on the form *ap*, as *somnus* for *sopnus*, and *σεμνός* for *σεβνός*, in analogy with a Sanscrit euphonic law (Gramm. Crit. r. 58.). The Sanscrit has from the same root another neuter, आपस् *āpas*, in which we recognise the Latin *æquor*, which therefore would not proceed from *æquus*, but is transferred from the waves, or the mirror of the sea, to other things of a similar nature. In Greek, ἀφρός appears to belong to the same origin.

*bam, bo*), as from the root *FU*, "to be," which, like *FER*, often changes the *B* in its middle into *F* (§. 18.). Without appealing to the kindred languages, it is difficult, in Latin, to distinguish those bases which truly and originally terminate in a consonant from those which only appear to do so; for the declension in *i* has clearly operated on the consonant declension, and introduced an *i* into different places in which it is impossible it could have stood originally. In the dative ablative plural, the *i* of forms like *amantibus, vocibus*, admits of being explained as a conjunctive vowel, for facilitating the affix; it is, however, in my opinion, more correct to say that the bases *VOC, AMANT*, &c., because they could not unite with *bus*, have, in the present state of the Latin language, extended themselves to *VOCI, AMANTI*; so that we ought to divide *vocibus, amanti-bus*, just as at §. 125. it was said of the Lithuanian, that in most cases it extends its participial bases in *ant* to *anchia* (euphonic for *antia*). This view of forms like *amanti-bus* proves itself thereby to be the more probable, in that in the genitive plural also before *um*, as before the *a* of neuters, an *i* frequently finds its place, without its being possible to say that in *amanti-um, amanti-a*, the *i* would be necessary to facilitate the annexation of the ending. On the other hand, *juveni-s, cani-s*, forming the genitives *can-um, juven-um*, remind us of older bases in *n*; as, in Sanscrit च॒न् *śvan*, "a dog" (abbreviated च॒न् *śun*), and यु॒वन् *yuvan*, "young" (abbreviated यू॒न् *yūn*), in Greek κύ॒ων, abbreviated KYN, really close their theme with *n*. The German resembles the Latin in this point, that for the convenience of declension it has added an *i* to several numerals, whose theme originally terminated with a consonant; thus, in Gothic, from *FIDVŌRI* (Sanskrit च॒तुर् *chatur*, in the strong cases §. 129. च॒त्वार॑ *chatvār*) comes the dative *fidvōri-m*. The themes स॒प्तन् *saptan*, "seven," न॒वन् *navan*, "nine," द॒शन् *daśan*, "ten," by the addition of an *i*,

in Old High German mould themselves to *SIBUNI*, *NIUNI*, *ZEHANI*; which forms, at the same time, pass as masculine nominatives, as these cases, in Old High German, have lost the case-suffix *s*. The corresponding Gothic nominatives, if they occurred, would be *sibuneis*, *niuneis*, *taihuneis*. More on this point hereafter.

127. Of the semi-vowels (*y*, *r*, *l*, *v*), I have never found in Sanscrit य् *y* and ल् *l* at the end of bases, and व् *v* only in the word दिव् *div*, before mentioned, which contracts itself in several cases to द्यो *dyó* and द्यु *dyu*. On the other hand, र् occurs very frequently, especially in words which are formed by the suffix तर् *tar*<sup>\*</sup>, to which, in the kindred languages, likewise correspond bases in *r*. Moreover, *r* in Latin appears frequently as an alteration of an original *s*, as, in the comparative suffix *ior* (Sanskrit ईयस् *íyas*); and, further, as an abbreviation of *ri-s*, *re*, as *l* for *li-s*, *le*; or, in the second declension, as abbreviated from *ru-s*; as, in Gothic, *vair*, “man,” for *vair(a)-s*, belongs to bases in *a* (§. 116.). In Greek Α appears as a consonant base; but in contrast with the Sanscrit सलिल *salila*, “water,” ἄλ-ς appears abbreviated exactly in the same manner as μέγα-ς from μέγας.

128. Of the Sanscrit sibilants, the two first (श् *ś*, श् *sh*), as also the ह् *h*, are found only in radical words, and therefore seldom; स् *s*, on the contrary, concludes some very common suffixes used in the formation of words, as अस् *as*, which forms principally neuters, e.g. तेजस् *téjas*, “splendour,” “strength,” from तिज् *tij*, “to sharpen.” The Greek appears to be without bases in Σ; this, however, proceeds from the following reason, that this sibilant between two

---

\* Bases in अर् *ar* in several cases, and in the primary form also at the beginning of compounds, contract the syllable अर् *ar* to अरि *ri*; and this अरि *ri* is regarded by the Grammarians as their proper final sound. (§. 1.)

vowels, especially in the last syllable, is usually rejected; hence, neuters like μένος, γένος (from ΜΕΝΕΣ, ΓΕΝΕΣ, with change of the ε into ο), form in the genitive μένεος, γένεος, for μένεσος, γένεσος. The σ of the nominative, however, belongs, as I have already elsewhere remarked, to the base, and not to the case designation, as neuters have no σ in the nominative. In the dative plural, however, in the old epic language, the Σ, as it did not stand between two vowels, maintained itself; hence τεύχεσ-σι, ὄρεσ-σι; so likewise in compounds, like σακές-παλος, τελεσ-φόρος, in which it would be wrong to assume the annexation of a Σ to the vowel of the stem. In γήρας, γήρα-ος, for γήρασ-ος, after restoring the Σ of the stem, the form of word answers exactly to the Sanscrit जरस् *jaras*, "age," although the Indian form is not neuter, but feminine. In Lithuanian, another remarkable remnant of the Sanscrit suffixes terminating with *s* has been preserved, viz. in the partic. perf., in the oblique cases of which *us* corresponds to the Sanscrit उश् *ush* (euphonic for उस् *us*) of the weakest cases (§. 130.); still, in Lithuanian, on account of the above-noticed incapacity for the declension of the consonants, the old *us* is conducted, as in other similar cases, by the subsequent addition of *ia*, *a* or *i*, partly into the *a*, partly into the *i* declension; and only the nominative and the vocative, which is the same with it, belong, in the singular, to the consonant declension.

139. The Sanscrit and Zend have eight cases, viz. besides those which exist in Latin, an instrumental and a locative. These two cases exist also in Lithuanian; Ruhig calls the former the instrumental ablative, the latter the local ablative; in Lithuanian, however, the proper ablative—which in Sanscrit expresses the relation "whence?"—is wanting. With reference to the primary form, which in Sanscrit does not remain the same in all words, or

suffixes used in the formation of words through all the cases, a division of the cases into strong and weak is desirable for this language. The strong cases are the nominative, accusative, and vocative of the three numbers, with exception of the accusative plural, which, together with all the other cases, is weak. Where a double or triple formation of the primary form exists, there, with surprising regularity, the cases which have been designated as strong always exhibit the fullest form of the theme, which, from a comparison of languages, is proved to be the original one; while the other cases exhibit a weakened form of it, which appears also in the beginning of compounds, and hence is represented by the native Grammarians, according to §. 112., as the proper primary form. The pres. part. may serve as an example: it forms the strong cases with the suffix *ant*, but in the weak cases and in the beginning of compounds rejects *n*, which is retained by the kindred European languages, as also, for the most part, by Zend; so that *अन् at* is given as the suffix of this participle in preference to *अन् ant*. The root तुद् *tud*, "to vex," e.g. exhibits in the participle mentioned the form तुदन् *tudant* as the strong and original theme (cf. *tudent-em*), and तुदत् *tudat* as the weak theme; hence the masculine is declined,

	STRONG CASES.	WEAK CASES.
Singular : Nom. Voc.	तुदन् <i>tudan</i>	. . . . .
Acc.	तुदन्तम् <i>tudantam</i>	. . . . .
Instr.	. . . . .	तुदता <i>tudatā</i> .
Dat.	. . . . .	तुदते <i>tudatē</i> .
Abl.	. . . . .	तुदतस् <i>tudatas</i> .
Gen.	. . . . .	तुदतस् <i>tudatas</i> .
Loc.	. . . . .	तुदति <i>tudati</i> .
Dual : Nom. Acc. Voc.	तुदन्तौ <i>tudantāu</i>	. . . . .
Instr. Dat. Abl.	. . . . .	तुदभ्याम् <i>tudadbhyām</i> .
Gen. Loc.	. . . . .	तुदतोस् <i>tudatōs</i> .

	STRONG CASES.	WEAK CASES.
Plural : Nom. Voc. . . .	तुदन्तस् <i>tudantas</i>	. . . . .
Acc.	. . . . .	तुदन्तस् <i>tudatas</i> .
Instr.	. . . . .	तुदन्तस् <i>tudadbhis</i> .
Dat. Abl.	. . . . .	तुदन्तस् <i>tudadbhyas</i> .
Gen.	. . . . .	तुदन्तम् <i>tudatām</i> .
Loc.	. . . . .	तुदन्तसु <i>tudatsu</i> .

130. Where three formations of the primary form pervade the declension of a word or a suffix, the weakest form of the theme there occurs in those weak cases whose terminations begin with a vowel, the middle form before those case-suffixes which commence with a consonant. This rule makes a division of the cases into strong, weaker or middle, and weakest, desirable. (See Gramm. Crit. r. 185.)

131. In suffixes used in the formation of words, which in Sanscrit separate into different forms, the Zend usually carries the strong form through all the cases; for instance, the part. pres. retains the nasal in most of the cases, which in Sanscrit proceed from the weakened theme. Words, however, are not wanting which follow the theory of the Sanscrit gradations of form. Thus, the Sanscrit base *श्वन् śvan*, "hound," which in the weakest cases is contracted to *शुन् śun*, appears in Zend likewise in a double form, and presents the weak genitive *śūn-ō* over against the strong nominative and accusative *špā, špān-ēm*, Sanscrit *श्वा śvā, श्वानम् śvānam* (§. 50.). The base *ap*, "water," which, in Sanscrit, in the strong cases has a long *ā*, but is not used in the singular, forms in the Zend the strong sing. nom. *𐬀𐬎𐬎𐬎 ap̥s* (§. 40.), accus. *𐬀𐬎𐬎𐬎 apēm*; on the other hand, *ap-ō*, "of the water," *ap-at*, "from the water," &c.\* In the plural, where the Zend

\* This word occurs in the Codex of the V. S., edited by Burnouf, very frequently, and mostly with that quantity of the initial *a* which is required by the theory; so that where that is not the case it can only be imputed to an error in writing.



very frequently makes the nominative and accusative the same, confusion has, from this reason, crept in; and the weak  $\text{ḥ}^{\text{h}}\text{ḥ}^{\text{h}}\text{ḥ}^{\text{h}} \text{š}^{\text{h}}\text{ḥ}^{\text{h}}\text{ḥ}^{\text{h}}$ , "*canes*," is found for  $\text{ḥ}^{\text{h}}\text{ḥ}^{\text{h}}\text{ḥ}^{\text{h}} \text{š}^{\text{h}}\text{ḥ}^{\text{h}}\text{ḥ}^{\text{h}}$  in the nominative; and, on the other hand, the strong  $\text{ḥ}^{\text{h}}\text{ḥ}^{\text{h}}\text{ḥ}^{\text{h}} \text{ḥ}^{\text{h}}\text{ḥ}^{\text{h}}\text{ḥ}^{\text{h}}$ , in the nominative as well as in the accusative.\*

132. The Greek, in the declension of *κῶν*, has limited the strong form to the nom. and voc. sing.: in some kindred words in *ρ*, however, in accordance with the Sanscrit, it has given the accusative also the strong form, in which the Gothic agrees with it. Compare *πατήρ*, *πατέρα*, *πάτερ*, *πατρί*, with *पिता* *pitá*, *पितरम्* *pitaram*, *पितर* *pitar*, *पित्रि* *pitri* (locat.); and the Gothic *bróthar*, as nom., accus., and vocat., opposed to *bróthrs*, “of the brother,” *bróthr*, “to the brother,” with the Sanscrit *भ्राता* *bhrátá*, *भ्रातरम्* *bhrátaram*, *भ्रातर* *bhrátar*, dative *भ्रात्रे* *bhrátré*, locat. *भ्रात्रि* *bhrátri*. According to the same principle in bases in *an*, in Gothic, the *a* in the genitive and dative sing. is weakened to *i* (§. 140.); while the nominative, accus., and vocat. retain the original *a*; e.g. *ahma*, *ahmin-s*, *ahmin*, *ahman*, *ahma*, from *AHMAN*, “spirit” (§. 147.).

133. As regards the mode of combining the final vowels of the primary forms with case-suffixes beginning with a vowel, we must first draw attention to a phenomenon, which is almost limited to the Sanscrit, and the dialects which approximate most nearly to it, as Pali and Prâkrit, through

[illegible]

which, to avoid a hiatus, and to maintain pure the vowels of the base and of the termination, a euphonic *n* is introduced. This euphonic expedient cannot, in the extent in which it exists in Sanscrit, belong to the original state of the language; otherwise it would not be almost entirely lost in the kindred European dialects, and even in the Zend. We therefore regard it as a peculiarity of the dialect, which, after the period of the division of languages, became the prevailing one in India, and has raised itself to be the universal written language in that country. It is necessary here to remark, that the Vêda language did not use the euphonic *n* so universally as the common Sanscrit; and together with एना *ēnā*, इना *inā*, उना *unā*, occur also अया *ayā*, इया *iyā*, उया *uyā*. The euphonic *n* is most frequently employed by the neuter gender, less so by the masculine, and most rarely by the feminine: the latter limits its use to the plural genitive termination अम् *ām*, in which place it is introduced by the Zend also, although not as indispensably requisite. And it is remarkable, that precisely in this place in Old High German, and other old German dialects, an *n* has been retained before the case-suffix; thus in Old High German, *ahō-n-ō*, “*aquarum*,” from the feminine theme *AHŌ* (nom. *aha*). Besides the use of the euphonic *n*, there is further to be remarked, in Sanscrit and Zend, the attachment of Guna to the vowels of the base (§. 26.) in certain cases, to which also the Gothic presents analogies.

## SINGULAR.

## NOMINATIVE.

134. Bases ending with a vowel of the masculine and feminine genders have, in the Sanscrit family of languages, (under the limitation of §. 137.) *s* as nominative-suffix, which in Zend, after an *a* preceding it, always melts into *u*, and is then contracted with the *a* to *ō* (§. 2.), which in Sanscrit

takes place only before sonant letters (§. 25.)\* Examples are given at §. 148. I find the origin of this case-designation in the pronominal base *sa*, "he," "this," fem. *sá*; and a convincing proof of this assertion is the fact, that the said pronoun does not extend beyond the limits of the nom. masc. and fem., but is replaced in the nom. neuter, and in the oblique cases of the masculine by *ta*, and feminine *tá*, regarding which more hereafter.

135. The Gothic suppresses *a* and *i* before the case-suffix *s*, except in monosyllabic bases, where this suppression is impossible. *Hva-s*, "who?" *i-s*, "he," are used, but *vulf-s*, "wolf," *gast-s*, "stranger," for *vulfa-s*, *gasti-s* (cf. *hosti-s*, according to §. 87.). In masculine substantive bases in *ja* (*ya*), however, the final vowel is retained, only weakened to *i* (§. 66.); e. g. *harji-s*, "army." If, however, as is generally the case, the final syllable is preceded by a long syllable, or by more than one, then *ji* (*yi*) is contracted to *ei* (= *í*, §. 70.); e. g. *andei-s*, "end," *raginei-s*, "counsel," for *andji-s*, *raginji-s*. This contraction extends also to the genitive, which is in like manner denoted by *s*. To the Gothic nominatives in *ji-s* correspond the Lithuanian, like *Atpirktoji-s*, "Saviour," the *i* of which has likewise arisen from an elder *a*.† I deduce this from the majority of the oblique cases, which agree with those of the *a* bases. Where, however, in Lithuanian, a consonant precedes the final syllable *ja*, which is the more common case, there the *j* is changed into the vowel *i*, and the following *i*, which had arisen from *a*, is suppressed: hence, *jaunikki-s*, "young man," for *jaunikkji-s* from *jaunikkja-s*. Hereto correspond in Gothic all adjective bases in *ja*, as *midi-s*,

---

\* E. g. सुतो मम *sutó mama*, "*filius meus*," सुतस् तव *sutas tava*, "*filius tuus*" (§. 22.).

† Through the influence of the *j*, in accordance with a Zend law of euphony (§. 42.).

“the middle” (man), for *midji-s* from *midja-s*, Sansc. मध्यस् *madhya-s*. The Zend also, in the *vocalization*\* of the syllable *ja*, presents a remarkable analogy to the Lithuanian and Gothic in contracting the syllable *ya* before a final *ç* *m* regularly to *ç i*, as also *va* to *ç u* (§. 42.).

136. The High German has, up to our time, preserved the old nominative sign in the changed form of *r*; nevertheless, as early as in the Old High German only in pronouns and adjectives, with a vowel termination of the base. The High German is, however, in this point, superior to the Gothic in fulness, that in its *a* bases—to which belong all strong adjectives—it has not suppressed the vowel before the case-sign, but preserved it in the form of *e*, which, in Old High German—as it appears through the influence of the *r*—is long, but only in polysyllabic, not in monosyllabic forms. Thus, *plintê-r*, “cæcus,” completes the Gothic *blindh-s* for *blinda-s*; to the Gothic *i-s*, “he,” corresponds *i-r*; Middle and New High German *e-r*. The Old Northern has likewise *r* as the nominative sign, and, in fact, everywhere, where in Gothic, *s* stands. In the other dialects the nominative character is entirely lost.

137. Feminine Sanscrit bases in *â*, and, with very few exceptions, polysyllables in *î*, together with *strî*, “wife,” like the corresponding forms of the kindred languages, have lost the old nominative sign (with the exception of the Latin *ê* bases, see §. 121.), and give the pure base: the kindred languages do the same, the base having been weakened by the abbreviation of the final vowel. In Gothic, *ô* becomes *a* (§. 69.); only *sô*, “this,” and *hwô*, “which?” remain unshortened, on account of their being monosyllabic, as in Zend *hâ* and *kâ*; while in polysyllabic forms the

---

\* I have used *vocalization* and *vocalize* to express the change of a semi-vowel to its corresponding vowel.—*Trans.*

𐬀 *ā* is shortened. In Zend, 𐬀 *ī* also is shortened, even in the monosyllabic 𐬀𐬎𐬌 *stri*, "wife," see V. S. p. 136, by Olshausen, p. 28, where we read 𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬀𐬎 *stri-cha*, "*feminaque*"; whilst elsewhere the appended 𐬀 *cha* preserves the original length of the vowel. Here, too, the Zend nominatives in 𐬀 *ē* deserve to be mentioned, which seem very similar to the Greek in *η*; as 𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬀𐬎 *pērēnē*, "*plena*," which in the Vendidad occurs very often in relation to 𐬀𐬎𐬌 *zāo*, "earth," without my being able to remember that I have found another case from 𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬀𐬎 *pērēnē*. But from the nom. 𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬀𐬎 *kainē*, "maid" (Sanskrit कन्या *kanyā*), which is of frequent occurrence, I find the accus. 𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬎 *kanyaim* (V. S. p. 420.); this furnishes the proof that the 𐬀 *ē* in the nominative is generated by the euphonic influence of the suppressed 𐬀𐬎 *y* (§. 42.). In 𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬀𐬎 *brāturyē*, "cousin," and 𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬀𐬎 *tūāryē*, a relation in the fourth degree (V. S. p. 380.), the 𐬀𐬎 *y* has remained; on the other hand, in 𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬀𐬎 *nyākē*, "grandmother," the dropping of a 𐬀𐬎 *y* must be again assumed. We cannot here refrain from conjecturing that the *ē* also of the Latin fifth declension, as with very few exceptions it is everywhere preceded by an *i*, is likewise produced from *ā* by the influence of this *i*; so that the Latin here stands in reversed relation to the Greek, where *i* rejects the combination with *η*, and preserves the original *α* (σοφία).

138. Bases of the masculine and feminine genders which terminate with a consonant, lose, in Sanscrit, according to §. 94, the nominative sign *s*; and if two consonants terminate the base, then, according to the same law, the latter of these also is lost. Hence, बिभ्रत् *bi-bhrat*, for बिभ्रत्स् *bibhrat-s*, "the bearer"; तुदन् *tudan*, for तुदन्स् *tudant-s*, "the vexer"; वाक् *vāk* (from वाक्स् *vāksh*, f.), for वाक्स् *vāk-sh*, "speech." The Zend, Greek, and Latin, in preserving the nominative sign after consonants, stand in an older position than the Sanscrit; Zend 𐬀𐬎𐬌 *āf-s*

(for *ap-s*, §. 40.), "water"; 𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬎𐬌 *kērēs*, "body"; 𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬎𐬌 *druc-s* (from the base *druj*), "a demon." The Latin and Greek, where the final consonant of the base will not combine with the *s* of the nominative, prefer abandoning a portion of the base, as *χάρις* for *χάριτ-s*, *comes* for *comit-s* (cf. §. 6.). The Latin, Æolic, and Lithuanian agree remarkably with the Zend in this point, that *nt*, in combination with *s*, gives the form *ns*; thus *omans*, *τιθένης*, Lith. *sukanis* (§. 10.), correspond to the Zend 𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬌 *śrāvayañs*, "the speaker."

139. A final *n* after a short vowel is, in Sanscrit, no favourite combination of sound, although one not prohibited. It is expelled from the theme in the first member of a compound, e.g. *राजपुत्र* *rāja-putra*, "king's son," for *राजन्युत्र* *rājan-putra*; and it is rejected in the nominative also, and a preceding short vowel is lengthened in masculines; e.g. *राजा* *rājā*, "king," from *राजन्* *rājan*, m.; *नाम* *nāma*, "name," from *नामन्* *nāman*, n.; *धनी* *dhanī*, m., *धनि* *dhanī*, n., from *धनिन्* *dhanin*, "rich." The Zend in this agrees exactly with the Sanscrit; but from the dislike to a long *a* at the end, which has been before mentioned, omits the lengthening of the vowel; e.g. 𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬎𐬌 *ashava*, "the pure" (man), from 𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬀 *ashavan*, m.; 𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬎𐬌 *chashma*, "eye," from 𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬀 *chashman*, n. The Latin follows the Sanscrit in the suppression of the *n* in the nominative, in the masculine, and feminine, but not in the neuter: *sermo*, *sermon-is*, *actio*, *action-is*; but *nomen*, not *nome* or *nomo*. The root *can*, at the end of compounds, refrains from rejecting the *n*, probably in order not to weaken still more this weak radical syllable; thus *tubi-cen*, *fidi-cen*, *os-cen* (see §. 6.). *Lien* is an abbreviation of *lienī-s*; hence the retention of the *n* is not surprising. *Pecten* stands rather isolated. In Sanscrit the naked roots also follow the principle of the rejection of *n*; *हन्* "slaying," "smiting," nom. *हा* *hā*, is, however, the only root in *n* which I have

met with so used. **श्वन्** *śvan*, "hound," nom. **श्वा** *śvā*, which, in the weakest cases, contracts its theme to **शुन्** *śun*, is of obscure origin. The Latin has extended the base **श्वन्** *śvan*, in the nominative, by an unorganic addition, to *cani*; so **युवन्** *yuvan*, "young," has become *juveni* (cf. §. 126.). As regards the opposition between *o* and *i*, by which, in several words—as *homo*, *homin-is*, *arundo*, *arundin-is*—the nominative is distinguished from the oblique cases, this *o* appears to me a stronger vowel,\* which compensates for the loss of the *n*, and therefore is substituted for the weaker *i*; according to the same principle by which, in Sanscrit, the nom. **धनी** *dhanī*,† comes from **धनिन्** *dhanin*; and, in Lithuanian, bases in *en* and *un* give, in the nominative, *ũ* (= *uo*) for *e* or *u*. Thus, from the bases *akmen*, "stone," *szun*, "hound," come the nominatives *akmũ*, *szũ*; as in Sanscrit, from the primary forms of the same signification, **अश्मन्** *aśman*, **श्वन्** *śvan*, have arisen **अश्मा** *aśmā* and **श्वा** *śvā*. It does not follow that *homin-is* has come from *homon-is*, because the old language had *hemo*, *hemonis*, for *homo*, *hominis*; but *mon* and *min* are kindred suffixes, signifying the same, and were originally one, and therefore may be simultaneously affixed to one and the same word.

140. The German language also rejects a final *n* of the base in the nominative and in the neuter, in the accusative also, like Sanscrit. In Gothic, in the masculine

---

\* Although its quantity in the actual condition of the language is arbitrary, still it appears to have been originally long, and to imply a similar contrast to the Greek *ην, εν-ος*; *ων, ου-ος*. For the rest it has been already remarked, that between short vowels also exists a difference of gravity (§. 6.).

† In bases in **अन्** *an* the lengthening extends to all the strong cases, with the exception of the vocat. sing.; thus, not merely **राजा** *rājā*, "rex," but also **राजानम्** *rājān-ām*, "regem," **राजानस्** *rājānas*, "reges."

and neuter—where alone, in my opinion, the *n* has an old and original position—an *a* always precedes the *n*. There are, that is to say, only bases in *an*, none in *in* and *un*; the latter termination is foreign to the Sanscrit also. The *a*, however, is weakened to *i* in the genitive and dative (see §. 132.); while in Sanscrit, in these cases, as especially in the weakest cases (§. 130.), it is entirely dropped.\* Among masculine bases in *an*, in Gothic, exist several words, in which *an* is the whole derivation-suffix, and which therefore correspond to the Sansc. राजन् *rāj-an*, “king,” as ruler. Thus, *AH-AN*, “ghost,” as thinker (*ah-ju*, “I think”), *STAU-AN*, “Judge” (*stau-ja*, “I judge”), whence the nominatives *aha*, *staua*. There are also, as in Sanscrit, some masculine formations in *man*; as, *AH-MAN*, “spirit,” nom. *ahma*, with which perhaps the Sansc. आत्मन् *ât-man*, “soul,” nom. आत्मा *ât-mâ*, is connected; in case this stands for *âh-man*, and comes from a lost root आह् *âh*, “to think,”† where it is to be remembered that the root नह् *nah*, “to bind,” also has, in several places, changed its *h* into *t*. The Gothic *MILH-MAN*, nom. *milh-ma*, “cloud,” appears to have sprung from the Sanscrit root *mih*, by the addition of an *l*, whence, remarkably enough, by the suffix *a*, and by exchanging the ह् *h* for घ् *gh*, arises the nominal base मघे *mêgha*, “cloud.” In Latin, *ming-o* answers to मिह् *mih*, and in Greek ὀ-μυχ-έω; the meaning is in the three languages the same.

141. Neuter stems in *an*, after rejecting the *n*, lengthen, in Gothic, the preceding *a* to *ô*, in the nominative, accusa-

---

\* In case two consonants do not precede the termination अन् *an*; e.g. आत्मनस् *âtman-as*, not *âtmn-as*, but नास्नस् *nâmn-us*, not *nâman-as*, “*nominis*.”

† Perhaps identical with आह् *âh*, “to speak,” which really occurs, as मन् *man*, “to think,” in Zend means also “to speak”; whence मन्त्र *manthra*, “speech,” and in Gothic *muntha*, nom. *munths*, “mouth” (§. 66.).



tive, and vocative, which sound the same ; so that in these cases the Gothic neuter follows the theory of the strong cases (§. 129.), which the Sanscrit neuter obeys only in the nom., accus., and vocat. plural, where, for example, चत्वारि *catvār-i*, “four,” with a strong theme, is opposed to the weak cases like चतुर्भिस् *chaturbhis* (instr.), चतुर्भ्यस् *chaturbhyas*. The *a*, also, of neuter bases in *an* is lengthened in the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural in Sanscrit, and in Gothic ; and hence नमानि *namān-i*, Gothic *namôn-a*, run parallel to one another. However, in Gothic *namn-a* also exists, according to the theory of the Sanscrit weakest cases (§. 130.), whence proceeds the plural genitive नाम्नाम् *nāmn-ām*, “*nominum*” ; while the Gothic *namôn-ê* has permitted itself to be led astray by the example of the strong cases, and would be better written *namn-ê* or *namin-ê*.

142. In the feminine declension in German I can find no original bases in *n*, as also in Sanscrit there exist no feminines in *an* or *in* ; but feminine bases are first formed by the addition of the usual feminine character ई *ī* ; as, राज्ञी *rājñī*, “queen,” from राजन् *rājan* ; धनिनी *dhaninī*, “the rich” (fem.), from धनिन् *dhanin*, m. n. “rich.” Gothic feminine substantive bases in *n* exhibit, before this consonant, either an *o* (= *oa*, §. 69.) or *ei* : these are genuine feminine final vowels, to which only subsequently the addition of an *n* can have been made. And already, at §. 120., a close connection of bases in *ein* (= *īn*) with the Sanscrit in ई *ī*, and Lithuanian in *i*, has been pointed out. Most substantive bases in *ein* are feminine derivations from masculine-neuter adjective bases in *a*, under the same relation, excluding the modern *n*, as in Sanscrit, सुन्दरी *sundarī*, “the fair” (woman), from सुन्दर *sundara* m. n. “beautiful.” Gothic substantive bases in *ein* for the most part raise the adjective, whence they are derived, to an abstract ; e.g. *MANAGEIN*, “crowd,” nominat. *managei*, from the

adjective base *MANAGA* (nominative masc. *manag-s*, neut. *managa-ta*); *MIKILEIN*, nom. *mikilei*, "greatness," from *MIKILA* (*mikil-s*, *mikila-ta*), "great." As to feminine bases in *ón*, they have arisen from feminine bases in *ó*; and I have already observed that feminine adjective bases in *ón*—as *BLINDŌN*, nom. *blindó*, gen. *blindón-s*—must be derived, not from their masculine bases in *an*, but from the primitive feminine bases in *ó* (nom. *a*, Grimm's strong adjective). Substantive bases with the genitive feminine in *ón* presuppose older ones in *ó*; and correspond, where comparison is made with old languages connected in their bases, to Sanscrit feminines in *ā*, Greek in *α, η*, Latin in *a*; and in these old languages never lead to bases with a final *n*. Thus, *TUGGŌN* (pronounced *tungón*), nom. *tuggó*, answers to the Latin *lingua*, and to the Sanscrit जिह्वा *jihvā* (= *dschihvā*, see §. 17.); and *DAURŌN*, nom. *dauró*, to the Greek θύρα; *VIDŌVŌN*, nom. *vidóvó*, "widow," to the Sanscrit विधवा *vidhavā*, "the without man" (from the prep. वि *vi* and धवा *dhava*, "man"), and the Latin *vidua*. It is true that, in *MITATHJŌN*, "measure," nom. *mitathjó*, the suffix *thjón* completely answers to the Latin *tion*, e.g. in *ACTION*; but here in Latin, too, the *on* is a later addition, as is evinced from the connection of *ti-on* with the Sanscrit suffix ति *ti*, of the same import, and Greek *σι-ς* (old *τις*), Gothic *ti*, *thi*, *di* (see §. 91.). And in Gothic, together with the stem *MITATHJŌN* exists one signifying the same, *MITATHI*, nom. *mitaths*. In *RATHJŌN*, nom. *rathjó*, "account," a relationship with *RATION*, at least in respect of the suffix, is only a seeming one; for in Gothic the word is to be divided thus, *rath-jón*: the *th* belongs, in the Gothic soil, to the root, whence the strong part. *rath-an(a)-s* has been preserved. The suffix *jón*, of *RATHJŌN*, therefore corresponds to the Sanscrit *yā*; e.g. in विद्या *vid-yā*, "knowledge." Of the same origin is *GA-RUN-JŌN*, nom. *garunjó*, "inundation."

143. If a few members of a great family of languages have suffered a loss in one and the same place, this may be accident, and may be explained on the general ground, that all sounds, in all languages, especially when final, are subject to abrasion; but the concurrence of so many languages in a loss in one and the same place points to relationship, or to the high antiquity of such a loss; and in the case before us, refers the rejection of an *n* of the base in the nominative to a period before the migration of languages, and to the position of the original site of the human races, which were afterwards separated. It is surprising, therefore, that the Greek, in this respect, shews no agreement with its sisters; and in its *ν* stems, according to the measure of the preceding vowel, abandons either merely the nominative sign, or the *ν* alone, never both together. It is a question whether this is a remnant of the oldest period of language, or whether the *ν* bases, carried away by the stream of analogies in the other consonant declensions, and by the example of their own oblique cases, which do not permit the remembrance of the *ν* to be lost, again returned, at a comparatively later period, into the common and oldest path, after they had experienced a similar loss to the Sanscrit, Zend, &c., by which we should be conducted to nominative forms like *εὐδαίμω, εὐδαιμο, τέρη, τέρε, τάλᾱ, τάλα̌*? I do not venture to decide with positiveness on this point, but the latter view appears to be the more probable. It here deserves to be remarked, that, in German, the *n*, which in Gothic, in the nominative, is always suppressed, has in more modern dialects made its way in many words from the oblique cases again into the nominative. So early as the Old High German this was the case; and, in fact, in feminine bases in *in* (Gothic *ein*, §. 70.), which, in the nominative, oppose to the Gothic *ei* the full base *in*; as *guotlihhiñ*, "glory" (see Grimm, p. 6:8). In our New High

German the phenomenon is worthy of notice, that many original *n* bases of the masculine gender, through a confusion in the use of language, are, in the singular, treated as if they originally terminated in *na*; *i.e.* as if they belonged to Grimm's first strong declension. Hence the *n* makes its appearance in the nominative, and the genitive regains the sign *s*, which, indeed, in Gothic, is not wanting in the *n* bases, but in High German was withdrawn from them more than a thousand years since. Thus, *Brunnen*, *Brunnens*, is used instead of the Old High German *prunno*, *prunnin*, and the Gothic *brunna*, *brunnin-s*. In some words, together with the restored *n* there occurs in the nominative, also, the ancient form with *n* suppressed, as *Backe* or *Backen*, *Same* or *Samen*; but the genitive has in these words also introduced the *s* of the strong declension. Among neuters the word *Herz* deserves consideration. The base is, in Old High German, *HERZAN*, in Middle High German *HERZEN*; the nominatives are, *herza*, *herze*; the New German suppresses, together with the *n* of *Herzen*, the vowel also, as is done by many masculine *n* bases; as, *e.g.* *Bär* for *Bäre*. As this is not a transition into the strong declension, but rather a greater weakening of the weak nominative, the form *Herzens*, therefore, in the genitive, for an uninflected *Herzen*, is surprising. With this assumed or newly-restored inflection *s* would be to be compared, in Greek, the nominative *ς*, as of *δελφί-ς*, *μέλα-ς*; and with the *n* of *Brunnen* for *Brunne*, the *ν* of *δαίμων*, *τέρην*; in case, as is rendered probable by the kindred languages, these old forms have been obtained from still older, as *δελφί*, *μέλα*, *δαίμω*, *τέρη*, by an unorganic retrograde step into the stronger declension.\*

---

\* That, in Greek, the renunciation of a *ν* of the base is not entirely unknown may be here shewn by an interesting example. Several cardinal numbers in Sanscrit conclude their base with न् *n*; viz.  

*punchan*,

144. Bases in अर् *ar* (चु *ri*, §. 1.) in Sanscrit reject the *r* in the nominative, and, like the stems in न् *n*, lengthen the preceding vowel; *e.g.* from पितर् *pitar*, “father,” भ्रातर् *bhrátar*, “brother,” मातर् *mátar*, “mother,” दुहितर् *duhitar*, “daughter,” come पिता *pitá*, भ्राता *bhrátá*, माता *mátá*, दुहिता *duhitá*. The lengthening of the *a* serves, I believe, as a compensation for the rejected *r*. As to the retention, however, through all the strong cases, excepting the vocative, of the long *a* of the agent, which corresponds to Greek formations in  $\tau\epsilon\rho$ ,  $\tau\omega\rho$ , to Latin in *tōr*, this takes place because, in all probability, in these words तार् *tār*, and not तर् *tar*, is the original form of the suffix; and this is also supported by the length of the suffix being retained in Greek and Latin through all the cases— $\tau\epsilon\rho$ ,  $\tau\omega\rho$ , *tōr*; only that in Latin a final *r*, in polysyllabic words, shortens an originally long vowel. Compare

	SANSKRIT.	GREEK.	LATIN.
Nom. sing.	दाता <i>dātá</i> ,	$\delta\omicron\tau\acute{\eta}\rho$ ,	<i>datōr</i> .
Acc. sing.	दातारम् <i>dātār-am</i> ,	$\delta\omicron\tau\eta\rho-\alpha$ ,	<i>datōr-em</i> .
N. A. V. dual,	दातारौ <i>dātār-au</i> ,	$\delta\omicron\tau\eta\rho-e$ ,	.....
Nom. Voc. pl.	दातारस् <i>dātār-as</i> ,	$\delta\omicron\tau\eta\rho-\epsilon\varsigma$ ,	<i>datōr-es</i> .

The Zend follows the analogy of the Sanscrit, both in the rejection of the *r* in the nominative, and in the length

---

*panchan*, “five,” *saptan*, “seven,” *ashtan* with *ashtau*, “eight,” *navan*, “nine,” *daśan*, “ten.” These numerals are, indeed, used adjectively, when they are not governed by the gender of their substantive, but display always a neuter form, and indeed, which is surprising, in the nominative, accusative, and vocative sing. terminations, but in the other cases the suitable plural endings; *e.g.* पञ्च राजानस् *pancha* (not *panchānas*) *rājānas*, “*quinque reges*”; on the other hand, पञ्चसु राजसु *panchasu rājasu* “*in quinque regibus*.” To the neuter nominatives and accusative of the singular पञ्च *pancha*, सप्त *sapta*, नव *nava*, and दश *daśa*—which rest on the regular suppression of the *n*—answer the Greek  $\piέντε$ ,  $έπτά$ ,  $έννέα$ ,  $δέκα$ , with the distinction that they have become quite indeclinable, and retain the old uninflected nominative through all the cases.

of the preceding *a* of the noun agent, in the same places as in the Sanscrit, with the exception of the nominative singular, where the long *a*, as always when final, is shortened ; e.g. *𑀧𑀸𑀓𑀭𑀺𑀓* *paita*, "father," *𑀧𑀸𑀓𑀭𑀺𑀓𑀲* *dāta*, "giver," "Creator;" acc. *𑀧𑀸𑀓𑀭𑀺𑀓𑀲𑀺𑀓𑀭𑀺𑀓* *paitar-ēm*, *𑀧𑀸𑀓𑀭𑀺𑀓𑀲𑀺𑀓𑀭𑀺𑀓* *dātār-ēm*. In Lithuanian there are some interesting remains, but only of feminine bases in *er*, which drop this letter in the nominative, but in most of the oblique cases extend the old *er* base by the later addition of an *i*. Thus *motė*, "wife," *duktė*, "daughter," answer to the abovementioned *माता* *mātā*, *दुहिता* *duhitā*; and, in the plural, *moter-ės*, *dukter-ės*, to *मातरस्* *mātar-as*, *दुहितरस्* *duhitar-as*. In the genitive singular I regard the form *moter-s*, *dukter-s*, as the elder and more genuine, and *moteriės*, *dukteriės*, as corruptions belonging to the *i* bases. In the genitive plural the base has kept clear of this unorganic *i*; hence *moter-ū*, *dukter-ū*, not *moteri-ū*, *dukteri-ū*. Besides the words just mentioned, also, the stem *SESSER*, "sister," belongs to this place: it answers to the Sanscrit *स्वसृ* *svasar*, nom. *स्वसा* *svasā*; but distinguishes itself in the nominative from *motė* and *duktė*, in that the *e* after the analogy of *en* stems passes into *ū*, thus *sessū*.

145. The German languages agree in their *r* bases (to which but a few words belong denoting affinity) with the Greek and Latin in this point, that, contrary to the analogy just described, they retain the *r* in the nominative. As *πατήρ*, *μητήρ*, *θυγάτηρ*, *δαήρ* (Sanskrit, *देवृ* *dēvar*, *देवृ* *dēvri*, nom. *देवा* *dēvā*), *frater*, *soror*; so in Gothic, *bróthar*, *svistar*, *dauhtar*; in Old High German, *vatar*, *pruodar*, *suëstar*, *tohtar*. It is a question whether this *r* in the nominative is a remnant of the original language, or, after being anciently suppressed, whether it has not again made its way in the actual condition of the language from the oblique cases into the nominative. I think the latter more probable; for the Sanscrit, Zend, and Lithuanian are three witnesses

for the antiquity of the suppression of the  $\tau$ ; and the Greek words like  $\pi\alpha\tau\acute{\eta}\rho$ ,  $\mu\acute{\eta}\tau\eta\rho$ ,  $\sigma\omega\tau\acute{\eta}\rho$ ,  $\rho\acute{\eta}\tau\omega\rho$ , exhibit something peculiar and surprising in the consonant declension, in that  $\rho$  and  $\varsigma$  not combining, they have not rather preferred giving up the base-consonant than the case-sign (as  $\pi\alpha\acute{\iota}\varsigma$ ,  $\pi\omicron\upsilon\varsigma$ , &c.). It would appear that the form  $\tau\eta\varsigma$  is of later origin, for this reason, that the  $\rho$  having given place to the nominative  $\varsigma$ , the form  $\tau\eta\varsigma$ , whence  $\tau\eta\rho\text{-}\omicron\varsigma$  should come, was, by an error of language, made to correspond to the  $\eta\text{-}\varsigma$  of the first declension. The want of a kindred form in Latin, as in Zend and Sanscrit, as also the, in other respects, kindred form and similarity of meaning with  $\pi\alpha\tau\acute{\eta}\rho$ ,  $t\bar{o}\text{-}r$ ,  $\tau\eta\rho$  and  $\tau\omega\rho$ , speak at least plainly enough for the spuriousness and comparative youth of the nouns of agency in  $\tau\eta\varsigma$ .

146. Masculine and feminine primary forms in  $\text{अस् } as$  in Sanscrit lengthen the  $a$  in the nominative singular. They are, for the most part, compounded, and contain, as the last member, a neuter substantive in  $\text{अस् } as$ , as  $\text{दुर्मनस् } durmanas$ , "evil-spirited," from  $\text{दुस् } dus$  (before sonant letters—§. 25.— $\text{दुर् } dur$ ) and  $\text{मनस् } munas$ , "spirit," whence the nom. masc. and fem.  $\text{दुर्मनास् } durman\acute{a}s$ , neut.  $\text{दुर्मनस् } durmanas$ . A remarkable agreement is here shewn by the Greek, in  $\delta\upsilon\sigma\mu\epsilon\nu\acute{\eta}\varsigma$ ,  $\acute{o}$ ,  $\acute{\eta}$ , opposed to  $\tau\acute{o}$   $\delta\upsilon\sigma\mu\epsilon\nu\acute{\epsilon}\varsigma$ . The  $\text{स् } s$  of  $\text{दुर्मनास् } durman\acute{a}s$ , however, belongs, though unrecognised, to the base; and the nominative character is wanting, according to §. 94. In Greek, on the other hand, the  $\varsigma$  of  $\delta\upsilon\sigma\mu\epsilon\nu\acute{\eta}\varsigma$  has the appearance of an inflexion, because the genitive, &c., is not  $\delta\upsilon\sigma\mu\epsilon\nu\acute{\epsilon}\varsigma\text{-}\omicron\varsigma$ , like the Sanscrit  $\text{दुर्मनसस् } durmanas\text{-}as$ , but  $\delta\upsilon\sigma\mu\epsilon\nu\acute{\epsilon}\omicron\varsigma$ . If, however, what was said at §. 128 is admitted, that the  $\varsigma$  of  $\mu\acute{\epsilon}\nu\omicron\varsigma$  belongs to the base, and  $\mu\acute{\epsilon}\nu\omicron\varsigma$  is abbreviated from  $\mu\acute{\epsilon}\nu\epsilon\sigma\text{-}\omicron\varsigma$ , then in the compound  $\delta\upsilon\sigma\mu\epsilon\nu\acute{\eta}\varsigma$  also, and all similar adjectives a  $\Sigma$  belonging to the base must be recognised, and the form  $\delta\upsilon\sigma\mu\epsilon\nu\acute{\epsilon}\omicron\varsigma$  must lie at the bottom of the genitive  $\delta\upsilon\sigma\mu\epsilon\nu\acute{\epsilon}\omicron\varsigma$ . In the nominative, therefore,

either the *ς* belongs to the base, and then the agreement with दुर्मेनास् *durmanás* would be complete; or the *ς* of the base has been dropped before the case-sign *ς*. The latter is, in my opinion, least probable; for the former is supported by the Latin also, where the forms which answer to the Sanscrit *as* stems are in the nom. masc. and fem. in like manner without the case-sign. Thus the Sanscrit comparative suffix is ईयस् *íyas*—the last *a* but one of which is lengthened in the strong cases, and invested with a dull nasal (Anusvâra, §. 9.)—in Latin, *iôr*, with the *s* changed into *r*, which so frequently happens; and the nominative in both genders is without the case-sign: the originally long *o*, however, is shortened by the influence of the final *r*. In the neuter *ŭs* corresponds to the Sanscrit अस् *as*, because *u* is favourable to a final *s* and prevents its transition into *r*; hence *gravius* has the same relation to the Sanscrit गरीयस् *garíyas* (irregular from गुरु *guru*, “heavy,”) as *lupus* to वृक्स् *vrikas*, only that the *s* of the nominative character in the latter belongs in the former to the base. The final syllable *ôr*, though short, must nevertheless be held, in Latin, as graver than *ŭs*, and hence *gravior* forms a similar antithesis to *gravius* that in Greek δυσμενής does to δυσμενές, and in Sanscrit दुर्मेनास् *durmanás* to दुर्मेनस् *durmanas*.

147. In Lithuanian a nominative, which stands quite isolated, *mėnũ* (= *mėnuo*), “moon” and “month,” deserves here to be mentioned: it proceeds from the primary form *MENES*\*, and, in regard to the suppression of the final consonant and the transformation of the preceding vowel, has the same relation to it that, as above (§. 139.), *akmũ* has

---

\* The relation of this to मास् *mās*, which signifies the same—from मास् *mās*, “to measure,” without derivative suffix—is remarkable; for the interposed nasal syllable *ne* answers to the Sanscrit न *na* in roots of the seventh class (see p. 118); and in this respect *MENES* bears the same relation to the Latin *MENSI* that l. c. भिनद्मि *bhinadmi* does to *findo*.



to *AKMEN*, *sessũ* to *SESSER*: in the oblique cases, also, the *s* of the base again re-appears, but receives, as in the *er* and *en* bases, an unorganic increase: thus the genitive is *menesio*, whence *MENESIA* is the theme; as *wilko*, *lupi*, from *WILKA*, nom. *wilka-s*.

148. In neuters, throughout the whole Sanscrit family of languages the nominative is identical with the accusative, which subject is treated of at §. 152, &c. We here give a general view of the nominative formation, and select for the several terminations and gender of the primary forms, both for these cases and for all others which suit our purpose, the following examples: Sanscrit वृक *vṛika*, m. "wolf;" क *ka*, "who;" दान *dāna*, n. "gift;" त *ta*, n. "this;" जिह्वा *jihvā*, f. "tongue;" का *kā*, "which;" पति *pati*, m. "lord," "husband;" प्रीति *prīti*, f. "love;" वारि *vāri*, n. "water;" भविष्यन्ती *bhavishyanti*, "who is about to be;" सूनु *sūnu*, m. "son;" तनु *tanu*, f. "body;" मधु *madhu*, n. "honey," "wine;" वधू *vadhū*, f. "wife;" गो *gō*, m. f. "bullock," "cow;" नौ *nāu*, f. "ship." Of the consonant declension we select only such final consonants as occur most frequently, whether in single words or in entire classes of words: वाक् *vāk*, f. "speech" \*; भरन् *bharant*, in the weakened form, भरत् *bharat* (§. 129.) m. n, "bearing," "receiving," from भर् *bhar* (भृ *bhṛi*) cl. 1.; आत्मन् *ātman*, m. "soul;" नामन् *nāman*, n. "name;" भ्रातर् *bhrātar*, m. "brother;" दुहितर् *duhitar*, f. "daughter;" दातर् *dātar*, m. "giver;" वचस् *vachas*, n. "speech:" Greek, 'ΕΠΕΣ, ἑπος (§§. 14. 128.), for FEΠΕΣ, *Fepos*. Zend, 𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀 *vēhrka*, m. "wolf;" 𐬨𐬀 *ka*, m. "who;" 𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀 *dāta*, n. *datum*; 𐬨𐬀 *ta* n. "this;" 𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀 *hizvā*, f. "tongue;" 𐬨𐬀 *kā*, "which;"

---

\* Masculines and feminines in the consonant declension agree in all cases: hence an example of one of the two genders is sufficient. The only exception is the accusative plural of words denoting relationship in अर् *ar* (अृ, §. 144.), which form this case from the abbreviated theme in अृ *ri*.

𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬀 *paiti*, m. (§. 41.) "Lord;" 𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀 *āfrīti*, f. "blessing;" 𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬀 *vairi*, n. "water;" 𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀 *būshyaintī*, "who will be;" 𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬀 *pašu*, m. "tame animal;" 𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬀 *tanu*, f. "body;" 𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬀 *madhu*, n. "wine;" 𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬀 *gô*, m. f. "bullock," "cow"\*; 𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬀 *vāch*, f. "speech," "voice"†; 𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀 *barant*, or 𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀 *barēnt*, "weakened;" 𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀 *barat*, m. n. "bearing;" 𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀 *aīman*, m. "heaven;" 𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀 *nāman* (also 𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀 *naīman*), n. "name;" 𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀 *brātar*,‡

\* It has been remarked at §. 123 of the kindred nom. 𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬀 *sāo*, "earth," accus. 𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬀 *saīm*, that I have only met with these two cases. The very common form 𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬀 *sēm*, which is found only in the other oblique cases, is nevertheless represented by Burnouf, in a very interesting article in the *Journal des Savans* (Aug. 1832), which I only met with after that page had been printed, as belonging to the same theme. I agree with him on this point at present, so much the rather as I believe I can account for the relationship of 𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬀 *sēmē*, "terra," (dat.) 𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬀 *sēmi*, "in terra," &c. to the Sanscrit 𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬀 *gavē*, 𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬀 *gavi*. I do not doubt, that is to say, that, in accordance with what has been remarked at §. 63. and p. 114, the Zend 𐬨𐬀 *m* is to be regarded as nothing else than the hardening of the original *v*. The Indian 𐬨𐬀 *gô*, before vowel terminations *gav*, would consequently have made itself almost unintelligible in the meaning "earth," in Zend, by a double alteration; once by the transition of *g* to *s*, in which *j* must be assumed as the middle step—in which e. g. 𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬀 *jam*, "to go," from 𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬀 *gam*, has remained; secondly, by the hardening of the *v* to *m*. Advert, also, to the Greek *δη*, for *γη*, in *δημήτηρ*; since *δ* and *ζ* *s*, from 𐬨𐬀 *j* (= *dsch*), have so divided themselves in the sound whence they have sprung, that the Greek has retained the *T* sound, the Zend the sibilant.

† I cannot quote the nominative of this word; but it can only be 𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀 *vāc-s*, as palatines before 𐬨𐬀 *s* change into 𐬨𐬀 *c*; and thus, from 𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬀 *druj*, "an evil demon," occurs very frequently the nom. 𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀 *druc-s*. I have scarcely any doubt, too, that what Anquetil, in his Vocabulary, writes *vāhksch*, and renders by "*parler, cri*," is the nominative of the said base; as Anquetil everywhere denotes 𐬨𐬀 by *kh*, and 𐬨𐬀 by *sch*.

‡ In the theme we drop, intentionally, the *ξ* *ē* required by §. 44, as it is clear that 𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀 *brātar*, not *ξ*𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀 *brāturē*, must be the base word; 𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀 *baratar* also occurs, with 𐬨𐬀 *a* interposed.

m. "brother;" *दुग्धधार* *dughdhar*, f. "daughter;" *दातार* *dātar*, m. "giver," "creator;" *वचः* *vachad*, n. (§. 56<sup>b</sup>.) "word." It is not requisite to give here examples in Greek and Latin: from Lithuanian and Gothic we select the bases, Lith. *WILKA*, Goth. *VULFA*, m. "wolf;" Lith. *KA*, Goth. *HVA*, m. "who;" Lith. *GERA*, n. "good;" *TA*, n. "the;" Goth. *DAURA*, n. "gate," (Sanskrit, *द्वारा* *dvāra*, n.), *THA*, n. "this;" Lith. *RANKA*, f. "hand;" Goth. *GIBŌ*, f. "gift" (§. 69.); *HVŌ*, f. "which?" Lith. *PATI*, m. "Lord" \*; Goth. *GASTI*, m. "stranger;" *I*, m. "he," n. "it;" Lith. *AWI*, f. "sheep," (Sansk. *अवि* *avi*, m. cf. *ovis*, *ōis*); Goth. *ANSTI*, f. "mercy;" Lith. Goth. *SUNU*, m. "son;" Goth. *HANDU*, f. "hand;" Lith. *DARKU*, n. "ugly;" Goth. *FAIHU*, n. "beast;" Lith. *SUKANT*, m.† "turning;" Goth. *FIJAND*, m. "foe;" Lith. *AKMEN*, m. "stone;" Goth. *AHMAN*, m. "spirit;" *NAMAN*, n. "name;" *BRŌTHAR*, m. "brother;" *DAUHTAR*, Lith. *DUKTER*, f. "daughter."

	SANSKRIT.	ZEND.	GREEK.	LATIN.	LITHUAN.	GOTHIC.
m.	<i>vrika-s,</i>	<i>věhrkó,*</i>	<i>λύκο-s,</i>	<i>lupu-s,</i>	<i>wilka-s,</i>	<i>vulf's.</i>
m.	<i>ka-s,</i>	<i>kó,*</i>	. . . .	. . . .	<i>ka-s,</i>	<i>hva-s.</i>

\* In the comp. *wiess-pati-s*, "landlord"; isolated *pat-s*, "husband," with *i* in the nominative suppressed, as is the case in Gothic in all bases in *i*. Compare the Zend *𐬯𐬁𐬭𐬀𐬨𐬌* *vīš-paiti*, "lord of the region."

† These and other bases ending with a consonant are given only in those cases which have remained free from a subsequent vowel addition.

‡ Before the enclitic particle *cha*, as well here as in all other forms, the termination *as*, which otherwise becomes *ô* (§. 56<sup>b</sup>.), retains the same form, which, in Sanscrit also, अस् *as* assumes before च् *cha* : hence is said *वृकश्चा* *vêhrkaścha*, “*lupusque*,” as in Sanscrit *वृकश्च* *orikaścha*. And the appended *cha* preserves the otherwise shortened final vowel in its original length : hence *जिह्वाचा* *jihvâcha*, “*linguaque*,” *बुश्यान्तिचा* *bushyaintîcha*, “*futuraque*,” *ब्रातृचा* *brâtâchu*, “*fraterque*.” Even without the *स्* at times the original length of the final vowel is found undiminished : the principle of abbreviation, however, remains adequately proved, and I therefore observe it everywhere in the terminations.

	SANSKRIT.	ZEND.	GREEK.	LATIN.	LITHUAN.	GOTHIC.
n.	<i>dāna-m,</i>	<i>dālē-m,</i>	δῶρο-ν,	<i>donu-m,</i>	<i>géra,</i>	<i>daur'.</i>
n.	<i>ta-t,</i>	<i>ta-t,</i>	τό,	<i>is-tu-d,</i>	<i>ta-i,</i>	<i>tha-ta.</i>
f.	<i>jihvā,</i>	<i>hizva,*</i>	χώρα,	<i>terra,</i>	<i>rankà,</i>	<i>giba.</i>
f.	<i>kā,</i>	<i>kā,</i>	....	....	....	<i>hvō.</i>
m.	<i>pāti-s,</i>	<i>paili-s,</i>	πόσι-ς,	<i>hosti-s,</i>	<i>pāti-s,</i>	<i>gast'-s.</i>
m.	....	....	....	<i>i-s,</i>	....	<i>i-s.</i>
f.	<i>prīti-s,</i>	<i>āfrīti-s,</i>	πόρτι-ς,	<i>siti-s,</i>	<i>avi-s</i>	<i>anst'-s.</i>
n.	<i>vāri,</i>	<i>vairi,</i>	ἰδρι,	<i>mare,</i>	....	....
n.	....	....	....	<i>i-d,</i>	....	<i>i-ta.</i>
f.	<i>bhaviṣhyantī,</i>	<i>būshyainti,*</i>	....	....	<i>būsentī,</i>	....
m.	<i>sūnu-s,</i>	<i>paṣu-s,</i>	ἰχθύ-ς,	<i>pecu-s,</i>	<i>sunū-s,</i>	<i>sunu-s.</i>
f.	<i>tanu-s,</i>	<i>tanu-s,</i>	πίτυ-ς,	<i>socru-s,</i>	....	<i>handu-s.</i>
n.	<i>madhu,</i>	<i>madhu,</i>	μέθυ,	<i>pecu,</i>	<i>darkū,</i>	<i>faihu.</i>
f.	<i>vadhū-s,</i>	....	....	....	....	....
m. f.	<i>gāu-s,†</i>	<i>gaū-s,‡</i>	βοῦ-ς,	<i>bō-s,</i>	....	....
f.	<i>nāu-s,</i>	....	ναῦ-ς,	....	....	....
f.	<i>vāk,</i>	<i>vāc-s,</i>	ὄπ-ς,	<i>voc-s,</i>	....	....
m.	<i>bharan,</i>	<i>barañ-s,</i>	φέρων,	<i>feren-s,</i>	<i>sukañ-s,</i>	<i>fijand-s.</i>
m.	<i>ātma',</i>	<i>aśma,*</i>	δαίμων,	<i>sermo',</i>	<i>akmū',</i>	<i>ahma'.</i>
n.	<i>nāma',</i>	<i>nāma',</i>	τάλαν,	<i>nomen,</i>	....	<i>namō'.</i>
m.	<i>bhrātā',</i>	<i>brātā',*</i>	πατήρ,	<i>frater,</i>	....	<i>brōthar.</i>
f.	<i>duhitā',</i>	<i>dughdha,*</i>	θυγάτηρ,	<i>mater,</i>	<i>duktē',</i>	<i>dauhtar.</i>
m.	<i>dātā',</i>	<i>dāta',*</i>	δοτήρ,	<i>dator,</i>	....	....
n.	<i>vachas,</i>	<i>vachō,*</i>	ἔπος,	<i>opus,</i>	....	....

## ACCUSATIVE.

## SINGULAR.

149. The character of the accusative is *m* in Sanscrit, Zend, and Latin; in Greek *ν*, for the sake of euphony. In Lithuanian the old *m* has become still more weakened to

\* See the marginal note marked (\*) on the foregoing page.

† Irregularly for गोस् *gō-s*.

‡ Or *gāos*, §. 33.

the dull re-echoing nasal, which in Sanscrit is called Anu-svâra, and which we, in both languages, express by *n* (§. 10.). The German languages have, so early as the Gothic even, lost the accusative mark in substantives entirely, but in pronouns of the 3d person, as also in adjective-bases ending with a vowel which follow their declension, they have hitherto retained it; still only in the masculine: the feminine nowhere exhibits an accusative character, and is, like its nominative, devoid of inflection. The Gothic gives *na* instead of the old *m*; the High German, with more correctness, a simple *n*: hence, Gothic *blind-na*, “*cæcum*,” Old High German *plinta-n*, Middle and Modern High German *blinde-n*.

150. Primary forms terminating with a consonant prefix to the case-sign *m* a short vowel, as otherwise the combination would be, in most cases, impossible: thus, in Sanscrit *am*, in Zend and Latin *ĕm*, appears as the accusative termination\*: of the Greek *αν*, which must originally have existed, the *ν* is, in the present condition of the language, lost: examples in §. 157.

151. Monosyllabic words in *i*, *u*, and *au*, in Sanscrit, like consonant-bases, give *am* in place of the mere *m*, as the accusative termination, probably in order in this way to become polysyllabic. Thus, *भी bhī*, “fear,” and *नौ nau*, “ship,” not *bhī-m* and *nau-m*, as the Greek *ἰαν-ν* would lead

---

\* From the bases *دروج druj* and *واچ vāch*, I find besides *دروچم družem*, *واچم vāchēm*, in the V. S.; also frequently *دروچم družim*, *واچم vāchim*: and if these forms are genuine, which I scarcely doubt, they are to be thus explained—that the vowel which stands before *m* is only a means of conjunction for appending the *m*; for this purpose, however, the Zend uses, besides the *ç* *ē* mentioned at §. 30, not unfrequently *i*; e. g. for *दातमहि da'temahi*, occurs also *दादमहि dadimahi*, and many similar forms; as *उसमहि us-i-mahi*, answering to the Sanscrit *उश्मस् usmas* (in the Vêdas *उश्मसि usmasi*), “we will.”

us to expect, but भियम् *bhiy-am*, नावम् *nāv-am*. With this agree the Greek themes in *ev*, since these give *ε-α*, from *εF-α*, for *ev-ν*; *e.g.* βασιλέ(F)α, for βασιλευ-ν. It is, however, wrong to regard the Latin *em* as the true, originally sole accusative termination, and for *lupu-m*, *hora-m*, *fruc-tum*, *diem*, to seek out an older form *lupo-em* *hora-em*, *fructu-em*, *die-em*. That the simple nasal suffices to characterize the accusative, and that a precursory vowel was only added out of other necessary reasons, is proved by the history of our entire family of languages, and would be adequately established, without Sanscrit and Zend, by the Greek, Lithuanian, and Gothic. The Latin *em* in the accusative third declension is of a double kind: in one case the *e* belongs to the base, and stands, as in innumerable cases, for *i*; so that *e-m*, of *igne-m* (Sanskrit अग्निम् *agni-m*), corresponds to the Indian *i-m*, Zend *i-m*, Greek *ι-ν*, Lithuanian *i-ni*, Gothic *i-na* (from *ina*, "him"); but in the *em* of consonant bases the *e* answers to the Indian *a*, to which it corresponds in many other cases also.

152. The Sanscrit and Zend neuter bases in *a*, and those akin to them in Greek and Latin, as well as the two natural genders, give a nasal as the sign of the accusative, and introduce into the nominative also this character, which is less personal, less animated, and is hence appropriated to the accusative as well as to the nominative in the neuter: hence, Sans. शयनम् *śayana-m*, Zend 𐬰𐬀𐬎𐬭𐬀𐬎𐬭𐬀 *śayanē-m*, "a bed"; so in Latin and Greek, *donu-m*, δῶπο-ν. All other bases, with but few exceptions, in Latin, remain in the nominative and accusative without any case character, and give the naked base, which in Latin, however, replaces a final *i* by the kindred *e*; thus, *marē* for *mari* corresponds to the Sanscrit वारि *vāri*, "water": the Greek, like the Sanscrit and Zend, leaves the *i* unchanged—ἰδρι-ς, ἰδρι, as in Sanscrit शुचिम् *śuchis*, शुचि *śuchi*. The following are examples of neuter *u* bases, which supply the place both

of nominative and accusative: in Sans. मधु *madhu*, "honey," "wine," अश्रु *asru*, "tear," स्वादु *svādu*, "sweet"; in Zend 𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬀 *vdhu*, "wealth" (Sanskrit वसु *vasu*); in Greek μέθυ, δάκρυ, ἥδύ; in Latin *pecu*, *genu*. The length of this *u* is unorganic, and has probably passed into the nominative, accusative, and vocative from the oblique cases, where the length is to be explained from the suppressed case terminations. With regard to the fact that final *u* is always long in Latin, there is perhaps a reason always at hand for this length: in the ablative, for example, the length of the originally short *u* is explicable as a compensation for the case sign which has been dropped, by which, too, the *o* of the second declension becomes long. The original shortness of the *u* of the fourth declension is perceivable from the dat. pl. *ũ-bus*. The Σ, in Greek words like γένος, μένος, εὐγενές, has been already explained at §. 128. as belonging to the base: the same is the case with the Latin *s* in neuters like *genus*, *corpus*, *gravius*: it is the other form of the *r* of the oblique cases, like *gener-is*, *corpor-is*, *gravior-is* (see §. 127.); and *corpus* appears akin to the Sanscrit neuter of the same meaning, वपुस् *vapus*, gen. वपुषस् *vapu-sh-as* (see §. 19.), and would consequently have an *r* too much, or the Sanscrit has lost one.\* The Σ also of neuter bases in T, in τετυφός, τέρας, does not seem to me to be the case sign, but an exchange with T, which is not admissible at the end, but is either rejected (μέλι, πρᾶγμα) or exchanged for a kindred Σ, as πρὸς from προτί, Sanscrit प्रति *prati*.† In Latin it is to

---

\* Compare, in this respect, *brachium*, βραχίον, with बाहुस् *bāhu-s*, "arm"; *frango*, ῥήγνυμι, with भनजि *bhanajmi*, "I break," भञ्जस् *bhanjmas*, "we break."

† With this view, which I have already developed in my treatise "On some Demonstrative Bases, and their connection with various Prepositions and Conjunctions" (Berlin, by Dümmler), pp. 4—6, corresponds, as to the essential points, what Hartung has since said on this subject

be regarded as inconsistent with the spirit of the language, that most adjective bases ending with a consonant retain the nominative sign *s* of the two natural genders in the neuter, and in this gender extend it also to the accusative, as if it belonged to the base, as *capæ-s*, *felic-s*, *soler(t)s*, *aman(t)s*. In general, in Latin, in consonant bases, the perception of the distinction of gender is very much blunted, as, contrary to the principle followed by the Sanscrit, Zend, Greek, and Gothic, the feminine is no longer distinguished from the masculine.

153. In Gothic substantives, as well neuter as masculine, the case sign *m* is wanting, and hence neuter bases in *a* stand on the same footing with the *i*, *u*, and consonant bases of the kindred languages, in that, in the nominative and accusative, they are devoid of all inflection. Compare, with regard to the form of this case, *daur(a)* with द्वाद्दाम् *dvādam*, which has the same meaning. In Gothic there are no neuter substantives in *i*; on the other hand, the substantive bases in *ya*, by suppression of the *a* in the nominative and accusative singular (cf. §. 135.), gain in these cases the semblance of *i* bases; *e.g.* from the base *REIKYA*, “rich” (Sanskrit राज्ञ्य *rājya*, likewise neuter), comes, in the cases mentioned, *reiki*, answering to the Sanscrit राज्ञ्यम् *rājya-m*. The want of neuter *i* bases in German

---

subject in his valuable work on “On the Cases,” p. 152, &c.; where also the  $\rho$  of ἥπαρ and ὕδωρ is explained as coming from T, through the intervention of Σ. The Sanscrit, however, appears to attribute a different origin to the  $\rho$  of these forms. To यकृत् *yakṛt*, “liver” (likewise neuter), corresponds both *jecur* and ἥπαρ, through the common interchange between *k* and *p*: both owe to it their  $\rho$ , as ἥπαρ-ος does its τ. ἥπαρ-ος should be ἥπαρτ-ος, Sanscrit यकृतस् *yakṛt-as*. But the Sanscrit also in this word, in the weak cases, can give up the *r*, but then irregularly substitutes न् *n* for त् *t*, *e.g.* gen. यकृन् *yakn-as* for यकनस् *yakanus*. With regard to the  $\rho$  of ὕδωρ, compare उद् *udra*, “water,” in समुद् *sam-udra*, “sea.”



is the less surprising, that in the kindred Sanscrit, Zend, and Greek, the corresponding termination in the neuter is not very common. Of neuter *u* roots the substantive declension has preserved only the single *FAIHU*, "beast." In Lithuanian the neuter in substantives is entirely lost, and has left traces only in pronouns and adjectives, where the latter relate to pronouns. Adjective bases in *u*, in this case, have their nominative and accusative singular in accordance with the kindred languages, without case sign; *e.g.* *darkù*, "ugly," corresponds as nominative and accusative neuter to the masculine nominative *darkù-s*, accusative *darku-n*. This analogy, however, is followed in Lithuanian by the adjective bases in *a* also; and thus *géra*, "good," corresponds as nominative and accusative to the masculine forms *géra-s*, *géra-n*,\* which are provided with the sign of the case.

154. It is a question whether the *m*, as the sign of the nominative and accusative neuter (it is excluded from the vocative in Sanscrit and Zend), was originally limited simply to the *a* bases, and was not joined to the *i* and

---

\* The *e* of neuter forms like *dide*, "great," from the stem *DIDJA*—nom. masc. *didi-s* for *didya-s*, as §. 135. *yaunikis*, "youngling"—I explain through the euphonic influence of the suppressed *y*. As also the feminine originally long *a* is changed into *e* by the same influence, so is the nominative and accusative neuter in such words identical with the nominative feminine, which is likewise, according to §. 137, devoid of inflection; and *dide* therefore signifies also "*magna*," and answers, as feminine, very remarkably to the Zend nominatives explained at §. 137., as *𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬀* *pērēnē*, *𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀* *brāturyē*. In this sense are to be regarded, also, the feminine substantives in Ruhig's third declension, as far as they terminate in the nominative in *e*, as *giesme*, "song." As no masculine forms in *i* correspond to them, the discovery of the true nature of these words becomes more difficult; for the lost *y* or *i* has been preserved only in the genitive plural, where *giesmy-ū* is to be taken like *rank-ū* from *rankā*, *i.e.* the final vowel of the bases is suppressed before the termination, or has been melted down with it.

*u* bases also; so that, in Sanscrit, for *vāri* we had originally *vāri-m*, for *madhu*, *madhu-m*? I should not wish to deny the original existence of such forms; for why should the *a* bases alone have felt the necessity of not leaving the nominative and accusative neuter without a sign of relation or of personality? It is more probable that the *a* bases adhered only the more firmly to the termination once assumed, because they are by far the most numerous, and could thus present a stronger opposition to the destructive influence of time by means of the greater force of their analogies; in the same manner as the verb substantive, in like manner, on account of its frequent use, has allowed the old inflection to pass less into oblivion, and in German has continued to our time several of the progeny of the oldest period; as, for instance, the nasal, as characteristic of the 1st person in *bi-n*, Old High German *pi-m*, Sans. भवामि *bhavā-mi*. In Sanscrit, one example of an *m* as the nominative and accusative sign of an *i* base is not wanting, although it stands quite isolated; and indeed this form occurs in the pronominal declension, which everywhere remains longest true to the traditions of bygone ages. I mean the interrogative form किम् *ki-m*, "what"? from the stem कि *ki*, which may perhaps, in Sanscrit, have produced a *ki-t*, which is contained in the Latin *qui-d*, and which I recognise again, also, in the enclitic चित् *chit*, weakened from कित् *ki-t*. Otherwise *i* or *u* bases of pronouns in the nominative accusative neuter do not occur; for अमु *amu*, "that" (man), substitutes अदस् *adas*; and इ *i*, "this," combines with दम् *dam* (इदम् *idam*, "this"). Concerning the original procedure of consonant bases in the nominative and accusative neuters no explanation is afforded by the pronominal declension, as all primary forms of pronouns terminate in vowels, and, indeed, for the most part, in *a*.

155. Pronominal bases in *a* in Sanscrit give *t*, in Zend *t*, as the inflection of the nominative and accusative neuter. The

Gothic gives, as in the accusative masculine, *na* for *m* or *n*, here *ta* for simple *t*; and transfers these, like other peculiarities of the pronominal declension, like the other German dialects, also to the adjective *a* bases; *e.g.* *blinda-ta*, "*cæcum*," *midya-ta*, "*medium*." The High German gives, in the older period, *z* instead of the Gothic *t* (§. 87.), in the most modern period, *s*. The pronominal base *I* (later *E*) follows in German, as in Latin, the analogy of the old *a* bases, and the Latin gives, as in the old ablative, *d* instead of *t*. The Greek must abandon all *T* sounds at the end of words: the difference of the pronominal from the common *o* declension consists, therefore, in this respect, merely in the absence of all inflection. From this difference, however, and the testimony of the kindred languages, it is perceived that *τό* was originally sounded *τοτ* or *τοδ*, for a *τον* would have remained unaltered, as in the masculine accusative. Perhaps we have a remnant of a neuter-inflection *τ* in *ὅττι*, so that we ought to divide *ὅτ-τι*; and therefore the double *τ*, in this form, would have a mere metrical foundation, as little as the double *σ* in *ὄρεσ-σι* (§. 128.). (Buttmann, p. 85.)

156. We find the origin of the neuter case-sign *t* in the pronominal stem *π ta*, "he," "this," (Greek *TO*, Goth. *THA*, &c.); and a convincing proof of the correctness of this explanation is this, that *तत् ta-t* "it," "this," stands, in regard to the base, in the same contrast with *स sa*, "he," *सा sâ*, "she," as *t*, as the neuter case-sign, does to the nominative *s* of masculine and feminine nouns (§. 134.) The *m* of the accusative also is, I doubt not, of pronominal origin; and it is remarkable that the compound pronouns *i-ma*, "this," and *a-mu*, "that," occur just as little as *ta* in the nominative masculine and feminine; but the Sanscrit substitutes for the base *amu*, in the nominative masculine and feminine singular the form *asâu*, the *s* of which, therefore, stands in the same relation to the *m* of *अमुम् amu-m*, "*illum*," *अमुष्य amu-shya*, "*illius*," and other oblique cases, as, among

the case-terminations, the sign of the masculine feminine nominative to the *m* of the accusative and neuter nominative. Moreover, in Zend is used  $\text{𐬰𐬀𐬭𐬀}$  *imat*, "this," (n.) (nom. accus.), but not *imô*, "this" (m.), but  $\text{𐬰𐬀𐬭𐬀}$  *aēm* (from  $\text{अयम्}$  *ayam*), and  $\text{𐬰𐬀𐬭𐬀}$  *īm* (from  $\text{इयम्}$  *iyam*), "this" (f.). Observe in Greek the pronominal base *MI*, which occurs only in the accusative, and, in regard of its vowel, has the same relation to *म* *ma* (in the compounded base  $\text{इम}$  *i-ma*) that  $\text{किम्}$  *ki-m* "what?" has to  $\text{कस्}$  *ka-s* "who?" The Gothic neut. termination *ta* answers, in respect to the transposition of sound (§. 87.), to the Latin *d* (*id, istud*): this Latin *d*, however, seems to me a descent from the older *t*; as *e.g.* the *b* of *ab* has proceeded from the *p* of the kindred  $\text{अप}$  *apa*,  $\text{ἀπό}$ ; and in Zend the *d* of  $\text{𐬰𐬀𐬭𐬀}$  *ā-dēm*, "him," is clearly only a weakening of the *t* of  $\text{𐬰}$  *ta*,  $\text{𐬰𐬀}$  *ta*.\*

157. To the Sanscrit *ta-t*, mentioned above, Zend *ta-t*, Greek  $\text{τό}$ , &c., corresponds a Lithuanian *tai*, "the," as the nominative and accusative singular. I do not believe, however, that the *i* which is here incorporated in the base *TA*

---

\* See my treatise "On the Origin of the Cases" in the Trans. of the Berlin Academy for the year 1826. As *T* in Greek easily becomes  $\Sigma$  (but a final  $\Sigma$  has in many parts of Grammar become  $\nu$ ), Hartung founds on this, in the pamphlet before mentioned, p. 154, the acute conjecture of an original identity of neuters in  $\nu$  (*m*) with those in *t*. We cannot, however, agree with him in this, because the *m*, on account of the origin which we ascribe to this case-sign is as little surprising in the nominative of the neuter as in the accusative of the more animated genders; and besides, a greater antiquity is proved to belong to the neuter *m*, through the Sanscrit and Zend, than probably the  $\nu$  sounds can boast, which, in Greek, stand for an older  $\Sigma$ , as  $\mu\epsilon\nu$  for  $\mu\epsilon\varsigma$  ( $\text{मस्}$  *mas*), and in the dual  $\tau\omicron\nu$ ,  $\tau\omicron\nu$  for  $\text{थस्}$  *thas*,  $\text{तस्}$  *tas*. What is wanting in the Greek, viz. a neuter inflection *s*, appears, however, to be possessed by the Sanscrit; and I am inclined to divide the form  $\text{अदस्}$  *adas*, "that" (nom. accus.) into *a-da-s*, and to explain it as a corruption of *a-da-t* (cf. Gramm. Crit. Addend. to r. 299.); but to regard the syllable *da* as weakened from *ta*, as in the Zend  $\text{𐬰𐬀𐬭𐬀}$  *ā-dēm*, "him." We shall recur to this when treating of the pronouns.

is any way connected with the neuter *t*, *d*, of the kindred languages: I should rather turn to a relationship with the *í* demonstrative in the Greek (*οὗτοςί, ἐκείνοσί*), and to the इत् *it*, which is, in like manner, used enclitically in the Vêdas—a petrified neuter, which is no longer conscious of any gender or case; and hence, in several cases, combining with masculine pronouns of the third person.\* This इत् *it*, is consequently the sister form of the Latin *id* and Gothic *i-ta*, which, in the Greek *ἐκείνοσί*, has, perhaps only from necessity, dropped the *τ* or *δ*, and which already, ere I was acquainted with the Vêda-dialect, I represented as a consistent part of the conjunctions चेत् *chêt* (from *cha + it*), “if,” and नेत् *nêt* (*na + it*)

The words mentioned at §. 148. form in the accusative :

SANSKRIT.	ZEND.	GREEK.	LATIN.	LITHUAN.	GOTHIC.
m. <i>vrika-m</i> ,	<i>věhrkě-m</i> ,	<i>λύκο-ν</i> ,	<i>lupu-m</i> ,	<i>wilka-ñ</i> ,	<i>vulf</i> ’.
m. <i>ka-m</i> ,	<i>kě-m</i> ,	....	....	<i>ka-ñ</i> ,	<i>hwa-na</i> .
n. <i>dâna-m</i> ,	<i>dâtě-m</i> ,	<i>δῶπο-ν</i> ,	<i>donu-m</i> ,	<i>géra</i> ,	<i>daur</i> ’.
n. <i>ta-t</i> ,	<i>ta-t</i> ,	<i>τό</i> ,	<i>is-tu-d</i> ,	<i>ta-i</i> ,	<i>tha-ta</i> .
f. <i>jihvâ-m</i> ,	<i>hizva-ñm</i> ,	<i>χώρα-ν</i> ,	<i>terra-m</i> ,	<i>ranka-ñ</i> ,	<i>giba</i> .
f. <i>kâ-m</i> ,	<i>ka-ñm</i> ,	....	....	....	<i>hvô</i> .†

\* Examples are given by Rosen in his *Veda Specimen*, pp. 24, 25, which, though short, are in the highest degree interesting for Sanscrit and comparative Grammar; as, सइत् *sait*, “he,” तमित् *tamit*, “him”; तयोरित् *tayôrit*, “of these two”; तस्माइत् *tasmâit*, “to him”; अस्माइत् *asmâit*, “to this” (m.). The Zend combines in the same way *xe* or *si* with the interrogative: *kašē* and *kaši*, “who?” occur frequently. Perhaps only one of the two modes of writing is correct. Cf. *Gramm. Crit. Addend. to r. 270*.

\* One would expect *hvô-na*, or, with abbreviation of the base, *hva-na*, which would be the same as the masculine. With regard to the lost case-termination, it may be observed, that, in general, the feminines are less constant in handing down the old inflexions. A charge which is incurred by the Sanscrit in the nominative, since it gives *kâ* for *kâ-s* (§. 137.), is incurred by the Gothic (for in this manner the corruption spreads) in the accusative also.

	SANSKRIT.	ZEND.	GREEK.	LATIN.	LITHUAN.	GOthic.
m.	<i>pati-m,</i>	<i>paítí-m,</i>	<i>πόσι-ν,</i>	<i>hoste-m,</i>	<i>páti-n,</i>	<i>gast'.</i>
m.	....	....	....	....	....	<i>i-na.</i>
f.	<i>príti-m,</i>	<i>áfríli-m,</i>	<i>πόρτι-ν,</i>	<i>síti-m,</i>	<i>áwi-ñ,</i>	<i>anst'.</i>
n.	<i>vári,</i>	<i>vairi,</i>	<i>ἴδρι,</i>	<i>mare,</i>	....	....
n.	....	....	....	<i>i-d,</i>	....	<i>i-ta.</i>
f.	<i>bhavishyantím,</i>	<i>báshyaintí-m,</i>	....	....	....*	....
m.	<i>sánu-m,</i>	<i>paśá-m,</i>	<i>ἰχθύ-ν,</i>	<i>pecu-m,</i>	<i>sunu-ñ,</i>	<i>sunu.</i>
f.	<i>tanu-m,</i>	<i>taná-m,</i>	<i>πίτυ-ν,</i>	<i>socru-m,</i>	....	<i>handu.</i>
n.	<i>madhu,</i>	<i>madhu,</i>	<i>μέθυ,</i>	<i>pecu,</i>	<i>darkù,</i>	<i>faihu.</i>
f.	<i>vadhá-m,</i>	....	....	....	....	....
m.f.	<i>gá-m †,</i>	<i>ga-ñm †,</i>	<i>βοῦ-ν,</i>	<i>bov-em,</i>	....	....
f.	<i>náv-am,</i>	....	<i>ναῦ-ν,</i>	....	....	....
f.	<i>vách-am,</i>	<i>vách-ēm,</i>	<i>ὄπ-α,</i>	<i>voc-em,</i>	....	....

\* The feminine participial bases in *i*, mentioned at §. 119, remain free from foreign commixture only in the nominative and vocative singular: in all other cases, to the old *i* is further added a more modern *a*; and the declension then follows *RANKA* exactly; only that in some cases, through the euphonic influence of the *i*, and in analogy with the Zend and the Latin fifth declension (§. 137.), the added *a* becomes, or may become, *e*: in the latter case the *i* is suppressed, as l.c. *καινέ* for *kainyē* (§. 42.). Thus, from *sukanti*, "the turning" (f.), *sukusi*, "the having turned" (f.), and *suksenti*, "the about to turn," Mielcke gives the accusatives *sukan-csen* (see p. 138, Rem.) or *sukan-csian*, *sukusen*, and *suksencsen* or *suk-sencsian*. And even if, according to Ruhig (by Mielcke, pp. 3, 4), the *i* before *a*, *e*, *o*, *u* is scarcely heard, it must not therefore in this case, as well as in those there enumerated, be the less regarded as etymologically present, and it was originally pronounced so as to be fully audible. From the feminine, where the *i*, as Sanscrit grammar shews, has an original position, this vowel appears to have made its way, in Lithuanian participial bases, into the oblique cases of the masculine, and to be here invested with a short masculine *a*. The accusative *sukanti-ñ*, "the turning" (m), is therefore to be regarded in the same light as *yaunikki-ñ*, from the theme *YAUNIKJA*, i.e. it stands for *sukantyi-ñ* from *sukantya-ñ*, and hence answers to the Zend accusatives, like *tuírí-m* for *túiryēm* (§. 42.), and to the Gothic, like *hari* from the base *HARYA* (§. 135.).

† See §. 122.

	SANSKRIT.	ZEND.	GREEK.	LATIN.	LITHUAN.	GOthic.
m.	<i>bharant-am</i> ,	<i>barēnt-ēm</i> ,	φέρωντ-α,	<i>ferent-em</i> ,	....	<i>fijand</i> .
m.	<i>ātmān-am</i> ,	<i>ašman-ēm</i> ,	δαίμον-α,	<i>sermon-em</i> ,	....	<i>ahman</i> .
n.	<i>nāma'</i> ,	<i>nāma'</i>	τάλαν,	<i>nomen</i> ,	....	<i>namō</i> .
m.	<i>bhrātar-am</i> ,	<i>brātar-ēm</i> ,	πατέρ-α,	<i>fratr-em</i> ,	....	<i>brōthar</i> .
f.	<i>duhitar-am</i> ,	<i>dughdhar-ēm</i> ,	θυγατέρ-α,	<i>matr-em</i> ,	....	<i>dauhtar</i> .
m.	<i>dātār-am</i> ,	<i>dātār-ēm</i> ,	δοτήρ-α,	<i>datōr-em</i> ,	....	....
n.	<i>vachas</i> ,	<i>vachō,*</i>	ἔπος,	<i>opus</i> ,	....	....

## INSTRUMENTAL, DATIVE.

158. The instrumental is denoted in Sanscrit by ऋ *ā*; and this inflexion is, in my opinion, a lengthening of the pronominal base ऋ *a*, and identical with the preposition ऋ *ā*, "to," "towards," "up to," which springs from this pronoun, and appears only as a prefix. The Zend *ā* appears still more in its pronominal nature in the compound mentioned at §. 156. Rem., 𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀 *ā-dēm*, "him," "this," (m.) fem. 𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀 *ā-dāim*. As a case-sign, 𐬀 *ā* generally appears abbreviated (see p. 163. Rem.), even where this termination has been melted into one with a preceding 𐬀 *a* of the base; so that in this case the primary form and the instrumental are completely similar; e.g. 𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀 *zaōsha*, "voluntarily," 𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀 *azaōsha*, "involuntarily," (V. S. p. 12.) 𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀 *skyaōthna*, "actione," often occur; 𐬀𐬀𐬀 *ana*, "through this" (m.), 𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀 *paiti-bērēta*, "allevato."† The long *ā* appears in the instrumental only in monosyllabic bases in 𐬀 *a*; thus 𐬀𐬀𐬀 *kha*, "proprio" (V. S. p. 46.), from the base 𐬀𐬀𐬀 *kha* (Sanskrit ऋ *sī'a*, §. 35.). In Sanscrit a euphonic न *n* is added to bases ending with short vowels

---

\* See §. 56<sup>b</sup>.

† Cf. Gramm. Crit. r. 638. Rem. This interesting instrumental form was not known by Rask when he published his work on the Zend, and it was not easy to discover it, on account of its discrepancy from the Sanscrit and the many other forms with final 𐬀 *a*.

in the masc. and neut. genders;\* a final **अ** *a*, however, is, as in several other cases, changed into **इ** *é*, and the **आ** *á* of the case-suffix is shortened, as it appears to me, by the influence of this clog of the base; as **वृकेन** *vriké-n-a*, but **अग्निना** *agni-n-á*, **वारिणा** *vári-n-á*, **सूनुना** *sūnu-n-á*, **मधुना** *madhu-n-á*, from **वृक** *vrika*, &c. The Vêdas, however, exhibit further remains of formations without the euphonic *n*, as **स्वप्नया** *svapnay-á* for **स्वप्नेन** *svapné-n-a* from **स्वप्न** *svapna*, m. "sleep" (see §. 133.); **उरुया** *uru-y-á* for **उरुणा** *uru-n-a*, from **उरु** *uru*, "great," with a euphonic **य** *y* (§. 43.); **प्रबाहुया** *prabāhav-á*, from **प्रबाहु** *prabāhu*, from **बाहु** *bāhu*, "arm," with the preposition **प्र** *pra*. The Vêda-form **स्वप्नया** *svapnayá*, finds analogies in the common dialect in **मया** *mayá*, "through me," and **त्वया** *tvayá*, "through thee," from the bases *ma* and *tva*, the *a* of which in this case, as in the loc. passes into *é*. And from **पति** *pati*, m. "Lord," and **सखि** *sakhi*, m. "friend," the common dialect forms instrumentals without the interposition of **न्** *n*, viz. **पत्या** *paty-á*, **सख्या** *sakhy-á*. Feminines never admit a euphonic *n*; but *á*, as before some other vowel terminations, passes into **इ** *é*, that is to say, *i* is blended with it, and it is shortened to **अ** *a*; hence, **जिह्वया** *jihvay-á* (from *jihvé + á*). The Zend follows in this the analogy of the Sanscrit.

159. As *é* in Gothic, according to §. 69., just like *ð*, represents **आ** *á*, so the forms *thé*, *hvé*, which Grimm (pp. 790. and 798.) regards as instrumentals, from the demonstrative stem *THA* and the interrogative *HVA*, correspond very remarkably to the Zend instrumentals, as **𐬕𐬀** *khá* from the base **𐬕𐬀** *kha*. We must, however, place also *své* in the class of genuine Zend instrumental forms, which have been correctly preserved: besides *své* from *SVA* is also,

---

\* The original has "Stämmen gen. masc. und fem.;" but genitives of nouns in *a* do not take a euphonic *n*, nor do feminine nouns ending in short vowels use such an augment in the instrumental: here is no doubt some typographic error.—*Editor*.



in respect of its base, akin to  $\text{𐬕𐬀} khā$  from  $kha$  (§. 35.).\* The meaning of  $svē$  is “as” ( $\acute{\omega}\varsigma$ ), and the  $s\delta$ , which has arisen in High German from  $sva$  or  $svē$ , means both “as” and “so,” &c. The case relations, however, which are expressed by “as” and “so” are genuine instrumentals.† The Anglo-Saxon form for  $svē$  is  $svā$ , in which the colouring of the Zend  $\text{𐬕𐬀} khā$  is most truly preserved. The Gothic  $sva$  “so” is, according to its form, only the abbreviation of  $svē$ , as  $a$  is the short equivalent both of  $\acute{e}$  and of  $\delta$ : through this abbreviation, however,  $sva$  has become identical with its theme, just as  $\text{𐬀𐬎𐬌} ana$  in Zend is, according to §. 158., not distinguished from its theme.

160. As the dative in Gothic and in Old High German very frequently expresses the instrumental relation, and the termination also of the dative is identical with the Sanscrit-Zend instrumental character, shortened only, as in polysyllabic words in Zend, it may be proper here to describe at the same time the formation of the German dative. In  $a$  bases it is in Gothic, as in Zend, identical with the theme, and from  $VULFA$  comes  $vulfa$ , as  $\text{𐬕𐬀𐬌𐬀} vērka$  from  $VEHRKA$ . Moreover, there are some other remarkable datives, which have preserved their due length, and answer to the monosyllabic instrumentals  $thē$ ,  $hvē$ ,  $svē$ , which have been already explained, viz.  $hvammē-h$ ,  $hvar-jammē-h$ , “cuique,” and  $ainummē-hun$ , “ulli,” for  $ainammē-hun$  (§. 66.).‡ Bases in  $i$  reject this vowel before the case-

---

\* Grimm's conjectures regarding the forms  $sva$  and  $svē$  (III. 43.) appear to me untenable; and an explanation of these forms, without the intervention of the Sanscrit and Zend, is impossible. More regarding this at the pronouns.

† If “as” is regarded as “through which means, in which manner or way,” and “so” as “through this means, in this way,” it is certain that among the genuine cases of the Sanscrit language there is none which would be adapted in the relative and demonstrative to express “as” and “so.”

‡ Here the appended particle has preserved the original length of the termination, as is the case in Zend in all instrumentals, if they are combined with  $\text{𐬀𐬎} cha$ , “and.”



betake ourselves to the Sanscrit dative for explanation of the Gothic feminine dative. This necessity, however, does not exist, for *hveitai*, “*albae*,” from *HVEITŌ* from *HVEITĀ*, may be deduced from the instrumental *चेतया* *śvêtay-ā*, “*albā*,” from *चेता* *śvétā*, by suppressing the termination, and changing the semi-vowel to a vowel in the same manner as, above, *sunau* from *sunav-a*, or as the fem. *handau*, “*manui*,” from *handav-a*. Analogous with *sunau*, *handau*, are also the dative feminine *i* bases; and, e.g. *anstai*, “*gratiæ*,” has the same relation to its theme *ANSTI* that *handau* has *HANDU*.

162. In Old High German the forms *diu*, *hviu*, correspond to the Gothic instrumentals *thê*, *hvê*; but authorities differ as to the mode of writing them,\* regarding which we shall say more under the pronouns. The form *hiu*, also, from a demonstrative base *HI*, has been preserved in the compound *hiutu* for *hiu-tagu*, “on this day,” “to-day,” (see Grimm, p. 794.) although the meaning is here properly locative. The Gothic has for it the dative *himma-daga*. This termination *u* has maintained itself also in substantive and adjective bases masc. neut. in *a* and *i*, although it is only sparingly used, and principally after the preposition *mit* (see Graff, l. c. pp. 110, 111.); *mit wortu*, “with a word,” from *WORTA*; *mit cuatu*, “with good,” from *CUATA*; *mit kastu*, “with a guest,” from *KASTI*. It is here important to remark, that the instrumental in Sanscrit very frequently expresses, *per se*, the sociative relation. We cannot, however, for this reason look upon this *u* case as generically different from the common dative, which, we have already remarked, is likewise of instrumental origin and meaning: we rather regard the *u*<sup>†</sup> as a corruption

\* With reference to their use with various prepositions we refer our readers to Graff's excellent treatise, “The Old High German Prepositions,” p. 181, &c.

† Contrary to Grimm's opinion, I cannot let the instrumental *u* pass as long,

(although one of very ancient date) of *u*, just as in the neuter plural of pronouns and adjectives a *u* corresponds to the short *a* of the Gothic and the older kindred languages. In Lithuanian the *a* bases form their instrumental in *ú*, which is long, and in which the final vowel of the base has been melted down. That this *ú*, also, has arisen from a long *a*, and thus, *e. g.* *dienu* is akin to the Zend  $\text{𐬔𐬀𐬌𐬯𐬭𐬀}$  *daēva*, “*deo*,” for  $\text{𐬔𐬀𐬌𐬯𐬭𐬀}$  *daēvā*, appears to me the less doubtful; as also in the plural *dienuis* answers very surprisingly to  $\text{𐬔𐬀𐬌𐬯𐬭𐬀𐬌𐬯𐬭𐬀}$  *daēvāis*, देवैस् *dēvāis*. Moreover, in many other parts of grammar, also, the Lithuanian *ú* corresponds to the Sanscrit ऋ *á*; *e. g.* in the plural genitive. In feminine *a* bases, also, in Lithuanian, the vowel of the base is melted down with that of the termination, but its quality is not changed; as, *e. g.* *ranká*, “*manu*,” from *RANKĀ*. In all other bases *mi* stands as termination, to which the plural instrumental termination *mis* has the same relation as, in Latin, *bis* to *bi* (*coBIS*, *tiBI*); and, according to §. 63., I do not doubt that in both numbers the *m* has arisen from *b*.

163. The bases given in §. 148. form, in the instrumental and in the Gothic, in the dative;

	SANSKRIT.	ZEND.	LITHUANIAN.	GOthic.
m.	<i>vrikē-n-a</i> ,	<i>vēhrka</i> ,	<i>wilkù</i> ,	<i>vulfa</i> .
f.	<i>jihvay-ā</i> ,	<i>hizvay-a</i> ,	<i>ranká</i> ,	<i>gibai</i> .
m.	<i>paty-ā</i> ,	<i>paithy-a</i> ,	<i>pati-mi</i> ,	<i>gast'-a</i> .

long, even not to notice its derivation from a short *a*; for, first, it appears, according to Notker, in the pronominal forms *diu*, &c. without a circumflex (other instrumentals of the kind do not occur in his works); secondly, like the short *a*, it is exchanged for *o* (§. 77.); hence, *wio*, *wēo*, with *wiu*, *wio-lih*, *huō-lih*, “*qualis*” (properly, “similar to whom”); thirdly, the length of this *u* cannot be deduced from the Gothic forms *thē*, *hvē*, *svē*, because these, in all probability, owe the retention of their long vowel to their being monosyllabic (cf. §. 137.).

	SANSKRIT.	ZEND.	LITHUANIAN.	GOTHIC.
f.	<i>prīty-ā,</i>	<i>āfrīthy-a,</i>	<i>awi-mi,</i>	<i>anstai.</i>
f.	<i>bhavishyanty-ā,</i>	<i>būshyainty-a,</i>	. . . .	. . . .
m.	<i>sūnu-n-ā,</i>	<i>paśv-a,</i>	<i>sunu-mi,</i>	<i>sunau.</i>
f.	<i>tanv-ā,</i>	<i>tanv-a,</i>	. . . .	<i>handau.</i>
f.	<i>vadhv-ā,</i>	. . . .	. . . .	. . . .
m. f.	<i>gav-ā,</i>	<i>gav-a,</i>	. . . .	. . . .
f.	<i>nāv-ā,</i>	. . . .	. . . .	. . . .
f.	<i>vāch-ā,</i>	<i>vāch-a,</i>	. . . .	. . . .
m.	<i>bharat-ā,</i>	<i>barēnt-a,</i>	. . . .	<i>fijand.</i>
m.	<i>ātman-ā,</i>	<i>aśman-a,</i>	. . . .	<i>aħmin.</i>
n.	<i>nāmn-ā,</i>	<i>nāman-a,</i>	. . . .	<i>namin.</i>
m.	<i>bhrātr-ā,</i>	<i>brātħr-a,</i>	. . . .	<i>brōtħr.</i>
f.	<i>duhitr-ā,</i>	<i>dugdhĥēr-a,</i>	. . . .	<i>dauħtr.</i>
m.	<i>dātr-ā,</i>	<i>dātħr-a,</i>	. . . .	. . . .
n.	<i>vachas-ā,</i>	<i>vacanħ-a,</i>	. . . .	. . . .

164. In Sanscrit and Zend, *é* is the sign of the dative, which, I have scarce any doubt, originally belongs to the demonstrative base *é*, whence the nom. *अयम्* *ayam* (from *é + am*), "this"; which, however, as it appears, is itself only an extension of the base *अ* *a*, from which arise most of the cases of this pronoun (*a-smái*, *a-smát*, *a-smín*, &c.); and regarding which it is to be observed, that the common *a* bases, also, in Sanscrit in many cases extend this vowel to *é* by the admixture of an *i* (§. 2). The dative sign consequently would, in its origin, be most intimately connected with the case, which, as (§. 160.) was explained, denotes, in German, both the dative and instrumental relation, and occurs in Zend also with a dative signification.\*

\* *E. g.* Vend. S. p. 45: *ḥaômô azizânâitibis dadhâiti csaitô-puthrim*, “Hôm gives a splendid daughter to those who have not had offspring.” The lithographed Codex, however, gives the form *azizânâitibis* as three words,

**𐌰𐍂𐌹𐌳𐌰𐌽𐌴𐌸𐌰𐌿𐌲𐌰** *axi zānāiti bis*. Such separations in the middle of a word are, however, in this Codex, quite common. I entertain no doubt of the correctness of the length of the *a*, both of *zā* and *nāi*; and I anticipate a variety *axizanaitibis* or —*bis*. Probably also *csaētō* is to be read for *csaitō*. Anquetil translates: “O Hom, donnez à la femme, qui n’a pas encore engendré, beaucoup d’enfans brillans.” We will return to this passage hereafter; and we will here further remark that, at the same page of the Vend. S., the instr. **𐌰𐍂𐌹𐌳𐌰𐌽𐌴𐌸𐌰𐌿𐌲𐌰** *aēbis* also occurs in the sense of “to them.”

**𐌰𐍂𐌹𐌳𐌰𐌽𐌿𐌸𐌴𐌹𐌺𐌰𐌻𐌰𐌽𐌰𐌼𐌰𐌽** *axi zānāiti bis*. Such separations in the middle of a word are, however, in this Codex, quite common. I entertain no doubt of the correctness of the length of the *a*, both of *zā* and *nāi*; and I anticipate a variety *axizanaitibis* or —*bis*. Probably also *csaētō* is to be read for *csaitō*. Anquetil translates: “O Hom, donnez à la femme, qui n’a pas encore engendré, beaucoup d’enfans brillans.” We will return to this passage hereafter; and we will here further remark that, at the same page of the Vend. S., the instr. **𐌰𐍂𐌹𐌳𐌰𐌽𐌿𐌸𐌴𐌹𐌺𐌰𐌻𐌰𐌽𐌰𐌼𐌰𐌽** *aēbis* also occurs in the sense of “to them.”

writing.\* Bases in *u* may take Guna; e.g.  $\text{𐬵𐬀𐬶𐬭𐬀}$  *vanhav-é* from  $\text{𐬵𐬀𐬶𐬭𐬀}$  *vanhu*, "pure"; or not, as  $\text{𐬵𐬀𐬶𐬭𐬀}$  *rathv-é* from  $\text{𐬵𐬀𐬶𐬭𐬀}$  *ratu*, "great," "lord." The form without Guna is the more common. A euphonic  $\text{𐬵𐬀}$  *y* also is found interposed between the base and the termination (§. 43.), e.g.  $\text{𐬵𐬀𐬶𐬭𐬀𐬵𐬀}$  *tanu-y-é*, "corpori."

165. Bases in  $\text{𐬵𐬀}$  *a* add to the case-sign  $\text{𐬵𐬀}$  *é* also an  $\text{𐬵𐬀}$  *a*; but from  $\text{𐬵𐬀}$  *é* ( $=a + i$ ) and *a* is formed  $\text{𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀}$  *aya*; and this, with the *a* of the base, gives *āya*, thus  $\text{𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀}$  *vrikāya*. Hence may have arisen, by suppressing the final *a*, the Zendian  $\text{𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀}$  *vēhrkāi*, after which the preceding semi-vowel must return to its vowel nature. It might, however, be assumed, that the Zend has never added an *a* to the dative  $\text{𐬵𐬀}$  *é*, and that this is a later appearance in Sanscrit, which arose after the division of languages; for from  $a + é$  is formed, quite regularly, *āi* (§. 2.). The Sanscrit forms also, from the particle  $\text{𐬵𐬀}$  *sma*, which is added to pronouns of the 3d person, the dative  $\text{𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀}$  *smāi*; and thus, e.g.  $\text{𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀}$  *kasmāi*, "to whom"? answers to the Zend  $\text{𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀}$  *kahmāi*. The Sanscrit, in this case, abstains from adding the  $\text{𐬵𐬀}$  *a*, which is elsewhere appended to the dative  $\text{𐬵𐬀}$  *é*; since  $\text{𐬵𐬀}$  *sma*, already encumbered with the preceding principal pronoun, cannot admit any superfluity in its termination, and for this reason gives up its radical  $\text{𐬵𐬀}$  *a* before the termination  $\text{𐬵𐬀}$  *in* in the locative case also, and forms *sm'-in* for *smén*.

166. The particle  $\text{𐬵𐬀}$  *sma*, mentioned in the preceding section, which introduces itself between the base and the termination, not only in the singular, but (and this, in fact, occurs in pronouns of the two first persons) in the plural also, if not separated from both—as I have first attempted to show

---

\*  $\text{𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀}$  *ûfrîte* is undoubtedly incorrect: however,  $\text{𐬵𐬀}$  *e* is often found erroneously for  $\text{𐬵𐬀}$  *e* in other forms also.

in my Sanscrit Grammar—gives to the pronominal declension the appearance of greater peculiarity than it in fact possesses. As this particle recurs also in the kindred European languages, and there, as I have already elsewhere partly shewn, solves several enigmas of declension, we will therefore here, at its first appearance, pursue all its modifications and corruptions, as far as it is possible. In Zend, *sma*, according to §. 53., has been changed to *hma*; and also in Prakrit and Pali, in the plural of the two first persons, the *s* has become *h*, and besides, by transposition of the two consonants, the syllable *hma* has been altered to *mha*; e.g. Prakrit *अम्हे amhê*, “we” (ἄμμες), Pali *अम्हाकम् amhâkam*, Zend *𐬀𐬵𐬯𐬀𐬭𐬀 ahmâkēm*, ἡμῶν. From the Prakrit-Pali *mha* we arrive at the Gothic *nsa* in *u-nsa-ra*, ἡμῶν, *u-nsi-s*,\* “nobis,” “nos.” In that the Gothic has left the sibilant unaltered, it stands on an older footing than the Pali and Prakrit; and on the other hand, by the change of *m* into *n*, for more facile combination with the following *s*, it rests on a more modern stage. We cannot, therefore, any longer assume the *ns* of *uns*, “nos,” to be the common accusative termination, as we have formerly done in unison with Grimm†—cf. *vulfa-ns*, *gasti-ns*, *sunu-ns*—and thence allow it, as though it had become a property of the base, to enter into some other cases, and connect it with new case-terminations. To this is opposed, also, the 2d person, where *ixvis* (*i-xvi-s*) stands in the accusative, and yet in essentials the two persons are identical in their declension; *uns*, “nobis,” “nos,” stands, therefore, for *unsi-s* (from *unsa-s*), and this has *s* as the case-suffix, and *u-nsa* (weakened from *u-nsi*) as the compound base. And we

---

\* The *a* being changed into *i*, according to r. 67.

† I. 813. “*unsara* appears to be derived from the accusative *uns*, as also the dative *unsi-s*, which, with *ixwis*, preserves a parallel sound to the dative singular.” Cf. I. 813. 34.



cannot, also, any longer regard the *u* of *unsa-ra*, “*nostri*,” &c. as the vocalized *v* of *veis*, “*we*,” although the *i* of *izvara*, “*vestri*,” &c. can be nothing else than the vocalized *y* of *yus*, “*your*”; for in Sanscrit, also, the syllable यु *yu* of *yūyam*, “*your*,” (§. 43.) goes through all the oblique cases, while in the 1st person the व् *v* of वयम् *vayam*, “*we*,” is limited to the nominative, but the oblique cases combine a base अ *a* with the particle स्मा *sma*. This *a*, then, in Gothic, through the influence of the following liquid, has become *u*; hence, *unsa-ra*, &c. for *ans-ara* (§. 66.).

167. As in Zend, the Sanscrit possessive स्मा *sma* shews itself\* in very different forms in juxta-position with different letters, so I believe I can point out the particle स्मा *sma* in Gothic at least under four forms; namely, as *nsa*, *zva*, *gka*, and *mma*. The first has been already discussed; the second—*zva*, and in a weakened form *zvi*—occurs in the pronoun of the 2d person, in the place where the 1st has *nsa* (*nsi*); and while in the kindred Asiatic languages (Sanskrit, Zend, Pali, Prakrit), as also in Greek and Lithuanian, the two pronouns run quite parallel in the plural, since they both exhibit the interposed particle under discussion, either in its original form, or similarly modified, in Gothic a discrepancy has arisen between the two persons, in that the syllable *sma* has in them been doubly transformed. The form *zva* from *sma* rests, first, on the not surprising change of the *s* into *z* (§. 86. 5.); secondly, on the very common change of *m* and *v* (§. 63.).

168. From the Gothic downwards, the particle *sma* has been still further corrupted in the German dialects, in the pronoun of the 2d person, by the expulsion of the sibilant. The Old High German *i-ma-r* has nearly the same relation to the Gothic *i-zva-ra* that the Homeric genitive τοῖο has

---

\* See Ann. of Lit. Crit. March 1831, p. 376, &c.

to the Sanscrit तस्य *tasya*, which is older than the Homeric form. Compare, without intervention of the Gothic, the Old High German *i-ma-r*, *i-u*, *i-mi-h*, with the Sanscrit *yu-shmā-kam*, *yu-shma-byam*, *yu-shmā-n*, and with the Lithuanian *yù-sù*, *yù-mus*, *yù-s*: thus it would be regarded as settled, that the *m* or *u* belongs to the base, but is not the corrupted remainder of a far-extended intermediate pronoun; and it would be incorrect to divide *im-ar*, *im-ih*, *iu*, for *i-ma-r*, &c. I, too, formerly entertained that erroneous opinion. A repeated examination, and the enlarged views since then obtained through the Zend, Prakrit, and Pali, leave me thoroughly convinced, that the Gothic intermediate syllable *zva* has not been lost in High German, but that one portion of it has been preserved even to our time (*e-ue-r* from *i-zva-ra*, *e-u-ch* from *i-zvi-s*, Old High German *i-mi-h*): on the other hand, the *u* of the base *yu* (यु *yu*), as in Gothic so also in the oldest form of the High German, is rejected in the oblique cases, both in the plural and in the dual\*; and the Gothic *i-zva-ra*, Old High German *i-ma-r*, &c. stand for *ju-zva-ra*, *ju-ma-r*. The Old Saxon, however, and Anglo-Saxon, like the Lithuanian, shew themselves, in respect to the preservation of the base, more complete than the Gothic, and carry the *u*, which in Anglo-Saxon has become *o*, through all the oblique cases: *iu-we-r*, *ëo-ve-r*, “*vestri*,” &c. If merely the two historical extremes of the forms here under discussion—the Sanscrit and New German forms—be contrasted with one another, the assertion must appear very paradoxical, that *euer* and युष्माकम् *yushmākam* are connected, and, indeed, in such wise, that the *u* of *euer* has nothing

---

\* So much the more remarkable is the *u*, which is still retained in the North-Friesian dialect (Grimm, p. 814), where, e.g. *yu-nke-r*, *yu-nk*, in regard to the base, distinguishes itself advantageously from the Gothic *i-gqva-ra*, *i-nqvi-s*.

in common with the *u* of यु *yu*, but finds its origin in the *m* of the syllable स्म *sma*.

169. The distinction of the dual and plural in the oblique cases of the two first persons is not organic in German; for the two plural numbers are distinguished originally only by the case-terminations. These, however, in our pronouns are, in Gothic, the same; and the difference between the two plural numbers appears to lie in the base—*ugka-ra*,\* *νῶiv*, *unsa-ra*, *ῥμῶν*, *igqva-ra*, *σφῶiv*, *izva-ra* *ῥμῶν*. But from a more close analysis of the forms in the two plural numbers, and from the light afforded us by the kindred Asiatic languages, it appears that the proper base is also identical in the two plural numbers; and it is only the particle *sma* combined with it which has become doubly corrupted, and then the one form has become fixed in the dual, the other in the plural. The former comes nearest to the Prakrit-Pali form म्हा *mha*, and between *u-nsa-ra* and *u-gka-ra* (= *u-nka-ra*) an intervening *u-nha-ra* or *u-mha-ra* must be assumed. At least I do not think that the old *s* became *k* at one spring, but that the latter is a hardened form of an earlier *h*, which has remained in the Prakrit and Pali, as in the singular nominative the *k* of *ik* has been developed from the *h* of अहम् *aham*. The second person gives, in Gothic, *qv* (= *kv* §. 86. 1.) for *k*, while the other dialects leave the guttural the same form in both persons: Old High German, *u-ncha-r*, *i-ncha-r*; Old Slavonic, *u-nke-r*, *i-nke-r*; Anglo-Saxon, *u-nce-r*, *i-nce-r*. It would consequently appear proved that the dual and plural of the two first persons are not organically or originally different, but belong, as distortions and mutilations of different kinds, to one and the same original form; and that therefore these two pronouns have preserved the old dual just as little as

---

\* It must not be overlooked, that here *g* before *k* only represents the nasal answering to *k* (86. 1.).

the other pronouns and all substantive and adjective declensions.

170. The fourth form in which स्मा *sma* appears in Gothic is that which I first remarked, and which I have brought forward already in the "Annals of Oriental Literature" (p. 16.). What I have there said, that the datives singular, like *thamma*, *imma*, have arisen, by assimilation, from *tha-sma*, *i-sma*, I have since found remarkably confirmed by the Grammar of the Old Prussian published by Vater, a language which is nearly connected with the Lithuanian and Gothic, since here all pronouns of the third person have *smu* in the dative. Compare, e.g. *antar-smu* with the Gothic *anthara-mma*, "to the other": *ka-smu* with the Gothic *hva-mma*, "to whom?" We have also shewn in Greek, since then, a remnant of the appended pronoun स्मा *sma* similar to the Gothic, and which rests on assimilation, since we deduced the Æolic forms ἄ-μμ-ες, ὕ-μμ-ες, &c., from ἄ-σμε-ες, ὕ-σμε-ες, to which the common forms ἡμεῖς, ὑμεῖς, have the same relation that the Old High German *de-mu* has to the Gothic *tha-mma*, only that ἡμεῖς, ὑμεῖς, in respect to the termination εῖς, are more perfect than the Æolic forms, since they have not lost the vowel of the particle σμε, but have contracted με-ες to μεῖς.

171. The Gothic datives in *mma* are, as follows from §. 160., by origin, instrumentals,\* although the particle *sma* in Sanscrit has not made its way into these cases, and e.g. तेन *tēna*, "through him," not *tasmēna*, or, according to the Zend principle (§. 158.), *tasma* (for *tasmā*), is used; — I say, according to the Zend principle; for though in this

---

\* The difference between the forms *thē*, *hvē*, explained at §. 159., and the datives *tha-mma*, *hva-mma*, consists first in this, that the latter express the case relation by the affixed particle, the former in the main base; secondly, in this, that *thamma*, *hvamma*, for *thammē*, *hvammē*, on account of their being polysyllabic, have not preserved the original length of the termination (cf. §. 137.).

language *hma* has entered into the instrumental masculine and neuter, this case in the base *ta* could only be 𐬔𐬀𐬭𐬀 *tahma* or 𐬔𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀 *tahmā* (from *ta-hma-ā*). In the feminine, as we can sufficiently prove, the appended pronoun really occurs in the instrumental; and while *e.g.* from the masculine neuter base 𐬀𐬭𐬀 *ana* “this” (m.), “this” (n.), we have found the instrumental of the same sound 𐬀𐬭𐬀 *ana* not *anahma*, from the demonstrative base 𐬀 *a* occurs rather often the feminine instrumental 𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀 *ahmy-a*, from the fem. base 𐬀𐬭𐬀 *ahmī*, increased by the appended pronoun.

172. The Sanscrit appended pronoun स्म *sma* should, in the feminine, form either स्मā *smā* or स्मī *smī*: on the latter is based the Zend form 𐬔𐬭𐬀 *hmī* mentioned at §. 171. But in Sanscrit the feminine form स्मī *smī* has been preserved only in such a mutilated condition,\* that before my acquaintance with the Zend I could not recognise it. From *ta-smī* must come the dative *ta-smy-āi*, the gen. and ablative *ta-smy-ās*, and the locative *ta-smy-ām*. These forms, by rejecting the *m*, have become abbreviated to तस्यै *ta-sy-āi*, तस्यास् *ta-sy-ās*, तस्याम् *ta-sy-ām*; and the same is the case with the feminine pronoun *smī* in all similar compounds; so that the forms mentioned appear to have proceeded from the masculine neuter genitive *tasya*, by the annexation of new case-terminations. This opinion was the more to be relied on, that in Gothic, also, the feminine forms

---

\* The Zend, too, has not everywhere so fully preserved the feminine *hmī*, as in the instr. *a-hmy-a*; but in the genitive, dative, and ablative has gone even farther than the Sanscrit in the demolition of this word, and has therein rejected not only the *m* but also the *i*. The feminine 𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀 *a-ṇh-āo* (§. 56\*), “*hujus*,” for *a-hmy-āo*, often occurs; and for it also 𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀 *aiṇh-āo*, in which the *i* is, to use the expression, a reflection of the lost 𐬀𐬭𐬀 *y* (§. 41.). From another demonstrative base we find the dative 𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀 *ava-ṇh-āi*, and more than once the ablative 𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀 *ava-ṇh-āt* for *ava-hmy-āi*, *avu-hmy-āt*.

*thi-zô-s*, “*hujus*,” *thi-zai*, “*huic*,” might be deduced from the masculine genitive *this*, by the addition of the terminations *ô-s* and *ai*; and as, too, in Lithuanian, the whole of the oblique cases singular of the 1st and 2d person stand in close connection with the Sanscrit-Zend genitives मम *mama*, मया *mana*, तवा *tava*, त्वया *tava*, and have the same as base. After discovering the Zend feminine pronominal forms in *hmy-a* in the instrumental and locative—in the latter for *hmy-anim*—the above-mentioned forms in Sanscrit cannot be regarded otherwise than as abbreviations of *ta-smi-di*, &c., as this is far more suited to the nature of the thing. The Gothic forms then, also, *thizô-s*, *thizai*, will be regarded as abbreviated, and must be divided into *thi-zô-s*, *thi-zai*. The masculine neuter appended pronoun *sma* must, for instance, in Gothic give the feminine base  $SM\bar{O}$  = स्मा *smā*, as  $BLIND\bar{O}$ , nom. *blinda*, “*cæca*,” from  $BLINDA$ , m. n. (nom. *blind'-s*, *blinda-ta*),  $SM\bar{O}$ , however, by the loss of the *m*, as experienced by the Sanscrit in the feminine, has become  $S\bar{O}$ ; but the *s*, on account of its position between two vowels (according to §. 86. 5.), has become *z*. Therefore, *thi-zô-s* has only *s* as case-sign, and the dative *thi-zai*, like *gibai* in §. 161., is without case character. With the masculine neuter genitive *thi-s*, therefore, *thi-zô-s*, *thi-zai*, have nothing in common but the demonstrative theme  $THA$ , and the weakening of its *a* to *i* (§. 66.).

173. Gothic adjective bases in *a* (Grimm's strong adjectives) which follow the pronominal declension, differ from it, however, in this point, that they do not weaken the final *a* of the base before the appended pronoun to *i*, but extend it to *ai*, and form the feminine dative from the simple theme, according to the analogy of the substantives:\* hence *blindai-zô-s*, *blindai*, not *blindi-zô-s*, *blindi-zai*.

---

\* With respect to the extension of the *a* to *ai*, compare the gen. pl. and Sanscrit forms, as *tē-bhyas*, *ūs*, *tēshām*, “*eorum*,” for *ta-bhyas*, *ta-sām*.

174. The Zend introduces our pronominal syllable *sma* in the form of *hma* also into the second, and probably into the first person too: we find repeatedly, in the locative, *𐬔𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬎𐬭𐬀* *thma-hm'-i* instead of the Sanscrit *तव्यि tvay-i*, and hence deduce, in the 1st person, *ma-him'-i*, which we cannot quote as occurring. The Prakrit, in this respect, follows the analogy of the Zend; and in the 2d person gives the form *तुमस्मि tuma-sm'-i*, "in thee," or, with assimilation, *तुमम्मि tumammi*, with *तुमे tumê* (from *tuma-i*) and *तइ tai*; and *ममस्मि mama-sm'-i* or *ममम्मि mama-mmi*, "in me," together with the simple *मए maê* and *मइ mai*.\* Ought not, therefore, in German also, in the singular of the two first persons, a remnant of the pronominal syllable *sma* to be looked for? The *s* in the Gothic *mi-s*, "to me," *thu-s*, "to thee," and *si-s*, "to himself," appears to me in no other way intelligible; for in our Indo-European family of languages there exists no *s* as the suffix of the instrumental or dative. Of similar origin is the *s* in the plural *u-nsi-s*, "*nobis*," "*nos*," *i-zvi-s*, "*vobis*," "*vos*"; and its appearance in two otherwise differently denoted cases cannot therefore be surprising, because this *s* is neither the dative nor accusative character, but belongs to a syllable, which could be declined through all cases, but is here deprived of all case-sign. In *u-nsi-s*, *i-zvi-s*, therefore, the Sanscrit *स्म sma* is doubly contained, once as the base, and next as the apparent case-suffix. I am inclined, also, to affirm of the above-mentioned Prakrit forms, *tu-ma-sm'i*, "in thee," and *ma-ma-sm'i*, "in me," that they doubly contain the pronominal syllable *sma*, and that the middle syllable has dropped a preceding *s*. For there is no more favourite and facile combination in our class of languages than of a pronoun with a pronoun; and what is omitted by one dialect in this respect is often afterwards supplied by another more modern dialect.

---

\* See *Essai sur le Pali*, by E. Burnouf and Lassen, pp. 173. 175.

175. The *k* in the Gothic accusatives *mi-k*, *thu-k*, *si-k* (*me*, *te*, *se*), can be deduced, as above, in *u-gka-ra*, *vôiv*, &c. from *s* by the hardening of an intervening *h*; so that *mi-s* is altered to *mi-h*, and thence to *mi-k*; and therefore, in the singular, as also in the plural, the dative and accusative of the two first persons are, in their origin, identical. In Old High German and Anglo-Saxon our particle appears in the accusative singular and plural in the same form: Old High German *mi-h*, "me," *di-h*, "thee," *u-nsi-h*, "us," *i-mi-h*, "you"; Anglo-Saxon *me-c*, "me," *u-si-c*, "us," *the-c*, "thee," *eo-vi-c*, "you": on the other hand, in the dative singular the old *s* of the syllable *sma* has become *r* in the High German, but has disappeared in the Old Saxon and Anglo-Saxon: Old High German *mi-r*, *di-r*; Old Saxon *mi*, *thi*; Anglo-Saxon *me*, *the*.

176. In Lithuanian *smā* appears in the same form as in the middle of the above (§. 174.) mentioned Prakrit forms; namely, with *s* dropped, as *ma*; and indeed, first, in the dative and locative sing. of the pronouns of the 3d person and adjectives; and, secondly, in the genitive dual of the two first persons: we cannot, however, refer to this the *m*, which the latter in some cases have in common with the substantive declension. The pronominal base *TA*, and the adjective base *GERA*, form, in the dative, *tá-mui*, "to thee," *gerá-mui*, "to the good" (shortened *tám*, *gerám*), and in the locative *ta-mê*, *gera-mè*; and if *-mui* and *-mè* are compared with the corresponding cases of the substantive *a* bases, it is easily seen that *mui* and *mè* have sprung from *ma*. The pronouns of the two first persons form, in the genitive dual, *mu-mû*, *yu-mû*, according to the analogy of *ponû*, "of the two lords."\*

---

\* We have a remnant of a more perfect form of the particle *smā* in the locative interrogative form *ka-mmè*, "where?" Sansc. कस्मिन् *ka-smin*,  
"in



177. Lithuanian substantives have *i* for the dative character, but *i* bases have *ei*\*; a final *a* before this *i* passes into *u*; hence *wilku-i*. Although we must refuse a place in the locative to the dative *i* of the Greek and Latin, still this Lithuanian dative character appears connected with the Indo-Zend *é*, so that only the last element of this diphthong, which has grown out of *a + i*, has been left. For the Lithuanian has, besides the dative, also a real locative, which, indeed, in the *a* bases corresponds exactly with the Sanscrit and Zend.

178. The nominal bases, Sanscrit, Zend, and Lithuanian, explained at §. 148., excepting the neuters ending with a vowel and pronouns, to the full declension of which we shall return hereafter, form in the dative :

	SANSKRIT.	ZEND.	LITHUANIAN.
m.	<i>vṛikāya,</i>	<i>vēhrkāi,</i>	<i>wilku-i.</i>
f.	<i>jihvāy-āi,</i>	<i>hizvay-āi,</i>	<i>ranka-i.</i>
m.	<i>paty-é,†</i>	<i>paite-é ? †</i>	<i>pách-ei.</i>
f.	<i>prīṭay-é,</i>	<i>āfrīte-é,</i>	<i>āwi-ei.</i>
f.	<i>bhavishyanty-āi,</i>	<i>búshyainty-āi,</i>	. . . .
m.	<i>sūnav-é,</i>	<i>paśv-é,</i>	<i>sunu-i.</i>

“in whom,” which, according to the common declension, would be कस्मै *kasmé* (from *kasma-i*). Compare the Gothic *hvamma*, “to whom,” for *hvasma*.

\* The form *āwini*, with *āwiei* appears to admit of being explained as arising from the commixture of the final vowel of the *a* bases.

† The form पत्ये *patyé* is, with respect to its want of Guna, irregular, and should be पतये *patayé*.

‡ In combination with चा *cha* we find in V. S., p. 473, पाथ्येचा *paithyé-cha*, and hence deduce for the instrumental (p. 193) the form *paithya*, while, according to §. 47., also *paitya* might be expected. From ह्यस्य *haci*, “friend,” I find in V. S., p. 162, the instrumental ह्यस्य *hacaya* with Guna, after the analogy of the बस्य *bāzava*, mentioned at §. 160.



## ABLATIVE.

179. The Ablative in Sanscrit has ण् *t* for its character, regarding the origin of which there can no longer be any uncertainty, as soon as the influence of pronouns on the formation of cases has been recognised, as we are conducted at once to the demonstrative base *ta*, which already, in the neuter, nominative, and accusative, has assumed the nature of a case-sign, and which we shall subsequently, under the verb, see receiving the function of a personal termination. This ablative character, however, has remained only in bases in ऋ *a*, which is lengthened before it; a circumstance that induced the Indian Grammarians, who have been followed by the English, to represent ऋण् *āt* as the ablative termination. It would therefore be to be assumed, that in वृक् ण् *vrikāt* the *a* of the base has been melted down with the *ā* of the termination.\*

180. M. E. Burnouf† has been the first to bring home the ablative character to a class of words which had lost it in Sanscrit, and whence it can be satisfactorily inferred that a simple *t*, and not *āt*, is the true ablative character. We mean the declension in *u*, of which hereafter. As regards bases in *a*, which in Sanscrit alone have preserved

---

\* I have drawn attention already, in the first (German) edition of my Sanscrit Grammar, to the arbitrary and unfounded nature of this assumption (§§. 156 and 264.); and I have deduced from the ablatives of the pronouns of the two first persons (*mat*, *tvat*) that either *at* with short *a*, or, more correctly, a simple *t*, must be regarded as the ablative termination. This view I supported in the Latin edition of my Grammar, on the ground that in old Latin also a simple *d* appears as the suffix of the ablative. But since then the justness of my opinion regarding the Sanscrit ablative has been still more emphatically confirmed by the Zend language, because the Zend stands in a closer and more evident connection with the Sanscrit than does the Latin.

† Nouveau Journal Asiatique 1829, tom. III. 311.



by the Sanscrit form **अब्रोत्** *abrót*, for which the irregular form **अब्रवीत्** *ubrav-it* is used ; and secondly, it answers to the 1st pers. *mraōm* (V. S. p. 123.) ; thirdly, the Sanscrit **ओ** *ó*, is in Zend, never represented by **𐬀** *ao*, but by **𐬁** *ó*, before which, according to §. 28., another *a* is placed, hence **𐬁𐬀** *aó*: on the other hand, **𐬀** *ao* represents *u*, in accordance with §. 32. and §. 28. If, then, **𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀** *pašu* formed in the ablative **𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀** *paśaot*, this would conduct us to a Sanscrit **पशूत्** *paśú-t*; while from the ablatives **𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀** *āfritói-t*, **𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀** *zaratustrói-t*, **𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀** *garói-t*, and from the analogy, in other respects, with the genitive, the Guna form **पशोत्** *paśó-t* must be deduced. Moreover, in the Vend. S. the ablative form **𐬀𐬀𐬀** *aó-t* actually occurs; for at p. 102. (**𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀** *hacha vanheaó-t mananh-at*, “from pure spirit”) occurs *vanheaót*, the ablative of *vanhu*; and the *e* preceding the *a* is an error in orthography, and *vanhaót* is the form intended: p. 245. occurs **𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀** *anhaót*, “*mundo*,” from *anhu*.

\* Gramm. Crit. §. 640. ann. 2.



181. The Old Roman corresponds with the Zend in regard to the designation of the ablative; and in those two memorials of the language, that on the *Columna rostrata*, and the *S. C. de Bacchanalibus*, which are the most important inscriptions that remain, all ablatives end with *d*; so that it is surprising that the ablative force of this letter could be overlooked, and that the empty name of a paragogic *d* could be held satisfactory. Bases ending with a consonant use *ed* as ablative suffix, as in the accusative they have *em* instead of a simple *m*: hence, forms like *præsent-ed*, *dictator-ed*, answer to the Zend *śabchant-at*, *āhr-at* (*lucente igne*); while *navale-d*,\* *præda-d*, *inalto-d*, *mari-d*, *senatu-d*, like the above-mentioned Zend forms *garōi-t*, “*monte*,” *tanaθ-t*, “*corpore*,” &c.; and in Sanscrit *vrikā-t*, “*lupo*,” have a simple *T* sound to denote the ablative. The Oscan also takes the ablative sign *d* through all declensions, as appears from the remarkable inscription of Bantia, e.g. *dolu-d*, *mallu-d*, *cum preivatu-d*, *touta-d*, *præsenti-d*.† It may be preliminarily observed, that, in the 3d person of the imperative, old Latin and Oscan forms like *es-tod*, *es-tud*—for *es-to*, and therefore with a double designation of person—correspond remarkably to similar Vêda forms with which we are hitherto acquainted only from Pânini; e.g. *jīva-tāt*, which signifies both “*vivat*” and “*vive*,” but in the latter sense is probably only an error in the use of the language (cf. *vivito* as 3d and 2d person).

182. In classical Latinity a kind of petrified ablative form appears to be contained in the appended pronoun *met*, which may be transferred from the 1st person to the others also, and answers to the Sanscrit ablative *mat*, “*from me*.” But it is possible, also, that *met* may have

\* The *e* here belongs to the base, which alternates between *e* and *i*.

† See O. Müller's *Etruscans*, p. 36.

dropped an initial *s*, and may stand for *smet*, and so belong to the appended pronoun स्म *sma*, explained in §. 165. &c., corresponding with its ablative *smât*, to which it stands in the same relation that *memor* (for *mesmor*) does to स्मृ *smṛi*—from *smar*, §. 1.—“to remember.” The combination of this syllable, then, with pronouns of the three persons, would require no excuse, for स्म *sma*, as has been shewn, unites itself to all persons, though it must itself be regarded as a pronoun of the 3d person.\* The conjunction *sed*, too, is certainly nothing but the ablative of the reflexive; and *sed* occurs twice in the *S. C. de Bacch.* as an evident pronoun, and, in fact, governed by *inter*; whence it may be assumed that *inter* can be used in construction with the ablative, or also that, in the old languages, the accusative is the same with the ablative; the latter view is confirmed by the accusative use of *ted* and *med* in Plautus.

183. In Sanscrit the ablative expresses distance from a place, the relation “whence;” and this is the true, original destination of this case, to which the Latin remained constant in the names of towns. From the relation “whence,” however, the ablative is, in Sanscrit, transferred to the causal relation also; since that on account of which any thing is done is regarded as the place whence an action proceeds. In this manner the confines of the ablative and instrumental touch one another, and तेन *tēna* (§. 158.) and तस्मात् *tasmât*, may both express “on account of which.” In adverbial use the ablative spreads still further, and in some words denotes relations, which are otherwise foreign to the ablative. In Greek, adverbs in  $\omega\varsigma$  may be looked upon as sister forms of the Sanscrit ablative; so that  $\omega\varsigma$ , from bases in *o*, would have the same relation to the Sanscrit

---

\* The reduplication in *me-mor*, from *me-smor*, would be of the kind used in Sanscrit, e. g. *pasparśa*, “he touched,” of which hereafter.





## THE GENITIVE.

184. In no case do the different members of the Sanscrit family of languages agree so fully as in the genitive singular; only that in Latin the two first declensions, together with the fifth, as well as the two first persons of the pronouns, have lost their old termination, and have replaced it by that of the old locative. The Sanscrit terminations of the genitive are स् *s*, स्य *sya*, अस् *as*, and आस् *ās*: the three first are common to the three genders: *as* is

---

member has a genuine ablative meaning; and as the division ἀφρο-δίτη admits of no satisfactory explanation, one may rest satisfied with ἀφροδ-ίτη. In Sanscrit, अभ्रादिता *abhrāditā* would mean "the female who proceeded from a cloud," for *abhrā-t* must become *abhrād* before *itā* (§. 93<sup>1</sup>); and in neuter verbs the otherwise passive participial-suffix *ta* has usually a past active meaning. Of this usage *ιτη*, in *αφροδ-ίτη*, might be a remnant, and this compound might mean, therefore, "She who arose, who sprang, from foam." The only difficulty here is the short vowel of *οδ* for *ωδ*. As regards the Sanscrit, here also the *s* of the ablative may in most declensions rest on an exchange with an older *t* (cf. p. 185. Rem.); and, as the Zend gives us every reason to expect Sanscrit ablatives like *jihvāy-āt*, *prîtē-t*, *sûnô-t*, *bhavishyanty-āt*, *âtman-at*; so it will be most natural to refer the existing forms *jihvāy-ās*, *prîtē-s*, &c., where they have an ablative meaning, to the exchange of *t* with *s*, which is more or less in vogue according to the variety of dialects; particularly as it is known, also that, *vice versâ*, according to certain laws, स् *s* passes into त् *t* (Gramm. Crit. §. 100.) Consequently the identity between the genitive and ablative, in most declensions, would be only external, and the two cases would vary in their history; so that, *e.g.* *jihvāy-ās* would be, in one sense, viz in that of *linguæ*, independent and original; and in another, that of *linguâ*, a corruption of *jihvāy-ât*. At the time when Sanscrit and Zend were separated from one another, the retention of the original *t* must have been the prevailing inclination, and, together with it, may also its change into *s* have arisen, as the Zend also uses, at times, the genitive form with an ablative meaning (*e.g.* Vend. S. p. 177.).

principally confined to the consonant bases,\* and hence has the same relation to *s* that, in the accusative, *am* has to *m*, and, in the Zend ablative, *at* has to *t*.

185. Before the genitive sign स् *s* the vowels इ *i* and उ *u* take Guna; and the Zend, and in a more limited degree, also, the Lithuanian and Gothic, share this augment. All *u* bases, for example, in Lithuanian and Gothic, prefix an *a* to their final vowel: hence the Lithuanian *sunau-s* and Gothic *sunau-s* correspond to the Sanscrit सूनोस् *súnós* (*fili*) from *sunaus* (§. 2.). In the *i* bases in Gothic, Guna is restricted to the feminines; thus *anstai-s*, “*gratiæ*,” answers to प्रीतेस् *prítê-s*. Respecting Lithuanian genitives of *i* bases see §. 193. The High German has, from the earliest period, dropped the genitive sign in all feminines: in consonant bases (§§. 125, 127.) the sign of the genitive is wanting in the other genders also.

186. The form which the Sanscrit genitive termination after consonants assumes, as it were of necessity (§. 94.), viz. *as* for *s*, has in Greek, in the form *ος*, passed over also to the vowels *i* and *υ* and diphthongs terminating in *υ*; and genitives like πορτει-ς, ἰχθευ-ς, which would be in accordance with §. 185, are unheard of; but πόρτι-ος, ἰχθύ-ος, answer, like ποδ-ος, to Sanscrit genitives of consonant bases, as पदस् *pad-as*, “*pedis*,” वाचस् *vāch-as*, “*vocis*.” The Latin, on the other hand, answers more to the other sister languages, but is without Guna: so *hosti-s* is like the Gothic genitive *gasti-s*. In the *u* bases (fourth declension) the lengthening of the *u* may replace the Guna, or, more correctly, this class of words followed the Greek or consonant principle, and the vowel dropped before *s* was compensated for by

---

\* Besides this, it occurs only in monosyllabic bases in ई *i*, ऊ *ū*, ऐ *āi*, and औ *āu*; e. g. रây-as, “*rei*,” nâv-as, “*navis*.” and in neuters in इ *i* and उ *u*, which, by the assumption of a euphonic न् *n*, assimilate to the consonant declension in most cases.

lengthening the *u*. The *S. C. de Bacch.* gives the genitive *senatu-os* in Grecian garb. Otherwise the termination *is* of consonant bases is better derived from the Sanscrit *अस्* *as* than from the Greek *ος*, because the old Sanscrit *a* in other places in Latin, has been weakened to *i*, as frequently happens in Gothic (§. 66, 67.).

187. With regard to the *senatu-os* just mentioned, it is important to remark, that, in Zend also, the *u* bases, instead of annexing a simple *s* in the genitive, as *𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬭𐬀* *mainyēu-s*, "of the spirit," from *mainyu*, can also, after the manner of consonant bases, add *𐬀𐬌𐬭𐬀* *ó* (from *as*, cf. p. 212.), as *𐬀𐬌𐬭𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬭𐬀* *danhv-ó*, or *𐬀𐬌𐬭𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬭𐬀* *danhav-ó*, for *danheu-s*, "loci," from *𐬀𐬌𐬭𐬀* *danhu*. This kind of genitive occurs very frequently as a substitute for the locative, as also for the ablative (Vend. S. p. 177.), more rarely with a genuine genitive meaning.\*

188. Bases in *अ* *a*, and pronouns of the third person, of which only *amu* ends with a vowel other than *a*, have, in Sanscrit, the more full genitive sign *स्य* *sya*: hence, e. g. *वृकस्य* *vrika-sya*, "lupi," *तस्य* *ta-sya*, "hujus," &c., *अमुष्य* *amu-shya*,

---

\* It might be assumed that as *βασιλέος* clearly stands for *βασιλέϜος*, *βοός* for *βοϜός*, *νᾱός* for *νᾱϜός*, (§. 124.), so also *ἄστεος* would stand for *ἄστεϜος*, and that *ἄστεος*, therefore, should be compared with the Zend genitives with Guna, as *𐬀𐬌𐬭𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬭𐬀* *danhav-ó*. The *ε*, therefore, in *ἄστεος* would not be a corrupted *υ* of the base, but the Guna vowel foreign to the base; but the *υ* of the base, which, according to the original law of sound, must become *Ϝ* before vowels, is, like all other digammas in the actual condition of the language, suppressed. The *ε* is certainly a very heterogeneous vowel to the *υ*, and the corruption of the latter to *ε*, in the middle of a word, would be a greater violation of the old relations of sound than the rejection of a *υ* sound between two vowels. The corruption of *ĩ* to *ě* is less surprising, and occurs also in Old High German (§. 72.). In Greek, also, a consonant *y* is wanting, but cannot have been originally deficient; and therefore the question might be mooted whether also *πόλεως*, *σινάπεος* may not stand for *pole-yós*, *sinape-yos*.

"*illius*," (§. 21.). In Zend this termination appears in the form of *hê* (§. 42.): hence, *e. g.* *𐬯𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀* *vêhrkahê*, "*lupi*," *𐬯𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀* *tûiryê-hê*, "*quarti*," for *tûirya-hê*.

189. In Greek and Latin we have already, in another place, pointed out a remnant of the genitive termination *स्य* *sya*, and, in fact, precisely in places where it might be most expected. As bases in *α* correspond to the Greek bases in *ο*, and as *σ* in Greek at the farthest extremity of words between two vowels is generally dislodged, I do not entertain the smallest doubt that the old epic genitive termination in *ιο* is an abbreviation of *σιο*; and that *e. g.* in *τοῖο*, = *तस्य* *ta-sya*, the first *ο* belongs to the base, and only *ιο* to the case-sign. As regards, however, the loss of the *σ* in *τοῖο*, the Greek Grammar supplies us with another *οῖο*, where a *Σ* is lost, the necessary and original existence of which no one can doubt: *ἐδίδοσο*, and the ancient position of the *Σ* in the second person, testify for *διδοισο* instead of *διδοῖο*, as for *ἐλέγεςο* instead of *ἐλέγους*, just as the Indian *तस्य* *ta-sya* for *तो-σιο* instead of *τοῖο*. In the common language the *ι*, also, has been dropped after the *σ*, and the *ο* of the termination, which has remained, has been contracted with that of the base to *ου*; hence *τοῦ* from *το-ο*. The Homeric form *αο* (*Βορέαο*, *Αἰεΐαο*) belongs likewise to this place, and stands for *α-ιο*, and this for *α-σιο* (§. 116.). The Latin has transposed our *स्य* *sya* to *jus*, with the change, which is so frequent, of the old *a* before the final *s* to *u* (cf. *वृकस्* *vṛika-s*, "*lupu-s*," *युञ्जम्स* *yunjmas*, *jungimus*); hence, *hu-jus*, *cu-jus*, *e-jus*, *illius* for *illi-jus*, &c. I cannot, however, believe that the *i* of the second declension is an abbreviation of *οιο*, of which the *ι* alone has been retained;\* for it is clear that *lupi* and *lupæ* from *lupai* rest on the same principle; and if *lupi* proceeds from *λύκοιο*, whence can *lupai* be derived, as the corresponding Greek feminines nowhere exhibit an *αιο* or *ηιο*?

---

\* Hartung's Cases, p. 211.

190. In Lithuanian the genitives of the *a* bases differ remarkably from those of the other declensions, and denote the case by *o*, in which vowel, at the same time, the final vowel of the base is contained; thus, *wilko*, "*lupi*," for *wilka-s*. It is probable that this *o* (*ō*) has arisen from *a-s*, according to a contraction similar to that in the Zend (§. 56<sup>b</sup>). In old Slavonic, also, *o* occurs, answering to the Sanscrit *as*; and *nebo*, gen. *nebese*, corresponds to the Sanscrit नभस् *nabhas*. That, however, the Lithuanian has left the syllable *as* in the nominative unaltered, but in the genitive has contracted it to *o*, may induce the remark, that like corruptions do not always find entrance in like places, if they have not raised themselves to a pervading law. In this manner, in Gothic, the old *a* has remained in the interrogative base *HVA* in the nominative (*hvas*), but in the genitive *hvi-s* the weakening to *i* has taken place; so that here, as in Lithuanian, only the more worthy powerful nominative has preserved the older more powerful form, and an unorganic difference has found its way into the two cases, which ought to be similar.

191. The Gothic has no more preserved a remnant of the more full genitive termination *sya*, than the Lithuanian and the Gothic *a* bases, in this case, resemble the *i* bases, because *a* before final *s* has, according to §. 67., become weakened to *i*; thus *vulfi-s* for *vulfa-s*; as also in Old Saxon the corresponding declension exhibits *a-s* together with *e-s*, although more rarely; thus, *daga-s*, "of the day," answering to the Gothic *dagi-s*. The consonant bases have, in Gothic, likewise a simple *s* for case-sign; hence, *ahmin-s*, *fjand-s*, *bróthr-s* (§. 132.). The older sister dialects lead us to conjecture that originally an *a*, more lately an *i*, preceded this *s*—*ahmin-as*, *fjand-as*, *bróthr-as*,—which, as in the nominative of the *a* bases (*vulf'-s* for *vulfa-s*), has been suppressed. The Zend exhibits in the *r* roots an agreement with the Gothic, and forms, e. g. *nar-s*, "of the man," not

***nar-ô*, probably on account of the nature of the *r* bordering on that of a vowel, and of its facile combination with *s*.\***

192. Feminines in Sanscrit have a fuller genitive termination in bases ending with a vowel, viz. *ās* for simple *s* (see §. 113.); and, in fact, so that the short-ending bases in इ *i* and उ *u* can use at will either simple स् *s* or आस् *ās*; and instead of प्रीतेस् *prīte-s*, तनोस् *tanō-s*, also प्रीत्यास् *prīty-ās*, तन्वास् *tānv-ās*, occur. The long vowels आ *a*, ई *ī*, ऊ *ū*,<sup>†</sup> have always आस् *ās*; hence, जिह्वायास् *jihvāy-ās*, भविष्यन्त्यास् *bhavishyant-ās*, वध्वास् *vadhv-ās*. This termination आस् *ās*, is, in Zend, according to §. 56<sup>b</sup>., sounded *do*; hence, 𐬀𐬁𐬭𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬎𐬨𐬭𐬀 *hizvay-do*, 𐬀𐬁𐬭𐬀𐬶𐬏𐬩𐬭𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬎𐬨𐬭𐬀 *bushyainty-do*. In bases in , *i* and , *u* I have not met with this termination;

\* Hence I deduce the genitives *ब्रतार-s*, *दुहित-s*—which cannot be quoted—and the probability that the corresponding Sanscrit forms are properly *bhrātur*, *duhitur*, which cannot be gleaned from the Sanscrit alone, on account of §. 11., and by reason of the elsewhere occurring euphonic interchange of *s* and *r*. *भ्रातुर् bhrātur*, and similar forms, would therefore stand for *-urs*, and this apparently for *ars*, through the influence of the liquids; and, according to §. 94., they would have lost the genitive sign. The same is the case with the numeral adverb *चतुर् chatur*, “four times,” for *चतुस् chatur*; for which the Zend, by transposing the *r*, gives *चथ्रु chathrus* (§. 44.). The Indian Grammarians also, in the genitives under discussion, assume the absence of the genitive sign (Laghu-Kaumudî, p. 35). As, however, the Visarga, in *क्रोष्टु krôshṭu* (from the theme *क्रोष्टर् krôshṭar* or *क्रोष्टृ krôshṭri*, see §. 1.), can evidently stand as well for *s* as for *r*; so in such doubtful cases it is of no consequence to which side the Indian Grammarians incline, where arguments are not found in the Sanscrit itself, or in the kindred languages, which either confirm or refute their statements. And it is impossible, if the Visarga, in *भ्रातुः bhrātuḥ*, stands for *r*, that the preceding *u* can be a transposition of the final letter of the base (*चत उत*), for this cannot be both retained in the form of *r*, and yet changed into *u* (cf. Colebrook, p. 55, Rem.)

† Only the few monosyllabic words make an exception. (Gramm. Crit. §. 130.)

together with  $\text{ἄφριτῶν} \text{áfrítōi-s}$ ,  $\text{ἰανέων} \text{taneu-s}$ , or  $\text{ἰανῶν} \text{tanv-ō}$ ,  $\text{ἰανῶν} \text{tanav-ō}$ , I find no  $\text{ἄφριθῶν} \text{áfríthy-ō}$ ,  $\text{ἰανῶν} \text{tanv-ō}$ . The kindred European languages exhibit no stronger termination in the feminine than in the masculine and neuter; the Gothic, however, shews a disposition to greater fulness in the feminine genitive, inasmuch as the  $\delta$  bases preserve this vowel in contradistinction to the nominative and accusative; but the  $i$  bases, as has been shewn above, attach Guna to this vowel, while the masculines do not strengthen it at all. Compare  $\text{gibō-s}$  with the uninflected and base-abbreviated nominative and accusative  $\text{giba}$ , and  $\text{anstai-s}$  with  $\text{gasti-s}$ . Respecting the pronominal and adjective genitives, as  $\text{thi-zō-s}$ ,  $\text{blindai-zō-s}$ , see §. 172. The Greek, also, in its feminine first declension preserves the original vowel length in words which have weakened the nominative and accusative— $\sigma\phi\acute{\upsilon}\rho\alpha\varsigma$ ,  $\text{Μούσης}$ , opposed to  $\sigma\phi\hat{\upsilon}\rho\acute{\alpha}$ ,  $\sigma\phi\hat{\upsilon}\rho\acute{\alpha}-ν$ ,  $\mu\omicron\hat{\upsilon}\sigma\acute{\alpha}ν$ .\* In Latin, also,  $\bar{a}-s$ , with the original length of the base  $\text{escās}$ ,  $\text{terrās}$ , &c. stands opposed to  $\text{escā}$ ,  $\text{escā-m}$ . It cannot be supposed that these genitives are borrowed from the Greek; they are exactly what might be expected to belong to a language that has  $s$  for the genitive character. That, however, this form, which no doubt extended originally to all  $a$  bases, gradually disappeared, leaving nothing but a few remains, and that the language availed itself of other helps, is in accordance with the usual fate of languages which continually lose more and more of their old hereditary possessions.

193. The Lithuanian, in its genitive  $\text{rank-ōs}$  for  $\text{rankā-s}$ ,

---

\* The Attic termination  $\omega\varsigma$  is, perhaps, a perfect transmission of the Sanscrit  $\text{आस्} \text{ās}$ ; so that forms like  $\text{πόλε-}\omega\varsigma$  answer to  $\text{प्रीत्यास्} \text{prity-ās}$ . Although the Greek  $\omega\varsigma$  is not limited to the feminine, it is nevertheless excluded from the neuter ( $\text{ἄσπερος}$ ), and the preponderating number of  $i$  bases are feminine.



resembles the Gothic; and in some other cases, also, replaces the feminine *ā* by a long or short *o*. It is doubtful how the genitives of *i* bases, like *amiés*, are to be regarded. As they are, for the most part, feminine, and the few masculines may have followed the analogy of the prevailing gender, the division *ami-és* might be made; and this might be derived, through the assimilative force of the *i*, from *ami-ās* (cf. p. 174, note \*), which would answer to the Sanscrit genitives like *प्रीत्यास् prīty-ās*. If, however, it be compared with *प्रीतेस् prītés*, and the *é* of *amiés* be looked upon as Guna of the *i* (§. 26.), then the reading *amiés* for *amés* is objectionable. Ruhig, indeed, in his Glossary, frequently leaves out the *i*, and gives *ugnés*, "of the fire," *ugniés*; but in other cases, also, an *i* is suppressed before the *e* generated by its influence (p. 174, note \*); and, e. g. all feminine bases in *jā* have, in the genitive, *és* for *i-és* or *y-és*, as *giesmé-s*, for *giesmyés*, from *GIESMYĀ* (see p. 169, note). Therefore the division *amié-s* might also be made, and it might be assumed that the *i* bases have, in some cases, experienced an extension of the base, similar to those which were explained in the note, p. 174. (cf. §. 120.). This view appears to me the most correct, especially as in the vocative, also, *amié* answers to *giesme* for *giesmye*, or *giesmie*.

194. As regards the origin of the form through which, in the genitive, the thing designated is personified, with the secondary notion of the relation of space, the language in this case returns back to the same pronoun, whence, in §. 134., the nominative was derived. And there is a pronoun for the fuller termination also, viz. *स्य sya*, which occurs only in the Vêdas (cf. §. 55.), and the *s* of which is replaced in the oblique cases likewise, as in the neuter, by *t* (Gramm. Crit. §. 268.); so that *स्य sya* stands in the same relation to *तम् tya-m* and *तत् tya-t* that *स sa* does to *तम् ta-m*, *तत् ta-t*. It is evident, therefore, that in *स्य sya*, *तत् tya*, the bases *स sa*, *त ta*, are contained, with the vowel suppressed and united

with the relative base  $\mathfrak{v}ya$ . Here follows a general view of the genitive formation:\*

	SANSKRIT.	ZEND.	GREEK.	LATIN.	LITHUAN.	GOTHIC.
m.	<i>vrika-sya,</i>	<i>vēhrka-hé,</i>	λύκο-ιο,	. . . .	<i>wilkō,</i>	<i>vulfi-s.</i>
m.	<i>ka-sya,</i>	<i>ka-hé,</i>	. . . .	<i>cu-jus,</i>	<i>kō,</i>	<i>hvi-s.</i>
f.	<i>jihvdy-ās,</i>	<i>hizvay-āo,</i>	χώρᾱ-ς,	<i>terrā-s,</i>	<i>rankō-s,</i>	<i>gibō-s.</i>
m.	<i>patē-s,</i>	<i>patōi-s,</i>	. . . .	<i>hosti-s,</i>	. . . . <sup>†</sup>	<i>gasti-s.</i>
	<i>paty-us,</i>	. . . .	πόσι-ος,	. . . .	. . . .	. . . .
f.	<i>prîtē-s,</i>	<i>āfrîtōi-s,</i>	. . . .	<i>siti-s,</i>	. . . . <sup>†</sup>	<i>anslai-s.</i>
	<i>prîty-ās,</i>	. . . .	φύσε-ως,	. . . .	. . . .	. . . .
f.	<i>bhavishyanty-ās,</i>	<i>būshyainty-āo,</i>	. . . .	. . . .	. . . .	. . . .
m.	<i>sūnō-s,</i>	<i>paśeu-s,</i>	. . . .	. . . .	<i>sunai-s,</i>	<i>sunau-s.</i>
	. . . .	<i>paśv-ō,</i>	ἰχθύ-ος,	. . . .	. . . .	. . . .
f.	<i>tanō-s,</i>	<i>taneu-s,</i>	. . . .	<i>socrū-s,</i>	. . . .	. . . .
	<i>tanv-ās,</i>	<i>tanv-ō,</i>	πίτυ-ος,	. . . .	. . . .	. . . .
f.	<i>vadhv-ās,</i>	. . . .	. . . .	. . . .	. . . .	. . . .
m. f.	<i>gō-s,</i>	<i>geu-s,</i>	βο(F)-ός,	<i>bov-is,</i>	. . . .	. . . .
f.	<i>nāv-as,</i>	. . . .	να(F)-ός,	. . . .	. . . .	. . . .
f.	<i>vāch-as,</i>	<i>vāch-ō,</i> <sup>‡</sup>	ὀπ-ός,	<i>voc-is,</i>	. . . .	. . . .
m.	<i>bharat-as,</i>	<i>barēnt-ō,</i> <sup>§</sup>	φέρωντ-ος,	<i>ferent-is,</i>	. . . .	<i>fijand-s.</i>
m.	<i>ātman-as,</i>	<i>aśman-ō,</i> <sup>‡</sup>	δαίμον-ος,	<i>sermon-is,</i>	<i>ākmen-s,</i>	<i>ahmin-s.</i>
n.	<i>nāmn-ō,</i>	<i>nāman-ō,</i> <sup>‡</sup>	τάλαν-ος,	<i>nomin-is,</i>	. . . .	<i>namin-s.</i>
m.	<i>bhrātur,</i>	<i>brātar-s,</i>	πατρ-ός,	<i>fratr-is,</i>	. . . .	<i>brōthr-s.</i>
f.	<i>duhitur,</i>	<i>dughdhar-s,</i>	θυγατρ-ός,	<i>matr-is,</i>	<i>dugter-s,</i>	<i>dauhtr-s.</i>
m.	<i>dātur,</i>	<i>dātar-s,</i>	δοτήρ-ος,	<i>datōr-is,</i>	. . . .	. . . .
n.	<i>vachas-as,</i>	<i>vachanō,</i> <sup>‡</sup>	ἔπε(σ)-ος,	<i>oper-is.</i>	. . . .	. . . .

\* The meanings in §. 148.

† See §. 193.

‡ See p. 163. Rem. (\*).

§ And  $\mathfrak{b}ra\mathfrak{t}a\mathfrak{t}o$  *baratō* also may occur, according to the analogy of  $\mathfrak{b}er\mathfrak{e}x\mathfrak{a}t\mathfrak{o}$  *bērēxatō*, "splendens," V. S. p. 87, and *passim*. The retention of the nasal in the genitive, however, as in all other cases, is the more common form, and can be abundantly quoted. For  $\mathfrak{b}ra\mathfrak{e}n\mathfrak{t}o$  *barēntō*, also  $\mathfrak{b}ra\mathfrak{n}t\mathfrak{o}$  *barantō*, is possible, and likewise, in the other cases, the older

## THE LOCATIVE.

195. This case has, in Sanscrit and Zend,\* *i* for its character, and in Greek and Latin has received the function of the dative, yet has not suffered its locative signification to be lost; hence, Δωδῶνι, Μαραθῶνι, Σαλαμῖνι, ἄγρῳ, οἴκοι, χαμαί; and, transferred to time, τῇ αὐτῇ ἡμέρᾳ, τῇ αὐτῇ νυκτί. So in Sanscrit, दिवसे *divasé*, “in the day;” निशि *niśi*, “in the night.”

196. With *a* of the base preceding it, the locative *i* passes into *e* (§. 2.), exactly as in Zend; but here, also, *di* stands for *e* (§. 33.); so that in this the Zend approaches very closely to the Greek datives like οἴκοι, μοί, and σοι, in which *i* has not yet become subscribed, or been replaced by the extension of the base vowel. To the forms mentioned answers maidhydi, “in the middle.” One must be careful not to regard this and similar phenomena as showing a more intimate connexion between Greek and Zend.

197. In Lithuanian, which language possesses a proper locative, bases in *a* correspond in this case in a remarkable manner with the Sanscrit and Zend, since they contract this *a* with the old locative *i*, which appears pure nowhere any more, to *è*; hence, diemè, “in God,” from DIEWA, answers to देवे *dēvé*, दाēvē. The bases which terminate with other vowels employ, however, in

---

older *a* for *ē*. In some participles, as in *šauyanis* (nom.), which is of constant recurrence as the usual epithet of agriculture (*vaištrya*) *ē* never occurs.

\* Few cases admit of being more abundantly quoted in Zend than the locative, with which, nevertheless, Rask appears to have been unacquainted at the time of publishing his treatise, as he does not give it in any of his three paradigms.

with the relative base  $\text{या}$ . Here follows a general view of the genitive formation:\*

	SANSKRIT.	ZEND.	GREEK.	LATIN.	LITHUAN.	GOthic.
m.	<i>vrika-sya,</i>	<i>věhrka-hé,</i>	λύκο-ιο,	. . . .	<i>wilkō,</i>	<i>vulfi-s.</i>
m.	<i>ka-sya,</i>	<i>ka-hé,</i>	. . . .	<i>cu-jus,</i>	<i>kō,</i>	<i>hvi-s.</i>
f.	<i>jihvāy-ās,</i>	<i>hizvay-āo,</i>	χώρᾱ-ς,	<i>terrā-s,</i>	<i>rankō-s,</i>	<i>gibō-s.</i>
m.	<i>patē-s,</i>	<i>patōi-s,</i>	. . . .	<i>hosti-s,</i>	. . . . <sup>†</sup>	<i>gasti-s.</i>
	<i>paty-us,</i>	. . . .	πόσι-ος,	. . . .	. . . .	. . . .
f.	<i>prītē-s,</i>	<i>āfrītōi-s,</i>	. . . .	<i>siti-s,</i>	. . . . <sup>†</sup>	<i>anstai-s.</i>
	<i>prīty-ās,</i>	. . . .	φύσε-ως,	. . . .	. . . .	. . . .
f.	<i>bhavishyanty-ās,</i>	<i>būshyainty-āo,</i>	. . . .	. . . .	. . . .	. . . .
m.	<i>sūnō-s,</i>	<i>paśeu-s,</i>	. . . .	. . . .	<i>sunau-s,</i>	<i>sunau-s.</i>
	. . . .	<i>paśv-ō,</i>	ἰχθύ-ος,	. . . .	. . . .	. . . .
f.	<i>tanō-s,</i>	<i>taneu-s,</i>	. . . .	<i>socrū-s,</i>	. . . .	. . . .
	<i>tanv-ās,</i>	<i>tanv-ō,</i>	πίτυ-ος,	. . . .	. . . .	. . . .
f.	<i>vadhv-ās,</i>	. . . .	. . . .	. . . .	. . . .	. . . .
m. f.	<i>gō-s,</i>	<i>geu-s,</i>	βο(F)-ός,	<i>bov-is,</i>	. . . .	. . . .
f.	<i>nāv-as,</i>	. . . .	να(F)-ός,	. . . .	. . . .	. . . .
f.	<i>vāch-as,</i>	<i>vāch-ō,</i> <sup>‡</sup>	ὀπ-ός,	<i>voc-is,</i>	. . . .	. . . .
m.	<i>bharat-as,</i>	<i>barēnt-ō,</i> <sup>§</sup>	φέροντ-ος,	<i>ferent-is,</i>	. . . .	<i>fijand-s.</i>
m.	<i>ātman-as,</i>	<i>aśman-ō,</i> <sup>‡</sup>	δαίμον-ος,	<i>sermon-is,</i>	<i>ākmen-s,</i>	<i>ahmin-s.</i>
n.	<i>nāmn-ō,</i>	<i>nāman-ō,</i> <sup>‡</sup>	τάλαν-ος,	<i>nomin-is,</i>	. . . .	<i>namin-s.</i>
m.	<i>bhrātur,</i>	<i>brātar-s,</i>	πατρ-ός,	<i>fratr-is,</i>	. . . .	<i>brōthtr-s.</i>
f.	<i>duhitur,</i>	<i>dughdhar-s,</i>	θυγατρ-ός,	<i>matr-is,</i>	<i>dugter-s,</i>	<i>dauhtr-s.</i>
m.	<i>dātur,</i>	<i>dātar-s,</i>	δοτήρ-ος,	<i>datōr-is,</i>	. . . .	. . . .
n.	<i>vachas-as,</i>	<i>vachanḥ-ō,</i> <sup>‡</sup>	ἔπε(σ)-ος,	<i>oper-is.</i>	. . . .	. . . .

\* The meanings in §. 148.

† See §. 193.

‡ See p. 163. Rem. (\*).

§ And  $\text{बरांत}$  *baratō* also may occur, according to the analogy of  $\text{बरेखत}$  *bērēxatō*, "splendentis," V. S. p. 87, and *passim*. The retention of the nasal in the genitive, however, as in all other cases, is the more common form, and can be abundantly quoted. For  $\text{बरेन्त}$  *barēntō*, also  $\text{बरान्त}$  *barantō*, is possible, and likewise, in the other cases, the older

The first  
 ve fin  
 on the  
 doub  
 three  
 सुनि suni  
 Bases  
 ve term  
 सन्धि  
 nsnis,  
 il rende  
 ns, also,  
 es occur  
 सन्धि  
 feminin  
  
 ve alread  
 en the ge  
 cative re  
 ise a rep  
 gh the  
 Sanscrit  
 genitive  
 rst decl  
 the plur  
 to chara  
 ns as bo  
 less of  
 roborat  
 is, in w  
 (from m  
 erhaps,  
 a gen  
 Romai),  
 or locat

198. Masculine bases in *i* and *u*, and, optionally, feminine bases also, have a different locative termination in Sanscrit, viz. औ *au*, before which इ *i* and उ *u* are dropped ; but in पति *pati*, “lord,” and सखि *sakhi*, “friend,” the *i* has remained in its euphonic change to य *y* : hence, पत्यौ *paty-au*, सख्यौ *sakhy-au*. If we consider the vocalization of the *s* to *u*, shewn in §. 56<sup>b</sup>., and that, in all probability, in the dual, also, औ *au* has proceeded from आस् *ās* (§. 206.); moreover, the circumstance that in the Vêdas the genitive occurs with a locative meaning (दक्षिणायास् *dakshināyās*, “in dexterâ,” for दक्षिणायाम् *dakshināyām*, Pânini VII. 1. 39.); and, finally, the fact that, in Zend, masculines in *i* and *u* likewise employ genitive terminations with a locative signification ; we shall be much disposed to recognise in this औ *au*, from आस् *ās*, a sort of Attic or produced genitive termination.

[illegible]

are distinguished only by the quantity of the first member of the diphthong. On the other hand, we find in the feminine base ṭanu, "body," very often the genuine locative form ṭanv-i; and we do not doubt that, in Sanscrit also, originally the u bases of the three genders admitted in the locative the termination i (सुन्वि sunv-i, तन्वि tanv-i, मध्वि madhv-i, or मधुनि madhu-n-i). Bases in i employ, in the locative, the usual genitive termination ōi-s; thus, in the Vend. S. p. 234., ahmi namānē yat māddayasñōis, "*in hac terra quidem mazdayasnica*, which Anquetil renders by "*dans le pays des mazdeïens*." In pronouns, also, though they have a locative, the genitive sometimes occurs with a locative meaning; e.g. Vend. S. p. 46., ainhê vîsé, "in this way," or "place," (cf. the feminine form ainhâo, §. 172. Rem.).

200. From the Zend and Sanscrit we have already been compelled to acknowledge a connexion between the genitive and locative; and as we have seen the locative replaced by the genitive, so must we, in Latin, recognise a replacing of the genitive by the locative. Through the formal agreement of the corresponding Latin and Sanscrit termination, and from the circumstance that the genitive occurs with a locative meaning only in the two first declensions (*Romæ, Corinthi, humi*), not in the third or in the plural (*ruri* not *ruris*), M. Prof. Rosen was first induced to characterize the Latin genitive of the two first declensions as borrowed from the old locative; a view, the correctness of which I do not doubt, and which I have already corroborated elsewhere by the genitives of the two first persons, in which *mei, tui*, agree most surprisingly with मयि *mayi* (from *mê-i*, §. 2.), "in me," त्वयि *tvayi* (from *tvê-i*). Or ought, perhaps, a double inflexion *i* to be assumed as the sign of both a genitive and a locative dative? Should *Romæ* (from *Romai*), *Corinthi*, be on one occasion genitives and on another locatives, and

in their different meaning be also of different origin? And where, then, would the origin of the genitive *Romæ* be found, as that of the locative has been found already? Should *mei*, *tui*, be compared, not with मयि *mayi*, त्वयि *tvayi*, μοί, τοί, but with मम *mama*, तव *tava*, μου, του, Goth. *meina*, *theina*? As the cases, like their substitutes the prepositions, pass easily from one relation of space to another, and, to use the expression, the highest become the lowest, nothing appears to me more probable, than that, after the first declension had lost its *ā-s*, then the dative, according to its origin a locative, necessarily became substituted for the genitive also.\* In the second declension the form *o-i*, which belongs to the dative locative, corresponding to the Greek ω, οί—and of which examples still remain handed down to us (as *populoi Romanoī*)—has become doubly altered: either the vowel of the base alone, or only that of the termination, has been left, and the first form has fixed itself in the dative, and the latter in the genitive, which is therefore similar to the nom. plural, where, in

---

\* The assumption that a rejected *s* lies at the base of the genitives in *i*, *ae* (*a-i*) appears to me inadmissible, because in all other parts of Grammar—numerous as the forms with a final *s* otherwise are—this letter has in Roman defied all the assaults of time, and appears everywhere where the kindred languages lead us to expect it: no *terræ* for *terras* (acc. pl.), no *lupi* for *lupos*, no *amæ* for *amas*, &c. The question is not here that of an occasional suppression of the *s* in old poets, before a consonant in the word following. The genitives in *e-s* and *æ-s* occurring in inscriptions (*provincie-s*, *suæ-s*, see Struve, p. 7.) appear to be different modes of writing one and the same form, which corresponds to the Greek η-ς for *ā-ς*; and I would not therefore derive the common genitive *suæ*—older form *suai*—from *suæs* with the *s* dropped. The genitives in *us*, given by Hartung (p. 161.) from inscriptions in Orelli (*nomin-us*, *exercitu-us*, *Castor-us*, &c.), I am not surprised at, for this reason, that generally *us* is, in Latin, a favourite termination for अस् *as*; hence *nomin-us* has the same relation to नामस् *nāmn-as*, that *nomin-i-bus* has to नामभ्यस् *nāma'-bhyas*, and *lupus* to वृक्स् *vṛiku-s*.



like manner, *Romani* stands for *Romanoi*. But the dative is not universally represented in Latin by a locative termination ; for in the pronouns of the two first persons *mihi* answers to मयि *ma-hyam*, from *ma-bhyam*, and *tibi* to त्वयि *tu-bhyam*; as, however, the league between the dative and locative had been once concluded, this truly dative termination occurs with a locative meaning (*ibi, ubi*), while *vice versa*, in Sanscrit, the locative very frequently supplies the place of the dative, which latter, however, is most usually expressed by the genitive, so that the proper dative is, for the most part, applied to denote the causal relation.

201. Pronouns of the 3d person have, in Sanscrit, इन् *in* instead of *i* in the locative, and the अ *a* of the appended pronoun स्म *sma* is elided (see §. 165.); hence, तस्मिन् *tasm'in*, "in him"; कस्मिन् *kasm'in*, "in whom." This *n*, which seems to me to be of later origin, as it were an *εφελκιστικόν*, does not extend to the two first persons, and is wanting in Zend also in those of the third; hence, अहम् *ahmi*, "in this." As to the origin of the *i* signifying the place or time of continuance, it is easily discovered as soon as *i* is found as the root of a demonstrative; which, however, like the true form of all other pronominal roots, has escaped the Indian Grammarians.

202. Feminine bases ending with long simple vowels have, in Sanscrit, a peculiar locative termination; viz. आम् *ām*, in which, also, the feminines in short *i* and *u* can at will participate (cf. §. 192.); while the monosyllabic feminine bases in long ई *ī* and ऊ *ū*, for आम् *ām*, admit also the common इ *i*; hence, भियाम् *bhiy-ām* or भियि *bhiy-i*, "in fear," from भी *bhī*.\* In Zend this termination *ām* has

---

\* Perhaps the termination *ām* is a corruption of the feminine genitive termination *ās* (cf. §. 198. दक्षिणायास् *dakṣhiṇāyās* for *dakṣhiṇāyām*), where it should be observed that in Prākṛit, as in Greek, a final *s* has frequently become a nasal.

190. In Lithuanian the genitives of the *a* bases differ remarkably from those of the other declensions, and denote the case by *o*, in which vowel, at the same time, the final vowel of the base is contained; thus, *wilko*, “*lupi*,” for *wilka-s*. It is probable that this *o* (*ō*) has arisen from *a-s*, according to a contraction similar to that in the Zend (§. 56<sup>b</sup>). In old Slavonic, also, *o* occurs, answering to the Sanscrit *as*; and *nebo*, gen. *nebese*, corresponds to the Sanscrit नभस् *nabhas*. That, however, the Lithuanian has left the syllable *as* in the nominative unaltered, but in the genitive has contracted it to *o*, may induce the remark, that like corruptions do not always find entrance in like places, if they have not raised themselves to a pervading law. In this manner, in Gothic, the old *a* has remained in the interrogative base *HVA* in the nominative (*hvas*), but in the genitive *hvi-s* the weakening to *i* has taken place; so that here, as in Lithuanian, only the more worthy powerful nominative has preserved the older more powerful form, and an unorganic difference has found its way into the two cases, which ought to be similar.

191. The Gothic has no more preserved a remnant of the more full genitive termination *sya*, than the Lithuanian and the Gothic *a* bases, in this case, resemble the *i* bases, because *a* before final *s* has, according to §. 67., become weakened to *i*; thus *vulfi-s* for *vulfa-s*; as also in Old Saxon the corresponding declension exhibits *a-s* together with *e-s*, although more rarely; thus, *daga-s*, “of the day,” answering to the Gothic *dagi-s*. The consonant bases have, in Gothic, likewise a simple *s* for case-sign; hence, *ahmin-s*, *fjand-s*, *brôthr-s* (§. 132.). The older sister dialects lead us to conjecture that originally an *a*, more lately an *i*, preceded this *s*—*ahmin-as*, *fjand-as*, *brôthr-as*,—which, as in the nominative of the *a* bases (*vulf'-s* for *vulfa-s*), has been suppressed. The Zend exhibits in the *r* roots an agreement with the Gothic, and forms, e.g. *nar-s*, “of the man,” not

*nar-ô*, probably on account of the nature of the *r* bordering on that of a vowel, and of its facile combination with *s*.\*

192. Feminines in Sanscrit have a fuller genitive termination in bases ending with a vowel, viz. *âs* for simple *s* (see §. 113.); and, in fact, so that the short-ending bases in इ *i* and उ *u* can use at will either simple स् *s* or आस् *âs*; and instead of प्रीतेस् *prîtê-s*, तनोस् *tanô-s*, also प्रीत्यास् *prîty-âs*, तन्वास् *tanv-âs*, occur. The long vowels आ *â*, ई *î*, ऊ *û*,† have always आस् *âs*; hence, जिह्वायास् *jihvâ-y-âs*, भविष्यन्त्यास् *bhavishyanty-âs*, वध्वास् *vadhv-âs*. This termination आस् *âs*, is, in Zend, according to §. 56<sup>b</sup>., sounded *âo*; hence, *hizvay-âo*, *bushyainty-âo*. In bases in *i* and *u* I have not met with this termination;

---

\* Hence I deduce the genitives *brâtar-s*, *dughdhar-s*—which cannot be quoted—and the probability that the corresponding Sanscrit forms are properly *bhrâtur*, *duhitur*, which cannot be gleaned from the Sanscrit alone, on account of §. 11., and by reason of the elsewhere occurring euphonic interchange of *s* and *r*. भ्रातुर् *bhrâtur*, and similar forms, would therefore stand for *-urs*, and this apparently for *ars*, through the influence of the liquids; and, according to §. 94., they would have lost the genitive sign. The same is the case with the numeral adverb चतुर् *chatur*, “four times,” for चतुस् *chatur-s*; for which the Zend, by transposing the *r*, gives *chathrus* (§. 44.). The Indian Grammarians also, in the genitives under discussion, assume the absence of the genitive sign (Laghu-Kaumudî, p. 35). As, however, the Visarga, in क्रोष्टु *krôshṭu* (from the theme क्रोष्टर् *krôshṭar* or क्रोष्टृ *krôshṭri*, see §. 1.), can evidently stand as well for *s* as for *r*; so in such doubtful cases it is of no consequence to which side the Indian Grammarians incline, where arguments are not found in the Sanscrit itself, or in the kindred languages, which either confirm or refute their statements. And it is impossible, if the Visarga, in भ्रातुः *bhrâtuḥ*, stands for *r*, that the preceding *u* can be a transposition of the final letter of the base (चतु उन्), for this cannot be both retained in the form of *r*, and yet changed into *u* (cf. Colebrook, p. 55, Rem.)

† Only the few monosyllabic words make an exception. (Gramm. Crit. §. 130.)

together with  $\alpha\alpha\psi\rho\acute{\alpha}\delta\alpha$  *áfrítái-s*,  $\alpha\alpha\xi\gamma\alpha\rho$  *taneu-s*, or  $\psi\gg\gamma\alpha\rho$  *tanv-ó*,  $\psi\gg\alpha\gamma\alpha\rho$  *tanav-ó*, I find no  $\xi\alpha\alpha\alpha\alpha\alpha\alpha\delta\alpha$  *áfrítai-áo*,  $\xi\alpha\gg\gamma\alpha\rho$  *tanv-áo*. The kindred European languages exhibit no stronger termination in the feminine than in the masculine and neuter; the Gothic, however, shews a disposition to greater fulness in the feminine genitive, inasmuch as the *ó* bases preserve this vowel in contradistinction to the nominative and accusative; but the *i* bases, as has been shewn above, attach Guna to this vowel, while the masculines do not strengthen it at all. Compare *gibó-s* with the uninflected and base-abbreviated nominative and accusative *giba*, and *anstai-s* with *gasti-s*. Respecting the pronominal and adjective genitives, as *thi-zó-s*, *blindai-zó-s*, see §. 172. The Greek, also, in its feminine first declension preserves the original vowel length in words which have weakened the nominative and accusative— $\sigma\phi\acute{\upsilon}\rho\alpha\varsigma$ ,  $\text{Μούσης}$ , opposed to  $\sigma\phi\hat{\upsilon}\rho\alpha$ ,  $\sigma\phi\hat{\upsilon}\rho\alpha-\nu$ ,  $\mu\acute{o}\upsilon\sigma\alpha\acute{\nu}$ .\* In Latin, also, *ā-s*, with the original length of the base *escās*, *terrās*, &c. stands opposed to *escā*, *escā-m*. It cannot be supposed that these genitives are borrowed from the Greek; they are exactly what might be expected to belong to a language that has *s* for the genitive character. That, however, this form, which no doubt extended originally to all *a* bases, gradually disappeared, leaving nothing but a few remains, and that the language availed itself of other helps, is in accordance with the usual fate of languages which continually lose more and more of their old hereditary possessions.

193. The Lithuanian, in its genitive *rank-ós* for *ranká-s*,

---

\* The Attic termination  $\omega\varsigma$  is, perhaps, a perfect transmission of the Sanscrit  $\text{आस् } \acute{a}s$ ; so that forms like  $\pi\acute{o}\lambda\epsilon-\omega\varsigma$  answer to  $\text{प्रीत्यास् } \textit{prity-ás}$ . Although the Greek  $\omega\varsigma$  is not limited to the feminine, it is nevertheless excluded from the neuter ( $\acute{\alpha}\sigma\tau\epsilon\omicron\varsigma$ ), and the preponderating number of *i* bases are feminine.

resembles the Gothic; and in some other cases, also, replaces the feminine *ā* by a long or short *o*. It is doubtful how the genitives of *i* bases, like *amiés*, are to be regarded. As they are, for the most part, feminine, and the few masculines may have followed the analogy of the prevailing gender, the division *ami-és* might be made; and this might be derived, through the assimilative force of the *i*, from *ami-ás* (cf. p. 174, note \*), which would answer to the Sanscrit genitives like *प्रीत्यास् प्रीत्य-ás*. If, however, it be compared with *प्रीतेस् प्रीत-és*, and the *é* of *amiés* be looked upon as Guna of the *i* (§. 26.), then the reading *amiés* for *amés* is objectionable. Ruhig, indeed, in his Glossary, frequently leaves out the *i*, and gives *ugnés*, "of the fire," *ugniés*; but in other cases, also, an *i* is suppressed before the *e* generated by its influence (p. 174, note \*); and, e. g. all feminine bases in *jā* have, in the genitive, *és* for *i-és* or *y-és*, as *giesmé-s*, for *giesmyés*, from *GIESMYĀ* (see p. 169, note). Therefore the division *amié-s* might also be made, and it might be assumed that the *i* bases have, in some cases, experienced an extension of the base, similar to those which were explained in the note, p. 174. (cf. §. 120.). This view appears to me the most correct, especially as in the vocative, also, *amié* answers to *giesme* for *giesmye*, or *giesmie*.

194. As regards the origin of the form through which, in the genitive, the thing designated is personified, with the secondary notion of the relation of space, the language in this case returns back to the same pronoun, whence, in §. 134., the nominative was derived. And there is a pronoun for the fuller termination also, viz. *स्य sya*, which occurs only in the Vêdas (cf. §. 55.), and the *s* of which is replaced in the oblique cases likewise, as in the neuter, by *t* (Gramm. Crit. §. 268.); so that *स्य sya* stands in the same relation to *तम् tya-m* and *तत् tya-t* that *स sa* does to *तम् ta-m*, *तत् ta-t*. It is evident, therefore, that in *स्य sya*, *तत् tya*, the bases *स sa*, *त ta*, are contained, with the vowel suppressed and united

with the relative base  $\text{या}$ . Here follows a general view of the genitive formation:\*

	SANSKRIT.	ZEND.	GREEK.	LATIN.	LITHUAN.	GOTHIC.
m.	<i>vrika-sya,</i>	<i>vēhrka-hé,</i>	λύκο-ιο,	. . . .	<i>milko,</i>	<i>vulfi-s.</i>
m.	<i>ka-sya,</i>	<i>ka-hé,</i>	. . . .	<i>cu-jus,</i>	<i>kō,</i>	<i>hvi-s.</i>
f.	<i>jihvdy-ās,</i>	<i>hizvay-āo,</i>	χώρᾱ-ς,	<i>terrā-s,</i>	<i>rankō-s,</i>	<i>gibō-s.</i>
m.	<i>patē-s,</i>	<i>patōi-s,</i>	. . . .	<i>hosti-s,</i>	. . . .†	<i>gasti-s.</i>
	<i>paty-us,</i>	. . . .	πόσι-ος,	. . . .	. . . .	. . . .
f.	<i>prītē-s,</i>	<i>āfrītōi-s,</i>	. . . .	<i>siti-s,</i>	. . . .†	<i>anstai-s.</i>
	<i>prīty-ās,</i>	. . . .	φύσε-ως,	. . . .	. . . .	. . . .
f.	<i>bhavishtyānty-ās,</i>	<i>būshyainty-āo,</i>	. . . .	. . . .	. . . .	. . . .
m.	<i>sūnō-s,</i>	<i>paʼseu-s,</i>	. . . .	. . . .	<i>sunau-s,</i>	<i>sunau-s.</i>
	. . . .	<i>paʼv-ō,</i>	ἰχθύ-ος,	. . . .	. . . .	. . . .
f.	<i>tanō-s,</i>	<i>taneu-s,</i>	. . . .	<i>socrū-s,</i>	. . . .	. . . .
	<i>tanv-ās,</i>	<i>tanv-ō,</i>	πίτυ-ος,	. . . .	. . . .	. . . .
f.	<i>vadho-ās,</i>	. . . .	. . . .	. . . .	. . . .	. . . .
m. f.	<i>gō-s,</i>	<i>geu-s,</i>	βο(F)-ός,	<i>bov-is,</i>	. . . .	. . . .
f.	<i>nāv-as,</i>	. . . .	νᾱ(F)-ός,	. . . .	. . . .	. . . .
f.	<i>vāch-as,</i>	<i>vāch-ō,†</i>	ὀπ-ός,	<i>voc-is,</i>	. . . .	. . . .
m.	<i>bharat-as,</i>	<i>barēnt-ō,§</i>	φέροντ-ος,	<i>ferent-is,</i>	. . . .	<i>fijand-s.</i>
m.	<i>ātman-as,</i>	<i>aʼsman-ō,†</i>	δαίμον-ος,	<i>sermon-is,</i>	<i>ākmen-s,</i>	<i>ahmin-s.</i>
n.	<i>nāmn-ō,</i>	<i>nāman-ō,†</i>	τάλαν-ος,	<i>nomin-is,</i>	. . . .	<i>namin-s.</i>
m.	<i>bhrātur,</i>	<i>brātar-s,</i>	πατρ-ός,	<i>fratr-is,</i>	. . . .	<i>brōthtr-s.</i>
f.	<i>duhitur,</i>	<i>dughdhar-s,</i>	θυγατρ-ός,	<i>matr-is,</i>	<i>dugter-s,</i>	<i>dauhtr-s.</i>
m.	<i>dātur,</i>	<i>dātar-s,</i>	δοτήρ-ος,	<i>datōr-is,</i>	. . . .	. . . .
n.	<i>vachas-as,</i>	<i>vachanh-ō,†</i>	ἔπε(σ)-ος,	<i>oper-is.</i>	. . . .	. . . .

\* The meanings in §. 148.

† See §. 193.

‡ See p. 163. Rem. (\*).

§ And  $\text{𑂔𑂩𑂰𑂩𑂩}$  *baratō* also may occur, according to the analogy of  $\text{𑂔𑂩𑂰𑂩𑂩𑂰𑂩}$  *bērēxatō*, "splendētis," V. S. p. 87, and *passim*. The retention of the nasal in the genitive, however, as in all other cases, is the more common form, and can be abundantly quoted. For  $\text{𑂔𑂩𑂰𑂩𑂩𑂰𑂩}$  *barēntō*, also  $\text{𑂔𑂩𑂰𑂩𑂩𑂰𑂩}$  *barantō*, is possible, and likewise, in the other cases, the older

## THE LOCATIVE.

195. This case has, in Sanscrit and Zend,\* *i* for its character, and in Greek and Latin has received the function of the dative, yet has not suffered its locative signification to be lost; hence, Δωδῶνι, Μαραθῶνι, Σαλαμῖνι, ἀγρῶ, οἴκοι, χαμαί; and, transferred to time, τῇ αὐτῇ ἡμέρᾳ, τῇ αὐτῇ νυκτί. So in Sanscrit, दिवसे *divasé*, “in the day;” निशि *nisi*, “in the night.”

196. With *a* of the base preceding it, the locative *i* passes into *ē* (§. 2.), exactly as in Zend; but here, also, *di* stands for *ē* (§. 33.); so that in this the Zend approaches very closely to the Greek datives like οἴκοι, μοί, and σοι, in which *i* has not yet become subscribed, or been replaced by the extension of the base vowel. To the forms mentioned answers maidhydi, “in the middle.” One must be careful not to regard this and similar phenomena as showing a more intimate connexion between Greek and Zend.

197. In Lithuanian, which language possesses a proper locative, bases in *a* correspond in this case in a remarkable manner with the Sanscrit and Zend, since they contract this *a* with the old locative *i*, which appears pure nowhere any more, to *è*; hence, diemè, “in God,” from DIEWA, answers to देवे *dévè*, दाēvē. The bases which terminate with other vowels employ, however, in

---

older *a* for *ē*. In some participles, as in *seuyaniš* (nom.), which is of constant recurrence as the usual epithet of agriculture (*vaištrya*) *ē* never occurs.

\* Few cases admit of being more abundantly quoted in Zend than the locative, with which, nevertheless, Rask appears to have been unacquainted at the time of publishing his treatise, as he does not give it in any of his three paradigms.

Lithuanian, without exception, *ye* as the locative termination, without any accent upon the *e*, which must not be overlooked. This *e* is, perhaps, only an unorganic echo, which has occasioned the change of the old locative *i* into *y*, as, in Zend, the plural locative termination *su*, by adding an *a*, appears, for the most part, in the form of *sušva*, or *hva*. To the Lithuanian *ye* answers also, in old Slavonic, a locative termination *ye*, for which several declensions have the original pure *i*; so that *nebes-i*, "in Heaven," and *imen-i*, "in the name," agree most strictly with the Sanscrit नभसि *nabhas-i* and नामनि *nāman-i*, from नभस् *nabhas*, नामन् *nāman*.

198. Masculine bases in *i* and *u*, and, optionally, feminine bases also, have a different locative termination in Sanscrit, viz. औ *au*, before which इ *i* and उ *u* are dropped ; but in पति *pati*, “lord,” and सखि *sakhi*, “friend,” the *i* has remained in its euphonic change to य *y* : hence, पत्यौ *paty-au*, सख्यौ *sakhy-au*. If we consider the vocalization of the *s* to *u*, shewn in §. 56<sup>b</sup>., and that, in all probability, in the dual, also, औ *au* has proceeded from आस् *as* (§. 206.); moreover, the circumstance that in the Vêdas the genitive occurs with a locative meaning (दक्षिणायास् *dakshinâyâs*, “in dexterâ,” for दक्षिणायाम् *dakshinâyâm*, Pânini VII. 1. 39.); and, finally, the fact that, in Zend, masculines in *i* and *u* likewise employ genitive terminations with a locative signification ; we shall be much disposed to recognise in this औ *au*, from आस् *as*, a sort of Attic or produced genitive termination.

[illegible]





in their different meaning be also of different origin? And where, then, would the origin of the genitive *Romæ* be found, as that of the locative has been found already? Should *mei*, *tui*, be compared, not with मयि *mayi*, त्वयि *tvayi*, μοί, τοί, but with मम *mama*, तव *tava*, μοῦ, τοῦ, Goth. *meina*, *theina*? As the cases, like their substitutes the prepositions, pass easily from one relation of space to another, and, to use the expression, the highest become the lowest, nothing appears to me more probable, than that, after the first declension had lost its *ā-s*, then the dative, according to its origin a locative, necessarily became substituted for the genitive also.\* In the second declension the form *o-i*, which belongs to the dative locative, corresponding to the Greek ω, οι—and of which examples still remain handed down to us (as *populoi Romanoī*)—has become doubly altered: either the vowel of the base alone, or only that of the termination, has been left, and the first form has fixed itself in the dative, and the latter in the genitive, which is therefore similar to the nom. plural, where, in

---

\* The assumption that a rejected *s* lies at the base of the genitives in *i*, *us* (*a-i*) appears to me inadmissible, because in all other parts of Grammar—numerous as the forms with a final *s* otherwise are—this letter has in Roman defied all the assaults of time, and appears everywhere where the kindred languages lead us to expect it: no *terræ* for *terras* (acc. pl.), no *lupi* for *lupos*, no *amæ* for *amas*, &c. The question is not here that of an occasional suppression of the *s* in old poets, before a consonant in the word following. The genitives in *e-s* and *æ-s* occurring in inscriptions (*provincie-s*, *sua-s*, see Struve, p. 7.) appear to be different modes of writing one and the same form, which corresponds to the Greek η-ς for *ā-ς*; and I would not therefore derive the common genitive *sua*—older form *suai*—from *sua-s* with the *s* dropped. The genitives in *us*, given by Hartung (p. 161.) from inscriptions in Orelli (*nomin-us*, *exercitu-us*, *Castor-us*, &c.), I am not surprised at, for this reason, that generally *us* is, in Latin, a favourite termination for अस् *as*; hence *nomin-us* has the same relation to नामस् *nāmn-as*, that *nomin-i-bus* has to नामभ्यस् *nāma'-bhyas*, and *lupus* to वृक्स् *vriku-s*.

like manner, *Romani* stands for *Romanoi*. But the dative is not universally represented in Latin by a locative termination ; for in the pronouns of the two first persons *mihi* answers to मय्यम् *ma-hyam*, from *ma-bhyam*, and *tibi* to तुभ्यम् *tu-bhyam*; as, however, the league between the dative and locative had been once concluded, this truly dative termination occurs with a locative meaning (*ibi, ubi*), while *vice versa*, in Sanscrit, the locative very frequently supplies the place of the dative, which latter, however, is most usually expressed by the genitive, so that the proper dative is, for the most part, applied to denote the causal relation.

201. Pronouns of the 3d person have, in Sanscrit, इन् *in* instead of *i* in the locative, and the अ *a* of the appended pronoun स्म *sma* is elided (see §. 165.); hence, तस्मिन् *tasm'in*, "in him"; कस्मिन् *kasm'in*, "in whom." This *n*, which seems to me to be of later origin, as it were an *εφελκιστικόν*, does not extend to the two first persons, and is wanting in Zend also in those of the third; hence, अहम् *ahmi*, "in this." As to the origin of the *i* signifying the place or time of continuance, it is easily discovered as soon as *i* is found as the root of a demonstrative; which, however, like the true form of all other pronominal roots, has escaped the Indian Grammarians.

202. Feminine bases ending with long simple vowels have, in Sanscrit, a peculiar locative termination; viz. आम् *ām*, in which, also, the feminines in short *i* and *u* can at will participate (cf. §. 192.); while the monosyllabic feminine bases in long ई *ī* and ऊ *ū*, for आम् *ām*, admit also the common इ *i*; hence, भियाम् *bhiy-ām* or भियि *bhiy-i*, "in fear," from भी *bhī*.\* In Zend this termination *ām* has

---

\* Perhaps the termination *ām* is a corruption of the feminine genitive termination *ās* (cf. §. 198. दक्षिणायास् *dakṣhiṇāyās* for *dakṣhiṇāyām*), where it should be observed that in Prākṛit, as in Greek, a final *s* has frequently become a nasal.

become abbreviated to *a* (cf. §. 214.); hence, *yahmy-a*, “in which,” from *yahmī* (cf. §. 172.). This termination appears, however, in Zend, to be less diffused than in Sanscrit, and not to be applicable to feminines in *i* and *u*. The form *tanvi* is clearly more genuine than the Sanscrit *tanū*, although from the earliest period, also, *tanvām* may have existed.

203. We here give a general view of the locative, and of the cases akin to it in Greek and Latin (see §. 148.):

	SANSKRIT.	ZEND.	GREEK.	LATIN.	LITHUAN.
m.	<i>vriké</i> ,*	<i>vēhrké</i> ,*	λύκω,	<i>lup'-ī</i> ,	<i>wilkė</i> .
f.	<i>jihvāy-ām</i> ,	<i>hixvay-a</i> ,	χώρᾳ,	<i>terra-i</i> ,	<i>ranko-ye</i> .
m.	<i>paty-āu</i> ,†	. . . .	πόσι-ι,	<i>host'-ī</i> ,	<i>pāti-ye</i> .
f.	<i>prīt'-āu</i> ,†	. . . .	πόρτι-ι,	<i>sit'-ī</i> ,	<i>awi-ye</i> .
f.	<i>bhavishyanty-ām</i> ,	<i>būshyainty-a</i> ,	. . . .	. . . .	. . . .
m.	<i>sūn'-āu</i> ,	. . . .	ἰχθύ-ι,	<i>pecu-ī</i> ,	<i>sunu-ye</i> .
f.	<i>tan'-āu</i> ,§	<i>tanv-i</i> ,	πίτυ-ι,	<i>socru-ī</i> ,	. . . .
n.	<i>madhu-n-i</i> ,	. . . .	μέθυ-ι,	. . . .	. . . .
f.	<i>vadhv-ām</i> ,	. . . .	. . . .	. . . .	. . . .
m. f.	<i>gav-i</i> ,	<i>gav-i</i> ,	βο(F)-ί,	<i>bov-ī</i> ,	. . . .
f.	<i>nāv-i</i> ,	. . . .	να(F)-ί,	. . . .	. . . .
m.	<i>bharat-i</i> ,	<i>barēnt-i</i> ,	φέροντ-ι,	<i>ferent-ī</i> ,	. . . .
m.	<i>ātman-i</i> ,	<i>aśmain-i</i> ,	δαίμον-ι,	<i>sermon-ī</i> ,	. . . .
n.	<i>nāmn-i</i> ,	<i>nāmain-i</i> ,	τάλαν-ι,	<i>nomīn-ī</i> ,	. . . .
m.	<i>bhrātar-i</i> ,	<i>brāthr-i</i> ?	πατρ-ί,	<i>fratr-ī</i> ,	. . . .
f.	<i>duhitar-i</i> ,	<i>dughdhēr-i</i> ?	θυγατρ-ί,	<i>matr-ī</i> ,	. . . .
m.	<i>dātar-i</i> ,	<i>dāthr-i</i> ?	δοτῆρ-ι,	<i>datōr-ī</i> ,	. . . .
n.	<i>vachas-i</i> ,	<i>vacanḥ-i</i> ,	ἔπε(σ)-ι,	<i>oper-ī</i> ,	. . . .

\* See §. 196.    † See §. 198.    ‡ Or *prīty-ām*.    § Or *tanv-ām*.

|| The rejection of the *a* preceding the *r* in the theme seems to me more probable than its retention. The *i* of the termination is guaranteed by the other consonant declension, which in this case we can abundantly enough exemplify. (Regarding *dughdhēr-i*, see p. 194. Rem. \*). That in Sanscrit *bhratar-i*, *duhitar-i*, *dātar-i* are used instead of *bhrātrī*, &c. is contrary

## VOCATIVE.

204. The vocative in the Sanscrit family of languages has either no case-sign at all, or is identical with the nominative: the former is the principle, the latter the practical corruption, and is limited in Sanscrit to monosyllabic bases terminating in a vowel: hence, भीष् *bhī-s*, "fear," as κί-ς. A final *a* of the nominal bases remains, in Sanscrit and Zend, unchanged; in Lithuanian it is weakened to *e*; and the Greek and Latin also, in the uninflected vocative of the corresponding declension, prefer a short *e* to *o* or *u*, which, under the protection of the terminations, appears as the final letter of the base. We must avoid seeing in λύκε, *lupě*, case terminations: these forms have the same relation to वृक् *vrika* that πέντε, "quinque," have to पञ्च *pancha*; and the old *a*, which appears in λύκος as *o*, in *lupus* as *ũ*, has assumed the form of *ě* without any letter following it. In Zend, the consonant bases, when they have *s* in the nominative, retain it in the vocative also; thus, in the present participle we have frequently found the form of the nominative in the sense of the vocative.

205. Bases in *i* and *u* have, in Sanscrit, Guna; neuters, however, have also the pure vowel: on the other hand,

---

to the theory of the weakest cases (§. 130.), to which in other respects the locative belongs. As, however, bases in अर् *ar* (अर् *ri*), with respect to the rejection and lengthening of the *a*, have a very great agreement with bases in *an*, it must here be further remarked, that these too, in the locative, do not strictly follow the suppression of the *a* in the weakest cases, which is conditionally prescribed in §. 140., but optionally retain the *a*, or reject it; so that with *nāmn-i* also *nāman-i* is used. With *brātar-i*, however, exists no *bhrātr-i*, and the form *pitr-i*, given at §. 132. is an oversight; the Greek πατρ-ί may therefore, with respect to the shortening of the base, be better compared with the dative *pitr-ē*.

polysyllabic feminines in *i* and *u* shorten this final vowel ; while a final *ā*, by the commixture of an *i*, becomes *ē* (§. 2.). The language, however, both by producing and shortening the final vowel, clearly aims at one and the same end, only by opposite ways ; and this end, in fact, is a certain emphasis in the address. To the Guna form *ओ ऽ*, from *a + u*, correspond remarkably the Gothic and Lithuanian ; as *sunau*, *sunai*, resembling the Sanscrit *सूनो sūnó*.\* Gothic feminine bases in *i* do not occur in Ulfilas in the vocative : as, however, they in other respects run parallel to the *u* bases, the vocative *anstai*, from *AN-STI*, might be expected as an analogous form to *handau*. The Lithuanian *i* bases in the vocative extend their theme in the same manner as in the genitive (§. 193.) ; so that, properly, there is no vocative of this class of words, and *amie* answers to *zwáke*, *giesme* (Ruhig's third declension), for *zwákie*, *giesmye*.† Masculine bases, in Gothic, in *i*, like the masculine neuter *a* bases, have lost their final vowel in the vocative, just as in the accusative and nominative ; hence *vulf'*, *daur'*, *gast'*. In bases in *n* the Gothic shares with the Latin the suppression of the final consonant, which has passed over from the nominative to the vocative ; while only the Sanscrit and Zend again introduce

---

\* The Zend can at will attach Guna to a final *u*, or not ; and we find both *𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬎𐬭𐬀 mainyó* and *𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬎𐬭𐬀 mainyu* as the vocative of *𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬎𐬭𐬀 mainyu*, "spirit." On the other hand, we have found a final *i* only, without Guna ; and indeed frequently *𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬎𐬭𐬀 paiti*, "lord." So Vend. S. p. 456, *𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬎𐬭𐬀 𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬎𐬭𐬀 𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬎𐬭𐬀 usihista namânó-paiti*, "arise, lord of the place !" The *i* between the preposition and the verb serves as a conjunctive vowel, to assist the juncture of the words (cf. §. 150. Rem.).

† It follows from this, and from §. 193., that (§. 177.) I have incorrectly assumed *ei* as the termination in the dative. For *áwi-ei*, the division should be made thus, *áwie-i* ; and this is analogous with *zwáke-i*, *giesme-i*, for *zwákie-i*, *giesmye-i*.

into the vocative the nasal which had been dropped in the nominative. Adjectives in German, with respect to the vocative, have departed from the old path, and retain the case-sign of the nominative; hence Gothic *blind's*, "blind." In Old Northern, substantives also follow this irregular use of the nominative sign. The Greek has preserved a tolerable number of its vocatives pure from the nominative sign, and in some classes of words uses the bare base, or that abbreviation of it which the laws of euphony or effeminacy rendered requisite; hence, *τάλαν* opposed to *τάλας*, *χαρίεν* for *χαχίεντ'* opposed to *χαρίεις*, *παῖ* for *παιδ* opposed to *παῖς*. In guttural and labial bases the language has not got free of the nominative sign in the vocative, because *κς* and *πς* (*ξ*, *ψ*) are very favourite combinations, to which the alphabet also has paid homage by particular letters to represent them. Still the vocative *ἄνα*, together with *ἄναξ*, is remarkable, and has that sound which might be expected from a theme *ἄνακτ'*, to which, in its uninflected state, neither *κτ*, nor, conveniently, even the *κ*, could be left. "For the rest it is easy to imagine (says Buttmann, p. 180), that particularly such things as are not usually addressed, if this is the case, prefer retaining the form of the nominative, as *ὦ ποῦς*."\* The Latin has followed still farther the road of corruption in the vocative which was prepared by the Greek, and employs in its place the nominative universally, except in the masculine second declension. The substantive bases mentioned in §. 148. form, in the vocative,

---

\* To this circumstance may also the re-introduction of the case-sign in the neuter be owing, while the Sanscrit employs the bare base. Moreover, this fact also may have co-operated towards the Greek more easily freeing itself in the vocative from the bare primary form, because it appears at the beginning of compounds much more rarely than in Sanscrit. (See §. 112.)

	SANSKRIT.	ZEND.	GREEK.	LATIN.	LITHUAN.	GOTHIC.
m.	<i>vrika</i> ,	<i>vēhrka</i> ,	λύκε,	<i>lupe</i> ,	<i>wilke</i> ,	<i>vulf</i> '.
n.	<i>dāna</i> ,	<i>dāta</i> ,	δῶρο-ν,	<i>donu-m</i> ,	....	<i>daur</i> '.
f.	<i>jihvé</i> ,	<i>hizvé</i> ?	χώρα,	<i>terra</i> ,	<i>ranka</i> ,	<i>giba</i> ?
m.	<i>paté</i> ,	<i>paiti</i> ,	πόσι,	<i>hosti-s</i> ,	....	<i>gast</i> '.
f.	<i>prité</i> ,	<i>āfrīti</i> ,	πόρτι,	<i>siti-s</i> ,	....	....
n.	<i>vāri</i> ,	<i>vairi</i> ,	ἴδρι,	<i>mare</i> ,	....	....
f.	<i>bhaviṣhyanti</i> ,	<i>būshyainli</i> ,	....	....	....	....
m.	<i>sunó</i> ,	<i>pašu</i> ,	ἰχθύ,	<i>pecu-s</i> ,	<i>sunau</i> ,	<i>sunau</i> .
f.	<i>tanó</i> ,	<i>tanu</i> ,	πίτυ,	<i>socru-s</i> ,	....	<i>handau</i> .
n.	<i>madhu</i> ,	<i>maḥhu</i> ,	μέθυ,	<i>pecu</i> ,	....	....
f.	<i>vadhu</i> ,	....	....	....	....	....
m.f.	<i>gāu-s</i> ,	<i>gāu-s</i> ,	βοῦ,	<i>bo-s</i> ,	....	....
f.	<i>nāu-s</i> ,	....	ναῦ,	....	....	....
f.	<i>vāk</i> ,	<i>vāc-s</i> ?	ὄπ-ς,	<i>voc-s</i> ,	....	....
m.	<i>baran</i> ,	<i>barañ-s</i> ,	φέρων,	<i>feren-s</i> ,	<i>sukañ-s</i> ,	<i>fjand</i> .
m.	<i>ātman</i> ,	<i>aśman</i> ,	δαίμον,	<i>sermo</i> ' ,	<i>ākmū</i> ' ,	<i>ahma</i> '.
n.	<i>nāman</i> ,	<i>nāman</i> ,	τάλαν,	<i>nomen</i> ,	....	<i>namó</i> '.
m.	<i>bhrātar</i> ,	<i>brātarē</i> *,	πάτερ,	<i>frater</i> ,	....	<i>bróthar</i> .
f.	<i>duhitar</i> ,	<i>dughdharē</i> *,	θύγατερ,	<i>mater</i> ,	<i>motē</i> ,	<i>dauhtar</i> .
m.	<i>dātār</i> ,	<i>dātare</i> *,	δοτήρ,	<i>dator</i> ,	....	....
n.	<i>vachas</i> ,	<i>vachó</i> ,	ἔπος,†	<i>opus</i> ,	....	....

## DUAL.

## NOMINATIVE, ACCUSATIVE, VOCATIVE.

206. These three cases have, in Sanscrit, in the masculine and feminine, the termination **द्वौ** *du*, which probably arose from **दास्** *ds* by vocalization of the *s* (cf. §. 56<sup>b</sup>. and 198.), and is therefore only a stronger form of the plural termination *as*. The dual, both in the cases mentioned and in the others, prefers the broadest terminations, because it is based on a more precise intention than the indefinite

\* See §. 44.

† See §. 128.



plural, and needs, therefore, stronger emphasis, and more lively personification. Compare also, in the neuter, the long *ī* of the dual with the short *i* of the plural; as अश्रुणी *aśrunī* with अश्रूणि *aśrūṇi*.

[illegible]

\* Cf. Gramm. Crit Add. to r. 137.

† Cf. Anquetil II. 175. The two Genii, which Anquetil writes *Khor-dad* and *Amerdad*, appear very frequently in the dual, also with the termination *bya* (§. 215.); and where they occur with plural terminations, this may be ascribed to the disuse of the dual, and the possibility of replacing





have the less doubt, because in the other declensions the Lithuanian dual also agrees in this case most strictly with the Sanscrit, and the Lithuanian *u* or *û* (*uo*) is, in some other places, equally the representative of an old *ā* (see §. 162.); compare, *dūmi*, or *dūdu*, "I give," with ददामि *dadāmi*; *dūsu*, "I will give," with दास्यामि *dāsyāmi*. And the monosyllabic pronominal bases also in *a* sound in the dual *û*; thus, *tû* = तौ *tā*, *kû* = कौ. We hold, therefore, the Vêda form वृका *vrikā*, the Zend 𐬯𐬀𐬭𐬀 *věhrkā*, and the Lithuanian *wilkù*, as identical in principle: we are, at least, much more inclined to this view of the matter than to the assumption that the *u* of *wilkù* is the last portion of the Sanscrit diphthong औ *āu*, and that *wilkù* belongs to the form वृकौ *vrikāu*. In the vocative the Lithuanian employs a shorter *u*, and the accent falls on the preceding syllable: thus *wilku*, opposed to *wilkù*, in which respect may be compared πάτερ opposed to πατήρ, and §. 205.

210. Masculine and feminine bases in *i* and *u* suppress, in Sanscrit, the dual case termination औ *āu*, and, in compensation, lengthen the final vowel of the base in its uninflected form; thus, पती *patī*, from पति *pati*; सूनू *sūnū*, from सून *sīnu*. The 𐬔𐬀𐬭𐬀 *bāzv-āo*, "arms," (from *bāzu*) mentioned in §. 207., is advantageously distinguished from these abbreviated forms. The curtailed form is not, however, wanting in Zend also, and is even the one most in use. From 𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬀 *mainyu*, "spirit," we frequently find the dual 𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬀 *mainyū*: on the other hand, for 𐬥𐬀𐬭𐬀 *ērēzū*, "two fingers," we meet with the shortened form 𐬥𐬀𐬭𐬀 *ērēzu*, which is identical with the theme (Vend. S. p. 318. 𐬥𐬀𐬭𐬀 𐬔𐬀 *dva ērēzu*).

211. The Lithuanian, in its *i* and *u* bases, rests on the above-mentioned Sanscrit principle of the suppression of the termination and lengthening of the final vowel: hence, *avi*, "two sheep" (fem.), answers to अवी *avī*, from अवि *avi*; and *sunū*, "two sons," to सूनू *sūnū*. On this principle rests

also the Greek dual of the two first declensions. If it be not desired entirely to remove the  $\omega$  of  $\lambda\acute{\upsilon}\kappa\omega$  from a Grecian soil, and banish it completely to India, it may be allowed to seek its origin, not in the long  $a$  of वृक्का *vrikā*, but in the short  $o$  of the base, as the first declension has a long  $\alpha$  in the dual, because its bases terminate with  $\alpha$ , although in the common dialect this letter is very frequently represented by  $\eta$ . Or may it, perhaps, have happened, that, in the dual  $\alpha$  of the first declension an  $i$  subscribed has been lost, and thus  $\tau\acute{\alpha}$  for  $\tau\hat{\alpha}i$  would correspond to the Sanscrit ते *tē* (from *tā + i* or *i*)? Be that as it may, still the dual has always the quality  $\alpha$ , because it is comprehended in the base, and the  $\omega$  of  $\lambda\acute{\upsilon}\kappa\omega$  may be regarded as merely the lengthening of the  $o$  of  $\lambda\acute{\upsilon}\kappa o$ ; for it must be assumed, that if the Sanscrit  $a$  bases had preserved the short  $\alpha$  in Greek, and वृक्कस् *vrika-s* had become  $\lambda\acute{\upsilon}\kappa\alpha-s$ , even the dual would be  $\lambda\acute{\upsilon}\kappa\bar{\alpha}$ , and not  $\lambda\acute{\upsilon}\kappa\omega$ .

212. Neuters have, in the Sanscrit dual, for the termination of the cases under discussion, not औ *au*, but *i*, as in the plural they have not *as* but short *i* (इ). A final  $a$  of the base with this *i* passes into ए *ē* (§. 2.); hence, शते *śatē*, "two hundred," from शतई *śata-i*: other vowels interpose a euphonic  $n$ ; hence, तालुनी *tālu-n-i*, "the palate." In Zend I can quote the neuter dual only in the  $a$  bases; as, for example, we frequently find  $\text{𐬰𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬎𐬌}$  *śaitē* (§. 41.), answering to the Sanscrit शते *śatē*; and  $\text{𐬰𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬭𐬀𐬎𐬌}$  *duyē hazanrē*, "two thousand," (§. 43.) for द्वे सहस्रे *dvē sahasrē*.

213. The Greek has renounced a termination distinguishing the neuter from the two natural genders; but the Sanscrit appears to have extended the neuter *i* mentioned above also to the feminine  $\acute{a}$  bases. But the coincidence of the feminine form जिह्वे *jihvē*, "two tongues," from जिह्वा *jihvā*, with the neuter दाने *dānē*, "two gifts," is, as the Zend instructs us, only external, and the two forms



*émi* has arisen from the Sanscrit अयामि *ayāmi*, by rejecting the *ā*. We may support the derivation of जिह्वे *jihvé* from जिह्वयौ *jihvay-āu*, by this circumstance, also, that in the Vêda dialect the feminine *ī* bases may lose the dual termination *āu*, and then display the naked base; thus, in the scholia to Pânini वाराही उपानहौ *vārāhī upānahāu*, "boar-leather shoes," for वाराह्यौ *vārāhyāu*. It is very remarkable, that even this Vêda form, only one example of which can be quoted, can be referred to the Zend language. We find, frequently,  $\text{𐬭𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬎𐬀}$  *tevíshī* applied to feminine dual substantives (e.g. Vend. S. p. 225.); and I infer that its theme ends with a long, not a short *i*, from the frequently-occurring plural accusative  $\text{𐬭𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬎𐬀𐬎𐬎𐬀}$  *tevíshís* (Vend. S. pp. 99, 102).\*

214. To the Sanscrit-Zend feminine dual forms in *é* answer the Lithuanian in *ì*, as *rankì*, from *RANKĀ*; so that of the diphthong  $\text{𐬭𐬀}$  *é* only the last element is left. The Lithuanian forms the accusative dual, in contradistinction to the kindred languages, according to the analogy of the singular, by a ringing nasal, e.g. *wilkuñ*. The Latin has preserved only in *duo* and *ambo* a remnant of the dual corresponding to the Greek, which, however, in the oblique cases, is replaced by plural terminations. Here follows a general view of the nominative, accusative, and vocative dual (see §. 148.).

---

\* It is perhaps a participle of the reduplicated pret., according to the analogy of the Sanscrit तेनिवस् *ténivas*, fem. तेनुषी *ténushī* (Gramm. Crit. §. 603.); and indeed, from the root  $\text{𐬭𐬀𐬎𐬌}$  *tav*, "to be able," it may signify "powerful, strong." The  $\xi$  *e* for  $\text{𐬭𐬀}$  *é* is explained by the influence of the  $\text{𐬭𐬀}$  *v*. And  $\text{𐬭𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬎𐬀𐬎𐬎𐬀}$  *utayūtí* also is an adjective feminine dual; but I am unable to quote examples of the other cases of this word, from which to learn whether  $\text{𐬭𐬀}$  *í* or  $\text{𐬭𐬀}$  *í* is its final vowel.

	SANSKRIT.	ZEND.	GREEK.	LITHUANIAN.
m.	<i>vrikāu,</i>	<i>vēhrkāo,</i>	....	....
	<i>vrikā,</i>	<i>vēhrkā,*</i>	λύκω,	N. <i>wilkù</i> , V. <i>wilku</i> .
n.	<i>dānē,</i>	<i>dālē,</i>	δώρω,	....
f.	....	<i>hizvay-āo,</i>	....	....
	<i>jihvē,</i>	<i>hizvē,</i>	χώρᾱ,	N. <i>rankì</i> , V. <i>ránki</i> .
m.	<i>patī,</i>	<i>paitī?</i>	πόσι-ε,	N. <i>patì</i> , V. <i>pūtì</i> .
f.	<i>prītī,</i>	<i>āfrītī?</i>	πόρτι-ε,	N. <i>amì</i> , N. <i>āwi</i> .
n.	<i>vāri-n-ī,</i>	....	ἰδρι-ε,	....

\* While consonant bases occur in the dual both with a long and a short *a*, the *a* bases, contrary to the practice otherwise adopted of shortening a final *ā*, exhibit in the nom. acc. dual, for the most part, the original long vowel. I deduce this, among other words, from the so-called *Amshaspants*, which, together with the feminine form noticed at §. 207. Rem., are found also as masculine; e. g. Vend. S. pp. 14. 30, 31, &c.: *amēshā spēntā* *hucsathrá* *hudāonhō* *āyēšē*, “I glorify the two Amshaspants (*non conniventesque sanctos*) the good rulers, who created good.” If *amēsha spēntā* and *hucsathrá* were plural forms, the final *a* would be short, or at least appear much more frequently short than long; while, on the contrary, these repeatedly recurring expressions, if I mistake not, have everywhere a long *a*, and only in the vocative a short *a* (Vend. S. p. 67. Cf. §. 209.). That the epithet *hudāonhō* is in the plural cannot incur doubt, from the dual nature of the *Amshasp* (cf. §. 208.): this resembles, to a certain degree, the use of adjective genitives referring to a substantive in the ablative, which was mentioned in §. 180. We find, also, the forms *ameshāo spēntāo* (Vend. S. p. 313.), which indeed might also be feminine plural forms, but shew themselves only as masculine duals, in the same meaning as the so frequent *amēshā spēntā*. We find also, frequently, *spēnistā mainyū*, “the two most holy spirits” (p. 80), through which the dual form in *ā* of bases in *a* is likewise confirmed in the most unequivocal manner. The answer to the query, Whether generally only two *Amshaspants* are to be assumed? whether the genitive plural (*ameshananm spēntananm*), and sometimes also the accusative plural, is only the representative of the dual, which is very uncertain and shaken in its use, and which is entirely wanting in the genitive? whether under the name *Amshaspants*, perhaps, we should always





	SANSKRIT.	ZEND.	GREEK.	LITHUANIAN.
	<i>vâch-â</i> ,*	<i>vâch-a</i> ,	<i>ὄπ-ε</i> ,	....
m.	<i>bharant-âu</i> ,	<i>barant-âo</i> ,	....	....
	<i>bharant-â</i> ,	<i>barant-a</i> ,	<i>φέρωντ-ε</i> ,	....
m.	<i>âtman-âu</i> ,†	<i>ašman-âo</i> ,	....	....
	<i>âtman-â</i> ,	<i>ašman-a</i> ,	<i>δαίμων-ε</i> ,	N. V. <i>ákmen-u</i> ,
n.	<i>nâmn-î</i> ,	....	<i>τάλαν-ε</i> ,	....
m.	<i>bhrâtar-âu</i> ,	<i>brâtar-âo</i> ,	....	....
	<i>bhrâtar-â</i> ,	<i>brâtar-a</i> ,	<i>πατέρ-ε</i> ,	....
f.	<i>duhitar-âu</i> ,	<i>dughdhar-âo</i> ,	....	....
	<i>duhitar-â</i> ,	<i>dughdhar-a</i> ,	<i>θυγατέρ-ε</i> ,	....
m.	<i>dâtâr-âu</i> ,†	<i>dâtâr-ao</i> ,	....	....
	<i>dâtâr-â</i> ,	<i>dâtâr-a</i> ,	<i>δοτήρ-ε</i> ,	....
n.	<i>vachas-î</i> ,	....	<i>ἔπε(σ)-ε</i> ,	....

## INSTRUMENTAL, DATIVE, ABLATIVE.

215. These three cases have in the Sanscrit and Zend dual a common termination; while in Greek the genitive has joined itself to the dative, and borrowed its termination from it. It is in Sanscrit भ्याम् *bhyâm*, which in Zend has been abbreviated to 𐬀𐬀𐬀 *bya*. Connected with the same is, first, the termination भ्यम् *bhyam*, which, in the pronoun of the two first persons, denotes the dative singular and plural, but in the singular of the first person has become abbreviated to ह्यम् *hyam* (§. 23.). This abbreviation appears, however, to be very ancient, as the Latin agrees

---

\* The Vêda duals in *â* are as yet only cited in bases in *a*, *n*, and *ar* (𑖀, §. 1.); however, the Zend leads us to expect their extension to the other consonant declensions, as also the circumstance that, in other parts of grammar, in the Vêdas *â* is occasionally found for *âu*, and other diphthongs; as नाभा *nâbhâ*, as locative for नाभौ *nâbhâu*, from नाभि *nâbhi*, “navel.”

† See the marginal note marked (\*), p. 229.

remarkably with it; and *mi-hi* corresponds to मयम् *ma-hyam*, as *ti-bi* does to तुभ्यम् *tu-bhyam*. In the second place, भ्यस् *bhyas*, which expresses the dative and ablative plural, is pronounced in Zend *byô* (§. 56<sup>b</sup>), in Latin *bus*, suppressing the *y*, and with the usual change of *as* into *us*. The Lithuanian has *mus* for *bus* in the dative plural (§. 63.): this more complete form has, however, remained only in the pronoun of the two first persons, where *mu-mus*, "*nobis*," *yu-mus*, "*vobis*," are used as well as *mu-m's*, *ju-m's*; while in all other words we find simply *ms* as the sign of the dative—*wilka-ms*, &c. In the dual dative the Lithuanian has only the *m* of the Sanscrit termination भ्याम् *bhyâm*, as *wilka-m*. This *m* is, however, not the final letter of *bhyâm*, but the initial labial, *b*, in a nasal form (§. 63.)\* : to me, at least, it appears improper to regard this dual termination otherwise than that of the kindred plural case; and I have no doubt of the identity of the *m* of *wilka-m*, λύκοιν, with that of *wilka-ms* (for *wilka-mus*), λύκοις. According to this explanation, therefore, the German plural dative corresponds to the Lithuanian dual dative, *vulfa-m*, *gasti-m*, *sunu-m*.†

216. A third form related to the dual termination भ्याम् *bhyâm* is भिस् *bhis*, as sign of the instrumental plural. This termination, which is in Zend 𑀧𑀭𑀯𑀭𑀮 *bîs*, has in Latin

---

\* On the facile transition of *v* into *m* (cf. p. 114.) rests also, I doubt not, the connection of the termination युवाम् *yuvâm*, "ye two," आवाम् *âvâm*, "we two," with the common termination *âu*, before vowels *âv*, which in the pronouns spoken of has stiffened into *âm*, and in this form has remained even before consonants. Whether the case is the same with the verbal third dual person ताम् *tâm* shall be discussed hereafter.

† Cf. Grimm I. 828. 17, where the identity of the Lithuanian-German inflection *m* with the *b* (*bh* of the older languages) was first shewn. When, however, Grimm, l. c., says of the Lithuanian that only the pronouns and adjectives have *ms* in the dative plural, the substantives simply *m*, this is perhaps a mistake, or the plural is named instead of the dual; for Ruhig gives *ponams*, "*dominis*," *akims*, "*oculis*," &c.

fixed itself in the dative and ablative,\* which must together supply the place of the instrumental; while in Lithuanian, with the exchange of the labial medial for the nasal of this organ (§. 63.), *mis* is the property of the instrumental alone, so that *puti-mis* answers to *पतिभिस् pati-bhis*, *പതി-മിസ് paiti-bis*.

217. I have already elsewhere affirmed, that the Greek termination  $\phi\iota$ ,  $\phi\iota\nu$ , is to be referred to this place,<sup>†</sup> and what is there said may be introduced here also. If  $\phi\iota\nu$ , and not  $\phi\iota$ , be assumed to be the elder of the two forms, we may offer the conjecture that it has arisen from  $\phi\iota\varsigma$ , following the analogy of the change of  $\mu\epsilon\varsigma$  into  $\mu\epsilon\nu$  in the 1st person plural, which corresponds to the Sanscrit *mas* and Latin *mus*<sup>‡</sup>;  $\phi\iota\varsigma$  would correspond to the Sanscrit *bhis* and Latin *bis*, in *nobis*, *vobis*. Perhaps, also, there originally existed a difference between  $\phi\iota$  and  $\phi\iota\nu$  (which we find used indifferently for the singular and plural), in that the former may have belonged to the singular, the latter to the plural; and they may have had the same relation to one another that, in Latin, *bi* has to *bis* in *tibi* and *vobis*; and that, in Lithuanian, *mi* has to *mis* in *akimi*, “through the eye,” and *akimis*, “through the eyes.” It has escaped notice that the terminations  $\phi\iota$  and  $\phi\iota\nu$  belong principally to the dative: their locative and instrumental use—*αὐτόφι*, *θύρηφι*, *βίηφι*—is explained by the fact, that the common dative also has assumed the sign of these relations. The strict genitive use of the termination  $\phi\iota$ ,  $\phi\iota\nu$ , cannot perhaps be denied; for if prepositions, which are elsewhere used in construction with the genitive, occur

\* In the 1st and 2d pronoun (*no-bis*, *vo-bis*), where *bis* supplies the place of the *bus* which proceeds from *भ्यस् bhyas*.

† Trans. Berlin Academy, 1826. Comparison of Sanscrit with its kindred languages, by Prof. Bopp. Essay III. p. 81.

‡ Observe, also, that the Sanscrit instrumental termination *bhis* has been, in Prakrit, corrupted to *हि hin*.

also with the case in  $\phi\iota$ ,  $\phi\iota\nu$ , we are not compelled, on this account, to regard the latter as the genitive or representative of the genitive. In general, all prepositions, which are used in construction with the genitive, would, according to the sense, be better used with an ablative or a locative, if these cases were particularly represented in Greek. The suffix  $\theta\epsilon\nu$  also, of genuine ablative signification, expressing separation from a place, is incorrectly considered to represent the genitive termination, where the latter, in the common dialect, has received the sign of the lost ablative. In  $\delta\sigma\sigma\epsilon$   $\delta\alpha\kappa\rho\nu\acute{o}\phi\iota\nu$   $\pi\acute{\iota}\mu\pi\lambda\alpha\nu\tau\omicron$ ,  $\delta\alpha\kappa\rho\nu\acute{o}\phi\iota\nu$  would, in Sanscrit, be rendered by  $\text{अश्रुभिस्}$  *ásrubhis*: the relation is entirely instrumental, and is not changed because the verb mentioned is more usually, though less suitably, used with the genitive. The same is the case with  $\delta\sigma\sigma\epsilon$   $\delta\alpha\kappa\rho\nu\acute{o}\phi\iota\nu$   $\tau\acute{\epsilon}\rho\sigma\alpha\nu\tau\omicron$ . In  $\text{Ἰλιόφι κλυτὰ τείχεα}$  it is not requisite to make  $\text{Ἰλιόφι}$  governed by  $\text{τείχεα}$ , but it can be regarded as locative “*to Ilium*.” And in Od. XII. 45. ( $\text{πολὺς δ' ἄμφ' ὀστεόφιν θῖς ἀνδρῶν πυθομένων}$ ) there is no necessity to look upon  $\text{ὀστεόφιν}$  as the genitive, for it can be aptly rendered by *ossibus*. I know no passages besides where a genitive meaning could be given to forms in  $\phi\iota$  and  $\phi\iota\nu$ . To the accusative, likewise, the form  $\phi\iota$ ,  $\phi\iota\nu$ , is foreign, and according to its origin does not suit it; nor does it appear in the train of prepositions, which elsewhere occur with the accusative, with the single exception of  $\epsilon\varsigma$   $\acute{\epsilon}\nu\eta\eta\phi\iota\nu$  in Hesiod (cf. Buttmann, p. 205). As to the opinion of the old Grammarians, that  $\phi\iota$ ,  $\phi\iota\nu$ , may stand also in the nominative and vocative, and as to the impropriety of the  $\nu$  subscribed before this termination in the dative singular of the first declension, we refer the reader to what Buttmann (p. 205) has rightly objected on this head.

218. The neuters in  $\Sigma$ , mentioned in §. 128., are nearly the only ones from bases ending with a consonant, which occur in combination with  $\phi\iota$ ,  $\phi\iota\nu$ , in forms like  $\acute{o}\chi\epsilon\sigma\text{-}\phi\iota$ ,

ὄρεσ-φι, στήθεσ-φιν, which have been misunderstood, because the  $\Sigma$  dropped before vowel terminations was not recognised as the property of the base. Of the other consonants,  $\nu$  is the only one, and ΚΟΤΥΛΗΔΟΝ the only  $\nu$  base, which occurs in combination with  $\phi\nu$ ; and since N does not combine with  $\Phi$  so readily as  $\Sigma$ , it assumes an auxiliary vowel  $o$ —κοτυληδόν-ο-φιν—after the analogy of compound words like κυν-ο-θαρσής. This example is followed, without the necessity for it however, by δάκρυ—δακρυόφιν; while ναῦ-φιν, in an older point of view, resembles exactly the Sanscrit नौभिस् *nāubhis*; for in compounds, also, the base NAY keeps free from the conjunctive vowel  $o$ , on which account ναύσταθμον may be compared with Sanscrit compounds like नौस्थ *nāu-stha* “standing (being) in the ship.”

219. But to return to the Sanscrit dual termination भ्याम् *bhyām*, it is further to be remarked, that before it a final  $a$  is lengthened; hence, वृकाभ्याम् *vṛikābhyām* for वृकाभ्याम् *vṛikabhyām*. It hardly admits of any doubt, that this lengthening extended to the kindred plural termination भिस् *bhis*; and that, hence, from वृक *vṛika* also *vṛikā-bhis* would be formed. The common dialect has, however, abbreviated this form to वृकैस् *vṛikāis*, which is easily derived from *vṛikābhis* by rejecting the *bh*; for ऐ *ai* is, according to §. 2.,  $=ā + i$ . This opinion, which I have before expressed,\* I can now support by new arguments. In the first place, which did not then occur to me in discussing this question, the pronouns of the two first persons really form from their appended pronoun स्म *sma*, *smā-bhis*; hence अस्माभिस् *asmābhis*, युष्माभिस् *yushmābhis*; which forms stand in the same relation with the वृकाभिस् *vṛikā-bhis*, assumed by me, that the accusatives अस्मान् *asmān*, युष्मान् *yushmān*, do with वृकान् *vṛikān*, “*lupos*,” Secondly, the opinion which

---

\* Trans. Berlin Academy, 1826. Comparison of Sanscrit with its kindred Languages, by Prof. Bopp. Essay III. p. 79.

I arrived at theoretically has, since then, been so far practically established by the Vêda dialect, that, in it, from a final **अ** *a* not *â-bhis* but *ê-bhis* has been formed, according to the analogy of the dative ablative, as **वृकेभ्यस्** *vrikêbhyas*; hence, **अश्वेभिस्** *asvêbhis*, “*per equos*,” from **अश्व** *asva*. In the common dialect the pronominal form **एभिस्** *ê-bhis*, “*per hos*,” answers to this Vêda form, which must properly be derived from the pronominal base **अ** *a*, which generally plays the chief part in the declension of **इदम्** *idam*. If, then, on one side, from the pronoun **अ** *a* springs the form **एभिस्** *ê-bhis*; on the other side, from **अस्म** *asma* and **युष्म** *yushma* proceed the forms **अस्माभिस्** *asmâbhis*, **युष्माभिस्** *yushmâbhis*; and though the Vêda dialect, in its substantive and adjective bases in *a*, attaches itself to the former form, still no necessity hence arises for supposing the abbreviated *âis* to be based on an *ê-bhis*,\* as that could never lead to *âis*. Perhaps, however, *âbhis* might become *êbhis*, either through the assimilative force of the *i* of *bhis*, or through analogy to the dative *ê-bhyas*, the *ê* of which may, in like manner, owe its origin to the re-active influence of the **य** *y*.†

220. The Prakrit has fully followed out the path commenced by the Vêda dialect, and changed into **ए** *ê* the *â* of

---

\* From *êbhis* would come, after rejecting the *bh*, not *âis*, but *ayis*, for *ê*, = *a + i*, cannot be united with a following *i* to a diphthong, or, as it is itself already a diphthong, to a triphthong.

† I do not regard the Vêda **नद्येस्** *nadyâis*, for **नदीभिस्** *nadî-bhis*, as an abbreviation of *nadî-bhis* (for after rejecting the *bh*, from *nadî + is* would be formed *nadîs*), but for a very common instrumental, for which an extension of the base *nadî* to *nadya* is to be assumed. On the other hand, the Zend pronominal instrumental *dîs* mentioned by Burnouf (Nouv. Journ. Asiat. III. 310.) may here be considered, which occurs frequently in the Izheshne, and is probably an abbreviation of **دیبیس** *dibîs* or **دیبیس** *dibîs*, from a base *dî*, the accusative of which **دیم** *dim*, “*him*,” is often found with *i* unlengthened, contrary to §. 64. The connection of the base **دی** *dî* with **تا** *ta* cannot, on this account, be disputed.

221. Before the dual termination **𑀧𑀭𑀢𑀺** *bya* the Zend, in its *a* bases, differs from the Sanscrit in the same way as the Zend and Prakrit do before the termination **𑀧𑀭𑀢𑀺** *bhis*, **𑀧𑀭𑀢𑀺** *hin*; it employs, namely, *é* for *á*: but from *věhrkē-bya*, according to §§. 28. 41. comes *věhrkaēibya*. Thus, in the Vendidad, **𑀧𑀭𑀢𑀺𑀧𑀭𑀢𑀺𑀧𑀭𑀢𑀺𑀧𑀭𑀢𑀺** *hvaēibya pādhaēibya*, “*suis pedibus*,” = **𑀧𑀭𑀢𑀺𑀧𑀭𑀢𑀺𑀧𑀭𑀢𑀺𑀧𑀭𑀢𑀺** *svābhyām pādābhyām*; **𑀧𑀭𑀢𑀺𑀧𑀭𑀢𑀺𑀧𑀭𑀢𑀺𑀧𑀭𑀢𑀺** *zaštaēibya* (**𑀧𑀭𑀢𑀺𑀧𑀭𑀢𑀺𑀧𑀭𑀢𑀺𑀧𑀭𑀢𑀺** *hastābhyām*) “*manibus*.” But in this case, also, the diphthong *ē* is supplied by *ai* (§. 33.); e.g. **𑀧𑀭𑀢𑀺𑀧𑀭𑀢𑀺𑀧𑀭𑀢𑀺𑀧𑀭𑀢𑀺** *ubōibya*, “*ambobus*” (Vend. S. p. 305.). If in this form the lost nasal be restored, and it be assumed (of which I have no doubt) that the Greek dual termination *iv* is an abbreviation of the Sanscrit *bhyām*;<sup>\*</sup> then the Homeric forms like **𑀧𑀭𑀢𑀺𑀧𑀭𑀢𑀺𑀧𑀭𑀢𑀺𑀧𑀭𑀢𑀺** *iv* are to be compared with the **𑀧𑀭𑀢𑀺𑀧𑀭𑀢𑀺𑀧𑀭𑀢𑀺𑀧𑀭𑀢𑀺** *ubōi-bya*

\* By rejecting the labial, as in वृकैस् *ṛikāis* from वृकाभिस् *ṛikābhis*, and by contracting the याम् *yām* to *iv*, as when, in Sanscrit, for *yashta*, *ishta* is said, from *yuj*, “to sacrifice,” and in Zend *ḥim*, “*hæc*,” for *iyam* (see, also, §. 42.).



above mentioned; where, therefore, the first *ι* would fall to the base, which it lengthens, the other to the termination. The third declension, by its forms like *δαιμόν-οιν*, might give rise to the conjecture, that *οιν* and not *ιν* is the true termination: the latter, however, is shewn to be so from the two first declensions, where *ιν* and not *οιν* is attached to the final vowel of the base (*Μούσα-ιν*, *λόγο-ιν*). In the third, therefore, we explain the *ο* before *ιν* in the same manner as, §. 218. before *φιν* (*κοτυληδον-ό-φιν*); viz. as a conjunctive vowel, which has made its way from the bases which necessarily have it, i.e. from those terminating in a consonant into those which might dispense with it (into the bases in *ι* and *υ*); as, in general, in the third declension the consonant bases have given the tone, and have shewn the way to the vowels *ι* and *υ*. It might, however, not have been necessary for the conjunctive vowel *ο* to make its appearance between consonants and the termination, as *δαιμον-ιν* could very easily be uttered; but the *ο* of *δαιμόνοιν* comes evidently from a time when the *ιν* was still preceded by the consonant, which the corresponding Sanscrit termination *dhyaṃ* leads us to expect; in all probability a *φ*; thus, *δαιμόν-ο-ιν*, from *δαιμον-ο-φιν*.\* We should have, therefore, here a different *φιν* from that which, in §. 217., we endeavoured to explain from *φίς*, *भिस्* *bhis*: the nasal in the dual (*φ*)*ιν* stands quite regularly for its predecessor *m*, as, in general, at the end of words. In order to present to our

---

\* The conjunctive vowel *ο*, therefore, before the dual termination *ιν*, has an origin exactly similar to that of the possessive suffix *εντ*, which has been already elsewhere compared with the Sanscrit *वन्त* *vant*. *Εντ* must therefore have been originally pronounced *fεντ*; and the conjunctive vowel, which the digamma made requisite or desirable before consonant bases, and which, from thence, has extended itself to the whole third declension, has remained also after the digamma has been dropped, and thus *πυρ-ό-εις* answers to *πυροῖν*, from *πυρ-ο-ῖν*: on the other hand, *τυρό-εις* to *τύροιν* (*τυρο-ῖν*).

view still more clearly how forms quite similar take root in the language as corruptions of preceding dissimilar forms, let the form *ἔτυπτον* be considered as the first person singular and third person plural; in one case from *ἔτυπτομ*, in the other from *ἔτυπτοντ*.

222. If the dual termination *ιν* be explained as a contraction of *bhyām*, we shall have found, also, the origin of the dative plural termination *ιν*, which appears to have been changed in this number in the pronouns of one gender as it were by accident (*ἡμ' -ιν*, *ὕμ' -ιν*, *σφ' -ιν*, together with *σφί -σι*). The Greek, however, in this respect, is guided or misled by the Sanscrit; or, more correctly, the distinction of the plural dative of the pronouns of one gender is very ancient, and the Sanscrit has in them *भ्यम् bhyam* as termination (*अस्माभ्यम् asmā-bhyam*, “*nobis*,” *युष्माभ्यम् yushmā-bhyam*, “*vobis*”), opposed to the *भ्यस् bhyas* of all other words. From this *bhyam*, then, we arrive at *ιν* quite as easily, or more so, than from the dual termination *bhyām* (cf. §. 42.). As, however, *भ्यम् bhyam*, and its abbreviated form *ह्यम् hyam*, according to §. 215., has also its place in the singular dative of the pronouns of one gender, but occurs nowhere else; as, moreover, the Latin also, in the pronouns referred to, has maintained a genuine dative termination, and to the common *i*, which is borrowed from the locative, presents in contrast the termination *bi* or *hi* (for *bhi*) (§. 200.); we can, therefore, in the singular *ιν* also of *ἐμ' -ιν*, *τε -ιν*, *τ' -ιν*, *ἱν*, *σφ' -ιν*, see nothing else than an abbreviation of *भ्यम् bhyam*, a form which the Latin and Greek have shared in such a manner, that the former has retained the beginning and the latter the end. In the *i* both coincide.\* The occasional accu-

---

\* A short time since, Max. Schmidt, in his excellent treatise “*Commentatio de Pronomine Græco et Latino*” (p. 77), endeavoured to connect the termination *ιν* here treated of with the Sanscrit in a different way, by designating it as the sister form of the pronominal locative termination

sative use of this termination, in Theocritus, is to be explained from its original signification being no longer felt, and the exchange of its *ν* with that of the accusative thereby caused. On the other hand, we have in *μίν* and *νίν* real accusatives, and should therefore divide them *μίν-ν*, *νίν-ν*; and not assume, with Buttmann (p. 296.), a connection between this form and the dative *-ίν*.

223. As to the origin of the case-suffixes *भिस्* *bhi-s*, *भ्यम्* *bhy-am*, *भ्याम्* *bhy-ām*, and *भ्यस्* *bhy-as*, which begin with *भ्य* *bhy* (from *भि* *bhi*), we must notice, first, their connection with the preposition *अभि* *abhi*, "to," "towards," "against," (whence *अभितस्* *abhi-tas*, "at," cf. "*apud*"). However, in *abhi* itself *bhi* is clearly, in like manner, the termination, and the demonstrative *अ* *a* the theme; so that this preposition, in respect to its termination, is to be regarded as a sister form to the Latin *ti-bi*, *si-bi*, *i-bi*, *u-bi*;\* just as another preposition, which springs from the pronominal base *a*, viz. *अधि* *adhi*, "over," finds analogous forms in the Greek locatives, like *ὄ-θι*, *ἄλλο-θι*, *οὐρανó-θι* (§. 16.). Related to the suffix *धि* *dhi* is *धा* *dha*, which has been retained in the common dialect only in the abbreviation *हा*, in *i-हा*, "here," and in the preposition *सा-हा*, "with;" but in the Vêda dialect exhibits the original form and more extended diffusion, and in the Zend, also, is found in several pro-

---

mination *इन्* *in* (§. 201.). In this view similar forms would be contrasted, exclusive of the length of the Greek *ιν*, which, according to my explanation, may pass as compensation for the *a*, which has been dropped. Still I lay less stress on the difference of quantity than on this, that it is precisely the pronouns of one gender in the Sanscrit, which exhibit in the locative not *in* but the common *i* (§. 201.), but I attach still more weight to what has been said above in support of my opinion.

\* In Prakrit the termination *हिं* *hin*, which is connected with *भि* *bhi* (cf. §. 217.), unites also with other pronominal bases, for the formation of locative adverbs, as *तहिं* *ta-hin*, "there," *कहिं* *ka-hin*, "where."

nominal bases with a locative signification; e. g.  $\text{अत्र}$  *ava-dha*, "here." In the Greek, compare  $\theta\alpha$  of  $\acute{\epsilon}\nu\theta\alpha$ , opposed to  $\theta\epsilon\nu$ , from  $\acute{\epsilon}\nu\theta\epsilon\nu$ ,  $\acute{\epsilon}\mu\acute{\epsilon}\theta\epsilon\nu$ , &c., from  $\text{अधस्}$  *dhas*, for  $\text{तस्}$  *tas*, in  $\text{अधस्}$  *a-dhas*, "beneath": in which formations  $\text{ध}$  *dh* stands as a permutation of *t*, and occurs in this way, also, in some other formations.\* Therefore *dha*, *dhi* is to be derived from the demonstrative base  $\text{त}$  *ta*; but it is more difficult to trace the origin of the  $\text{भि}$  *bhi* of  $\text{अभि}$  *abhi* (Greek  $\acute{\alpha}\mu\phi\acute{\iota}$ ). I suspect that an initial consonant has been dropped. As in Greek, also,  $\phi\acute{\iota}\nu$  is used for  $\sigma\phi\acute{\iota}\nu$ , and as in Sanscrit  $\text{विंशति}$  *vinśati*, "twenty," is clearly an abbreviation of  $\text{द्विंशति}$  *dvinśati*, and in Zend  $\text{द्वि}$  *bīs*, "twice,"  $\text{द्वि}$  *bitya*, "the second," is used for  $\text{द्वि}$  *dvīs*, (Sanskrit  $\text{द्विस्}$  *dvis*),  $\text{द्वि}$  *dvitya* (Sanskrit  $\text{द्वितीय}$  *dvitīya*), so  $\text{भि}$  *bhi* may be identical with the pronominal base  $\text{स}$  *sva* or  $\text{सि}$  *svi*—whence the Greek  $\sigma\phi\epsilon\acute{\iota}\varsigma$ ,  $\sigma\phi\acute{\iota}\nu$ ,  $\phi\acute{\iota}\nu$ , &c.; and so, indeed, that after the *s* has been dropped, the following semi-vowel has been strengthened or hardened, just as in the Zend  $\text{द्वि}$  *bīs*,  $\text{द्वि}$  *bitya*, and the Latin *bis*, *bi*. The changed sibilant might also be recognised in the aspiration of the  $\text{भ}$  *bh*, as, in Prakrit (§. 166.),  $\text{स्म}$  *sma* has become  $\text{म्ह}$  *mha*; and comes still closer to the case before us in Greek, for  $\sigma\phi\acute{\iota}\nu$  is found also  $\psi\acute{\iota}\nu$ ; and, in Sanscrit, that  $\text{भ}$  *bh* should spring from *b + h* is not entirely unknown; and in this way is to be explained the relation of  $\text{भूयस्}$  *bhūyas*, "more," to  $\text{बहु}$  *bahu*, "much," the *a* being rejected (Gramm. Crit. r. 251. rem.).

224. The following will serve as a general view of the dual termination under discussion, in Sanscrit, Zend, Greek, and Lithuanian:—

---

\* Among others, in the 2d person plural of the middle  $\text{ध्वे}$  *dhvé* and  $\text{ध्वम्}$  *dhvam*, for  $\text{त्वे}$  *tvé*,  $\text{त्वम्}$  *tvam*.

SANSKRIT.	ZEND.	GREEK.	LITHUAN.
m. <i>vrikā-bhyām</i> ,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{vēhrkaēi-bya, or} \\ \text{vēhrkōi-bya,} \end{array} \right\}$	λύκο-ιν,	<i>wilka-m.</i>
f. <i>jihvā-bhyām</i> ,	<i>hizvā-bya</i> ,	χώρα-ιν,	<i>ranko-m.</i>
m. <i>pati-bhyām</i> ,	<i>paiti-bya</i> ,	ποσί-ο-ιν,	<i>pati-m.</i>
f. <i>tanu-bhyām</i> ,	<i>tanu-bya</i> ,	πιτύ-ο-ιν,	....
f. <i>vāg-bhyām</i> ,	<i>vāch-e-bya</i> ,*	ὀπ-ο-ῖν,	....
m. <i>barad-bhyām</i> ,	<i>baran'-bya</i> ,	φερόντ-ο-ιν,	....
m. <i>ātma'-bhyām</i> ,†	<i>aśma'-bya</i> ,	δαιμόν-ο-ιν,	....

\* I deduce this form principally from the base 𐬔𐬀𐬭𐬀 *raoch*, “light,” which often occurs in the terminations beginning with 𐬔 *b*, and always interposes *ξ e* as conjunctive vowel—𐬔𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬔𐬀𐬭𐬀 *raoch-e-bis*, 𐬔𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬔𐬀𐬭𐬀 *raoch-e-byō*. We find, also, 𐬔𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬔𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬔𐬀 *vī-vach-e-bis* (Vend. S. p. 63). Bases in 𐬔 *r* interpose *ξ ē*; those in 𐬔 *t*, when a vowel precedes that letter, conjoin the termination direct (𐬔𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬔𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬔𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬔𐬀 *amēretātāt-bya*, according to §. 38.): on the other hand, the 𐬔 *t* of 𐬔𐬀𐬭𐬀 *nt* is rejected; thus, V. S. p. 9. 𐬔𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬔𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬔𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬔𐬀 *bēřēzēn'-bya*, “splendentibus,” with 𐬔, contrary to §. 60. The form 𐬔𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬔𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬔𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬔𐬀𐬭𐬀 *brvaṭ-byañm*, “superciliis,” also deserves notice, because in this solitary word the case termination appears unreduced (§. 61.). The MS., however, as often as this word occurs, always divides the termination from the base (Vend. S. p. 269, twice, 𐬔𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬔𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬔𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬔𐬀𐬭𐬀 *brvaṭ byañm*; pp. 321 and 322, 𐬔𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬔𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬔𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬔𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬔𐬀𐬭𐬀 *barva byañm*, probably for *bravaṭ byañm*; so that it would seem that 𐬔𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬔𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬔𐬀𐬭𐬀 *brvaṭ* is the ablative singular of a theme 𐬔𐬀𐬭𐬀 *brú* (Sansk. 𐬔𐬀𐬭𐬀 *bhrú*). I have not found this word in any other case: it is not likely, however, that any thing but 𐬔𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬔𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬔𐬀𐬭𐬀 *brvaṭ* or 𐬔𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬔𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬔𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬔𐬀𐬭𐬀 *brvant* is its theme: in the latter case it would be a participial form, and would demonstrate, that instead of the last consonant of *nt*, the last but one also can be rejected. Or are we to regard *brvaṭ byañm* as a form of that singular kind that unites with the termination of the ablative singular that of the dual, and thus 𐬔𐬀𐬭𐬀 *brú* would still be the theme?

† *N*, in Sanscrit and Zend, is rejected before case terminations beginning with a consonant; thus, in Greek, δαίμο-σι, and in Gothic *ahma'-m*.

SANSKRIT.	ZEND.	GREEK.	LITHUAN.
m. <i>bhrātri-bhyām</i> ,*	<i>bhrātar-ē-bya</i> ,	πατέρ-ο-ιν, . . . .	
n. <i>vachō-bhyām</i> ,†	<i>vachō-bya</i> ,	ἐπέ(σ)-ο-ιν, . . . .	

## GENITIVE, LOCATIVE.

225. These two cases, in Sanscrit, have the common termination **ओस्** *ós*, which may be connected with the singular genitive termination. The following are examples: वृक्योस् *vrikay-ós*, जिह्वोस् *jihvay-ós* (cf. §. 158.), पत्योस् *paty-ós*, तन्वोस् *tanv-ós*, वाचोस् *vāch-ós*, भ्रात्रोस् *bhrātr-ós*, वचसोस् *vachas-ós*. In Zend this termination seems to have disappeared, and to be replaced by the plural; likewise in Lithuanian, where, *amj-ú* is both dual and plural genitive.

## PLURAL.

## NOMINATIVE, VOCATIVE.

226. Masculines and feminines have, in Sanscrit, **अस्** *as* for the termination of the nominative plural, with which, as in the kindred languages, the vocative is identical in all declensions. I consider this *as* to be an extended form of the singular nominative sign *s*; so that in this extension of the case-suffix lies a symbolical allusion to plurality: and the *s*, which is too personal for the neuter, is wanting in that gender, in the singular and dual, as well as in the plural. The three numbers, therefore, with regard to their masculine-feminine termination or personal designation, are related to one another, as it were, like positive, comparative, and superlative, and the highest degree belongs to the dual. In Zend **अस्** *as* has, according to §. 56<sup>b</sup>.

---

\* **अर्** *ar* before case terminations beginning with consonants is shortened to **अर्** *ri* (§. 127.).

† See §. 56<sup>b</sup>

become  $\delta$ , or  $\text{as}$  before the appended particles *cha* and *chit*; the Greek exhibits *es*, under the restriction of §. 228.; the Latin *ēs*, with unorganic length of quantity through the influence of the *s*; the Lithuanian has *ēs* in bases in *r*, but elsewhere simple *s*. Thus the words  $\text{दुहितरस् } duhitar-as$ ,  $\text{दुग्धहारश्चा } dughdhar-as'cha$ ,  $\text{दुक्तरैश्च } dukter-es$ , *matres*, correspond with one another.

227. The *a* of the termination is melted down with a preceding  $\text{अ } a$  of the base to  $\text{द } \acute{a}$ ; thus,  $\text{वृकास् } vrik\acute{a}s$ , from *vrika* + *as*, corresponds to the Gothic *vulfōs*, from *VULFA* + *as* (§. 69.). In this concretion only, however, with the vowel of the base, the Gothic has preserved the full termination; but elsewhere, both with vowel and consonant bases, the *s* alone of the old *as* is left, as in general the termination *as* in Gothic polysyllabic forms has everywhere been weakened to *is* or *s* (cf. §§. 135. 191.): hence, *sunyu-s*, *ahman-s*, for *suniv-as*, *ahman-as*. And  $\text{जिह्वास् } jihv\acute{a}s$ , too, is contracted with the termination *as* to  $\text{द } \acute{a}s$ ; hence,  $\text{जिह्वास् } jihv\acute{a}s$ , for *jihvā-as*. It cannot, however, be shewn with certainty, from what has been just said, that the Gothic *gibōs*, from *GIBŌ*, has simple *s* or *as* (contracted with the base vowel to  $\delta = \acute{a}$ ) for its case designation.

228. The masculine pronominal bases in *a* refuse, in Sanscrit, Zend, and Gothic, the full nominative designation, and in place of it extend the base by the addition of an *i*, which, according to §. 2., with the *a* of the base forms  $\text{इ } \acute{e}$ ,\* for which, in Zend, is used  $\text{𐬀 } \acute{e}$  or  $\text{𐬀 } \acute{d}i$ ;

---

\* As  $\text{अ } a$  is lengthened in many other cases to  $\text{इ } \acute{e}$ , and with this the case terminations are then first conjoined, there is good ground to assume that in  $\text{ते } \acute{t}e$ , and similar forms, no case designation at all is contained, and that the pronouns, as purely words of personality, find themselves sufficiently personified in this case through themselves alone; as in the singular *sa* is said for *sas*, in Sanscrit as in Gothic, and in Greek  $\delta$  for  $\acute{\delta}$ ; while in Latin, with *is-te* also *ipse* and *ille* are robbed of the nominative sign. This opinion is remarkably confirmed by the fact that  $\text{अमी } am\acute{i}$  (Gramm.

hence, Sanscrit ते *tē*, Zend 𐬔𐬀 *tē*, Gothic *thai*, "this," answering to the feminine forms तस्य *tās*, 𐬔𐬀𐬭𐬀 *tāo* (§. 56<sup>b</sup>), *thōs*. To this corresponds, in Greek, τοί (Doric for οί). In Greek and Latin, however, this *i*, which practically replaces the termination *as* (ες, *ēs*), has not remained in the masculine pronominal bases in *o* (= 𐬀 *a*, §. 116.); but all other bases of the second, as of the first declension, have, in Greek and Latin, taken example from it; hence, λύκοι, χώραι, for λυκο-ες, χωρα-ες, *lupi* (from *lupoi*), *terræ* (from *terrai*), for *lupo-es*, *terra-es*. The Latin fifth declension, although in its origin identical with the first (§. 121.), has preserved the old termination; hence, *rēs* from *rē-ēs*, as, in Sanscrit, *jihvās* from *jihvā-as*. The Lithuanian has fixed narrower restrictions than the Greek and Latin on the misuse of the pronominal inflexion under discussion, or, to speak more correctly, want of inflexion; it gives, indeed, *wilkai* = λύκοι, *lupi*, but not *rankai*, but *rankos*. Honour, therefore, to the Gothic! that in this respect it has not overstepped by one hair the old Sanscrit-Zend limits; for that the adjective *a* bases, as they in general follow the pronominal declension, give also *ai* for *ōs* (*blindai cæci*) is, therefore, no violation of the old law.

229. In Zend, in consonant bases the dual termination 𐬔𐬀𐬭𐬀 *do* also (from 𐬔𐬀𐬭𐬀 *ds*, §. 207.) occurs with a plural signification; thus, frequently, 𐬔𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬔𐬀𐬭𐬀 *vāch-do*, "voces," 𐬔𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬔𐬀𐬭𐬀?

---

Crit. §. 271.) shews itself clearly through most of the oblique cases, as *amī-byas*, "illis," *amī-shām*, "illorum," to be the naked theme. The form which occurs in the Zend-Avesta 𐬔𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬔𐬀𐬭𐬀 *vispeś-cha*, "omnesque" (V. S. p. 49.), considered as a contraction of *vispay-aś-cha* (cf. §. 244.), leads to the conjecture, that to ते *tē*, and similar uninflected forms, the termination *as* also might attach itself; thus, तयस् *tay-as*. In Zend, the pronominal form in *ē* occurs, for the most part, in the accusative plural; and thus the above-mentioned *vispeś-cha* l. c. stands probably as accusative, although, according to Anquetil's inaccurate translation, it might be regarded as the nominative.



*raoch-do*, “*luces*,” which forms cannot be regarded, perhaps, as regular plurals of bases in *ā*; for I believe I can guarantee that there exists no such base as *𐬯𐬀𐬭𐬀* *vāchā* and *𐬯𐬀𐬭𐬀* *raochā*. The form *𐬯𐬀𐬭𐬀* *donhō* in *a* bases, as *𐬯𐬀𐬭𐬀* *vēhrkdonhō*, “*lupi*,” and “*lupos*,” rests on that in the Vēdas, but which only occurs in the nominative, *आसस् āsas* (§. 56<sup>b</sup>.); e.g. *स्तोमासस् stōmāsas*, “songs of praise,” for *स्तोमास् stōmās*, from *स्तोम stōma*.\*

230. Bases in *i* and *u* have, in Sanscrit, Guna; hence *पतयस् patay-as*, *सूनवस् sūnav-as*, for *paty-as*, *sūnv-as*. The Gothic also has preserved this Guna, but in its weakened form *i* (§. 27.), which, before *u*, becomes *y*; hence, *sunyu-s*, “sons,” (for *suniu-s*, from *sunau-s*.) a form which would be unintelligible without the Guna theory, which has been shewn to belong to the German. In *i* bases the Guna *i* is melted down with that of the base to long *i* (written *ei*, §. 70.); hence, *gastei-s*, *anstei-s*, from *GASTI*, *ANSTI* (cf. p. 105.). The Zend employs Guna or not at pleasure; hence *𐬯𐬀𐬭𐬀* *paily-ō*, or *paitay-ō*,† *𐬯𐬀𐬭𐬀* *pašv-ō*, or *pašav-ō*.

231. Neuters have, in Zend, as in the kindred European languages, a short *a* for their termination‡; perhaps the remains of the full *as*, which belongs to the natural genders, after the *s*, which is too personal for the dead speech-

---

\* This form is, in my opinion, to be so regarded, as that, for greater emphasis, the termination *as* has been a second time appended to the termination, which had become concrete with the base.

† The *i*, which, according to §. 41., is blended with the base, remains in spite of the *a* preceding the *y*.

‡ Simple as this point is, I have nevertheless found it very difficult to come to a firm conclusion regarding it, although, from the first, I have directed my attention towards it. Burnouf has already (Nouv. Journ. Asiat. III. 309, 310.) given the plural neuter form, and instituted comparisons with the Gothic and Greek, &c. But from forms like *hu-mata*, “*bene-cogitata*,” “*hūcta*,” “*bene-dicta*,” it cannot be perceived what the neuter plural termination properly is; because, setting out with the Sanscrit, we are tempted to assume that the true termination in these forms has

less gender, has been dropped. This *a* remains, then, in the accusative. The masculine and feminine have, in the same case, generally likewise *as* (Zend 𐬀𐬎𐬎𐬎 *ascha*). The following are examples: 𐬀𐬎𐬎𐬎𐬎𐬎 *ashavan-a*, “*pu-ra*;” 𐬀𐬎𐬎𐬎𐬎𐬎𐬎𐬎𐬎 *bērēzant-a*, “*splendētia*;” 𐬀𐬎𐬎𐬎𐬎 *vāch-a*, “*verba*;” 𐬀𐬎𐬎𐬎 *nar-a*, “*homines*;” 𐬀𐬎𐬎𐬎𐬎 *ast-a*, “*ossa*.” In nominal bases in *a* the termination is melted down with the vowel of the base: the *ā* so produced has, however, in the received condition of the language, according to a

---

has been dropped, and its loss either compensated by lengthening the final vowel, or not. We must therefore direct our attention to bases with a different termination than *a*, especially to such as terminate with a consonant. The examination of this subject is, however, much embarrassed, in that the Zend, which could not have been expected, without regard to the gender of the singular, is prone to make every noun neuter in the plural; an inclination which goes so far, that the numerous class of *a* bases have hereby entirely lost the masculine nominative, and but sparingly exhibit the masculine accusative. When, *e.g.* *mashya*, “human being,” is, in the plural nominative, likewise *mashya* (with *cha*, *mashyā-cha*), here I am nevertheless convinced that this plural *mashya*, or *mashyā*, is not an abbreviation of *mashyān* from *mashyās* (§. 56<sup>b</sup>.), as in no other part of Zend Grammar 𐬀𐬎𐬎 *ā* or 𐬀𐬎𐬎 *ā* stands for 𐬀𐬎𐬎 *ās*: I am persuaded that this form belongs to the neuter. The replacing, however, of the plural masculine by neuters rests upon a deep internal feeling of the language; for in the plural number it is clear that gender and personality are far in the back ground. The personality of the individual is lost in the abstract infinite and inanimate plurality; and so far we can but praise the Zend for its evitiation of gender in the plural. We must blame it, however, in this point, that it does not, in all places, bring the adjectives or pronouns into concord with the substantives to which they refer, and that in this respect it exhibits a downright confusion of gender, and a disorder which has very much impeded the inquiry into this subject. Thus, *e.g.* *viśpa anaghra raochāo* (not *raoch-ā*), “all lights which have had no beginning”; *tisarō* (fem.) *śata* or *thrayō* (masc.) *śata*, “three hundred”; *chathwārō* (masc.) *śata*, “four hundred.” In general the numbers “three” and “four” appear to have lost the neuter; hence, also, *thrayō csafn-a*, “three nights,” *chathwārō csafn-a*, “four nights”; Vend. S. p. 237, on the other hand, stands *tā nara yā*, “those persons who . . . .” I divide thus *nar-a*,  
although

[illegible]



*u* may also be retained, in the form of a semi-vowel, either pure or with Guna: the latter form I recognise in ᳵ᳚᳚᳚᳚᳚ ᳶ᳚᳚᳚ *yātava* (Vend. S. p. 120; in Olshausen, p. 7), which can only be the plural accusative of ᳶ᳚᳚᳚ ᳶ᳚᳚ *yātu*, for it stands with ᳵ᳚᳚ *agha*, “*peccata*;” and in the same page in Olshausen occurs a derivative of *yātu* in the accusative singular, viz. ᳶ᳚᳚᳚᳚᳚᳚᳚᳚ ᳶ᳚᳚᳚᳚᳚ *yātumēntēm*, “the magician,” “gifted with magic” (according to Anquetil, *magicien*). I render, therefore, *agha yātava* literally by “the sins of sorcery” (Anquetil, “*la magie très mauvaise*”); and in Anquetil’s Vocabulary is (p. 467) ᳶ᳚᳚᳚᳚᳚᳚ ᳶ᳚᳚᳚᳚᳚ *yathvañm*, the regular plural genitive of our base *yātu*, which means, therefore, “of the sorceries”; while Anquetil faultily gives it the meaning of the derivative (*magiciens*), and, according to his custom, takes this oblique case for a nominative. An example of a neuter plural form without Guna is at V. S. p. 122, ᳵ᳚᳚᳚᳚᳚ ᳱ᳚᳚᳚᳚, “the Indies”; with *hapta hēndu*, “the seven Indies” (Anq. II. p. 270). It has the epithet *us-as!ar-a* (“up-starred?”) in opposition to ᳶ᳚᳚᳚᳚᳚᳚ ᳶ᳚᳚᳚᳚᳚᳚᳚᳚᳚ *dauś-astarēm hēndum*, “to the ill-starred (?) Indies.” An example, in which the suppressed termination in a *u* base is replaced by lengthening the final vowel, is the very frequently occurring ᳶ᳚᳚᳚᳚ ᳵ᳚᳚᳚, “goods,” from ᳶ᳚᳚᳚᳚ ᳵ᳚᳚᳚.

233. The interrogative base *ki* (cf. *quis, quid*), which in Sanscrit forms only the singular nominative-accusative (neuter) किम् *ki-m*, but is elsewhere replaced by *ka*; whence, in Zend, کاه *ka-t*, "what": this base, the use of which is very limited, forms in Zend the plural neuter کاه *ky-a*\*; and

\* V. S. p. 341. *ա»սաւանդ թղթս յիւր արմկ լըրտս սոյոյ  
արթ/հաս սոյ/հ kya aété vacha yói hēnti gāthāhva thris āmrūta* (erro-  
neously *thrisā mrūtu*), “What are the words which are thrice said in the  
prayers (songs).” The masculine forms *aété* and *yói* can here, according  
to Rem. at §. 231., occasion no difficulty. So also V. S. p. 85, *սոյոյ kya*  
before

this form is the more important, since we still require examples which can be relied upon, in which the *i* of the base is not suppressed before the termination *a* (above, *gara* for *gairy-a*), although it may with reason be conjectured, that, in accordance with the above-mentioned *hēndv-a* and *yátav-a*, forms also like *vairy-a* or *vairay-a*, from *vairi*, were in use. As in Gothic, neuter substantive and adjective bases in *i* are wanting, the numeral base *THRI*, "three," and the pronominal base *I*, "he," are very important for the neuter cases under discussion, in which they form *thriy-a* (*thriya hunda*, "three hundred") and *iy-a*, according to the principle of the Sanscrit monosyllabic forms, of which the *i* sound has not passed into its simple semi-vowel, but into *iy*; thus, in Sanscrit, भिया *bhiy-ā*, from भी *bhī*.

234. The Sanscrit gives, in place of the Zend-European neuter *a*, an इ *i*, perhaps as the weakening of a former *a* (§. 6.); the final vowel of the base is lengthened, and between it and the case termination a euphonic न *n* is placed (§. 133.); hence दानानि *dānā-n-i*, वारीणि *vārī-n-i*,\* मधूनि *madhū-n-i*.† The bases which terminate with a single consonant—न् *n* and र् *r* being excepted—prefix to it a nasal, and after स and

---

before the masculine 𐬔𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬎𐬌 *ratavo* (𐬔𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬎𐬌 𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬎𐬌 *kya ratavo*, "which are the lords"?).

\* According to a euphonic law (Gram. Crit. r. 84<sup>1</sup>), an न् *n* following after र् *r*, and some other letters, is, under certain conditions, changed into ण *ṇ*.

† In the Vêdas, the *ni* in *a* bases is frequently found suppressed; e.g. विष्वा *viśvā*, "omnia," from *viśva*. In this way the Sanscrit is connected with the Zend *viśpa*, *viśpā-cha*: but perhaps this coincidence is only external; for as the Sanscrit nowhere uses a neuter termination *a*, विष्वा *viśvā* cannot well be deduced from *viśpa + a*, but can only be explained as an abbreviation of the *ā-ni*, which likewise occurs in the Vêdas, as also पुरु *purū*, "multa," "magna," is used for पुरुणि *purūṇi* (Rosen's Spec. pp. 9, 10).

the preceding vowel is lengthened ; hence वचांसि *vachān-si*, नामानि *nāmān-i*. Into relation with this *i* might be brought the neuter inflexion of *quæ* (*quai*) and *hæ-c* (*haic*), which stand in Latin very isolated ; *quæ* is, however, still tolerably distant from the Sanscrit कानि *kā-n-i*, while it is nearly identical with the neuter dual के *ké*, from *ka + i* (§. 212.). As, however, the antiquity of this dual termination is supported by the Zend, the plural form *kāni* stands on the other side isolated, and its age is thereby rendered doubtful ; as, moreover, the Latin, in the verb, also has introduced a termination originally dual into the plural\* ; we cannot avoid recognising in the Latin plural *quæ* a remnant as true as possible of the Sanscrit dual के *ké*.

235. We give here a general view of the formation of the plural nominative, and of the vocative, identical with it and the neuter accusative :

SANSKRIT.	ZEND.	GREEK.	LATIN.	LITHUAN.	GOTHIC.
m. <i>vrikās</i> ,	. . . .	λύκοι,	<i>lup'ī</i> ,	<i>wilkai</i> ,	<i>vulfós</i> .
m. <i>té</i> ,	<i>té</i> ,	τοί,	<i>is-t'ī</i> ,	<i>tie</i> ,†	<i>thai</i> .
n. <i>dāndā-n-i</i> ,	<i>dāta</i> ,	δῶρα,	<i>dona</i> ,	. . . .	<i>daura</i> .
f. <i>jihvās</i> ,	<i>hizvāo</i> ,	χῶραι,	<i>terrae</i> ,	<i>rankos</i> ,	<i>gibós</i> .

\* The termination *tis* answers to चस् *thas*, Greek *τον* from *τος*, not to च *tha* or ण *ta*, Greek *τε*. With respect to the otherwise remarkable declension of *qui*, and of *hic*, which is akin to it, I would refer preliminarily to my treatise "On the influence of pronouns in the formation of words" (by F. Dümmler), p. 2.

† This form belongs not to the base *TA* (= ण *ta*), whence, in the singular, *ta-s*, and nearly all the other cases ; but to *TIA*, whence, through the influence of the *i*, *tie* has been developed (cf. p. 174, Rem.\* and §. 193.); and whence, in the dative dual and plural, *tie-m*, *tie-ms*. The nominative plural is, however, without a case termination. The original form *TIA* corresponds to the Vêda ण *tya*, mentioned in §. 194.; while the base स्य *sya* (च *shya*, see §. 55.) is fully declined in Lithuanian in the form of *SZIE*, and in the plural nominative, likewise without inflexion,

is





	SANSKRIT.	ZEND.	GREEK.	LATIN.	LITHUAN.	GOTHIC.
f.	<i>nāv-as,</i>	. . . .	<i>νᾱ(F)-ες,</i>	. . . .	. . . .	. . . .
f.	<i>vāch-as,</i>	<i>vāch-ō,*</i>	<i>ὄπ-ες,</i>	<i>voc-ēs,</i>	. . . .	. . . .
m.	<i>bharant-as,</i>	<i>barēnt-ō,*</i>	<i>φέροντ-ες,</i>	<i>ferent-ēs,</i>	. . . .	<i>fijand-s.</i>
m.	<i>ātman-as,</i>	<i>ašman-ō,*</i>	<i>δαίμον-ες,</i>	<i>sermon-ēs,</i>	. . . .	<i>ahman-s.</i>
n.	<i>nāman-i,</i>	<i>nāman-a</i>	<i>τάλαν-α,</i>	<i>nomīn-a,</i>	. . . .	<i>namōn-a.</i>
m.	<i>bhrātār-as,</i>	<i>brātār-ō,*</i>	<i>πατέρ-ες,</i>	<i>fratr-es,</i>	. . . .	. . . .†
f.	<i>duhitar-as,</i>	<i>dughdhar-ō,*</i>	<i>θυγατέρ-ες,</i>	<i>matr-es,</i>	<i>dugter-ēs,</i>	. . . .
m.	<i>dātār-as,</i>	<i>dātār-ō,*</i>	<i>δοτήρ-ες,</i>	<i>datōr-es,</i>	. . . .	. . . .
n.	<i>vachāns-i,</i>	<i>vachanḥ-a,‡</i>	<i>ἔπε(σ)-α,</i>	<i>oper-a,</i>	. . . .	. . . .

## THE ACCUSATIVE.

236. The bases which end with a short vowel annex न् *n* in Sanscrit, and lengthen the final vowel of the base; hence, वृकान् *vṛikān*, पत्नीन् *patīn*, सूनून् *sūnūn*, &c. We might imagine this *n* to be related to the *m* of the singular accusative, as in the verb the termination चानि *āni* (1st pers. sing. imper.) has clearly proceeded from चामि *āmi*. The kindred dialects speak, however, in favour of Grimm's acute conjecture, that the Sanscrit *n* is, in the accusative plural masculine, an abbreviation of *ns*, which has remained entire in the Gothic—*vulfa-ns*, *gasti-ns*, *sunu-ns*—but has been divided in the other sister languages; since the Sanscrit, according to §. 94., has given up the latter of the two consonants, and has lengthened, as it appears, in compensa-

\* See p. 163. Rem. †

† The Gothic *r* bases annex in the plural a *u*, and can therefore be contrasted no further with the kindred languages. *BRŌTHAR* becomes *BRŌTHRU*, whence *brōthryu-s*, &c., according to the analogy of *sunyu-s*.

‡ Or *ⲱⲃⲉⲛⲏⲁ* *vachēṇha*. Thus we read Vend. S. p. 127, *nēmēṇha*, which, I think, must be regarded as accusative of *nēmó* (नमस् *namas*, “adoration”), and as governed by *ⲱⲃⲉⲣⲏⲏⲁ* *bērēṇha*, “from him who brings,” “from him offering.”

tion for this, the final vowel of the base<sup>\*</sup>; while the Greek *λύκους* has preserved the sibilant, but has permitted the *ν* to volatilize to *υ*.† In fact, *λυκο-υς* has the same relation to *λυκους* that *τύπτουσι* has to *τύπτονσι*, from *τύπτοντι*.‡ For *πόσι-ας*, *ἰχθυ-ας*, we could not, however, expect a *πόσι-νς*, *ἰχθύ-νς*, as the Greek makes the *ι* and *υ* bases in all parts similar to the bases which terminate with a consonant, which, in Sanscrit, have *as* for a termination; hence *पदस्* *padas* = *πόδας*: and even in the most vigorous period of the language *ns* could not have attached itself to a consonant preceding. This *as* for *ns* may be compared with

---

\* Thus *vrikân* for *vrikâns*; as, *विद्वांस्* *vidvâns*, whence the accusative *विद्वांसम्* *vidvâns-am*, in the uninflected nominative *विद्वान्* *vidvân*, (“*sapiens*”).

† As the *ν* also passes into *ι* (*τιθείς* for *τιθένς*, Æolic *τύψαις*, *μέλαις* for *τυψαν(τ)ς*, *μελανς*), Hartung (l. c. p. 263.) is correct in explaining in this sense the *ι* in Æolic accusative forms like *νόμοις*, *τοῖς στρατηγοῖς*, &c. As regards, however, the feminine accusatives like *μεγάλαις*, *ποικίλαις*, *τείμαις*, quoted by him, I believe that they have followed the analogy of the masculines, from which they sufficiently distinguish their gender by the *α* preceding the *ι*; we cannot, however, thence infer, that also the first and specially feminine declension had originally accusatives in *νς*, as neither has the Gothic in the corresponding declension an *ns*, nor does the Sanscrit exhibit an *n* (see §. 237., and cf. Rask in Vater's Tables of Comparison, p. 62).

‡ It cannot be said that *τύπτουσι* proceeded from *τύπτοντσι*, a truly monstrous form, which never existed in Greek, while the *τύπτοντι* before us answers to all the requirements of Greek Grammar, as to that of the whole base, since *ο-ντι* corresponds to the Sansc. *anti*, Zend *ēnti*, Goth. *nt'*; and from the singular *τι* (Dor.), in the plural nothing else than *ντι* can be expected. But to arrive at *ουσι* from *οντι* it is not requisite to invent first so strange a form as *οντσι*; for that *οντι* can become *ουσι* is proved by the circumstance that the latter has actually arisen from it, by the very usual transition of T into Σ, and the not rare vocalization of the N to Υ, as also in Sanscrit, in all probability, *उस्* *us* has arisen from *nt* (cf. p. 172. Rem.\*), of which more hereafter. But if in the dative plural, indeed, *ου-σι* has arisen from *οντ-σι*, not from *ον-σι* (*λέουσι* not *δαίμουσι*),  
we

the Ionic *αται, ατο*, for *νται, ντο*, a form which has extended from the places where the vocalization of the *ν* was necessary, to those also where *ν* might be added (*πεπείθεται, τετράφαται*; then, also, *πεπαύεται, κεκλιάται*, &c. for *πέπαινται, κέκλινται*). This comparison with the 3d person plural appears to me the more in point, as, in my opinion, the *n* in the presupposed forms, like *वृकंस् vṛikaṅs*, *पतिंस् patinṅs*, *λύκονς*, has the same object that it has in the 3d person plural; viz. allusion to plurality by extending (nasalizing) the syllable preceeding the sign of personality. The introduction of a nasal is an admixture which is least of all foreign, and comes nearest to the mere lengthening of an already existing vowel.

237. Feminine bases with a final vowel follow in Sanscrit the analogy of consonant bases; but with the suppression of the *a*,\* thus *s* for *as* or *nis*; they may perhaps, too, never have had *nis*, for else hence would have arisen,

we must remember that the abandonment of the *n* before case terminations beginning with a consonant is a very old and therefore pre-greek phenomenon, which is not to be accounted for in the Greek, and wherefore no compensation is to be required for the *ν*, which has been dropped. But even if it were so, we must still be satisfied, if the demand for compensation for a lost *ν* remains unfulfilled in several places of grammar; for there are two kinds of euphonic alteration in all languages: the one, which has acquired the force of a general law, makes its appearance under a similar form on each similar occasion, while the other only irregularly and occasionally shews itself.

\* Monosyllabic bases only have preserved the *a* as the case sign in the singular nominative (§. 137.); hence, *स्त्रियस् striy-as*, "*feminas*," *भुवस् bhuvas*, "*terras*," from *स्त्री strī*, *भू bhū*. There is scarce a doubt that this form originally extended to polysyllabic bases also; for besides the Greek, the Zend also partly evinces this (§. 238.), as also the circumstance that in the actual condition of the Sanscrit language the accusative plural shews, in general, an inclination to weaken itself, and thus contrast itself more submissively with the imperious nominative (§. 129.).

as in the masculine, a simple *n*: to the feminine gender, too, the well-sounding Ionic *a* is more suitable than *n*. In general, the Sanscrit feminines in other parts of grammar cast off the *n*, which is annexed by masculines and neuters (§. 133.). Moreover, the Gothic also, in feminine *ô* bases, gives no *ns*, but *thôz* = *𐌲𐌰𐌶𐌵 tās* (*eas*, *has*) appears a pure dowry from the ancestral house; and when the feminine *i* and *u* bases in Gothic, by forms like *i-ns*, *u-ns*, assimilate themselves to the masculines, this may be regarded as a disguise of gender, or a deviation caused by the example of the masculines. The consonant bases follow the example of the Indian, but have lost the *a*, as in the nominative (§. 227.); hence, *fjand-s*, *ahman-s*, for *fjand-as*, *ahman-as*.

238. Feminines with a short final vowel lengthen it, to compensate, as it appears, for the suppression of the *a*; thus *𑀧𑀺𑀢𑀺𑀓 prīṭī-s* is formed from *prīṭy-as*, and *𑀲𑀺𑀢𑀺𑀓 tanū-s* from *tanv-as*. The Greek certainly presents, in this respect, only a casual coincidence, through forms in *îς*, *ûς*, which, however, are not restricted to the feminine, and stand at the same time, in the nominative, for *ι-ες*, *υ-ες*. The Zend, like the Greek, follows in its *i* and *u* bases the analogy of the consonant terminations; hence, *𐬔𐬀𐬌𐬭𐬀 paity-ô* (*paity-aś-cha*), *𐬔𐬀𐬭𐬀 paśv-ô* (*paśv-aś-cha*, or, with Guna, *paitay-ô*, *paśav-ô*. In feminine bases in *i*, *u*, occur at times also the forms *ī-s*, *ū-s*, corresponding to the Sanscrit; as, *𐬔𐬀𐬌𐬭𐬀 gairī-s*, “*montes*” (Vendidat S. p. 313.), *𐬔𐬀𐬭𐬀 ərəxū-s*, “*rectas*,” *𐬔𐬀𐬭𐬀 tafnū-s*, “*urentes*,” *𐬔𐬀𐬭𐬀 pērētū-s*. “*pontes*.”

239. Masculine bases in *a*, where they are not replaced by the neuter (p. 246, Rem.), have, in the accusative, *añ* (cf. §. 61.); as, *𐬔𐬀𐬭𐬀 imañ*, “*hos*,” often occurs, *𐬔𐬀𐬭𐬀 maxistañ*, “*maximos*” (Vend. S. p. 65.). The sibilant is retained before the particle *𐬔𐬀 cha*, and these forms can be copiously quoted; as, *𐬔𐬀𐬭𐬀 amēshañś-cha*, “*non-*

*conniventesque*"; Ἀρᾶνθραν's-cha, "*sermonesque*";  
 Ἀρᾶνθραν's-cha, "*lignaue*"; Ἀρᾶνθραν's-cha, "*vās-*  
*tryan's-cha, "agricolasque."*"\* The form Ἀρᾶνθραν's  
*rūn-an's-cha, "presbyterosque"* (*V. S.* p. 65.), is remarkable, as  
 there is no reason elsewhere to assume a theme *athauruna*;  
 and this form would accordingly shew that consonant bases  
 also could assume the inflexion *nē*, with an unavoidable  
 auxiliary vowel however; if, indeed, it is not to be thus  
 regarded, that, in the perverted feeling of the language, it  
 has been introduced by the preponderating analogy of the *a*  
 bases. More important, therefore, than this Ἀρᾶνθραν's  
*athaurunan's-cha* are the accusatives ἄνηρες, "*homines,*"  
 and ἀστὲρες, "*stellas,*" which occur very frequently;  
 while from ἅττις, "*fire,*" we have found, not ἄτηρις,  
*āthr-eus*, but ἁτήρις, "*ātēr-iō*", in which it is to be remarked  
 that *ātār* distinguishes itself from other words in *r* in this  
 point also, that it forms, in the nominative singular, not  
*ἀτὰρ ātā*, but ἡτάρ *ātars*. But how is the termination  
*eus* to be explained? I believe in no other way but from  
 ἂν, by changing the *n* into a vowel, as in λόγους; after  
 which, according to §. 31., the *a* has become ε: the  
 sibilant, however, which, after *a* and ἂν, is σ, must,  
 after η, appear as ς. We find, too, in the V. S. p. 311,  
 actually ἔρηρ, *nēr-an's* in the sense of a dative: ῥα ὠσπερ

\* I formerly thought I could, through forms of this kind, quote the introduction of a euphonic *s* in Zend, according to the analogy of §. 95. But if this introduction cannot be proved by cases, in which no ground exists for the assumption of an original sibilant, preserved merely by the particle *𐬵𐬁 cha* (cf. §§. 56<sup>b</sup>. 207. 228.), then the above examples are the more important, in order to supply a fresh proof that *ns* is the original designation of masculine plural accusatives of themes terminating with a vowel. The superlative *𐬵𐬁𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬯𐬭𐬀𐬢𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬔𐬀𐬩𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬥𐬀 vērēthraxanštēma* (of which hereafter) may be regarded as derived from a participial nominative. Other cases, which might suggest occasion to assume, in Zend, a euphonic *s* after *n*, have nowhere occurred to me.



doubt the *ir*—Middle and New High German *er*—which makes its appearance in the plural in many Old High German neuters, is identical with the Sanscrit neuter suffix चस् *as*; e.g. *hûsir*, "houses," *chalpir*, "calves" (cf. Grimm, pp. 622 and 631).\*

**242. Here follows a general view of the accusative formation :**

	SANSKRIT.	ZEND.	GREEK.	LATIN.	LITHUAN.	GOOTHIC.
m.	<i>vrikā-n,</i>	<i>vēhrka-n,</i>	<i>λύκο-υς,</i>	<i>lupō-s,</i>	<i>wilkū-s,</i>	<i>vulfan-s.</i>
n.	<i>dānā-n-i,</i>	<i>dāta,</i>	<i>δῶρα,</i>	<i>dona,</i>	. . . .	<i>daura.</i>
f.	<i>jihvā-s,</i>	<i>hizvā-o,</i>	<i>χώρᾱ-ς,</i>	<i>terrā-s,</i>	<i>rankà-s,</i>	<i>gibō-s.</i>
f.	<i>tā-s,</i>	<i>tā-o,</i>	<i>τᾱ-ς,</i>	<i>is-tā-s,</i>	<i>tā-s,</i>	<i>thō-s.</i>
m.	<i>patī-n,</i>	<i>paity-ō,†</i>	<i>πόσι-ας,</i>	<i>host'-es,</i>	. . . .	<i>gasti-ns.</i>
f.	<i>bhiy-as,</i>	<i>āfrīty-ō,†</i>	<i>πόρτι-ας,</i>	<i>mess'-es,</i>	. . . .	. . . .
f.	<i>prīti-s,</i>	<i>āfrītī-s,</i>	<i>πόρτī-ς,</i>	. . . .	<i>āwy-s,</i>	<i>ansti-ns.</i>
n.	<i>vāri-n-i,</i>	<i>var'-a,</i>	<i>ἰδρι-α,</i>	<i>marī-a,</i>	. . . .	. . . .
n.	. . . .	<i>ky-a,</i>	. . . .	. . . .	. . . .	<i>ij-a.</i>
f.	<i>bhavishyantī-s,</i>	<i>būshyaintī-s,†</i>	. . . .	. . . .	. . . .	. . . .
m.	<i>sūnū-n,</i>	<i>paśv-ō,†</i>	<i>ἰχθύ-ας,</i>	<i>pecū-s,</i>	<i>sūnu-s,</i>	<i>sunun-s.</i>
f.	<i>bhuv-as,</i>	<i>tanv-ō,†</i>	<i>πίτυ-ας,</i>	. . . .	. . . .	. . . .
f.	<i>tanū-s,</i>	<i>tanū-s,</i>	<i>πίτῦ-ας,</i>	<i>socrū-s,</i>	. . . .	<i>handu-ns.</i>
n.	<i>madhū-n-i,</i>	<i>mudhv-a,†</i>	<i>μέθυ-α,</i>	<i>pecu-a,</i>	. . . .	. . . .

\* This *ir*, however, is treated in declension as if the theme originally terminated in *a*, and would thus, in Sanscrit, be *asa*. Hence, compared with the dative *hūsiru-m* (from *hūsira-m*, §. 168.), the nom. accus. *hūsir* appears an abbreviation. But the relation of our *ir* to the Sanscrit *as* is not thereby disturbed, because, in general, most of the original consonant terminations in High German have received unorganic vowel additions. Cf. pp. 148 and 191. Rem. More regarding this hereafter.

† See p. 175. Rem. \*.

† This form is further confirmed by 𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬵𐬎𐬌𐬭𐬀 *pěšô-tanva*, from *pěšô-tanu*, which signifies the hind part of the body (§. 199.), but is also used in the sense of “blow on the hinder part of the body”; and in this manner it occurs in the 15th Fargard of the Vend.: 𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬵𐬎𐬌𐬭𐬀 𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬵𐬎𐬌𐬭𐬀 𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬵𐬎𐬌𐬭𐬀 𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬵𐬎𐬌𐬭𐬀 *ainhā!* (*ainhāt?*)

	SANSKRIT.	ZEND.	GREEK.	LATIN.	LITHUAN.	GOTHIC.
f.	<i>vadhū-s,</i>	....	....	....	....	....
m.f.	<i>gā-s,*</i>	<i>gāu-s,</i>	<i>βό(F)-ας,</i>	<i>bov-ēs,</i>	....	....
f.	<i>nāv-as,</i>	....	<i>νᾱ(F)-ας,</i>	....	....	....
f.	<i>vāch-as,</i>	<i>vāch-ō,†</i>	<i>ὄκ-ας,</i>	<i>voc-ēs,</i>	....	....
m.	<i>bharat-as,‡</i>	<i>barēnt-ō,†</i>	<i>φέρωντ-ας,</i>	<i>ferent-ēs,</i>	....	....
m.	<i>ātman-as,</i>	<i>ašman-ō,†</i>	<i>δαίμων-ας,</i>	<i>sermon-ēs,</i>	....	<i>ahman-s.</i>
n.	<i>nāmān-i,</i>	<i>nāman-a,</i>	<i>τάλαν-α,</i>	<i>nomīn-a,</i>	....	<i>namōn-a.</i>
m.	<i>bhrātṛi-n,§</i>	<i>brāthr-eus?</i>	<i>πατέρ-ας,</i>	<i>fratr-es,</i>	....	....
f.	<i>duhitṛi-s,§</i>	<i>dughdhēr-eus?</i>	<i>θυγατέρ-ας,</i>	<i>matr-es,</i>	<i>dugter-ēs,</i>	....
m.	<i>dātṛi-n,§</i>	<i>dāthr-eus?</i>	<i>δοτήρ-ας,</i>	<i>dalōr-ēs,</i>	....	....
n.	<i>vachāns-i,</i>	<i>vachanh-a,</i>	<i>ἔπε(σ)-α,</i>	<i>oper-a,</i>	....	....

## THE INSTRUMENTAL.

243. The formation of this case, and what is connected with it, has been already explained in §§. 215—224.; it is therefore sufficient to give here a comparison of the forms which correspond to one another in the kindred languages,

---

*hacha skyaōthnā-varēxa atha bavainti pēsō-tanva*, “*hac pro facti-peractione tum sunt verbera posteriori corpori inflicta*” (Anquetil, *Celui qui commet cette action sera coupable du tanafour*). In regard to the *anāpēretha*, mentioned at §. 232., it is further to be noticed that the *ḡ th* can only be occasioned by a *œw* that has been dropped (§. 47.), for the theme of the concluding substantive is *𐬀𐬵𐬭𐬀 pērētu*, not *pērēthu* (Vend. S. pp. 313 and 362, twice).

\* Irregularly from a theme *गā* (§. 122.), for *गवस् gav-as*. The Zend *𐬀𐬵𐬭𐬀 gāus* (also *𐬀𐬵𐬭𐬀 gāos*), which often occurs, rests on the strengthened Sanscrit form *गौ gāu*; so that in respect of the strong and weak cases (§. 129.), the relation in this word is distorted. In the nominative, for instance, we should expect *𐬀𐬵𐬭𐬀 gāus*, and in the accusative *𐬀𐬵𐬭𐬀 geus*, rather than *vice versā*.

† See p. 163. Rem. †.

‡ See §. 129.

§ See §. 127. Rem. and §. 249. Rem. †.



by which a summary view of the subject may be assisted. As the German, in its singular dative, is identical with the Sanscrit-Zend instrumental, it is hence deducible that its character *m* (for *b* see §. 215.), in the dative plural, must rather be regarded as an abbreviation of भिस् *bhis* than as belonging to the dative-ablative termination भ्यस् *bhyas*; although it approaches equally near to the two old terminations.

SANSKRIT.	ZEND.	GREEK.	LATIN.	LITHUAN.	GOTH. DAT.
m. <i>vrikā-bhis</i> ,	....	θεό-φιν,	<i>vo-bīs</i> ,	....	<i>vulfa-m.</i>
<i>vrikā-is</i> ,	<i>vēhrkā-is</i> ,	....	....	<i>wilka-is</i> ,	....
f. <i>jihvā-bhis</i> ,	<i>hizvā-bīs</i> ,	....	....	<i>ranko-mis</i> ,	<i>gibō-m.</i>
<i>prīti-bhis</i> ,	<i>āfrīti-bīs</i> ,	....	....	<i>awi-mis</i> ,	<i>ansti-m.</i>
m. <i>sūnu-bhis</i> ,	<i>pašu-bīs</i> ,	....	....	<i>sunu-mis</i> ,	<i>sunu-m.</i>
f. <i>nau-bhis</i> ,	....	ναῦ-φιν,	....	....	....
m. <i>ātma'-bhis</i> ,	<i>aśma'-bīs</i> ,	....	....	....	<i>ahma'-m.</i>
n. <i>nāma'-bhis</i> ,	<i>nāma'-bīs</i> ,	....	....	....	<i>nama'-m.</i>
n. <i>vachō-bhis</i> ,*	<i>vachō-bīs</i> ,*	ὄχρεσ-φιν,*	....	....	....

## THE DATIVE, ABLATIVE.

244. Mention has already been made of the suffix of these two cases in §. 215. Only the *s* of the Latin *bus* has been left in the first, second, and (according to Nonius) occasionally, also, in the fourth declension; for the *i* of *lupī-s*, *terrī-s*, *specī-s* (for *speci-bus* from *specu-bus*), must be allotted to the base. *Lupī-s* stands for *lupo-bus*, as evinced by *ambo-bus*, *duo-bus*. From *o-bus* (by lightening the final vowel of the base, *o*, *u*, from an original *a*, §. 6.), as occurs in the beginning of compounds (*multi-plex* for *multu-plex*, or *multo-plex*, of which hereafter), the language arrived at *i-bus*, (*parvi-bus*, *amici-bus*, *dii-bus*, cf. Hartung, p. 261). In the first declension *a-bus* has been retained with tolerable

---

\* See §§. 56<sup>b</sup>. and 128.

frequency, but the middle step *i-bus* is wanting; yet the language has scarcely made the spring from *a-bus* at once to *i-s*, but *a-bus* has weakened the *a* of the base to *ī*, which, to compensate for the *bu* which has been dropped, has been lengthened; thus *terrī-s* from *terri-bus*, for *terra-bus*, as *mālo* from *māvolo*. Compare,

SANSKRIT.	ZEND.	LATIN.	LITHUANIAN.
m. <i>vrikē-bhyas</i> ,	<i>vēhrkaēi-byō</i> ,	<i>lupī-s</i> ,	<i>wilka-m(u)s</i> . <sup>*</sup>
f. <i>jihvā-bhyas</i> ,	<i>hizvā-byō</i> ,	<i>terrī-s</i> ,	<i>ranko-m(u)s</i> .
m. <i>pati-bhyas</i> ,	<i>paiti-byō</i> ,	<i>hosti-bus</i> ,	. . . . <sup>†</sup>
f. <i>prīti-bhyas</i> ,	<i>āfrīti-byō</i> ,	<i>messi-bus</i> ,	<i>avi-m(u)s</i> .
m. <i>bhavishyantī-bhyas</i> ,	<i>būshyainti-byō</i> ,	. . . .	. . . .
m. <i>sūnu-bhyas</i> ,	<i>paśu-byō</i> ,	<i>pecu-bus</i> , <sup>‡</sup>	<i>sunu-m(u)s</i> .
f. <i>vāg-bhyas</i> ,	<i>vāch-e-byō</i> ,	<i>voc-i-bus</i> ,	. . . .
m. <i>bharad-bhyas</i> ,	<i>barēn-byō</i> ,§	<i>ferent-i-bus</i> ,	. . . .
m. <i>ātma'-bhyas</i> ,	<i>aśma'-byō</i> ,	<i>sermon-i-bus</i> ,	. . . .
m. <i>bhrātri-bhyas</i> ,	<i>brātar-ē-byō</i> ,	<i>fratr-i-bus</i> .	. . . .

#### THE GENITIVE.

245. The genitive plural in Sanscrit, in substantives and adjectives, has the termination *आम् ām*, in the Zend *aim*, according to §. 61. The Greek *ων* bears the same relation to the original form of the termination that *ἐδιδων* does to *अददाम् adadām* (§§. 4. 10.). The Latin has, as usual,

\* See §. 215.

† The masculine *i* bases pass in the plural, by an unorganic increment, into a different declension. And in the dual and dative singular, also, *PATI* must be given up (Mielcke, p. 35. Rem. 1.).

‡ I have selected the masculine base *PECU*, which occurs only in a few cases, on account of its connection with *𐬯𐬀𐬎𐬌 paśu*, and I have carried it through all the cases, and think, therefore, that I may here also give the original *u-bus* for the corruption *i-bus*.

§ See p. 259. Rem.

246. Bases ending with a vowel, with the exception, partly necessary and partly arbitrary, of monosyllables, place, in Sanscrit, a euphonic *n* between the termination and the base, the final vowel of which, if short, is lengthened. This interposition appears to be pristine, since the Zend partakes of it, although in a more limited degree; for instance, in all bases in *a* and *ā*: hence, *ṛ̥hṛka-n-anim*, *ṛ̥hṛka-n-anim*. To the latter correspond very remarkably the genitives (which occur in Old High German, Old Saxon, and Anglo-Saxon, in the

\* Regarding the termination *i-um* in consonant bases, and, *vice versâ*, respecting *um* in places where *i-um* might have been expected, we refer the reader to §. 126. In adjectives the feminine character *i* mentioned in §. 119. may have had its effect, and may have passed over from the feminine to the other genders, according to the analogy of the Lithuanian (p. 174. Rem. †): thus the *i* of *ferenti-um* reminds us of the Sanscrit feminine भरन्ती *bharanti*. The same is the case with the *i* of the neuter form *ferenti-a*; it is bequeathed by the deceased feminine theme *FER-RENTI*. On the other hand, contrary to the opinion preferred in §. 126., we must now regard the *i* before *bus* (e. g. *voc-i-bus*) as a conjunctive vowel, like the *e* in the Zend *vâch-e-byô*. Here it is to be observed that those consonant bases, which admit neither *i-a* nor *i-um*, must nevertheless proceed before *bus* to annex an *i*. In the chapter upon the adjectives we shall recur to the feminine character *i*; and then treat also of the *i* for *e* in the singular ablative of the common dialect.

corresponding class of words) in  $\delta$ - $n$ - $\delta$ ,  $e$ - $n$ - $a$ ; hence, Old High German *këpô-n-ô*, Old Saxon *gëbô-n-ô*, Anglo-Saxon *gife-n-a*.

247. We find the bases in short and long  $i$ , in Zend, if polysyllabic, only with euphonic  $n$ : on the other hand the monosyllabic  $i$  bases annex the termination direct, either attaching Guna to the final vowel, or keeping it pure; thus, *thray-anim*, "*trium*," from *thri*; *vay-anim*, "*avium*," from *vi*. Bases in  $u$  admit both of the annexing the termination direct and of the insertion of the euphonic  $n$ ; but I find from the masculine  $\text{𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬀}$  *pašu* only *pašv-anim*: on the other hand, I have found from feminine bases like  $\text{𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬀}$  *tanu*, "*body*,"  $\text{𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬀}$  *našu*, "*corpse*" (cf. *νέκυς* according to §. 21.), hitherto only *u-n-anim*. With Guna,  $\text{𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀}$  *pasav-anim* would serve as a prototype for the Gothic *suniv-ê* with Guna weakened (§. 27.).

248. Pronouns of the third person have, in Sanscrit,  $\text{साम्}$  *sām* for  $\text{आम्}$  *ām*; and this may be the original and formerly universal form of the case-suffix, so that *ām* would properly be only the termination of the termination, and the  $s$  connected with the genitive singular would be the chief person. If this is the case, the abbreviation of this termination in substantives and adjectives must still be recognised as very ancient; for the Gothic, which in the plural nominative restricts itself so vigorously to the old limits (§. 228.), gives to the sibilant, in the genitive also, no wider scope; hence *thi-zê* (§. 86. 5.) = *tê-shām* (for *tê-sām*, according to §. 21.) "*horum*"; *thi-zo* = *tâ-sām*, "*harum*." Here the  $a$ , like the  $\delta$  of the base *THA*, *THÔ*, appears weakened to  $i$  (§. 66.): on the other hand, the adjectives, which follow the pronominal declension, have  $a$  and  $\delta$  bases; *ai-zê*, *ai-zô*, and *blindai-zê*, "*cæcorum*" (for *blinda-zê*), answers exactly to the Sanscrit  $\text{तेषाम्}$  *tê-shām* (from *taï-sām*) from the base  $\pi$  *ta*. The High German has changed the old sibilant to  $r$ , as in many other places;

hence, in Old High German, *de-rô* for *thi-zê* and *thi-zô*, of which termination only the *r* has remained to us. To the Latin, in like manner, belongs *rum* for *sum* (§. 22.); hence, *istorum, istarum*.\*

249. We give here a general view of the formation of the genitive.

	SANSKRIT.	ZEND.	GREEK.	LATIN.	LITHUAN.	GOthic.
m.	<i>vrikâ-n-âm</i> ,	<i>vêhrka-n-aîm</i> ,	<i>λύκ'-ων</i> ,	<i>lupō-rum</i> ,	<i>mil'k'-û</i> ,	<i>vulf'-ê</i> .
m. n.	<i>tê-shâm</i> ,	<i>taê-shaîm</i> ,	<i>τ'-ὦν</i> ,	<i>istō-rum</i> ,	<i>t'-û</i> ,	<i>thi-zê</i> .
f.	<i>jihvâ-n-âm</i> ,	<i>hizva-n-aîm</i> ,	<i>χωρά-ων</i> ,	<i>terrâ-rum</i> ,	<i>rank'-û</i> ,	<i>këpô-n-ô</i> .†

\* This *rum*, however, has, like the property of the plural nominative (§. 228.), found its way or returned from the pronominal declension into the entire second, first, and fifth declension, which is originally identical with the latter (§§. 121 and 137.). The transplanting of the *rum* termination into the declensions mentioned was the easier, as all pronouns in the genitive plural belong to the second and first declension. Forms, however, remain, especially in the old languages, which evince that the language was not always equally favourable to the bringing back the termination *rum* (*deum, socium, amphorum, drachmum, agricolum, &c.*). On the other hand, the termination *rum* appears also to have attempted to fix itself in consonant bases, with *e* as conjunctive vowel, if, at least, the forms furnished by Varro and Charis—*boverum, foverum, lapiderum, regerum, nucerum* (Hartung, p. 255.)—are to be regarded as correct, and do not perhaps stand for *bovo-rum, &c.*; as also, in Zend, the base *gô* may extend itself to *gava*. The Latin *rum* and Sanscrit *साम् sām* leads us to expect the Greek *ων*: this is not met with, however, even in the pronoun; so that the Greek, in this respect, stands in the strongest opposition to the Latin. The forms in *α-ων, ε-ων* (e.g. *αὐτά-ων, αὐτέ-ων, ἀγορά-ων, ἀγορέ-ων*) point, however, to a consonant that has been dropped. It is a question, therefore, whether universally a *Σ* (cf. §. 128.), or, as the Sanscrit and Zend lead us to expect, only in pronouns a *Σ*, but in other words of the first and second declension an *N* has been dropped, as in *μείζω* from *μείζονα*. According to this, *λύκων* would be to be derived from *λυκο-ν-ων*, *χαράων* from *χωρα-ν-ων*; but *τῶν* from *τοσων*, *τάων* from *τασων*.

† Old High German, see §. 246.

	SANSKRIT.	ZEND.	GREEK.	LATIN.	LITHUAN.	GOTHIC.
f.	<i>tā-sām,</i>	<i>ā-onhañm,*</i>	<i>τά-ων,</i>	<i>istā-rum,</i>	<i>t'-ū,</i>	<i>thi-zā.</i>
m. n.	<i>trī-n-ām,</i>	<i>thray-añm,</i>	<i>τρι-ὦν,</i>	<i>tri-um,</i>	<i>tri-ū,</i>	<i>thrij-ē.</i>
f.	<i>prīti-n-ām,</i>	<i>āfrīti-n-añm,</i>	<i>πορτί-ων,</i>	<i>messi-um,</i>	<i>awi-ū,</i>	<i>ans'-e.</i>
m.	<i>sūnū-n-ām,</i>	<i>paśv-añm,</i>	<i>ἰχθύ-ων,</i>	<i>pecu-um,</i>	<i>sun'-ū,</i>	<i>sunio-ē.</i>
f.	<i>tanū-n-ām,</i>	<i>tanu-n-añm,</i>	<i>πιτύ-ων,</i>	<i>socru-um,</i>	. . . .	<i>handiv-ē.</i>
m. f.	<i>gav-ām,</i>	<i>gav-añm,</i>	<i>βο(F)-ὦν,</i>	<i>bov-um,</i>	. . . .	. . . .
f.	<i>nā-vām,</i>	. . . .	<i>να(F)-ὦν,</i>	. . . .	. . . .	. . . .
f.	<i>vāch-ām,</i>	<i>vāch-añm,</i>	<i>ὀπ-ὦν,</i>	<i>voc-um,</i>	. . . .	. . . .
m. n.	<i>bharat-ām,</i>	<i>barēnt-añm,†</i>	<i>φερόντ-ων,</i>	<i>ferenti-um,</i>	. . . .	<i>fijand-ē.</i>
m.	<i>ātman-ām,</i>	<i>aśman-añm,</i>	<i>δαμόν-ων,</i>	<i>sermon-um,</i>	<i>akmen-ū,</i>	<i>ahman-ē.</i>
m.	<i>bhrātri-n-ām,</i>	<i>brāthr-añm,‡</i>	<i>κατέρ-ων,</i>	<i>fratr-um,</i>	. . . .	. . . .

\* This word often occurs, and corresponds to the Sanscrit *आसाम् ā-sām* "harum," "earum" (§. 56<sup>b</sup>.); from *आस ता, tāonhañm* would be expected, which I am unable to quote. The compound (polysyllabic) pronominal bases shorten the last syllable but one; hence, *अस्तान्नाम् aś-tanhañm*, not *aśtāonhañm*, as might be expected from *एतासाम् etā-sām*.

† Or, also, *बरान्तम् barantañm*, as in the Vendidad Sade, p. 131, *बारान्तम् barantañm*, "lucentium:" on the other hand, also, frequently *barochentañm*.

‡ This and the following genitives from bases in *ar* are clearly more genuine, and are more nearly allied therefore to the kindred European languages than the corresponding ones in Sanscrit, which, in this case, has shortened *ar* to *ri*, and has then treated it according to the analogy of vowels. From *नार nar* frequently occurs *nar-añm*, with retention of the *a*, on account of the base being monosyllabic: on the other hand, *अथ्र-āthr-añm* from *अथार ātar*, "fire," and *तिर-ātir-añm*, "trium," fem. for the Sanscrit *तिसृषाम् tiseri-n-ām* (Gramm. Crit. r. 255.). From *दग्ध-ādughdhar*, we find the form *dughdhēr-añm* (cf. p. 208. Rem. †): the Codex has, however, *dugdēr-añm* (p. 472. Z. 2.). In general, in this word the readings *dughdar* and *dughdhar* are interchanged in various passages: the latter, however, is the more common.

## LOCATIVE.

250. The character of the plural locative is, in Sanscrit, **सुसु**, which is subject to be changed into **सुशु** (§. 21.), for which, in Zend, is found **𐬰𐬀𐬭𐬀** *shu* (§. 52.); while from **सुसु**, according to §. 53., has been formed **𐬰𐬀𐬭𐬀** *hu*. The more usual form for *shu* and *hu* (for which, also, *shú* and *hú*) is, however, **𐬰𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬀** *shva*, **𐬰𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬀** *hva*, which leads to a Sanscrit **स्व** *sva*. This appears to me to be the original form of the termination; for nothing is more common in Sanscrit than that the syllables **व** *va* and **य** *ya* should free themselves from their vowel, and then change the semi-vowel into a vowel, as **वक्ता** *ukta* is said for *vakta* (see also §. 42.). The supposition, therefore, of the Indian abbreviation of the termination is far more probable than that of a Zend extension of it by a lately-added *a*, especially as in no other case does a similar aftergrowth admit of being established. But if **स्व** *sva* is the original form of the termination, it is then identical with the reflective-possessive base **स्व** *sva*, of which more hereafter.\* The same relation which, in Latin, *si-bi* has to *su-bi* (which might be conjectured from *su-i*), or that *ti-bi* has to *tu-bi*, Sanscrit **तुभ्यम्** *tu-bhyam*, the Greek dative-locative termination **σι** (*σιν*) has to the Sanscrit **सुसु**.†

---

\* Therefore, in Zend, the locative **𐬰𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬀𐬭𐬀** *thrishva*, "in tribus," is identical with **𐬰𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬀𐬭𐬀** *trishva*, "the third part," since the pronoun in the latter compound denotes the idea of part.

† Regarding the termination *ιν* of the pronoun of the 1st and 2d person see §. 222. From the Æolic form *ἀμμεσιν*, quoted by Hartung (p. 260) from Apoll., I cannot infer that *ιν* is an abbreviation of *σιν*: if it were so, the *ν* also in *ἡμῖν* would not adhere so firmly. It appears to me more suitable, therefore, to accord to the common declension an influence upon the transformation of the form of inflexion peculiar to the pronouns without gender, but of the highest antiquity; an influence which has penetrated further in *σφίσι* for *σφίν*.

251. The bases in **अ** *a* add to that vowel, as in many other cases, an *i*; but from *a + i* is formed **इ** *é* (§. 2.), to which the Greek *οι* corresponds; hence, **λύκοι-σι** = **वृकेषु** *vrikê-shu*. Hence the *ι* in Greek has also passed over to the roots in *α- η-*, either preserving its full value or subscribed, while in Sanscrit the **अ** *a* remains pure; hence, **जिह्वासु** *jihvâ-su*, with which the locatives of names of towns best agree, as **Πλαταιᾶσιν**, **Ὀλυμπιάσι**, **Ἀθήνησι** (Buttmann, §. 116. R. 7. and Hartung, p. 461.).\*

252. Like the Gothic, the Lithuanian has an unorganic difference between the terminations which mark the case in the masculine and feminine in the genitive plural: the first has the sound of *se*, and the latter of *sa*, with the original and more powerful *a*, which, in the masculine, has softened into *e*. The ending *sa* is plainly from the *sva*, assumed to be the original form, from which it is made by rejecting the semi-vowel.

253. Here follows a general view of the Sanscrit, Zend, and Lithuanian plural locatives, with the Greek datives:—

	SANSKRIT.	ZEND.	LITHUAN.	GREEK.
m.	<i>vrikê-shu</i> ,	<i>vêhrkaê-shva</i> ,	<i>wilkû-se</i> .	<b>λύκοι-σι</b> .
f.	<i>jihvâ-su</i> ,	<i>hizvâ-hva</i> ,	<i>ranko-sa</i> ,	<b>Ὀλυμπιάσι</b> , <b>χώραι-σι</b> .
f.	<i>prîti-shu</i> ,	<i>âfrîti-shva</i> ,†	<i>âwi-sa</i> ,	<b>πόρτι-σι</b> .
m.	<i>sînu-shu</i> ,	<i>pašu-shva</i> ,	<i>dangû-se</i> ,	<b>ἰχθύ-σι</b> .
m. f.	<i>gô-shu</i> ,	. . . .	. . . .	<b>βου-σί</b> .
f.	<i>nau-shu</i> ,	. . . .	. . . .	<b>ναυ-σί</b> .

\* The common termination *οις*, *αις* (*οι-ς*, *αι-ς*), formed by curtailing *οι-σι*, *αι-σι*, and so brought into agreement of sound with the third declension, is here lost, through its apparent connection with the Sanscrit curtailed instrumental ending **इस्** (§. 219.), which had before required consideration, because the Greek dative is also used as the instrumental.

† I have no authority for the locative of the Zend root in *i*, but it can only be analogous to that of the *u* root, which can be referred to in copious instances.



	SANSKRIT.	ZEND.	LITHUAN.	GREEK.
f.	<i>vāk-shu,</i>	<i>vāc-sva?</i>	. . . .	ὀπ-σί.
m. n.	<i>bharat-su,</i>	<i>brātar-ē-shva?</i>	. . . .	φέρου-σι.
m.	<i>ātma'-su,</i>	<i>aśma'-hva,*</i>	. . . .	δαίμό'-σι.
m.	<i>bhrātri-shu,</i>	. . . .	. . . .	πατρά-σι.†
n.	<i>vachas-su,</i>	<i>vachó-hva,†</i>	. . . .	ἔπεσ-σι.

\* Thus, in the Vend. Sade, p. 499, *uśahva*, from *uśan*, and p. 500, *dāmahva*, from *dāman*.

† The *a* in this form is not, as is generally supposed, a conjunctive vowel, but rests on a transposition; as *ἔδρακον* for *ἔδαρκον*, and in Sanscrit *द्रक्ष्यामि drakshyāmi*, “I will see,” for *दृक्ष्यामि darkshyāmi* (Sansk. Gramm. §. 34<sup>b</sup>): thus *πατράσι* (comp. *τέτρασι*) for *πατασι* (comp. *τέσσασι*), which, by preserving the original vowel, agrees with the Sanscrit root *pitar* better than *πατέρα*, *πατέρες*, &c. The same applies to the dative *ἀρνάσι*, since the thema of *ἀρνός* has, as appears from the cognate word *ρήν*, *ἀρήν*, *ἀρρήν*, rejected a vowel between the *ρ* and *ν*, which again appears in the dative plural in the form of an *a*, and removed from its place. The whole *REN* appears to be a transposition of *Ner*, Sanscrit *नर nar* (*नृ nṛi*), “a man,” for *ἀρήν* properly means “male sheep.” The *a* of *ἀρνάσι* is therefore etymologically identical with that of *ἀνδράσι* (comp. Kühner’s complete Greek Grammar, §. 281. Rem. 2.). It is more difficult to give any accurate account of the *a* of *νιάσι*: it is either the older and stronger form for the *e* of *νιέσι*, or this word must have had, besides its three themas (*‘YIO*, *‘YI*, *‘YIEY*), a fourth, *YIAT*, from which came *νιάσι*, as *γόνασι* from *ΓONAT*, the more prevailing co-thema of *ΓONY*, which latter agrees with *जानु jānu*.

‡ In the Vendidad Sade, p. 499., we find the analogous plural locatives *uziróhva*, and *csapóhva*. Anquetil translates the former by “*au lever du soleil*,” and the latter by “*à la nuit*.” It is impossible to pronounce these forms aught but derivatives from themes in *as* (*ś*, §. 56<sup>b</sup>). Most of the cases of the latter word, which occurs very frequently in various forms, spring from a thema in *ar*, and the interchange of *csapar* with *csapó* is a similar case to that in Sanscrit, where *अहन् ahan*, “day,” forms some cases from *अहस् ahas* (from which *अहो ahó* in *अहोभिस् ahóbbhis*, &c.); and together with

with the theme अह् exists another, अह् *ahar*. The anomaly of the Sanscrit "day" appears, in Zend, to have passed completely over to "night," as this latter word has also a theme in *n*, namely, *csapan*, of which the genitive pl. *csafnañm*—analogous with अह्नाम् *ahnām*, "*dierum*" (§. 40. relative to *f* for *p*)—is found in connection with the feminine numeral *tisrañm*, "*trium*" (Vend. S. p. 246.); for we read, l. c. §. 163., *ahnāñmcha* (= अह्नाञ्च *ahnāñcha*), *csafnañmcha* (read *csafnañmcha*), "of days and nights." In Sanscrit, by the suffix *a*, the form *ahna*, altered, but equal in its meaning, has arisen out of *ahan*, which, however, occurs only in compounds (as पूर्वोह् *pūrvōhna*, "the early part of the day"), and in the adverbial dative अह्नाय *ahnāya*, "soon," "immediately," which, therefore, it is not necessary to deduce from the root *hnu*, with the *a* privative. The Zend, however, whose night-nomenclature, in this respect also, is not outstripped by the Sanscrit, produces, as it appears, by a similar mutation, *csafna* from *csapan*; whence we find the locative *csafné*, which might also be taken for the dative of *csapan*,

most important particulars, is adopted by Thiersch, §. 128., for the developement of the forms in εσσι; only that he withdraws from the neuter roots described in §. 128., as BEΛΕΣ, the Σ which belongs to them, and, by a supposition, proved to be erroneous, BEΛΕ is made the theme: and he divides forms like ὄχεσφι into ὄχε-σφι instead of ὄχεσ-φι, and, by assimilation, derives ὄχε-σσι from ὄχε-σφι; while, as I believe I have proved, the forms ὄχεσ-φι and ὄχεσσι rest on entirely different case-suffixes (§. 218.), and have only the root 'OXEΣ in common with one another. An assimilation, however, may be remarked in γούνασ-σι, from γουννατ-σι, so that the first letter has assimilated itself to the second, not the reverse. In δέκασ-σι we shall leave it undecided whether the first Σ be primitive, and ΔΕΠΑΣ the theme (comp. γῆρας, §. 128.), or whether it has arisen out of τ, and so ΔΕΠΑΤ with ΤΕΡΑΤ, ΚΕΡΑΤ, belong to one class. If,

---

*csapan*, but that it is preceded (V. S. p. 163.) by the unequivocal adjective locative 𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬎𐬌, *naēme* (from 𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬎𐬌, *naēma*, "half"). Compare, also, l. c. §. 149., where 𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬎𐬌 𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬎𐬌 𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬎𐬌 𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬎𐬌 *ithra, aēne, ithra, csafne*, probably means "in this day," "in this night," with the locative adverb 𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬎𐬌 *ithra*, "here," in the sense of a locative demonstrative. To the theme 𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬎𐬌 *csafna*, the plural of the same sound *csafna*, might also be assigned, which occurs l. c. §§. 330. 331., and in several places elsewhere: 𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬎𐬌 𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬎𐬌 *thrayō csafna*, "three nights," 𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬎𐬌 𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬎𐬌 *csava csafna*, "six nights," 𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬎𐬌 𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬎𐬌 *nava csafna*, "nine nights," if here *csafna* be not, as in §. 231. R. \* it was considered to be, the plural of 𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬎𐬌 *csapan*, rather taken for the neuter, as, as has been before observed, the Zend uses the gender of the substantive with great laxity, especially in the plural. For the frequently-occurring ablative 𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬎𐬌 *csaparāt*, however, we cannot assume another theme *csapara*, but we must, if the reading be correct, admit that feminine consonant roots in the ablative adopt also the more ample ending, *āt* for *at*.

however, in all these forms, we allow only  $\sigma\iota$  or  $\sigma\iota\nu$  to be the case-suffix, and all that precedes it is referred to the true or unorganic increased root, it can therewith not be denied that not even to Homer himself, in forms like  $\acute{\epsilon}\pi\epsilon\sigma\sigma\iota$ , not to mention unorganic forms like  $\kappa\acute{\upsilon}\nu\epsilon\sigma\sigma\iota$ , did the entire  $\epsilon\sigma\sigma\iota$  present itself as pertaining to that which marked the case; for in the feeling of the speaker  $\acute{\epsilon}\pi\epsilon\sigma\sigma\iota$  could present itself, during that period of the language, only as what it is, namely, as  $\acute{\epsilon}\pi\epsilon\sigma\text{-}\sigma\iota$ , while  $\acute{\epsilon}\pi\epsilon\sigma\sigma\omicron\varsigma$ ,  $\acute{\epsilon}\pi\epsilon\sigma\iota$ , plural  $\acute{\epsilon}\pi\epsilon\sigma\alpha$  and not  $\acute{\epsilon}\pi\epsilon\sigma\omicron\varsigma$ , &c. were used in declination. But different from what has been here adopted is the assumption of Hartung (p. 260, ff.) and Kühner (l. c. §. 255. R. 8.), in the most material points following Greg. Cor. Æol. §. 35., relative to the production of the Greek plural datives. Kühner says (l. c.) "The character of the dative plural is  $\epsilon\varsigma$  (character of the plural) and  $\iota$  or  $\iota\nu$  (character of the dative singular), therefore,  $\epsilon\sigma\iota(\nu)$ ." I, however, think  $\epsilon\varsigma$  not the character of number, but of the nominative plural, and connected with the nominative singular through its  $\Sigma$ : a union of the plural nominative suffix with the singular dative is, to me, not to be imagined. If it were so, how could neuter nouns, to which  $\epsilon\varsigma$  in the nominative is quite foreign, arrive, in the dative, at their identity of form with the natural sexes? It further deserves to be remarked, that, in Prakrit, the locative ending  $\text{su}$  frequently assumes an Anusvâra, and so adapts itself, by the form  $\text{sun}$ , for  $\text{su}$ , to the Greek  $\sigma\iota\nu$ , for  $\sigma\iota$ .

254. After laying down the laws of the formation of a single case, it may serve to facilitate the general survey if examples are adduced of the most important classes of words in their connected declension. We pass over here from the Sanscrit, and go to the other languages in their order, according as they have, in the particular cases, most truly preserved their original form; and where one or other of them has departed entirely from the original

principle of formation, or by an unorganic increase to the root has entered the province of another declension, we there, in the place in question, exclude it from the comparison.

MASCULINE BASES IN *a*, GREEK IN *o*, LATIN IN *u*, *o*.

SINGULAR.

Nominative,	Sanscrit <i>vrika-s</i> , Lithuanian <i>wilka-s</i> , Zend <i>vēhrk-ō</i> , with <i>cha</i> , <i>vēhkaś-cha</i> , Greek <i>λύκο-ς</i> , Latin <i>lupu-s</i> , Gothic <i>vulf'-s</i> .*
Accusative,	Sanscrit <i>vrika-m</i> , Lithuanian <i>wilka-ni</i> , Zend <i>vēhrkē-m</i> , Greek <i>λύκο-ν</i> , Latin <i>lupu-m</i> , Gothic <i>vulf'</i> .
Instrumental,	Sanscrit <i>vrikē-n-a</i> , Zend <i>vēhrka</i> , Gothic Dat. <i>vulfa</i> , Lithuanian Instr. <i>wilkū</i> .
Dative,	Sanscrit <i>vrikāya</i> , Zend <i>vēhrkāi</i> , Lithuanian <i>wilkui</i> .
Ablative,	Sanscrit <i>vrikā-t</i> , Zend <i>vēhrkā-t</i> , Latin <i>lup-o(d)</i> (see §. 181.).
Genitive,	Sanscrit <i>vrika-sya</i> , Greek <i>λύκο-(σ)ιο†</i> , Zend <i>vēhrka-hē</i> , Gothic <i>vulfi-s</i> , Lithuanian <i>wilkō</i> .

\* The meaning is, in all these languages, the same, and so is the theme in its first origin. The connection of the Lithuan. *wilkas* with *vrikas* rests on the very usual interchange of the semi-vowels *r* and *l*; and this latter goes through the whole of the European sister languages. The Gothic *vulfs* shews, moreover, the equally common interchange of gutturals and labials, and follows the rule for the alteration of letters (Asp. for Tenuis, see §. 87.). In Latin the same thing takes place with regard to the supply of the guttural by the corresponding labial; but *lupus* is further altered through the loss of the commencing letter *V*, as is the Greek *λύκο-ς*: it may, however, be assumed, that this *v* is introduced into the middle of the word in being vocalized into *u*. While therefore, in Lithuanian, in *wilkas*, *l* and *k* are united, they are, in Greek, separated by *v*.

† M. Reimnitz, whose pamphlet, "The System of Greek Declension" (Potsdam, 1831), had not been seen by me before I completed the preceding Part.

Locative,	Sanscrit <i>vriké</i> (from <i>vrika</i> + <i>i</i> ), Zend <i>vēhrké</i> ( <i>maidhyōi</i> , §. 196.), Lithuanian <i>wilké</i> , Greek Dat. <i>λύκῳ</i> ( <i>οἴκοι</i> §. 195.) Latin Gen. <i>lup'ī</i> .
Vocative,	Sanscrit <i>vrika</i> , Zend <i>vēhrka</i> , Lithuanian <i>wilke</i> , Greek <i>λύκε</i> , Latin <i>lupe</i> , Gothic <i>vulf</i> .

## DUAL.

Nom. Acc. Voc.	Sanscrit <i>vrikāu</i> , Vêda <i>vrikā</i> , Zend <i>vēhrkā</i> , Lith. Nom. <i>wilkū</i> , Voc. <i>wilku</i> , Greek <i>λύκῳ</i> .
Instr. Dat. Abl.	Sanscrit <i>vrikā-bhyām</i> , Zend <i>vēhrkaēi-bya</i> , Greek Dat. Gen. <i>λύκο-ιν</i> , Lithuanian Dat. <i>wilka-m</i> (see §. 215.).
Gen. Loc.	Sansc. <i>vrikay-ōs</i> , Zend <i>vēhrkay-ō</i> (see Rem. 1.).

## PLURAL.

Nom. Voc.	Sanscrit <i>vrikās</i> , Gothic <i>vulfōs</i> .*
Accusative,	Sanscrit <i>vrikā-n</i> , Zend <i>vēhrka-n</i> , Goth. <i>vulfa-ns</i> , Greek <i>λύκο-υς</i> (from <i>λύκο-υς</i> , §. 236.), Lithuanian <i>wilkū</i> , Latin <i>lupō-s</i> .

---

Part of this book, unfolds (l. c. p. 122. passim) the same views concerning the Greek *οἶο* and its connection with the Sanscrit *a-sya* which I have, without being aware of his concurrence, brought forward in §. 189. I have, however, in this respect, already stated my views in my pamphlet "On the Demonstrative and the Origin of Case" (in the Transactions of the Hist. Phil. Class of the Academy of Science of Berlin for the year 1826, p. 100. Here I have only further to observe, that the Greek adj. *δημόσιος*, from the root *ΔΗΜΟ*, is, in the suffix by which it is formed, probably connected with the genitive ending in the text; and is therefore remarkable with reference to the preservation of the *s*, which is lost in *δήμοιο*. With regard to the origin of *δημόσιος* from the genitive, let reference be made to the Latin *cujus*, *a*, *um*; and the identity of the Sanscrit suffix of words like *मनुष्य* *manushya*, "man", as a derivative from *Manu*, with the genitive ending *य* *shya* for *स्य*, as in *अमुष्य* *amu-shya*, "illius."

\* With reference to the Zend, see §. 231. Rem. †; and with regard to the Greek, Latin, and Lithuanian forms *λύκοι*, *lupi*, *wilkai*, see §. 228.

Instrumental,	Sanscrit <i>vrikā-is</i> * (from <i>vrikā-bhis</i> ), Vêda <i>vrikē-bhis</i> , Zend <i>vēhrkā-is</i> , Lithuanian <i>wilka-is</i> , Prakrit <i>dēvē-hiṇ</i> (from <i>dēva</i> , "God," see §. 220.), Greek <i>θεό-φιν</i> ,† Gothic Dat. Instr. <i>wulfa-m</i> (§. 215.).
Dat. Abl.	Sanscrit <i>vrikē-bhyas</i> , Zend <i>vēhrkaēi-byθ</i> , Latin <i>lupi-s</i> ( <i>amici-bus</i> §. 244.), Lithuanian <i>wilka-m(u)s</i> (§. 215.).
Genitive,	Sanscrit <i>vrikā-n-ām</i> , Zend <i>vēhrka-n-añm</i> , Greek <i>λύκ'-ων</i> , Lithuanian <i>wilk'-ū</i> , Gothic <i>wulf'-ē</i> , Latin <i>lupō-rum</i> (§. 248.).

\* I take the liberty, in order to separate the root and termination, to divide the diphthongs, as above in *λύκο-υς*; therefore one must here pronounce *vrikāis*, and in Lithuanian *wilkais*, not as trisyllables but as dissyllables.

† I have remarked at §. 217., but only as a conjecture, that the ending *φιν* in the plural is perhaps identical with the Sanscrit *भिसु* *bhis*, and the thence-derived Prakrit *हिं* *hiṇ*, and the Latin *bis* in *nobis*, *vobis*; and I will not advance more than a conjecture here, also, in comparing *θεό-φιν* with *dēvē-hiṇ*. This only is certain, that with the syllable *भि* *bhi*, which in Sanscrit, lies at the bottom of the case-forms *भिसु* *bhis*, *भ्यम्* *bhyam*, and *भ्याम्* *bhyām*, as their common root (see §. 215. *passim*), the Greek *φ* and *φιν* is also to be associated. I here willingly agree with M. Ag. Benary (Berl. Ann. July 1833, p. 51.), that *φιν* might be formed from the ending *भ्यम्* *bhyam* (§. 222.) by the contraction of *य* into *i* (as in *ἡμῖν*, *ἐμῖν*, *τεῖν*, &c. §. 222.). The third possible supposition would be the derivation from the usual dative-ablative plural termination *भ्यस्* *bhyas*; again with the corruption of *s* to *v*, as in the 1st person plural *μεν* from *μες*, and in the 2d and 3d person *τον*, *τον* from *यस्* *thas*, *तस्* *tas*. The fourth possible case would be the derivation from the dual termination *भ्याम्* *bhyām* (§. 222.), and the changing this number of restricted plurality to that of unlimited plurality. I prefer, however, to consider *φιν* (*φι*) as from one of the multifarious terminations of the Sanscrit plural belonging to all declensions; therefore, from *भिसु* *bhis* or *भ्यस्* *bhyas*.

Locative, Sanscrit *vrīkē-shu*, Zend *vēhrkaē-shva*, Lithuanian *milkūse*, Greek Dat. *λύκοι-σι*.

NEUTER BASES IN *a*, GREEK *o*, LATIN *u*, *o*.

SINGULAR.

Nom. Acc. Sanscrit *dāna-m*, Zend *dātē-m*, Latin *donu-m*, Greek *δῶπο-ν*, Lithuanian *géra*, Gothic *daur'*.  
 Vocative, Sanscrit *dāna*, Zend *dāta*, Gothic *daur'*.  
 The rest as the masculine.

DUAL.

Nom. Acc. Voc. Sanscrit *dānē* (from *dāna* + *i*), Zend *dātē*.  
 The rest as the masculine.

PLURAL

Nom. Acc. Voc. Sanscrit *dānā-n-i*, Vêda *dānā*, Zend *dāta*, Latin *dona*, Greek *δῶπα*, Gothic *daura*.  
 The rest as the masculine.

“Remark 1.—The Zend system of declension has obtained some valuable additions from the treatises published by Burnouf since the appearance of the First Part of this book, which I must lay before my readers.\* First a dual case, viz. the genitive-locative, which I imagined to be lost in the Zend, as I had searched for it alone in vain, and could supply all the other dual endings in tolerable copiousness. M. Burnouf supplies this (*Yasna, Notes et éclaircissements*, p. cxxii.) by the expressions 𐬔𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬎𐬀 *ubōyō anhvō*, which are to be twice found in V. S. p. 312, and on both occasions are rendered by Anquetil, whose

---

\* First, a review of this Part in the *Journal des Savans*, which refers particularly to the Zend; then the First Part of the First Volume of a Commentary on the *Yasna*; lastly, a disquisition in the *Nouveau Journal Asiatique*, “*Sur les mots Zends et Sanscrits Vahista et Varichta, et sur quelques superlatifs en Zend.*”



translation is in this place particularly confused, "*dans ce monde.*" This translation might lead us astray so much the more easily, that 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬭𐬀 *anhvó*, according to §. 187., might also be the singular genitive, which frequently occurs with a locative meaning. We await the elucidation which Neriosingh's Sanscrit translation will give of this passage; but, for the present, content ourselves with the inferences deduced by Burnouf. 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬭𐬀 *ubóyó*, according to that authority, corresponds with the Sanscrit उभयोस् *ubhayós* (*amborum, in ambobus*), with *ó* for *a*, probably, according to Burnouf's acute conjecture, through the influence of the preceding *b*, and with the loss of the concluding *s*. I am the more inclined to assent to Burnouf's opinion regarding the origin of the first *ó* of 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬭𐬀 *ubóyó*, as I have been so fortunate as to find another example for the hitherto missing dual case, in which 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬭𐬀 *ayó*, not 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬭𐬀 *óyó*, actually occurs; because, that is to say, no letter exercising the force of assimilation in question precedes the *a*—I mean the form 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬭𐬀𐬎𐬭𐬀 *zaštayó* (= Sanscrit *hastayós*), "in the hands," from 𐬎𐬭𐬀𐬎𐬭𐬀 *zašta*, in a passage of the Izeschne, which has perhaps not yet been examined by M. Burnouf (V. S. p. 354.): 𐬕𐬀𐬎𐬭𐬀𐬎𐬭𐬀 𐬕𐬀𐬎𐬭𐬀𐬎𐬭𐬀 𐬕𐬀𐬎𐬭𐬀𐬎𐬭𐬀 𐬕𐬀𐬎𐬭𐬀𐬎𐬭𐬀 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬭𐬀𐬎𐬭𐬀 *kathá ashái drujēm dyanim zaštayó*,\* which Anquetil (p. 192.) translates by "*Comment moi pur, mettrai-je la main sur le Daroudj?*" It appears, however, that 𐬎𐬭𐬀𐬎𐬭𐬀 *ashái* can as little be a nominative as 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬭𐬀𐬎𐬭𐬀 *zaštayó* a singular accusative; and I believe I am not wrong in the following literal translation: "How can I give the (Dæmon) Drudsch into the hands of the pure (into the power)?"

"Remark 2.—In the instrumental singular M. Burnouf admits the termination *ana* in roots in *a* (Yaçna, p. 98. passim), with *n* introduced, for the sake of euphony,

---

\* The Codex has faultily 𐬎𐬭𐬀𐬎𐬭𐬀 *asái* and 𐬕𐬀𐬎𐬭𐬀𐬎𐬭𐬀 *drujem*.

according to the analogy of the Sanscrit एन *éna* (§. 158.). He rests this, among other forms, on that of मज्जन्मान *mañsmana*, “*urind*,” a word which had often attracted my attention, and from which I, in like manner, would have deduced instrumentals in *a-n-a* if I had not differed from Burnouf in the etymology of the same, as I make its theme terminate in *n*; and this word, which I remember to have seen only in the instrumental, I derive from the Sanscrit root मिह् *mih*, “*mingere*,” by a suffix मन् *man*, according to the analogy of बरिष्मान् *barēśman*, from वृह् *vrih*, “*to grow*,” whose instrumental बरिष्मान् *barēśmana*, analogous with मज्जन्मान *mañsmana*, occurs very frequently. M. Burnouf appears, on the other hand, to adopt a suffix *ma* in the word *mañsmana*, in which we think we cannot agree with him as long as we cannot supply any cases which must indubitably belong to a theme in *a*. If, further, some words, which in their theme terminate in *as* (अस्, Sanscrit अस् *as*), adopt *ana* in the instrumental form—M. Burnouf quotes, p. 100 note, मज्जन्मान *mazana*, श्रयन्मान *śrayana*, and वान्मान *vanhana*; still, in my opinion, bases in *a* may be assigned as the origin of these forms, and they can be divided *maza-na*, &c., only in as far as such forms have been already proved to belong to undoubted bases in *a*. But now we prefer dividing them *mazan-a*, so that the letter *s*, with which these themes originally terminate, is interchanged with a nasal, just as, in Sanscrit, the words यक्त् *yakṛit*, शक्त् *śakṛit*, change their *t* for *n* in the weak cases, and can substitute यक्न् *yakan*, शक्न् *śakan*; or as, in more remote analogy, the Greek, in the first person plural, has made *μεν* from *μες* (मस् *mas*, “*mus*”). Besides this, M. Burnouf cites also the interrogative instrumental कान् *kana*, “*with what?*” which is the only word that brings to my mind somewhat of conviction, and had struck my attention before, in passages like कान् यज्ञान् कान् यज्ञान् *kana yazna yazāné*, “*with*

what offering shall I sacrifice?" (V. S. p. 481.) I have not, however, ventured to draw a grammatical deduction from this form, because the pronominal bases are prone to unite with one another, and because I believed I might assume that the same pronoun which is contained in **अन** *ana* and **एन** *éna* forms also the last element of **अज** *kana*, if from this base the instrumental only had been produced or preserved, as has also occurred in the Sanscrit **अन** *ana* and **एन** *éna* in but a few cases. For the rest, the Greek *κείνος* also appears connected with this **अज** *kana*, if it is looked upon as a theme, with which the instrumental must agree in sound, for *κείνος*, if not directly of interrogative meaning, is still plainly connected with the old interrogative root (comp. **कश्चन** *kaśchana*, "whoever."). Under these circumstances I cannot yet admit of any instrumentals in *a-n-a*, especially as also the bases in *i* and *u* (in which the Sanscrit in the masculine and neuter likewise introduces a euphonic *n*) in the Zend, in words which we have considered as receiving a similar insertion (§. 160.). In another place (*Journal des Savans*), M. Burnouf deduces the frequently-occurring instrumental **अशय** *ashayá*, "with purity," from the masculine theme **अश** *asha*; and there would be accordingly **अशया** *ashaya*, an instrumental form, at present standing alone in the Zend, which I hesitate to acknowledge, although it would be analogous to the Vêda form mentioned in §. 158., **स्वप्नया** *svapnayá*, if one derives this, with the Indian grammarians, from a theme **स्वप्न** *svapna*. But if instrumental forms of this kind, in the Vêdas or in the Zend, are not to be produced in other undoubted instances, as in the case of adjectives in construction with masculine or neuter substantives, nothing prevents the assumption, that the form **स्वप्नया** *svapnayá* belongs to a feminine theme **स्वप्ना** *svapná*, especially as the suffix **न** *na* occurs also in other abstracts in the feminine form **ना** *ná*, and so can be deduced with

समया *svapnayá*, according to the analogy of तृष्णया *trishnayá*, “with thirst.” In every case I think I may deduce the Zend *𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀 ashaya* from a feminine theme *𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬀 ashá*, as the Zend in general, in the substantive, passes readily from one sex to the other; and, for example, with a masculine root *𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀 manthra*, “a speech,” occurs, also, a feminine *𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀 manthrá*.

“Remark 3.—For the genitive ending *𐬀𐬭𐬀 hé* there exists, as Burnouf has most satisfactorily proved, also a form nearer to the Sanscrit *sya*, viz. *𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬀 hyá*, which, although tolerably rare in comparison with the more corrupt form *hé*, is still sufficiently frequent in some chapters of the Izeschne to satisfy one perfectly of its signification, according to the proofs given by Burnouf. I also had remarked words with the ending *𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬀 hyá*, but in passages where Anquetil's translation was little adapted to bring to light the genitive nature of the same, which, besides, was very much obscured through its usual representative *𐬀𐬭𐬀 hé*, and was, moreover, concealed from me under the appearance of an instrumental form. However, the termination *hyá*—for which is sometimes found, also, *𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬀 khyá*—approaches so very near to the Sanscrit *स्य sya*, and agrees with it so precisely according to rule, as far as the unorganic lengthening of the *a*, that a single passage, with the accurate translation of Neriosingh, who, in the passages hitherto edited, follows the original word by word, would have led us to it. Such a passage is given, although with a different aim, by Burnouf in his Yasna (Notes, p. cxxxix.), which we here annex, as it is interesting in other respects, also, for grammar:—  
 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬀 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀  
 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀 *kaśná zanthwá patá*  
*ashahyá paourvyá kaśná kheng strenchá dāt adhvánēm*. Ne-  
 riosingh translates this passage word for word, only that he renders *kaśná*, “which man?” (here properly not more

than "who," for the idea of man is lost in the general signification of the whole,) not by को ना *kô ná*, but simply by को *kô*, as follows: को जननेः पिता पुण्यस्य प्रथमं कः सूर्यस्य तारकानाञ्च ददौ पदवीम् *kô jananéh pitá punyasya prathamam\** (किल सद्व्यापारत्वङ् कम् चक्रे *kila sadvyâpârâtvan kaś chakrê*, i.e. "*boni originem quis fecit?*") काँ सूर्यस्या तारकानान्चा ददावु पदविम् (किल मार्गन् तेषाङ् को ददौ *kila mângan teshân kô dadâu*, i.e. "*viam ipsis quis dedit?*"). We translate from the Zend, "*Quis (qualis vir) creatione pater est puritatis (or puri) primus? quis (qualis vir) soli stellisque dedit viam?*" The Zend expression *𐬨𐬁𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬵𐬀 zanthwā*, for which, in the lithographed codex, p. 351, is erroneously given *𐬨𐬁𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬵𐬀 zanthā*, is plainly the instrumental of *𐬨𐬁𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬵𐬀 zantu*; which would correspond to the theme of a Sanscrit infinitive, जनुम् *jantum*, as the latter is feminine, and to which I have, in another place, referred the ablative *𐬨𐬁𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬀𐬰 zanthwāt* (Gramm. Crit. p. 253.). This form is, besides, remarkable on this account, viz. because it is identical with the Sanscrit instrumental gerund, which, from जन् *jan*, without a conjunctive vowel and without the euphonious suppression of the न् *n*, would sound जन्वा *jantvā*. With regard, however, to the length of the concluding *a* of the Zend form, which is preserved contrary to the prevailing rule (see §§. 118. 158. and 160. p. 178, where, however, *𐬨𐬁𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬵𐬀 janthwa* is to be read for *zanthwa*), I do not attach any particular importance to that, because in the chapter from which this passage is taken *a*, originally short, is repeatedly to be found lengthened. The Sanscrit जननेः *jananéh*, with which Neriosingh translates the Zend instrumental case, must be considered as an ablative, as this case often enters the department of the instrumental, and is also capable of expressing

\* Perhaps the adverb प्रथमं *prathamam*, "*primum*," is a corruption for प्रथमः *prathamah*, "*primus*," which answers to the original, and is to be expected from the sense.

the preposition "through" (for example, Nal. XII. 89.). Considered as a genitive, जनने: *jananéh* would not correspond with 𑀧𑀲𑀭𑀮𑀳𑀲𑀢𑀺𑀓 *zanthrā*, which cannot possibly be a genitive, for the genitive of 𑀧𑀲𑀭𑀮𑀳𑀲𑀢𑀺𑀓 *zantu* could only be 𑀧𑀲𑀭𑀮𑀳𑀲𑀢𑀺𑀓𑀲𑀢𑀺𑀓 *zanteus*, or, also, 𑀧𑀲𑀭𑀮𑀳𑀲𑀢𑀺𑀓𑀲𑀢𑀺𑀓𑀲𑀢𑀺𑀓 *zantavō* (see §. 187.), but in no case 𑀧𑀲𑀭𑀮𑀳𑀲𑀢𑀺𑀓 *zanthrā*. Add to this, also, that जननि *janani* is feminine, like the Zend 𑀧𑀲𑀭𑀮𑀳𑀲𑀢𑀺𑀓 *zantu*, and पुण्यस्य *punyasya*, therefore, could no more pass as the epithet of जनने: *jananéh* than, in Zend, 𑀧𑀲𑀭𑀮𑀳𑀲𑀢𑀺𑀓𑀲𑀢𑀺𑀓𑀲𑀢𑀺𑀓 *ashahyā* could pass as the epithet of 𑀧𑀲𑀭𑀮𑀳𑀲𑀢𑀺𑀓 *zanthrā*. I will, however, as concerns the Zend, lay no great stress on this circumstance, since in it the genders of the substantive are constantly changing. M. Burnouf, who looks upon जनने: *jananéh* as a genitive, and refers पुण्यस्य *punyasya* to it, according to this interpretation justly takes objection to the पुण्यस्य *punyasya*, which does not agree with the gender of जननि *janani*, but he confirms, however, the reading expressly by the addition of a *sic*. His translation runs, "*Quel est le premier père de la creation pure? qui a montré leur route au soleil et aux astres.*" I look with anxiety for M. Burnouf's further explanation of this passage, but expect from him rather information of value in other respects, than to find that he has succeeded in making the forms जनने: *jananéh* and 𑀧𑀲𑀭𑀮𑀳𑀲𑀢𑀺𑀓 *zanthrā* pass for genitives. Anquetil's traditional interpretation sounds, in this place, very strange, but does not contradict my apprehension of 𑀧𑀲𑀭𑀮𑀳𑀲𑀢𑀺𑀓 *zanthrā*: he makes the genitive 𑀧𑀲𑀭𑀮𑀳𑀲𑀢𑀺𑀓𑀲𑀢𑀺𑀓𑀲𑀢𑀺𑀓 *ashahyā* pass for the nominative, and does not, therefore, throw any light on the meaning of the termination 𑀧𑀲𑀭𑀮𑀳𑀲𑀢𑀺𑀓 *hyā*; for, in the presumption that it was right, 𑀧𑀲𑀭𑀮𑀳𑀲𑀢𑀺𑀓𑀲𑀢𑀺𑀓𑀲𑀢𑀺𑀓 *ashahyā* might, perhaps, have next been taken for an instrumental, and perhaps have been translated "father with purity." His translation is as follows: "*Quel est le premier père pur\** qui a engendré? qui a donné

\* In other places (V. S. p. 385.) Anquetil renders (p. 137) the words

*de lui même les astres qui ne sont pas à deux faces ?*" The sun is here quite left out of the question ; and it must be acknowledged, that, as far as relates to etymology, it is very much obscured in this passage: we might identify, with reference to the form of **ဥဃဋ္ဌာ** *kheng*, this expression with the reflective pronoun **ယ** *kha* (as in *kha-dāta*, "created of itself," which is often said of the stars, as of self-created lights), and consider it as the epithet of **ယုဃဋ္ဌာ** *stren-cha*; so that it would correspond as accusative plural to the Sanscrit **स्वान्** *svān*. It is here to be remarked, that in some chapters of the *Izeshne*, **ဥဃ** *ng* is repeatedly found instead of a simple nasal, and, indeed, without regard to the organ of the following initial letter. So we read, in the V. S. p. 391, **ဥဃဋ္ဌာ** *dushacsathreng*,† **ဥဃဋ္ဌာ** *dusksyaōthneng*, **ဥဃဋ္ဌာ** *dushda-ēneng*. Anquetil, indeed, renders these expressions as singular nominatives, "that wicked king, who does ill, being attached to the bad law"; but they, together with **ဥဃဋ္ဌာ** *dushvachanō*, **ဥဃဋ္ဌာ** *dushmananō*, refer to the plural **ဥဃဋ္ဌာ** *drēvatō*, and I have no doubt of their accusative nature: the whole passage, however, like many others in the *Izeshne*, can be explained only with the help of Neriosingh's Sanscrit translation. We can but regret that the in other respects highly valuable exactness of Burnouf's excellent Commentary leaves us no hope that he will come very soon to the elucidation of this and other passages, regarding which I am most curious. But to return to our **ဥဃဋ္ဌာ** *kheng*,

---

**ယုဃဋ္ဌာ** *patā ashahyā* rightly by *père de la pureté*: his translation is, however, little calculated to throw light on the connection of the passage referred to.

\* The lithographed MS. has **ဥဃဋ္ဌာ** *dusa csathreng* as two words; the *a* is, however, clearly only a conjunctive vowel, to unite the prefix **ဥဃ** *dush* more conveniently with the following **ယ** *cs*.

the 𐬕 *kh* makes no difficulty in this expression, even in its acceptation for the sun, for which, commonly, 𐬕𐬀𐬎𐬌 *hvarē* is found (the Sanscrit 𑖔𑖑𑖔 *svar*, "heaven,"), as 𐬕 *kh* is used very frequently for 𐬀𐬎 *hv* (see §. 35.); but we might here expect to find 𐬕𐬀𐬎𐬌 *khare*, and may suppose that the 𐬎𐬌 *ng* has arisen out of *n*, and this latter out of *r*, as these liquids are easily interchanged, as is shewn in Sanscrit, by the connection of 𑖔𑖑𑖔 *ahan*, "day," with 𑖔𑖑𑖔 *ahar*, and, in the Zend, that of 𐬕𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬌 *csapan*, "night," with 𐬕𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬌 *csapar* (I write it thus, and not 𐬕𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬌 *csaparē*, designedly, see §. 44.). At all events I take 𐬕𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬌 *kheng* to be the accusative, if, indeed, it may not also be conjectured that the base 𐬕𐬀𐬎𐬌 *hvar* may have entirely lost its *r*, and that it may be 𐬕𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬌 *kheng* for 𐬕𐬀𐬎𐬌 *khem*, the accusative of a base 𐬕𐬀𐬎 *kha*. 𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬌 *stren-cha*, also, according to my opinion, is the accusative, and not, as one might expect from the Sanscrit translation, the genitive plural, which more frequently occurs in the form 𐬕𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬌 *stāranim*. Although, from this, 𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬌 *stren* might easily be formed by contraction and combination with 𐬀𐬎 *cha*, I nevertheless prefer acknowledging in 𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬌 *strencha*, a secondary form of 𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬌 *streus*, explained in §. 239.; so that the nasal, here vocalized to *u*, is there retained, but the sibilant has been removed (comp. §. 239.); especially as, in other places also, 𐬀𐬎𐬌 *dā* is found in construction with the accusative of the person, which has been given. In the Zend expression, 𐬕𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬌 *adhvānēm*, the Sanscrit 𑖔𑖑𑖔𑖑𑖔𑖑𑖔 *adhvānam* cannot fail to be observed (comp. §. 45.); but in the lithographed MS. we have instead of this, 𐬕𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬌 *advānēm*, which is easily seen to be an error. This false reading appears, nevertheless, to be an ancient one, and widely diffused; and upon this is founded Anquetil's, or rather his Parsi teacher's, interpretation, which is strangely at variance with Neriosingh's exposition: "*qui ne sont pas a deux faces*," so that 𐬀𐬎 *a* is



taken for the well-known privative particle, *द्व* *dva* as the number two, and the last portion finds in the Sanscrit *आनन* *ānana*, “countenance,” its corresponding syllable.

FEMININE BASES IN *ā*, GOTHIC *ô* (§. 118.).

Nominative,	Sanscrit <i>dharā</i> *, Greek <i>χώρα</i> , Lithuanian <i>rankā</i> , Zend <i>hizva</i> , Gothic <i>giba</i> , Latin <i>terra</i> .
Accusative,	Sansc. <i>dharā-m</i> , Latin <i>terra-m</i> , Zend <i>hizva-nm</i> , Greek <i>χώρα-ν</i> , Lith. <i>ranka-n</i> , Goth. <i>giba</i> .
Instrumental,	Sanscrit <i>dharay-ā</i> , Zend <i>hizvay-a</i> , Gothic Dat. Instr. <i>gibai</i> (§. 161.), Lithuanian <i>rankà</i> .
Dative,	Sansc. <i>dharāy-āi</i> , Zend <i>hizvay-āi</i> , Lith. <i>ranka-i</i> .
Ablative,	Zend <i>hizvay-at</i> , Latin <i>terra(d)</i> .
Genitive,	Sanscrit <i>dharāy-ās</i> , Zend <i>hizvay-āo</i> , Greek <i>χώρα-ς</i> , Latin <i>terrā-s</i> , Lithuanian <i>rankó-s</i> , Gothic <i>gibô-s</i> .
Locative,	Sanscrit <i>dharāy-ām</i> (§. 202.), Zend <i>hizvay-a</i> , Lithuanian <i>ranko-ye</i> (§. 197.).
Vocative,	Sanscrit <i>dharē</i> , Zend <i>hizvê</i> (?), Greek <i>χώρα</i> , Latin <i>terra</i> , Lithuanian <i>ranka</i> , Gothic <i>giba</i> (?).

DUAL.

Nom. Acc. Voc.	Sanscrit <i>dharē</i> , Zend <i>hizvê</i> (§. 213.), Lithuanian Nom. <i>ranki</i> , Voc. <i>ránki</i> .
Instr. Dat. Abl.	Sanscrit <i>dharā-bhyām</i> , Zend <i>hizvā-byā</i> ,† Greek Dat. Gen. <i>χώρα-ιν</i> , Lith. Dat. <i>ranko-m</i> (§. 215.).
Gen. Loc.	Sanscrit <i>dhāray-ōs</i> .

\* Means “earth,” and is probably connected with the Greek *χώρα*, as aspirates are easily interchanged (Buttmann, §. 16. Rem. 1.). The root is *धृ* *dhri* (*धृ* *dhar*, §. 1.), “to stop,” “carry”; whence, also, *धार* *dhārā*, which, by reason of the long vowel of its root, approaches nearer the Greek *χώρα* (§. 4.), although it does not signify earth.

† Without being able to support this case in Zend roots in *ā*, I still have no doubt of the genuineness of the above form, since I can prove it by other relative case terminations.

FEMININE BASES IN *i*.\*

## SINGULAR.

Nominative,	Sanskrit <i>prīti-s</i> , Zend <i>āfrīti-s</i> , Greek <i>πόρι-ς</i> , Latin <i>turri-s</i> , Lithuanian <i>ami-s</i> , Gothic <i>anst'-s</i> ,
Accusative,	Sanskrit <i>prīti-m</i> , Latin <i>turri-m</i> , Zend <i>āfrīti-m</i> , Greek <i>πόρι-ν</i> , Lithuanian <i>ami-ni</i> , Gothic <i>anst'</i> .
Instrumental,	Sanskrit <i>prīty-ā</i> , Zend <i>āfrīthy-a</i> , Gothic Dat. Instr. <i>anstai</i> (without case suffix, see §. 161.).
Dative,	Sanskrit <i>prītay-ē</i> (or <i>prīty-ai</i> , §. 164.), Zend <i>āfrīte-ē</i> .†
Ablative,	Zend <i>āfrītōi-t</i> , Latin <i>turri-(d)</i> .
Genitive,	Sanskrit <i>prītē-s</i> (or only with the feminine termination <i>prīty-ās</i> ), Gothic <i>anstai-s</i> , Zend <i>āfrītōi-s</i> , Greek <i>πόρι-ος, φύσε-ως</i> , Lat. <i>turri-s</i> .
Locative,	Sanskrit <i>prīt-āu</i> (or with the feminine termination only <i>prīty-ām</i> ).
Vocative,	Sanskrit <i>prītē</i> , Zend <i>āfrīti</i> , Greek <i>πόρι</i> .

## DUAL.

Nom. Acc. Voc. Sanskrit *prītī*, Zend *āfrītī*(?), Lithuanian Nom. *amì*, Voc. *āmi*.

\* It may be sufficient to give here the cases of a Sanscrit masculine in *ī*, which differ from the feminine paradigma: from *agni*, "fire," comes the instrumental singular *agni-n-ā*—whilst from *pati*, "master," comes *paty-ā*, and from *sakhi*, "friend," *sakhy-ā* (see §. 158.)—and in the accus. plural *अग्नीन् agnī-n*.

† Differing from what is stated in §. 164. p. 181, it is now my opinion that the *ē* in *āfrīteē* does not represent the *a* of the original form *āfrītayē*, but is the contraction of *a* and *y*; as, for instance, in the Prakrit *चिन्तेमि chintēmi*, from *चिन्तयामि chintayāmi*. *ē* is here a weaker form of *ē = ॡ*, and is more properly used to represent the latter than another vowel. With regard to the Lithuanian, see p. 218. Rem. †.

Instr. Dat. Abl. Sanscrit *prīti-bhyām*, Zend *āfrīta-bya*, Greek  
Gen. Dat. *πορτί-ο-ιν*, Lithuanian Dat. *ávi-m*  
(§. 215.).

Gen. Loc. Sanscrit *prīty-ós*, Zend *āfrīthy-ō* (?) (see p. 276.  
Rem. 1.).

## PLURAL.

Nom. Voc. Sanscrit *prītay-as*, Zend *āfrīthy-ō* (with *cha*  
und *āfrīthy-as̥-cha*), Greek *πόρτι-ες*, Latin  
*turr'-ēs*, Gothic *anstei-s*, Lithuanian *ávy-s*.

Accusative, Sanscrit *prīti-s*, Zend *āfrīti-s*, Greek *πόρτι-ς*,  
Gothic *ansti-ns*, Lithuanian *ávy-s*.

Instrumental, Sanscrit *prīti-bhis*, Zend *āfrīti-bīs*, Lithuanian  
*avi-mis*, Gothic Dat. Instr. *ansti-m* (§. 215.).

Dat. Abl. Sanscrit *prīti-bhyas*, Zend *āfrīti-byō*, Latin *tur-*  
*ri-bus*, Lithuanian *avi-m(u)s* (§. 215.).

Genitive, Sanscrit *prīti-n-ām*, Zend *āfrīti-n-aīm*, Latin  
*turri-um*, Greek *πορτί-ων*, Lithuanian *avi-ū*,  
Gothic *anst'-ē*.

Locative, Sanscrit *prīti-shu*, Zend *āfrīti-shva* (or *āfrīti-*  
*shu*), Lithuanian *ávi-sa*, Greek Dat. *πόρτι-σι*.

NEUTER BASES IN *i*.

## SINGULAR.

Nom. Acc. Voc. Sanscrit *vāri*, Zend *vairi*, Greek *ἴδρι*, Latin  
*mare*.

The rest like the masculine.

## DUAL.

Nom. Acc. Voc. Sanscrit *vāri-n-ī*.

The rest like the masculine.

## PLURAL.

Nom. Acc. Voc. Sanscrit *vāri'-n-i*, Zend *vār'-a*, Greek *ἴδρι-α*,  
Latin *mari-a*, Gothic *thriy-a* (from *THRI*,  
"three").

The rest like the masculine.

MASCULINE BASES IN *u*.

## SINGULAR.

Nominative,	Sanscrit <i>sūnu-s</i> , Gothic <i>sunu-s</i> , Lithuanian <i>sunù-s</i> , Zend <i>pašu-s</i> , Latin <i>pecu-s</i> , Greek <i>βότρυ-ς</i> .
Accusative,	Sanscrit <i>sūnu-m</i> , Latin <i>pecu-m</i> , Zend <i>pašû-m</i> , Greek <i>βότρυ-ν</i> , Lithuanian <i>sunu-ñ</i> , Gothic <i>sunu</i> .
Instrumental,	Sanscrit <i>sūnu-n-ā</i> (Vêda <i>prabāhāv-ā</i> , from <i>prabāhu</i> , §. 158.), Zend <i>pašv-a</i> , Gothic Dat. Instr. <i>sunau</i> .
Dative,	Sanscrit <i>sūnav-ē</i> , Zend <i>pašv-ē</i> , Lithuanian <i>sunu-i</i> .
Ablative,	Zend <i>pašaô-t</i> , Latin <i>pecu-(d)</i> .
Genitive,	Sanscrit <i>sūnô-s</i> (from <i>sunau-s</i> ), Gothic <i>sunau-s</i> , Lithuanian <i>sunau-s</i> , Zend <i>pašeu-s</i> or <i>pašv-ô</i> (from <i>pašv-aš</i> ), Latin <i>pecû-s</i> , Greek <i>βότρυ-ος</i> .
Locative,	Sanscrit <i>sūn'-āu</i> .
Vocative,	Sanscrit <i>sūnô</i> (from <i>sunau</i> ), Gothic <i>sunau</i> , Lithuanian <i>sunau</i> , Zend <i>pašu</i> , Greek <i>βότρυ</i> .

## DUAL.

Nom. Acc. Voc.	Sanscrit <i>sūnû</i> , Zend <i>pašu</i> , Lithuanian Nom. <i>sunù</i> , Voc. <i>sūnu</i> .
Instr. Dat. Abl.	Sanscrit <i>sūnu-bhyām</i> , Zend <i>pašu-bya</i> , Greek <i>βοτρύ-ο-ιν</i> , Lithuanian <i>sunu-m</i> (§. 215.)
Gen. Loc.	Sanscrit <i>sūnv-âs</i> , Zend <i>pašv-ô</i> (see p. 276. Rem. 1.).

## PLURAL.

Nom. Voc.	Sanscrit <i>sūnav-as</i> , Greek <i>βότρυ-ες</i> , Zend <i>pašv-ô</i> (with <i>cha</i> , <i>pašvaš-cha</i> ), Latin <i>pecû-s</i> , Gothic <i>sunju-s</i> (for <i>suniu-s</i> , from <i>sunau-s</i> , §. 230.), Lithuanian <i>sūnu-s</i> .
Instrumental,	Sanscrit <i>sūnu-bhis</i> , Zend <i>pašu-bîs</i> , Lithuanian <i>sunu-mis</i> , Gothic Dat. Instr. <i>sunu-m</i> (§. 215.).

Genitive,	Sanscrit <i>sūnū-n-ām</i> , Zend <i>paśv-aīm</i> , Latin <i>pecu-um</i> , Greek <i>βοτρυ-ων</i> , Gothic <i>suniv-ē</i> , Lithuanian <i>sun'-ū</i> .
Locative,	Sanscrit <i>sūnu-shu</i> , Zend <i>paśu-shva</i> (or <i>paśu-shu</i> ), Lithuanian <i>sunū-se</i> , Greek Dat. <i>βοτρυ-σι</i> .

Remark.—Feminine bases in *u* in Sanscrit differ in declension from the masculine, exactly as, p. 305., *प्रीति* *prīti* f. differs from *अग्नि* *agni* m.

NEUTER BASES IN *u*.

## SINGULAR.

Nom. Acc. Voc. Sanscrit *madhu*, Zend *madhu*, Greek *μέθυ*, Latin *pecu*, Gothic *faihu*.

The rest like the masculine.

## DUAL.

Nom. Acc. Voc. Sanscrit *madhu-n-ī*.

The rest like the masculine.

## PLURAL.

Nom. Acc. Voc. Sanscrit *madhū-n-i*, Zend *madhv-a*, Greek *μέθυ-α*, Latin *pecu-a*.

The rest like the masculine.

FEMININE BASES IN *ī*.

## SINGULAR.

	Sanscrit.		Zend
Nom.	<i>nāri</i> , "woman,"	<i>bhī-s</i> , "fear,"	<i>nāiri</i> , "woman."
Accus.	<i>nāri-m</i> ,	<i>bhiy-am</i> ,	<i>nārirī-m</i> .
Instr.	<i>nāry-ā</i> ,	<i>bhiy-ā</i> ,	<i>nāiry-a</i> .
Dat.	<i>nāry-āi</i> ,	<i>bhiy-ē</i> or <i>bhiy-āi</i> ,	<i>nāiry-āi</i> .
Abl.	<i>nāry-ās</i> ,	<i>bhiy-as</i> or <i>bhiy-ās</i> ,	<i>nāiry-āt</i> .
Gen.	<i>nāry-ās</i> ,	<i>bhiy-as</i> or <i>bhiy-ās</i> ,	<i>nāiry-āo</i> .
Loc.	<i>nāry-ām</i> ,	<i>bhiy-i</i> or <i>bhiy-ām</i> ,	<i>nāiry-a</i> .
Voc.	<i>nāri</i> ,	<i>bhī-s</i> ,	<i>nāiri</i> .

	<i>Sanscrit.</i>	DUAL.	<i>Zend.</i>
N. A. V.	<i>nāry-āu,</i>	<i>bhiy-āu,</i>	<i>nāiri'</i> (see §. 213. p. 227).
I. D. Ab.	<i>nāri-bhyām,</i>	<i>bhī-bhyām,</i>	<i>nāiri-bya.</i>
Loc.	<i>nāry-ās,</i>	<i>bhiy-ās,</i>	<i>nāiry-ō?</i>
		PLURAL.	
N. V.	<i>nāry-ās,</i>	<i>bhiy-as,</i>	<i>nāiry-āo.</i>
Accus.	<i>nāri-s,</i>	<i>bhiy-as,</i>	<i>nāiri-s.</i>
Instr.	<i>nāri-bhis,</i>	<i>bhī-bhis,</i>	<i>nāiri-bīs.</i>
D. Abl.	<i>nāri-bhyas,</i>	<i>bhī-bhyas,</i>	<i>nāiri-byō.</i>
Gen.	<i>nāri-n-ām,</i>	<i>bhiy-ām,*</i>	<i>nāiri-n-āim.</i>
Loc.	<i>nāri-shu,</i>	<i>bhī-shu,</i>	<i>nāiri-shva</i> or <i>-shu.</i>

“Remark.—By the side of the declension of monosyllabic feminine bases in *i*, which may reject the terminations peculiar to the feminine alone, may be placed the Greek *κῑς*, and a remarkable similarity of inflexion will be observed, as Nom. *bhī-s*, *κῑς*, Gen. *bhiy-as*, *κῑ-ός*, Loc. Dat. *bhiy-i*, *κῑ-ί*, Acc. *strī-m*,\* *κῑ-ν*, Voc. *bhī-s*, *κῑς*. Plural: Nom. *bhiy-as*, *κῑ-ες*, Gen. *bhiy-ām*, *κῑ-ῶν*, Loc. Dat. *bhī-shu*, *κῑ-σί*, Acc. *bhiy-as*, *κῑ-ας*, Voc. *bhiy-as*, *κῑ-ες*. I consider, however, this coincidence as accidental, but, nevertheless, an accidental coincidence of that nature, that can only occur in languages which were originally really one: and undoubtedly the terminations, whose common sound appears so startling, are historically connected. As far, however, as concerns the theme, I believe, with Kühner (§. 287.), that the *i* of *κῑ* was not the original foundation-pillar of the word, but that a consonant has fallen out after the *i*. I would rather, however, leave this consonant undecided, than assume that

---

\* Or *bhi-n-ām*. Further, the longer case-terminations, which belong to the feminine (see §. 164.), are added at will to the monosyllabic feminines in *i*, *ū*; for example, together with *bhiyē*, *bhruvē*, also *bhiyāi*, *bhruvāi*.

KIF is the true theme, and that the nominative was originally  $\kappa\iota F\varsigma$ ; for if  $\kappa\iota\acute{o}\varsigma$ ,  $\kappa\iota\acute{i}$ , in the form in which they have been received, are analogous to  $\Delta\iota\acute{o}\varsigma$ ,  $\Delta\iota\acute{i}$ , from  $\Delta\iota F\acute{o}\varsigma$ ,  $\Delta\iota F\acute{i}$ , still, to establish a theme KIF, a proof must be brought similar to that which really attaches to  $\Delta\iota F\iota$  from its being found in inscriptions. And besides this, that which of itself is alone sufficient proof, the cognate Sanscrit word दिव् *div*, "heaven" (§. 122.), likewise attests a digamma. All ground for supposing a theme KIF is, however, wanting, for the long  $\iota$  could, as in the Sanscrit भी *bhī*, and like the long  $\upsilon$  in  $\delta\phi\rho\acute{\upsilon}\varsigma$ , be also the real final letter of the root, only that the long  $\acute{\iota}$  in the Sanscrit, except in compounds (for example गतभी *gata-bhī* m. f., "void of fear," जलपी m. f., "water drinking," see Gramm. Crit. §§. 169, 170.), concludes only the feminine themes. We will therefore seek elucidation regarding the Greek  $\kappa\iota\varsigma$  in another way, through the Sanscrit; and we find this, as it appears to me, through a like masculine base, which approximates closely to the  $\kappa\iota\acute{\iota}\varsigma$ , as well in form as in meaning; namely, in कीट *kīṭa*, Nom. कीटस् *kīṭa-s*, "insect," "worm," which would lead us to expect in the Greek  $\kappa\iota\tau\omicron\varsigma$ , Acc.  $\kappa\iota\tau\omicron\nu$ , to which  $\kappa\iota\varsigma$ ,  $\kappa\iota\nu$ , bear the same relation as  $\mu\acute{\epsilon}\gamma\alpha\varsigma$ ,  $\mu\acute{\epsilon}\gamma\alpha\nu$ , to the presupposed  $\mu\acute{\epsilon}\gamma\alpha\lambda\omicron\varsigma$ ,  $\mu\acute{\epsilon}\gamma\alpha\lambda\omicron\nu$ . I do not consider it requisite to assume a theme MEΓAT, although the Sanscrit महत् *mahat*, "great," might support it; but महत् *mahat* is a participial form, and its full and original form (§. 129.) is महन् *mahant*, Nom. masc. महान् *mahān*, which would correspond to the Greek  $\mu\epsilon\gamma\omega\nu$ ."

FEMININE BASES IN  $\acute{\upsilon}$ ,  $\bar{\upsilon}$ .

## SINGULAR.

	Sanskrit.		Greek.
Nom.	<i>vadhū-s</i> , "wife,"	<i>bhrū-s</i> , "eye-brow,"	$\delta\phi\rho\acute{\upsilon}\varsigma$ .
Accus.	<i>vadhū-m</i> ,	<i>bhruv-am</i> ,	$\delta\phi\rho\acute{\upsilon}-\nu$ .
Instr.	<i>vadhv-ā</i> ,	<i>bhruv-ā</i> ,	....
Dat.	<i>vadhv-āi</i> ,	<i>bhruv-ē</i> (or <i>-āi</i> ),	....

SINGULAR.			
	Sanskrit.		Greek.
Abl.	<i>vadhv-ās,</i>	<i>bhruv-as</i> (or <i>-ās</i> ),	....
Gen.	<i>vadhv-ās,</i>	<i>bhruv-as</i> (or <i>-ās</i> ),	ὀφρύ-ος.
Loc.	<i>vadhv-ām,</i>	<i>bhruv-i</i> (or <i>-ām</i> ),	ὀφρύ-ϊ.
Voc.	<i>vadhu,</i>	<i>bhrû-s,</i>	ὀφρύ.
DUAL.			
N.Ac.V.	<i>vādv-āu,</i>	<i>bhruv-āu,</i>	ὀφρύ-ε.
I. D. Ab.	<i>vadhû-bhyām,</i>	<i>bhrû-bhyām,</i>	ὀφρύ-ο-ιν.
G. L.	<i>vadhv-ōs,</i>	<i>bhruv-ōs.</i>	....
PLURAL.			
N. V.	<i>vadhv-as,</i>	<i>bhruv-as,</i>	ὀφρύ-ες.
Accus.	<i>vadhû-s,</i>	<i>bhruv-as,</i>	ὀφρύ-ας.
Instr.	<i>vadhû-bhis,</i>	<i>bhrû-bhis,</i>	....
D. Abl.	<i>vadhû-bhyas,</i>	<i>bhrû-bhyas,</i>	....
Gen.	<i>vadhû-n-ām,</i>	<i>bhruv-ām</i> (or <i>bhrû-n-ām</i> ),	ὀφρύ-ων.
Loc.	<i>vadhû-shu,</i>	<i>bhrû-shu,</i>	ὀφρύ-σι.

"Remark.—The identity of  $\text{भ्रु}$  *bhrû* and 'ΟΦΡΥ\* is sufficient proof that the length of the *υ* is organic (comp. §. 121.), and it is not necessary, therefore, to suppose a theme ΟΦΡΥ*F* (comp. Kühner §. 289.) in order to consider ὀφρύς as coming from ὀφρυ*F*ς, and the long *υ* as a compensation for the rejected *F*, as perhaps μέλας from μέλανς. That, however, *F* originally stood before the terminations now commencing with a vowel, though at a time when the language had not a Grecian form—for example, ὀφρύ*F*ος—is shewn by the Sanscrit *bhruv-as*; by which, at the same time, the shortening of the *υ* in this case is justified, for the Sanscrit

---

\* The *ο* in ὀφρύς is based on the peculiar disposition of the Greek to prefix a vowel to words which originally commenced with a consonant, to which I have already drawn attention in another place, and by which, among other things, the relation of ὄνυξ, ὄνομα, to नखस् *nakha-s*, नाम *nāma*, is shewn.



changes, that is to say in polysyllables, as well *u* as *û*, before vowel terminations, into a simple *u*; but in monosyllables, in order to avoid commencing with two consonants, or to gain a polysyllabic form, the semi-vowel has its corresponding short vowel placed before it, and thus is formed उव् *uv* (*ûv*), as well from *u* as from *û*, as, under a similar condition, इय् from *i* and *î*: hence the two opposite forms, for example, *vadhv-as* (not *vadhuv-as*), “women,” and *bhruv-as* (not *bhrv-as*), “the eyebrows;” as above, *bhiy-as* (not *bhy-as*), opposed to *nâry-as* (*nâriy-as*). In the dative plural the short *u* of *ὀφρῦ-σι* for *ὀφρῦ-σι* is shewn by the effeminate habit of regularly shortening the *u* before vowel terminations.”

BASES IN *du* (दु).\*

## SINGULAR.

	<i>Sanscrit.</i>	<i>Greek.</i>
Nominative,	<i>nâu-s,</i>	<i>ναῦ-ς.</i>
Accusative,	<i>nâv-am,</i>	<i>ναῦ-ν.</i>
Genitive,	<i>nâv-us,</i>	<i>νᾱ(F)-ός.</i>
Locative,	<i>nâv-i,</i>	<i>νᾱ(F)-ί.</i>
Vocative,	<i>nâu-s,</i>	<i>ναῦ-ς.</i>

## DUAL.

Nom. Acc. Voc.	<i>nâv-âu,</i>	<i>νᾱ(F)-ε.</i>
Instr. Dat. Abl.	<i>nâu-bhyâm,</i>	<i>νᾱ(F)-ο-îν.</i>

## PLURAL.

Nominative,	<i>nâv-as,</i>	<i>νᾱ(F)-ες.</i>
Accusative,	<i>nâv-as,</i>	<i>νᾱ(F)-ας.</i>
Genitive,	<i>nâv-âm,</i>	<i>νᾱ(F)-ῶν.</i>
Locative,	<i>nâu-shu,</i>	Dat. <i>ναυ-σί.</i>
Vocative,	<i>nâv-as,</i>	<i>νᾱ(F)-ες.</i>

“Remark.—I find no sufficient grounds, with Kühner, (l. c. §. 283.) to suppose that the base of the nominatives

---

\* I give only the cases contained in the Greek.

in *av*, *ev*, *ov*, originally terminated in *F*, so that in the case before us it would be requisite to suppose a theme *NAF*: for even if the vocalization of *F* to *v*, in order to facilitate the junction with a consonant following, did not surprise us—forms like *vaF*, *vaFai*, could never occur;—still, on the other hand, the transition of the sound *v* into its corresponding semi-vowel, in order to avoid the hiatus, is far more regular, and is required in the Sanscrit according to the common rules of euphony. We will not therefore differ from the Indian grammarians, by the assumption of a theme *नाव् nāv* for *नौ nāu*, and *गव् gav* for *गो gô* (*bos*); although, if there were adequate reasons for it, the practice of the Indian grammarians would not restrain us from laying down *गव् gav* and *नाव् nāv* in the Sanscrit as the true themes, which maintained themselves in this form only before vowel terminations, but before consonants have allowed the *v* to pass into a *u*, according to the analogy of the anomalous *दिक् div*, “heaven”; whence, for example, the instrumental plural *द्युभिस् dyu-bhis* for *दिवभिस् div-bhis*, which would be phonetically impossible (Gramm. Crit. §. 208.). The Latin *navis* cannot compel us to lay down a theme *nāv* for the Sanscrit and Greek, for the Latin base has extended itself by an unorganic *i*, as *ῥῑvan*, “dog,” to *cani*; and therefore it exhibits in its declension nowhere *u*, but universally *v*.

## BASES TERMINATING WITH A CONSONANT.

## SINGULAR.

	<i>Sanscrit.</i>	<i>Zend.</i>	<i>Latin.</i>	<i>Greek.</i>
Thema,	<i>VĀCH</i> ,	<i>VĀCH</i> ,	<i>VŌC</i> ,	’ΟΠ.
Nom.	<i>vāk</i> ,	<i>vāc-s</i> ,	<i>voc-s</i> ,	ὄπ-ς.
Accus.	<i>vāch-am</i> .	<i>vāch-ēm</i> ,	<i>voc-em</i> ,	ὄπ-α.
Instr.	<i>vāch-ā</i> ,	<i>vāch-a</i> ,	....	....
Dative,	<i>vāch-ē</i> ,	<i>vāch-ē</i> ,	....	....*

\* See Locative.



in the Prakrit, (Urvasi, by Lenz, p. 40.), **अक्षरेहिं** *achharéhin* for **अक्षरोहिं** *achharóhin* (Sanskrit *apsaróbbhis*); and if this form is genuine, then the  $\xi e$ , in forms like **राक्षेबिस** *raochebís*, appears to stand for  $\alpha \acute{e}$ , as generally many interchanges between  $\xi e$  and  $\alpha \acute{e}$  occur, although in the case before us the  $\xi e$  is very constantly written, and  $\alpha \acute{e}$  has not yet been pointed out in its place. If it is further considered that we often find **ये** *ye* for **यो** *yó*, "which," **के** *ke* for **को** *kó*, "who?" and in the pronoun of the 2d person in the plural also **वे** *ve* for **वो** *vó*; and, finally, in the pronoun of the 1st person **ने** *ne* for **नो** *nó*; then we see the change of the **ओ** *ó* with  $\xi e$  is sufficiently ascertained, although it appears to be restricted to the end of words of a monosyllabic form; and in these the practice of writing the **ओ** *ó* is the prevailing one, while before termi-

**राक्षेबिस** *raochebís*, **राक्षेबिस** *raochebís* have so arisen from the bases **राक्ष** *maxó*, &c., that the **ओ** *ó* (**आ** *á*) is suppressed, and  $\xi e$  then introduced as conjunctive vowel; or whether, before the *ó* (from *á*) only, the *á* has been rejected, and the preceding *a* with an epenthetic *i* united with an *e*. In the former case I should not have been entirely wrong, from the analogy of *raoch-e-bís*, to deduce forms like *vách-e-bís*. I consider, however, the last view as the right one, only that I prefer letting the *ó* from the pre-supposed original form, *manó-bís*, *raochó-bís*, be changed in its whole force into  $\xi e$ , rather than reduce it into its elements, and mix the first of the said elements (*a*) with a conjoined *i*: for the derivation of *manebís* from *manāibís* from *manabís*, for *manasbís*, would extend to the Sanscrit form **मनोभिस्** *manóbbhis*, which originally may have been *manarbhis* (*manas-bhis* was never possible). But I believe that in the Zend the form *ebís* really preceded the form *óbís*. M. Burnouf, in his review in the *Journal des Savans* (in the separate impression, pp. 30, 31), calls attention to a form **वाघश्चब्यो** *vāghschbyó*, for which is once found, in the Vend. Sade, pp. 69 and 70, **वाघश्चब्यो** *vāghschēbyó*, once **वाघश्चब्यो** *vāghschēbyó*, and once **वाघश्चब्यो** *vāghschbyó*, which,

nations beginning with *b* as yet no *ð* has been pointed out; so that *b* appears to be as repugnant to a preceding *ð* as favourable to a following *ð*, if the conjecture of Burnouf, mentioned at p. 277, is well-founded. On this point I was not yet clearly informed, when, at §§. 224. and 242., I inconsiderately imagined I could deduce *vachð-bya*, *vachð-bís*, from *վրակ vachð* (from *vachas*). Instead of this should be read *ապրիւրակ vache-bya*, *ապրիւրակ vache-bís*; and besides this, in the locative singular, *աւրակ vachahi* for *աշարակ vachanhi*; since the nasal to be prefixed to the *h*, according to §. 56<sup>b</sup>., falls away when the vowel which follows the *h* is *i*, which has been already signified in the paragraph quoted, but since then fully proved by Burnouf. Besides, there really occurs, also, in one passage (where, unfortunately, the lithographed MS. is faulty, and is therefore

which, with the conjunctive vowel *ç* *ē* (see §. 30.) introduced in different ways, plainly represent one and the same word, and have proceeded from *վաղսեօղակ vâghschbyó*, which itself never occurs. Although these forms, which had struck me likewise, clearly belong to a theme which means "discourse," and is connected with our *vâch*, I would still rather not, with Burnouf, derive it from *vâch*; so that the nominative of this, *աւրակ vâcs*, raised to a secondary theme, would be contained therein. We dare not, without further authority, attribute to the Zend such a malformation, although it derives its superlatives in *ահհր tēma* from the masculine nominative, instead of from the theme. But Anquetil, in his Glossary, gives a form *vakhsenghē*, "*parole utile*," which we ought probably to read *լուսաւրակ vacsanhē* (as dative), if not with long *a* *լուսաւրակ vâcsanhē*. This latter form would belong to a theme *վաւրակ vâcsó* (*vâcsas*); from which, in the dat. abl. pl., *վաղսեօղակ vâghschbyó* (*vâghschbyó*, &c.) might proceed for *վաւրակ vâcsbyó*; as with *ապրիւրակ maxebis*, *ապրիւրակ manebis*, occurs also *ապրիւրակ maxbis*, *ապրիւրակ manbis*; for the *ա s* of *վաւրակ vâcsó* must, as Burnouf has shewn, in contact with *b* become *eb sch*.

impossible for me to use) the locative *𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬎𐬌 vachahi*; that is to say, in the Vend. S. p. 173, where, for *𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬎𐬌 manahéchâ vachahéchâ*, is to be read *𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬎𐬌 manahichâ vachahichâ*. In a Grammar, the lost acquaintance with which is again to be restored, oversights of this kind will, I trust, be excused in the first labourers; and, if for example, Rask gives to the word *paiti* the genitive *paitôis*, while, according to §. 180. Rem.\*, *patôis* is to be written, still the form *paitôis* was, in its time, instructive in the main, and first taught me that the Sanscrit genitive termination *-s* corresponds to the form *ôis* in the Zend. If, too, Rask has incorporated in his scheme of declensions also the ablative *paitôit* (for *patôit*), this was indeed a new error, but also a new advantage for the Zend Grammar in its then state, and brought to light a new and important fact, which I believe I was the first to discover; namely this, that roots in *i* form their ablative in *ôit*, for which the proofs in the Zend-Avesta, as much as I have of it, are neither numerous nor easily found. I make this remark because M. Burnouf, as it appears to me, speaks too unfavourably of such theoretic formations. As far as I am concerned, I believe I may assert that my communications regarding Zend Grammar are founded on careful reflection. I could not, however, perfectly conclude my considerations, and I am very ready to complete and adjust them through those of M. Burnouf. For in this book also, in regard to Zend Grammar, one must carefully distinguish the disquisitions given in the text from the general comparison added at the end of each rule regarding case. In the former I give only those Zend forms which I have seen, and I thence deduce theoretic laws: in the latter I seek to make the deductions from the inquiries pursued in the text evident in one select example. I am perfectly sure of the prevailing majority of the forms given in the tables, and can produce abundant examples

of them. I have marked some as questionable, and shewn the limits of the probability of others, in notes; and if an error has crept into the forms spoken of, and by me believed to be correct, it will give me pleasure to be able hereafter supplementarily to correct it. The form *vachanhi* was, however, only in a measure a theoretic formation; and I should not have ventured to exhibit it if I had not observed, in other words of the same declension, *i.e.* in other bases terminating with a consonant, the locative, which has entirely escaped Rask.

“Remark 2.—One might consider the *o* of *ὁποῖν* instead of a conjunctive vowel, as has been stated above (see §. 221.), as a property of the base, *i.e.* as an unorganic extension of it; or, in other words, regard it as a transition from the third to the second declension; a declaration which must then naturally extend itself to the dual termination *οιν* of the whole third declension (*ποσίο-ιν*, *βοτρυό-ιν*, *δαιμόνο-ιν*, as *λύκο-ιν*), and to all cases in the formation of words and arrangement of the same, where we have represented an *o* foreign to the proper base as conjunctive vowel. According to this, forms like *μελιτόεις*, *μελιτοπώλης*, *φυσιολογία*, *βοτρυόεις*, *βοτρυόδωρος*, would be, under the supposition of the bases *ΜΕΛΙΤΟ*, *ΦΥΣΙΟ*, *ΒΟΤΡΥΟ*, to be divided into *μελιτό-εις*, and would lead us to expect the nominatives *μελιτο-ν*, &c., which are not to be found. The statement here given has this in its favour, that similar cases occur also in cognate dialects, since in general that declension which is the most in vogue and most used, is prone, in certain cases, to receive into itself the other declensions, which annex to their original base the final letters of the roots of the declension more in use. The origin of *ὁποῖν* from *ὍΠΟ*, of *φερόντοιιν* from *ΦΕΡΟΝΤΟ*, was as it were the first commencement of the disease, which came to its full developement in the Pali; since in this language, which otherwise closely resembles the

Sanscrit, the bases which end with consonants are declined in the old way only in the singular, but in the plural are so corrupted, that, with the exception of the nominative and the vocative of similar sound, and the genitive, which at the same time supplies the place of the dative, they have extended the old base by an unorganic *a* (= Greek *o*), and have thus partly brought it from the Greek third declension into the second; and in the singular, also, most of the cases may, together with the old form, assume more recent forms, which have originated in the manner stated. In this manner, for example, the root चर *char*, "to go," forms its participle present partly from the original base चरन् *charant*, or its corruption चरत् *charat* (see §. 129.), partly from the augmented theme चरन्त *charanta*, and in part also arbitrarily from चरन् *charant* or चरन्त *charanta*, as follows (see Clough's Pali Grammar, Colombo 1824. p. 25., and compare Burnouf's and Lassen's Essay, p. 112. *et seq.*):

## SINGULAR.

Th.	<i>CHARANT</i> ,	<i>CHARANTA</i> ,	<i>CHARAT</i> .
Nom.	<i>charañ</i> ,*	<i>charantô</i> ,	....
Acc.	<i>charant-am</i> ,†	....	....
Instr.	....	<i>charantê-n-a</i> ,	<i>charat-â</i> .
Dat.	like the Genitive,		
Abl.	....	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{charanta-smâ}, \\ \text{or } \textit{charanta-mhâ},\ddagger \end{array} \right\} \textit{charat-â}.\S$	

\* The final न् *n* is, as in the Prakrit (§. 10.), transmuted into the Anusvâra, which I here express, as in the Sanscrit, by ñ.

† It might also be divided thus, *charanta-m*, and deduced from *charanta*.

‡ Transposed, and with *h* for *s* (comp. §. 163.). These forms are derived from the medial pronoun *smā* mentioned in §. 163., which, in the Pali also, has forced its way into the usual declension. The *t*, which was to have been expected, is, as generally happens at the end of a word, suppressed.

§ *Charatâ*, is according to appearance, identical with the instrumental, but



SINGULAR.			
Th.	<i>CHARANT, CHARANTA,</i>	<i>CHARAT.</i>	
Gen.	....	<i>charanta-ssa,</i>	<i>charat-ô.</i>
Loc.	....	<i>charantê,</i> or <i>charanta-smin,</i> or <i>charanta-mhi,</i>	<i>charat-i.</i>
Voc.	<i>charañ,</i> or <i>chara,*</i> or <i>charâ,</i>	....	....
PLURAL.			
Nom.	....	<i>charantâ,†</i>	....
Acc.	....	<i>charantê,</i>	....
Instr.	....	<i>charantêbhi,</i> or <i>charantehi,</i>	....
Dat.	like the Genitive.		
Abl.	like the Instrumental.		
Gen.	....	....	<i>charat-am.</i>
Loc.	....	<i>charantê-su,</i>	....
Voc.	<i>charantô,</i>	<i>charantâ,</i>	....

"If the Greek in its bases ending with a consonant had followed the confused example of the Pali, one would have expected, for instance, from *φέρων* a genitive *φέροντου*, dative *φέροντι*; and in the plural indeed, *φερόντων* from

---

but is, in reality, corrupted from *charat-at*, analogous with Zend forms like *ap-at* (in §. 180.): the suppressed *t* is replaced by the lengthening of the preceding vowel, as in *acharâ*, "he went," from *ucharât* (Clough, p. 106.).

\* If this form really belongs to a theme in *nt*, as I believe, it has sprung from the original form *charañ*, by suppression of the concluding nasal (comp. Burnouf and Lassen, p. 89); and in *charâ* this deficiency is replaced by lengthening the vowel.

† According to the usual declension ending with a consonant one would expect with *charantâ* also *charantô*, from the original theme *charant*; as, for example, *gunavantô* is used with *gunavantâ*, "the virtuous"; the former from *gunavant*, the latter from *gunavanta*.

ΦΕΡΟΝΤ, but *φέροντοι, φερонтους, φεροντοισ,* from ΦΕΡΟΝΤΟ. In this manner the form *φερόντοι* in the dual, which has been lost in Pali, would be clearly explained as derived from ΦΕΡΟΝΤΟ; but even when standing isolated, *φερόντοι* can be referred justly to a theme ΦΕΡΟΝΤΟ, as the first commencement of a corruption which was further pursued in the Pali; and I prefer this view of the matter now laid down at §. 221. Both views, however, concur so far; and thus much of my opinion may be looked on as proved, that in *φερόντοι*, and all other dative-genitive forms of the third declension, the *ο* belongs neither to the original theme, which lies at the root of all the other cases, nor to the true case suffix.

SINGULAR.				
<i>Sanscrit.</i>	<i>Zend.</i>	<i>Latin.</i>	<i>Greek.</i>	<i>Gothic.</i>
N. <i>bharan,</i>	<i>barañ-s,</i>	<i>feren-s,</i>	<i>φέρων,</i>	<i>fijand-s.*</i>
Ac. <i>bharant-am,</i>	<i>barent-ēm,</i>	<i>ferent-em,</i>	<i>φέροντ-α(ν),</i>	<i>fijand.</i>
Ins. <i>bharat-ā,</i>	<i>barēnt-a,</i>	....	....	D. I. <i>fijand.</i>
D. <i>bharat-ē,</i>	<i>barēnt-ē,</i>	see Locat.	see Loc.	see Dat.
Ab. see Gen.	<i>barant-at,</i>	<i>ferent-e(d),</i>	....	....
G. <i>bharat-as,</i>	<i>barent-ō,†</i>	<i>ferent-is,</i>	<i>φέροντ-ος,</i>	<i>fijand-is.‡</i>
L. <i>bharat-i,</i>	<i>barēnt-i,</i>	D. <i>ferent-i,</i>	D. <i>φέροντ-ι,</i>	....
V. <i>bharan,</i>	<i>barañ-s,</i>	<i>feren-s,</i>	<i>φέρων,</i>	<i>fijand.</i>

\* *Feind*, "foe," as "hater," see §. 125. p. 138.

† See p. 210. Rem. §; with *cha*, *barentas'-cha* ("ferentisque").

‡ I imagined, p. 210, that I must, in this case, which before was not proved to exist in *ND* bases, set down *fijand-s* as a mutilation of *fijand-is* from *fijand-as*, according to the analogy of other bases terminating with a consonant (*ahmin-s*, *bróthr-s*, §. 191.); Grimm has (I. 1017.) conjectured *frijóndis* or *frijónds* from *frijónds*. Since this, owing to the very valuable additions made by Massmann to our Gothic authorities, the genitive *nasjandis* of *Nasjand* ("preserver," "preserving") has come to light (see his Glossary, p. 153), by analogy with which I form *fijand-is*.

## DUAL.

	<i>Sanscrit.</i>	<i>Zend.</i>	<i>Greek.</i>
N. Ac. Voc.	<i>bharant-āu</i> , Vêda, <i>bharant-ā</i> ,*	<i>barant-āo</i> , or <i>baranta</i> ,	<i>φέρωντ-ε</i> . ....
I. D. Abl.	<i>bharad-bhyām</i> ,	<i>baran-bya</i> ,†	<i>φερόντο-ιν</i> .‡
Gen. Loc.	<i>bharat-ōs</i> ,	<i>barat-ō</i> ? (p. 276, R. 1.)	....

## PLURAL.

	<i>Sanscrit.</i>	<i>Zend.</i>	<i>Latin.</i>	<i>Greek.</i>	<i>Gothic.</i>
N. V.	<i>bharant-as</i> ,	<i>barēnt-ō</i> ,§	<i>ferent-ēs</i> ,	<i>φέρωντ-ες</i> ,	<i>fjand-s</i> .
Acc.	<i>bharat-as</i> ,	<i>barēnt-ō</i> ,§	<i>ferent-ēs</i> ,	<i>φέρωντ-ας</i> ,	<i>fjand-s</i> .
Instr.	<i>bharad-bhīs</i> ,	<i>baran-bīs</i> ,¶	....	....	....
D. Ab.	<i>bharad-bhyas</i> ,	<i>baran-byō</i> ,¶	<i>ferent-i-bus</i> ,	....	....**
Gen.	<i>bharat-ām</i> ,	<i>barēnt-anm</i> ,††	<i>ferenti-um</i> ,	<i>φερόντ-ων</i> ,	<i>fjand-ē</i> .‡‡
Loc.	<i>bharat-su</i> .	.... §§	....	<i>φέρου-σι</i> .	....

\* See p. 299. Rem. 2.

† Or *barēnbya*. See p. 241. Rem., and p. 210. Rem. §.

‡ See p. 299. Rem. 2.

§ *Barentas'-cha*, "*ferentesque*." See §. 210. Rem. §.

|| This form, which, owing to an oversight, is omitted in p. 260, is found at Matth. 5. 44., and agrees with *frijōnds*, "*amicos*" ("*amantes*"), Matth. 5. 47. as generally with the declension of a root terminating with a consonant. Comp. Grimm (I. 1017.).

¶ See p. 241. Rem., and p. 210. Rem. §.

\*\* The Gothic dative, which I would have used also as the instrumental (§. 243.), does not occur in roots ending in *nd*.

†† Or *barant-anm*. See p. 266. Rem. †.

‡‡ This case certainly cannot be proved in roots in *nd*; but can, however, be correctly deduced from the other roots ending with a consonant, and from the elder sister dialects. See §. 245.

§§ I conjecture a transition into the *a* declension (comp. p. 299. Rem. 2.), by suppressing the *nt*; thus, perhaps, *baralshva* (or *-shu*, or *-shū*, §. 250.), as Vend. S. p. 354; *𐬔𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬎𐬭𐬀𐬔𐬀* *drēgvaśū* (read *𐬔𐬀𐬭𐬀* *shū*) for *drēgvaśū*, from *drēgvaś*, in the strong cases (§. 129.) *drēgvaśant*; on the supposition that the reading is correct, except the false *s*. See §. 52.

SINGULAR.					
	<i>Sanscrit.</i>	<i>Zend.</i>	<i>Latin.</i>	<i>Greek.</i>	<i>Gothic.</i>
N.	<i>âtma'</i> ,	<i>a'sma'</i> ,	<i>sermo'</i> ,	<i>δαίμων</i> ,	<i>ahma'</i> .
Acc.	<i>âtman-am</i> ,	<i>a'sman-ēm</i> ,	<i>sermon-em</i> ,	<i>δαίμον-α(ν)</i> ,	<i>ahman</i> .
Inst.	<i>âtman-ā</i> ,	<i>a'sman-a</i> ,	. . . .	. . . .	D. I. <i>ahmin</i> (§. 132.)
Dat.	<i>âtman-ê</i> ,	<i>a'smain-ê</i> ,	see Loc.	see Loc.	see Dative.
Abl. see Gen.	<i>a'sman-at</i> ,		<i>sermon-e(d)</i> ,	. . . .	. . . .
Gen.	<i>âtman-as</i> ,	<i>a'sman-ô</i> ,*	<i>sermon-is</i> ,	<i>δαίμον-ος</i> ,	<i>ahmin-s</i> (§. 132.)
Loc.	<i>âtman-i</i> ,	<i>a'smain-i</i> ,	D. <i>sermon-i</i> ,	<i>δαίμον-ι</i> ,	. . . .
Voc.	<i>âtman</i> ,	<i>a'sman</i> ,	<i>sermo'</i> ,	<i>δαίμων</i> ,	<i>ahma'</i> .

DUAL.				
	<i>Sanscrit.</i>	<i>Zend.</i>	<i>Greek.</i>	
N. Acc. Voc.	<i>âtman-âu</i> ,	<i>a'sman-âo</i> , or <i>a'sman-a</i> ,	<i>δαίμον-ε</i> .	
	<i>Vêda, âtmân-a</i> .			
Instr. D. Ab.	<i>âtma'-bhyâm</i> ,	<i>a'sma'-bya</i> ,	D. G. <i>δαιμόνο-ιν</i> .†	
Gen. Loc.	<i>âtman-ôś</i> ,	<i>a'sman-ô?</i> (p. 276, R. 1.),	....	

	PLURAL.				
	<i>Sanscrit.</i>	<i>Zend.</i>	<i>Latin.</i>	<i>Greek.</i>	<i>Gothic.</i>
N. V.	<i>âtman-as,</i>	<i>a'sman-ô*</i> ,	<i>sermon-ēs,</i>	<i>δαίμον-ες,</i>	<i>ahman-s.</i>
Ac.	<i>âtman-as,</i>	<i>a'sman-ô*</i> ,	<i>sermon-ēs,</i>	<i>δαίμον-ας,</i>	<i>ahman-s.</i>
Instr.	<i>âtma'-bhis,</i>	<i>a'sma'-bîs,</i>	. . . .	( <i>δαιμόνο-φιν</i> ),	D. I. <i>ahma'-m</i> †
D. Ab.	<i>âtma'-bhyas,</i>	<i>a'sma'-byô,</i>	<i>sermon-i-bus,</i>	. . . .	. . . .
Gen.	<i>âtman-âm,</i>	<i>a'sman-âm,</i>	<i>sermon-um,</i>	<i>δαιμόν-ων,</i>	<i>ahman-ê.</i>
Loc.	<i>âtma'-su,</i>	<i>a'sma'-hva,</i>	. . . .	<i>δαίμο'-σι,</i>	. . . .

SINGULAR.					
	<i>Sanscrit.</i>	<i>Zend.</i>	<i>Latin.</i>	<i>Greek.</i>	<i>Gothic.</i>
N.	<i>bhrātā,</i>	<i>brāta,</i>	<i>frater,</i>	<i>πατήρ,</i>	<i>brōthar.</i>
Ac.	<i>bhrātar-am,</i>	<i>brātar-ēm, §</i>	<i>fratr-ēm,</i>	<i>πατέρ-α(ν),</i>	<i>brōthar.</i>

\* *A'smanas-cha*, "œlique." † See p. 299. Rem. 2. ‡ See p. 241.

§ Also *𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀 brâthrēm* might be expected, as Vend. Sade, p. 357 ; *𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀 patrem* (*pathrēm?*), contrary to the theory of the strong cases (§. 129.), for *patarēm*.

**SINGULAR.**

	<i>Sanscrit.</i>	<i>Zend.</i>	<i>Latin.</i>	<i>Greek.</i>	<i>Gothic.</i>
In.	<i>bhrâtr-â,</i>	<i>brâthr-a</i>	. . . .	. . . .	D. Inst. <i>brôthr</i> (see §. 132.).
D.	<i>bhrâtr-ê,</i>	<i>brâthr-ê,</i>	see Loc.	see Loc.	. . . .
Ab. see Gen.		<i>brâthr-at,</i>	<i>fratr-e(d),</i>	. . . .	. . . .
G.	<i>bhrâtur,</i>	<i>brâtar-s,</i>	<i>fratr-is,</i>	<i>πατρ-ός,</i>	<i>brôthr-s</i> (see §. 132.).
L.	<i>bhrâtar-i,</i>	<i>brâthr-i,*</i>	D. <i>fratr-i,</i>	<i>πατρ-ί,</i>	. . . .
V.	<i>bhrâtar,</i>	<i>brâtarē,†</i>	<i>frater,</i>	<i>πάτερ,</i>	<i>brôthar.</i>

**DUAL.**

	<i>Sanscrit.</i>	<i>Zend.</i>	<i>Greek.</i>
N. Acc. Voc.	<i>bhrátar-āu</i> , Vêd. <i>bhrátar-ā</i> ,	<i>brátar-āo</i> or <i>brátar-a</i> ,	πατέρ-ε.
Inst. D. Ab.	<i>bhrátri-bhyām</i> ,	<i>bratar-ē-byā</i> ,	πατέρο-ιν.
Gen. Loc.	<i>bhrátr-ōs</i> ,	<i>bráthr-ō(?)</i>	....

**PLURAL.** †

	<i>Sanskrit.</i>	<i>Zend</i>	<i>Latin</i>	<i>Greek</i>
Nom. Voc.	<i>bhrātar-as,</i>	<i>brātar-ō,§</i>	<i>fratr-ēs,</i>	<i>πατέρ-ες.</i>
Accus.	<i>bhrātrī-n,  </i>	<i>brāthr-eus ?¶</i>	<i>fratr-ēs,</i>	<i>πατέρ-ας.</i>
Instr.	<i>bhrātri-bhīś,</i>	<i>brātar-ē-bīs,</i>	. . . .	. . . .
Dat. Abl.	<i>bhrātri-bhyas,</i>	<i>brātar-ē-byō,</i>	<i>fratr-i-bus,</i>	. . . .
Genitive,	<i>bhrātrī-n-ām,</i>	<i>brāthr-anīm,**</i>	<i>fratr-um,</i>	<i>πατέρ-ων.</i>
Locative,	<i>bhrātri-shu,</i>	. . . .	. . . .	<i>D. πατρά-σι.</i>

\* See p. 216. Note.

† See §. 44.

† For the Gothic, which is here wanting, see p. 253. Note †.

[illegible]

**|| See §. 127. Rem.**

¶ Perhaps also *bráthr-ó*, *bráthraí-cha* ("fratresque"), according to the analogy of *áthr-ó*, "*ignes*," from *álar*. See §. 239.

**\*\* See p. 266. Note †.**

	SINGULAR.			
	<i>Sanscrit.</i>	<i>Zend.</i>	<i>Greek.</i>	<i>Latin.</i>
N. A. V.	<i>manas,</i>	<i>manô,*</i>	<i>μένος,</i>	<i>genus.</i>
Instr.	<i>manas-â,</i>	<i>manan̄h-a,†</i>	....	....
Dat.	<i>manas-ê,</i>	<i>manan̄h-ê,</i>	see Loc.	see Loc.
Abl.	see Gen.	<i>manan̄h-at,</i>	....	<i>gener-e(d).</i>
Gen.	<i>manas-as,</i>	<i>manan̄h-ô (manan̄has̄-cha),</i>	<i>μένε(σ)-ος,</i>	<i>gener-is.</i>
Loc.	<i>manas-i,</i>	<i>manah-i. (see p. 316.)</i>	D. <i>μένε(σ)-ι,</i>	<i>gener-i.</i>

\* *Manas̄-cha*, "mensque," "mentemque."

† M. Burnouf remarks, in his review (in the separate impression, p. 11), that in this class of words the instrumental ending is generally long. I, in like manner, had remarked forms enough of this kind with a long *â*, but in passages where too many *a*'s, originally short, appear to be lengthened at the termination, and which, therefore, I was not willing to bring into account: moreover, the cases could not be included, where, through the particle *cha*, a preceding *â* is preserved in its original length. After deducting these two classes from forms in *an̄hâ*, the computation might perhaps turn out in favour of the short *a* given above. I have, however, as yet not applied any closer reckoning: it would, however, surprise me if, on more exact calculation, but still in departure from the fate of other polysyllabic words ending with a shortened *a*, the advantage in this particular case should incline to the side of those words which retain the long vowel, which I would then gladly restore. No one will deny that the collation of MSS. is of great importance in deciding many grammatical and orthographical questions, although I believe I may assert that even a single lithographed MS. opens a rich field to inquiries and important grammatical observations: for although it is very full of errors, it nevertheless shews no systematic opposition to what is correct; and many expressions, passages, and turns recur so frequently, that, taken together, they can in a measure supply the place of a comparison of other MSS. For the rest I had at my command the edition of Olshausen of the three first chapters and part of the fourth of the Vendidad, with the various readings attached to it, so that, through these means, I was not left entirely destitute of MSS.

DUAL.		
<i>Sanscrit.</i>	<i>Zend.</i>	<i>Greek.</i>
N. Ac. V. <i>manas-i</i> ,	....	μένε(σ)-ε.
I. D. Ab. <i>manó-bhyām</i> ,	<i>mane-bya</i> (p. 241.),	D. G. μένέ(σ)ο-ιν.*
G. L. <i>manas-ós</i> ,	<i>manan̄h-ó</i> (?) (p. 242.),	....

PLURAL.			
<i>Sanscrit.</i>	<i>Zend.</i>	<i>Greek.</i>	<i>Latin.</i>
N. Ac. V. <i>manāns-i</i> ,	<i>manan̄h-a</i> ,†	μένε(σ)-α,	<i>gener-a</i> .
Instr. <i>manó-bhis</i> ,	<i>mane-bís</i> ,	(μένεσ-φιν,)	....
Dat. Abl. <i>manó-bhyas</i> ,	<i>mane-byó</i> ,	see Loc.	<i>gener-i-bus</i> .
Genitive, <i>manas-ām</i> ,	<i>manan̄h-aīm</i> ,	μένέ(σ)-ων,	<i>gener-um</i> .
Locative, <i>manas-su</i> ,	<i>manó-hva</i> ,	μένεσ-σι,	....

## SINGULAR, MASCULINE AND FEMININE.

	<i>Sanscrit.</i>	<i>Zend.</i>	<i>Greek.</i>
Nom.	<i>durmanás</i> ,	<i>dushmanáo</i> (§. 56 <sup>b</sup> .),	δυσμενής (§. 146.)
Accus.	<i>durmanas-am</i> ,	<i>dushmanan̄h-ēm</i> ,	δυσμενέ(σ)-α(ν).
Voc.	<i>durmanas</i> ,	....	δυσμενές.

The rest like the simple word.

## DUAL.

N. Ac. V. <i>durmanas-du</i> ,	} <i>dushmanan̄h-a</i> (?)	δυσμενέ(σ)-ε.
Vêda, <i>durmanas-á</i> ,†		

The rest like the simple word.

## PLURAL.

N. Voc.	<i>durmanas-as</i> ,	<i>dushmanan̄h-ó</i> ( <i>aś-cha</i> ),	δυσμενέ(σ)-ες.
Accus.	<i>durmanas-as</i> ,	<i>dushmanan̄h-ó</i> ( <i>aś-cha</i> ),	δυσμενέ(σ)-ας.

The rest like the simple word.

\* See p. 299. Rem. 2.

† See p. 253. Note †. It was, however, from an oversight that I, as was observed at p. 253, Note †, read in the Vendidad Sade, p. 127, *𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬭𐬀* *nēmēṇha*: it should be *𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬭𐬀* *nēman̄ha*, and may also be considered the instrumental singular; then we should have in this passage, which recurs three times, the instrumental in *𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬭𐬀* *an̄ha* in both editions three times with a short *a*.

‡ See p. 230. Note \*.

## SINGULAR, NEUTER.

<i>Sanscrit.</i>	<i>Zend.</i>	<i>Greek.</i>
Nom. Ac. V. <i>durmanas</i> ,	<i>dushmanō</i> ( <i>aś-cha</i> ),	<i>δυσμενές</i> .
The rest like the simple word.		

“Remark.—It was remarked in §. 152. (comp. §. 146.), that the Σ in forms like μένος, εὐγενές, belongs to the base, and is not the nominative character; and that the Σ in forms like τετυφός has come from τ, and in like manner belongs to the theme. M. Reimnitz, who, in (p. 54. &c.) his pamphlet mentioned at p. 294, agrees with this view, first given in my treatise “On some Demonstrative Bases,” wishes to look upon the Σ in the masculine τετυφός as belonging to the base, and arising out of τ; in which I cannot agree with him, as I, according to the view generally taken, consider the final letters of τετυφός as marks of the nominative, before which the final letter of the base is suppressed on account of the incompatible association of τσ (comp. §. 99.), and replaced by lengthening the preceding vowel; as, for example, in μέλας for μέλανς. The Sanscrit has a few bases in *n* which, differing from the ruling principle (see §. 139.), run parallel in the nominative to the Greek μέλας; thus, *panthās*, “the way,” from *panthan*, accusative *panthān-am*. Only in this *panthās* the lengthening of the *a* can be less regarded as a compensation for the rejected *n* than in the Greek, because it extends also to the other full cases (§. 129.), with the exception of the vocative; but perhaps the lengthening of the *a* has originally taken place only in the nominative, and has thence imparted itself to those cases when the reason of this prolongation was no longer perceived, which otherwise stood upon an equal footing with the nominative. Thus one says महान् *mahān*, “great” (from the theme *mahant*, properly a participle present from मह् *mah*, “to grow”), with the vowel of the concluding syllable lengthened, according to the analogy of the Greek form, as λέγων. The Sanscrit word, however, retains the long vowel



also in the other full cases (*mahāntam* “*magnum*,” *mahāntas* “*magni*,” *mahāntāu*, “*μεγάλω*”), with the exception of the vocative; while the usual participials present leave the *a* short in all the full cases. In most exact accordance, however, with the Greek participle present stand the Sanscrit possessive adjectives, which are formed by the suffix *vant* (Greek *εντ* for *Feντ*, in *μελιτόεις* and others) and *mant* (in the weak cases *vat*, *mat*). These lengthen, that is to say the *a* only, in the nominative singular; so, for example, *dhanavān*, “*dives*”\* (from *dhana*, “*riches*”), *dhanavant-am*, *dhanavant-āu*, *dhanavant-as*, as *λέγων*, *λέγοντα*, *λεγόντω*, *λεγόντες*.

#### OLD SCLAVONIC DECLENSION.†

255. Before we enter upon the province of Slavonic Grammar, we must endeavour to explain its system of sounds; and although it is not requisite to specify all the minutiae of the subject, we must, nevertheless bring into notice those parts which are indispensable to the understanding of the Grammar. It is therefore our principal object, in the following remarks, to exhibit the connection of the Old Slavonic sounds with those of the elder languages, of which they are either the true trans-

---

\* If even, as has been remarked in another place, the suffix *वन्* *vant* has maintained itself in the Latin in the form *lent* (as *opulents*), it would not be surprising if the weak form *वन्* *vat*, without the interchange of *v* with *l*, but with the weakening of the *a* to *i*, had its representative in the Latin *divit*, which stands in the same relation to *dhanavat*, by passing over the middle syllable, as *malo* to *navolo*.

† It is stated by Professor Bopp, in the preface to the second published portion of this Grammar, commencing with the formation of cases in general, that it had not occurred to him to direct his attention at an earlier period to the Slavonic tongues: having subsequently considered the subject, he found sufficient reason to include them in the same family of languages, and accordingly devotes to its principles of declension the supplementary section which follows.—*Editor*.

missions, or corruptions more or less vitiated. We give therefore, for the first time, a history of the Slavonic sounds, in which, however, as is natural, as far as their value is concerned, we have nothing new to bring forward; and in this respect follow only the teaching of native grammarians.

(a.)—The Old Sanscrit  $\text{अ}$  *a* has so far experienced, in the Slavonic, an exactly similar fate as in the Greek, that it is most frequently supplied by *e* or *o* (*e, o*), which are always short: it very rarely remains *a*. In the interior of the bases, also, *e* and *o* are interchanged as in Greek; and as, for example,  $\lambda\acute{o}\gamma\omicron\varsigma$  is related to  $\lambda\acute{\epsilon}\gamma\omega$ , so, in the Old Slavonic, is *brod*, “ferry,” to *bredŭ*, “I wade through;” *voy*, “carriage,” to *veyŭ*, “I ride in a carriage.” And as, in the Greek, the vocative  $\lambda\acute{o}\gamma\epsilon$  is related to the theme  $\Lambda\omicron\Gamma\omicron$ , so, in the Old Slavonic, *rabe*, “O slave,” to *rabo*, nominative *rab*, “a slave.” The *o* has a more important value than *e*, but *a* more than *o*; and hence *a* corresponds most frequently to a Sanscrit long  $\acute{a}$ , so that, for instance, in the Old Slavonic, forms in *a* answer to the feminine bases in  $\text{व्या}$   $\acute{a}$  (comp. *vdova*, “widow,” with  $\text{विधवा}$  *vidhavā*), which, in the vocative, is in like manner abbreviated to *o* (*vdovo!*), as above *o* to *e*. As final vowel, also, of the first member of a compound, *a* is weakened to *o*; for instance, *vodo-pad*, “waterfall,” *vodo-poŭ*, “water-drinker,” for *voda*; just as in the Greek  $\text{Μουσο-τραφής}$ ,  $\text{Μουσο-φίλης}$ , and similar compounds, which have shortened the feminine  $\alpha$  or  $\eta$  to  $o$ . Even if, therefore, *a* is in the Old Slavonic a short vowel, I nevertheless regard it, in respect to grammar, as the long *o*; so that in this the Old Slavonic stands in a reversed relation to the Gothic, in which *a* has shewn itself to us as the short of  $\acute{a}$ , and, in case of abbreviation,  $\acute{a}$  would become *a*, exactly as in the Old Slavonic *a* becomes *o*.

(b.)— $\text{इ}$  *i* and  $\text{ई}$   $\acute{i}$  appear in the Old Slavonic both as *i*, and the difference of the quantity is removed, at least I

do not find that a longer or shorter *i* is anywhere spoken of. Let *schivú*, "I live," be compared with जीवामि *jívāmi*; *sila*, "virtue," with शील *śíla*; and, on the other hand, *vidyeti*, "to see," with the base विद् *vid*, "to know," to the Guna form of which, वेद्मि *védmi*, the Old Slavonic *vyemy* (abbreviated from *vyedmy*, infin. *vyes-ti* for *vyed-ti*), "I know," assimilates itself, so that *vid* and *vyed* in the Slavonic appear as two different bases. The short *i*, however, appears frequently in the Old Slavonic also in the corruption to *e* (*ε*), as in the Greek and the Old High German (§. 72.); that is to say, the bases in *i* shew, in several cases, *e* for *i*, and the numeral three (त्रि *tri*) appears frequently in composition in the form *tre*, e.g. *trepútye*, "trivium." So, also, *púte-shestrye*, ὀδοιπορία, from *púti* (§. 260.). The *i* is also very frequently suppressed, e.g. in the 3d person plural *dadyat*, "they give," Sanscrit ददति *dadati*; *sút*, "they are," Sanscrit सन्ति *santi*. Where *i* forms a diphthong with a vowel preceding it, it is marked in the old writing with a short mark, which we retain, e.g. *boĩ*, "strife."

- (c.)—उ *u* and ऊ *ú* have, in the Old Slavonic, in the forms which are retained most correctly, both become *y*.\* In this manner, for instance, *by* (infin. *by-ti*) agrees with भू *bhú*, "his;" *svekry*, "father-in-law," with स्वसृ *śvasru*; *myshy*, "mouse," with मूष *músha*; *syn*, "son," with सुनु *sínu*; *chetyri*, τέσσαρες, with चतुर् *chatur* (in the theme), nominative masculine चत्वारस् *chatvárás*. The instances of *y* for

---

\* We express, as in Polish, the *jery* or dull *i* by *y*, as, like the Greek *υ*, where it is original it supplies the place of the old short or long *u*. It is expressed in Russian, according to Reiff (by Gretsach II. p. 666.), as in French *oui*, spoken very short and monosyllabically; according to Heym, nearly like *ü*, in union with a very short *i* (Heym, p. 5). This does not, however, remain the same in all positions of this letter (Reiff, l.c.), and sounds after consonants other than labials like a dull thick *i* ("*i* sourd et étouffé").

उ *u* are, nevertheless, more rare than those where *y* corresponds to the long उ *ū*; for the short *u*, as in the Old High German (§. 70.), has for the most part become *o*; and thus, for example, *snocha*, "daughter-in-law," agrees with सुषा *smushā*; *oba*, "both," with उभा *ubha* (Vêda form), Zend 𑀓𑀭 *ubā*. Hence, also, the old *u* declension has, in many cases, become similar to the *o* declension, which, according to (a.), has arisen from अ *a*; and, on the other side, *o* may also, but only in substantives, participate in those forms which belong only to the genuine *u* declension: whence it is easily perceived that the genius of the language could not everywhere distinguish further the two kinds of *o*, in their history, indeed, far separated from one another, but phonetically identical.

(d.)—Unorganic *y*, i. e. *y* as representative of original vowels other than उ *u* or उ *ū*, is not uncommon in the grammar; that is to say, the personal termination *my* (1st person plural), like the Latin *mus*, has arisen from the more ancient *mas*; and if the bases in *a* (for अ *ā*) have *y* in the nominative plural (*vdovy*, "*viduæ*"), still the *y* here is so much the less to be looked upon as a case termination, as no account could be given of *y* in this sense; and with bases in *ja* the *a* of the root is also really retained, and remains (*volya*, "*voluntates*"). But as the *y* exerts the force of an *Umlaut* on an *o* succeeding it, by which that vowel is changed to an *e*, so I think that to an *i* following the *o*, without the intervention of another letter, the force of a reactive *Umlaut* must be ascribed, even if this force is not everywhere exerted, and that some *y*'s must be declared to be the *Umlauts* of *o*: that is to say, as soon as so much has been recognised in the Old Slavonic adjectives, that their bases all end either in *o* or *yo* (changed by the *Umlaut* to *ye*), and are thus sister forms to the Greek, like ΑΓΑΘΟ,

‘ΑΓΙΟ; and of the Sanscrit, as *श्वेत śvêta*, “white,” *दिव्य divya*, “heavenly”;—so soon, I say, as the abbreviation of the base in the masculine nominative has been recognised (*nov*, *novus*, for *novo*), then will it be no longer said with Dobrowsky (p.318.) that the definite adjectives are derived from the primitives (indefinite) by annexing, according to the measure of the final letter of the primitive, either *yĭ* or *iĭ*.\* If, however, I may trust that I have obtained an accurate knowledge of the organization of the Old Slavonic grammar on any point, it is on this, that the affix in the nominative singular of definite adjectives consists not in *yĭ* or *iĭ*, but in *i* as a mutilation of *yo* from *ya* (य *ya*), and in the feminine of *ya* from *jâ* (या *yâ*). This also appears to me subject to no manner of doubt, that if, for example, the compound word *svyatyĭ* comes from the word *svyato*, “holy,” its acknowledged theme, the *y* is a euphonic product from *o*, through the influence of the *i* which is added to it. This *i* has, in some cases, in which it has been dropped, still in a degree, in its euphonic operation, left its reflection, and thereby the proof of its former existence. Thus, for instance, *svyaty-m*, “*per sanctum*,” from the older *svjatyĭm*, *svyaty-ch*, “*sanctorum*,” and “*in sanctis*,” from *svyatyĭ-ch*, corresponds to the indefinite forms *svyato-m*, *svyatyĭ-ch* (for *svyato-ch*).† At times, through the pronominal syllable *i*, the preceding *o* may be changed at will into *y*, or not: thus the interrogative exhibits the forms *kyĭ*, “*quis?*” (Dobr. 500 and 343.) *kyim*, “*per quem?*” *kyich*,

---

\* Dobr. also himself, p. 493, considers simple *i* or *ii* as the definitive adjunct; but in considering, as he there does, *blagyĭ* as the confluence of *blag* and *ii*, he appears to look upon the *y* as having arisen from the *i* of the suffix, and not to acknowledge in it the final vowel of the simple adjective root.

† In the oldest MSS., according to Dobr. p. 502, the more full forms *yĭch*, *yĭm*, *yĭme* occur in the plural, for *ym*, *ych*, *ymi*.

“*in quibus, quorum?*” *kyĩm*, “*quibus?*” *kyĩmi*, “*per quos?*” with *koĩ*, *koĩm*, *koĩch*, *koĩmi*. The possessive pronouns allow no euphonic reaction at all to the demonstrative *i*, which forms the last member of them, and they always retain their radical *o*; e.g. *moĩ*, “*meus*,” *moĩm*, “*per meum*,” not *myĩ*, *myĩm*. As to the definite form of the adjective roots in *yo*, which Dobrowsky forms through the addition of *iĩ*, I have not the slightest doubt that here, also, a simple *i* is the defining element, for the first *i* is clearly the vocalization of the *y* of the primitive root; so that therefore, for example, *siniĩ*, “the blue,” is to be divided, not into *sin-iĩ*, but into *sini-i*. The primitive adjective is sounded in the nominative deprived of all inflection and of the last vowel of the base—*siny*, the *y* of which appears as *i* in the nominative plural masculine, just as in the definite pronoun, *sini*, “*cærulei*,” *sinii*, of “*cærulei*.” In order, however, here fully to explain the nature and origin of the definite declension, and not hereafter to be compelled to repeat what is already settled, it may be stated that its pronominal defining addition is identical with the Sanscrit relative base *ya*, which is most correctly preserved in the Lithuanian, as “he” is here, in like manner, pronounced *ya*, but signifies “he” (*ya-m*, “to him,” *ya-me*, “in him”). The nominative *yi*, “he” (for *yas*), has given the *y* an assimilating influence, as is the case with all bases in *ya* (§. 135.). The feminine, also, is pronounced in the nominative, through assimilation, *yi* for *ya*; but the genitive *yo*s, and all the other cases, are easily perceived through the declension of *rankà*, “hand,” and *giesme*, “song,” from *GIESMYA* (p. 169, Note). The Old Slavonic has, in all the masculine bases ending with a vowel, this vowel suppressed in the nominative and accusative; and since the vowel has dropped from the Sanscrit-Lithuanian root *ya*, *ya*—which, according to (a.),

makes one expect *yo* in the Old Slavonic, from which, according to (n.), must be formed *ye*\*—the *y* must be changed into a vowel; hence, *i*, “he,” “him,” which must, therefore, on no account be placed together with the Latin-Gothic *is*, from the root *i*. In the nominative singular masculine, however, this Slavonic pronoun occurs in all the three genders, not isolated, but in union with the particle *she*, which has preserved to it the old relative meaning: *i-she* means as well “*qui*” as “*quem*”; *ya-she*, “*quæ*”; *yû-she*, “*quam*”; and *ye-she*, “*quod*.” Now as *i* means “he,” *ya*, “she,” and *ye*, “it,” I could not imagine how one could create the definitive adjective forms *svyaty-ï*, *svyatu-ya*, *svyato-e* (for *svyatoye*), accusative *svyaty-ï*, *svyatû-yû*, *svyato-e*, in their opposition to the indefinites *svyat(o)*, *svyata*, *svyato*, differently from Dobrowsky (p. 493.) and perhaps other grammarians before him have done, namely, by the addition of the pronoun here under discussion;† for this pronominal suffix supplies the place of the article of other languages; and the Lithuanian language uses the same pronoun for the same object, *i.e.* equally in the emphatic or, as it is also termed, definite declension of the adjective;

---

\* Hence in the genitive *ye-go*, dative *ye-mû*, loc. *ye-m*, the *e* of which Dobrowsky wrongly ascribes to flexion, because he everywhere seeks the base in the nominative. However, the base *je* has not fully maintained itself before all terminations beginning with a consonant, but become, in like manner, shortened to *i*: in *i-m*, “*per eum*” and *iis*, *i-mi*, “*per eos*,” *i-ch*, “*corum*,” “*in iis*,” for *ye-m*, &c.

† What Grimm (by Wuk, p. xl.) remarks against this declaration has not convinced me; least of all can I, for the above reasons, concede to him that the *i* of *svyatyi* has any thing to do with the *a* of *blinda*, “the blind” (from *blindan*, §. 140.); so that *svyatyi* belongs to the indefinite declension; and, on the other hand, *svyat*, contrary to the Slavonic Grammarians, must be removed from the indefinite into the definite forms.

and certainly so, that, through all cases, both the adjective which precedes and the pronoun which concludes are declined, while, in the Slavonic, in most cases the pronoun only is provided with the inflexions of case, but in some it has utterly disappeared, and in others is still to be recognised in the *y* for *o* mentioned above.

(e.)—The Sanscrit diphthong  $\text{ॡ}$  *é* I have found always rendered, in the Old Slavonic, by *ye*, in similar forms; so that after weakening the  $\text{ॡ}$ , to compensate for this, the semi-vowel *y* has made its appearance, to which, in this union, a particular legitimacy would be, according to (c.), to be ascribed. Let *pyena*, “foam,” be compared with  $\text{पेन}$  *phēna*;<sup>3</sup> *svyet*, “light,” with  $\text{स्वेत}$  *śvēta*;<sup>3</sup> *vyemy*, “I know,” with  $\text{वेदि}$  *vēdmi*. The most important cases in the grammar with *ye* against  $\text{ॡ}$  are the dual case forms of the feminine and neuter, and those of the imperative, in accordance with the Sanscrit potential of the first conjugation.

(f.)—The Sanscrit diphthong  $\text{औ}$  *ô* (from *a + u*) is represented in the Old Slavonic by *û* (*ŭ*);<sup>\*</sup> so that the first

---

\* Although this vowel may at times be pronounced short, still this much, at least, is certain, that, according to its origin and its definition, it is long. In Bohemian it appears in two forms, as *au* and *u*: the former is pronounced *ou*, but the writing points to an older and different pronunciation, in which the *a* was accurately preserved in its place: the *u* is pronounced short, whence, however, it cannot be deduced that this short *u* perhaps corresponds to the Sanscrit  $\text{उ}$  and Greek  $\text{ὤ}$ , and that *au* is its intensive or *gunirung*; but, on the contrary, only the *u* retained in the *au* corresponds to the Sanscrit  $\text{उ}$  *u*, and the *u* which stands alone in Bohemian is a weakening of the *au*; so that, from this, the concluding element *u* alone is left: etymologically, that is to say, the Bohemian *au*, as also *u*, answers to the Sanscrit  $\text{औ}$  *ô*, and also to the Slavonic *û* (*ŭ*), only that the former is phonetically more exact, and without the loss brought about by time. Hence, also, *usta* (written *vsta*) “*ora*” corresponds to the Sanscrit  $\text{ओष्ठ}$  *ôshṭha*, “the lip”: more complete, however, is *austne*, “by word of mouth”; and even for *vsta* is to be found *austa* (Dobr. Böhm. Lehrs. p. 4.).



element of the Indian diphthong has assimilated itself to the second, and, in conjunction with it, presents a similar long vowel, as, in the Greek  $\sigma$  ( $ov$ ), two heterogeneous vowels, according to pronunciation, have united themselves in a similar measure. As, according to (a), the Indian short  $a$  has, in the Sclavonic, mostly become short  $o$ , we must consider the first element in the diphthong  $ú$  also (so we write the  $\sigma$ ) to be  $o$ ; and it becomes visible, too, in this form, when  $ú$  is resolved before a vowel in  $ov$  (compare  $\beta o(F) ó\varsigma$  from B8, §. 123.), while the Indian  $गो \delta$  becomes  $av$  before a vowel ( $गवि gavi = \beta oFi$ , from  $गो g\delta$ ). Now as, in the Sanscrit,  $उ u$ ,  $ऊ ú$ , rises to  $\delta$  through Guna (§. 26.), and  $st\delta-shy\delta mi$  appears as the future of  $stu$ , so in the Old Sclavonic, in like manner,  $y$  ( $cy$ ) is interchanged with  $ú$ ; so that  $bú$  in  $bú-du$ , "I shall be," must pass as the Guna form of  $by$  (in  $byti$ , "to be"): but if a class of nouns, which in the nominative-accusative terminate in a consonant or in  $yerr$  (see  $k$ ), exhibit, in many oblique cases, the syllable  $ov$  before vowel-endings, this  $ov$  must neither be considered, with Dobrowsky, for an augment added to the root, nor can it be deduced from forms like  $synovi$ , "from a son" (Sanskrit  $सूनवे súnav-é$ , from  $sínu$ ),  $synov-é$ , "sons," ( $सूनवस् súnav-as$ ), that  $syn$ , in the nominative-accusative, is an abbreviation of  $synú$ ; and that therefore the  $yerr$ , when it is added to the form  $syn$ , is a representative or weak remainder of  $ú$ : but it is clear, from (c), that  $syn$ , "*filius*," "*filium*," if its final vowel, in its most genuine form, had remained to it, would sound  $syny$ , from which  $synov$  is the Guna intensitive, the  $ov$  of which has arisen from  $ú$  through the influence

---

p. 4.): *ruka* corresponds to the Lithuanian *ranka*, "hand"; and *hus* to the Sanscrit  $हंस haṁsa$ , "goose"; for which, according to p. 319. *rauка*, *hausu* was to have been expected.

of the vowel following it, but has remained in the genitive plural, also, after the ending has been dropped. Let *synov*, "*filiorum*," be compared with the Gothic *suniv-ê* (§. 247.) As, in the Sanscrit, the substantive roots in *u* adopt the Guna form of the *u* before the vowels of the derivation suffix, so it is very remarkable that, in the Old Slavonic roots in *y*, also, this vowel appears before certain derivation suffixes in its Guna form; e.g. *domov-it* from *dom* (*DOMY*), "house"; *binov-at*, "debtor," from *byn* (*BYNY*).<sup>\*</sup> Derivative substantives and adjectives in *ov*, *ev*, (theme *ovo*, *evo*, the latter for *yovo*, see *n.*), correspond to the Sanscrit in अव *ava*; as पान्दव *pândav-a* (nominative *as*), "descendant of Pându"; आर्तव *ártava*, "annual," from ऋतु *ritu*, "a year": so, in Old Slavonic, *Adamov*, "Adamite," from *Adam* (*ADAMY*); *zarev* for *zaryev*, "kingly," from *zar* (theme *ZARGY*). For these formations, therefore, we must not, with Dobrowsky (322, 323), assume a suffix *ov* or *ev*, but we must look upon the *o* alone, which, in the nominative, is suppressed, as the derivation suffix (*ADAMOV-O*, *ZAREV-O*). Through the Vṛiddhi increase (§. 29.) the Old Slavonic *y* becomes *av*, because *a*, according to (*a*), usually corresponds to आ *ā*: hence, from the base *by*, "his," comes the causal *baviti* (infinitive), as in the Sanscrit भावयितुम् *bhāvayitum*. If, however, *staviti* occurs as the causal of *sta*, this form may have arisen in the perverted feeling of the language as an irregularly analogous word to *baviti*. In order, then, still more to establish, by a few other examples, the representation of the Indian ओ *ō* or अव *av* by the Slavonic *ú*, we find *úst*, "mouth," correspond to ओष्ठ *ōshṭa*, "lip"; *shúñ*, "sinister" (theme *SHUYO*), to सव्य *savya*; *búđiti*, "to awake"—a causal, whose primitive *bđyeti* has entirely

---

\* Dobrowsky supports himself in these cases by calling *ov* a prefix (p. 329).

lost the vowel of the root—to बोधयितुम् *bōdhayitum*, also “to awake,” from बुध् *budh*, “to know.” Thus *gŭbŭiti* is the causal of *gyb-nŭ* (1. P.), and *stŭdŭiti* of *styd-nŭ* (Dobr. 360, 361.); while *vyesiti* is the causal of *visyeti* (see *e.*), as, in the Sanscrit, वेष्टयितुम् *vēsayitum*, “to cause to enter,” from विष् *viś*, “to go in.”

- (*g.*)—As the nasals easily resolve themselves into *u*, so the second element of the diphthong *ŭ* sometimes also supplies the place of a nasal of the kindred languages; *e.g.* *rŭka*, “a hand,” Lithuanian *ranka*; *pŭty*, “a way,” Sanscrit पन्थास् *panthās*, *id.* Latin *pons*; *golŭby*, “a dove,” *columba*; *gŭsy*, “a goose,” हंस *haṇsa*. The Polish has preserved the old nasal in *golamb*, “a dove,” *gausie*, “a gosling,” *gausior*, “a gander,” and in many similar cases. Hereby the *ŭ* in the accusative of bases in *a* (from आ *ā*), which are for the most part feminine, is remarkably explained; compare *vdovŭ* from *vdova*, “a widow,” with विधवाम् *vidhavām*, “*viduam*.” Therefore *vdovŭ* is to be derived from *vdovo-m* for *vdova-m* (see *a.*); so that the *a* which is weakened to an *o* is contracted with the nasal mark of the case to *ŭ*. This view is further supported by the consideration, that in Polish, also, the corresponding feminine declension marks the final vowel of the base with the same sign which, in the middle of a word, expresses a nasal, which is governed according to the organ of the following letter, but at the end, probably through a corruption of sound, is said to have an equal value with a ringing *h*. This nasalizing mark recurs also in the Polish verb, and, indeed, exactly in such a place where one had to expect a nasal, *i.e.* in the 1st person singular and 3d person plural; and thus, in Bandtke’s second and third conjugation, the so marked *ę*, *e.g.* in *piekę*, “I bake,” supplies the place of the *am* of the first conjugation, as *czytam*, “I read.” The Old Slavonic has, however, excepting some ano-

malous remains of an older formation, *ú* in all the conjugations; and, according to what has been said, it admits of no doubt, that in the second part of this diphthong (*o + ŭ*) the personal character *m*, and in the first part of the diphthong the conjunctive vowel, is retained. When therefore, in the 1st person, an *o* corresponds to the *e* (ε) of *nes-e-shi*, "thou carriest," *nes-e-t*, "he carries"—for *nesú* is for *nes-o-ŭ* for *nes-o-m* from *nes-e-m*—it must be assumed that the conjunctive vowel *e*, before its confluence with the *ŭ*, which has arisen out of *m*, has passed into *o*; as in Greek *ov* arises by the contraction of ε and ο, through the transition of ε into ο and ο into υ. The same relation is to be found in the Old Slavonic in the 3d person plural, where, corresponding to *nes-e-m*, "we carry," *nes-e-te*, "ye carry" (comp. λέγ-ε-τε), the form *nesent* is expected, but in place of it occurs *nesút* in surprising accord with the Greek λέγουσι for λέγονσι from λέγοντι. The Polish has, like the Bohemian, relinquished the character of the 3d person in the plural, as well as for the most part in the singular, but everywhere retains, in the first, the old and more powerful *a* (Ꞥ), and marks this with the diacritical sign mentioned above, which, in the middle of a word, supplies the place of a nasal function; thus, *sq̃*, "they are," corresponds to the Sanscrit सन्ति *santi*, Slavonic *sút*. The Bohemian has also, in many conjugations, retained the old conjunctive vowel *a* in the 3d person plural, but, like the Slavonic, permitted the *n* to dissolve into a *u*; therefore, in *wexau*, "vehunt" (*wex-e-me*, "vehimus," *wex-e-te*, "vehitis"), the *u* answers to the *n* of वहन्ति *vahanti*, "vehunt," and the *u* which, in Bohemian, is united with an *a*, is essentially different from that which stands alone; for the latter answers to the Old Slavonic diphthong *ú* (ꙋ), but the former only to the latter portion of the *ú*, which, in the Old Slavonic, never stands alone, at least never occurs as *ŭ*, but as *y* (ꙗ).

(h.)—In certain cases an old *ǎ* (ѧ) unorganically supplies the place of the Slavonic *ǔ*, i.e. in the instrumental of pronouns without gender, and all feminines; thus, *vdovoy-ǔ*, “through the widow,” answers to विधवाया *vidhavay-ǎ*; and *toboy-ǔ*, “through thee,” to त्वया *tvay-ǎ*. Denominatives, also, in *ǔyǔ* (1st per. pres.), in the Old Slavonic, correspond to the Sanscrit in आयायामि *āyāmi*, as शब्दायामि *śabdāyāmi*, “I sound,” from शब्द *śabda*, “a sound”; चिरायामि *chirāyāmi*, “I hesitate,” from चिर *chira*, “long”: thus, in the Slavonic, *zielǔyǔ*, “I greet,” “kiss,” from *ziel* (*ZIELO*), “healthy”; *vdovǔyǔ* from *vdova*, “widow” (Dobr. p. 372.). Finally, words in *ǔn* (*ŪNO*) answer, as it appears, to the Sanscrit participles of the middle voice, in *āna*, as युज्जान *yunjāna*, “uniting,” from युज् *yuj*; so in the Old Slavonic, *perǔn* (*PERŪNO*), “*Deus tonans*,” from the root *per*, “to shake”; *byegǔn*, “runner” (*BYEGŪNO*), from *BYEG*, “to run” (Dobr. p. 289.).

(i.)—There are in the Slavonic alphabet two marks, which by some are called *litteræ aphonæ*, but by Gretsche semi-vowels; I mean the so-called soft *yer*,<sup>†</sup> and the hard *yerr*. The former is represented by Gretsche as half *i*, and by his translator, Reiff (47), as answering to the tones ‘*mouillés*’ of French (compare Kopitar, p. 5); and thus *schal*<sup>b</sup>, “sympathy,” and *ogon*<sup>b</sup>, “fire,” are, in respect to the soft *yer*, compared with the pronunciation of *travail* and *cicogne*. This *yer*, therefore, denotes a tone which is rather to be called a *y* than an *i*;<sup>\*</sup> and it may be said that in *schal*<sup>b</sup> and *ogon*<sup>b</sup> one hears quite as much of a *y* as can be heard of this semi-vowel after a consonant preceding it. Hence we mark it with a *y*, and write the above words *schaly*, *ogony*, Old Slavonic *ogny*.

---

\* In the Carniolan dialect this sound has mostly disappeared; but where it has remained it is also written by a *y*; as, *kony*, “horse.”

† In the original *jer*, pronounced, however, *yer*; and hence *y* has been substituted for *j* in all that follows.—Editor.

In the words, too, which end with it in the uninflected nominative accusative singular, it occurs in several oblique cases as a distinct proper *y*, e.g. in *zarya*, "*regis*," *zaryû*, "*regi*," from *zary*, "*rex*," "*regem*." On the consonant which precedes it this *yerr* has an influence which renders its pronunciation more mild, because its sound is somewhat broken by the *y*, which throws back its sound. Etymologically the *yerr* corresponds either to a final *i* of the kindred languages, as in *yesty*, "he is" (अस्ति *asti*, ἐστί, Lithuanian *esti*), *kosty*, "bones" (अस्थि *asthi*), or in the nominative and accusative singular of masculine substantives and adjectives, to a *y* (य *y*), from which a vowel has dropped; for the theme of *siny*, "*cæruleus*," concludes neither with *i* nor with *y* but with *yo* (euphonically *ye*, see *n.*); whose final vowel, suppressed in the nominative and accusative masculine, appears, however, in the feminine *sinya*, in its extension to *a*, while the neuter *sine* for *sinye* has rejected the *y*.

(*k.*)—The hard *yerr* is represented by Gretsck as a semi *o*, but by Reiff, more correctly in my opinion, it is compared to the French silent *e* and the Hebrew *schva*: it is therefore, to use the expression, equivalent to "nothing"; and one cannot perceive of what vowel the small, still perhaps remaining vowel part of it is the residue. Consonants preceding it have a stronger and free pronunciation; and Kopitar (p. 5) tells us that they are pronounced before it sharp, and without echo, and that it is for this reason called the hard *yerr*, and not on account of its own pronunciation. We require, therefore, in the Roman character, no substitute for this mark, and Dobrowsky also omits it at the end of words. Etymologically, however, this *yerr* always represents a suppressed mute vowel, only not always an *o*, nor, as Grimm conjectures (in his valuable Preface to Wuk's Servian Gramm. p. xxxiv.) a *u*. Rather, each of the three short fundamental vowels—*a* (as represented also

by *o*, *e*), *i*, *u* (for which may stand *y*, *o*),— is very frequently dropped at the end of words; and although the *i* is seldom entirely suppressed, more generally throwing back its sound as *y*, nevertheless the vowel suppressed after the *m* of *rabo-m*, “*per servum*,” and in Russian replaced by *yerr*, is clearly, as we gather from the Lithuanian, an *i*.

(*l.*)—I believe I may assert, that in the whole extent of the structure of the Slavonic language, at least in all the conditions of its noun and verb, not a single final consonant occurs after which some termination, which, through the kindred languages can be pointed out as beginning with a vowel, has not been dropped. Thus, the base *NEBES*, “*cælum*,” forms, in the genitive plural, likewise *nebes*, but the vanished termination is, in Sanscrit, *आम्* *ām* (*नभसाम्* *nabhasām*, “*cælorum*”), Greek *ων* (*νεφέ(σ)ων*), Latin *um*, Gothic *ē*. The real final consonants, however, which, in the truly-preserved elder dialects of the Indo-European family, stand as the foundation of the word, have utterly disappeared in Slavonic polysyllables; *e.g.* from *अस्* *as*, *es* is formed, in the nominative plural, *e* (*e*); and *synov-e* agrees with forms like *सूनवस्* *sūnav-as*, *βότρυ-ες*.

(*m.*)—As far as regards the writing of those consonants which, in the Slavonic alphabet, properly correspond to the Roman, we express the sound of the French *j* (*zivjete*, in the Carniolan *sh*), as in Zend (§. 65.), by *sch*, our German *sch* (= *ʃ*) by *sh* as in Sanscrit, and also *as*, in Sanscrit, the *tsch* by *ch*: for the sound of the Greek *ζ* (= *ds*) we retain *ζ*, and use *z* for the sound of our German *z* (= *ts*): for *χ* we write *kh*.\* In regard to etymology, it is important to call attention

---

\* Prof. Bopp writes *ch*, but he intends a guttural, not a palatal letter, or the sound *kh*; and it would be a source of perplexity in English to express this by *ch*, which has its own peculiar articulation.—*Editor*.

to the relation of this letter to sibilants, by means of which *snokha*, "daughter-in-law," corresponds to the Sanscrit *सुषा smushā*. *Kh* also, in declension and conjugation before certain vowels, passes into *s* (Dobr. pp. 39, 41), and in some cases into *sh* (Dobr. 41.). Finally, in preterites like *dakh*, "I gave," *dakhom*, "we gave," the *kh* returns to the *s* (स *s*, Σ) whence it has proceeded, in the cases where a personal ending beginning with a *t* follows it; hence, *daste*, "ye gave," *dasta*, "ye both" and "they both gave."\* As the vowels exercise a multifarious influence in the transformation of gutturals preceding them, we will further remark that the *kh* under discussion maintains itself in the 3d person plural before *ū*, but before *a* appears as *sh*; hence, *dasha* or *dakhū*, "they gave."

(n.)—For the semi-vowel *y* (य *y*) the Cyrillian alphabet gives the Greek *ι*, excepting in the cases for which the inventor of the character has provided by particular letters set together according to their value, which, at the same time, express the *y* with the following vowel; that is to say, *ya* is never written by two letters. It would, however, for this reason, be wrong to assume a vowel *ya*, as this syllable, however it may be written, still always unites in itself two sounds. For *ye*, also, Cyril has provided by a simple sign, and *yū* is expressed by an *o* in conjunction with an *ι*. But *y* often appears in Slavonic as a dialectic addition before vowels foreign to the kindred languages. Compare *yesmy*, "I am," *yam* (for *yadmy*), "I eat," *pyaty*, "five," *desyaty*, "ten," *yedin*, "one," with the corresponding Sanscrit forms, *asmi*,

---

\* Dobrowsky has, however, as it appears to me, not perceived the irrefragable connection between the *ch* of *dach* and the *s* of *daste*, for he considers the *ch* and *ste*, &c. as personal terminations (pp. 264. 397. 383); and hence he nowhere informs us that *ch* before *t* passes into *s*. More on this subject when we come to the verb.



*admi, panchan, da'san, ddi (primus).* An *o* which follows is, in accordance with similar forms which we have observed in the Zend and Lithuanian (§. 137, and p. 174, Rem.\*), changed into *e* through the influence of a *y* preceding it. In like manner, in accordance with the Zend and Lithuanian, the *y*, after it has assimilated a vowel following it, has often itself disappeared, and has left behind only its effect, and thereby the proof of its former existence.\*

---

\* Dobrowsky does not express himself with sufficient clearness regarding this form, when he says (cap. II. §. iii.) that *o* after *y* and liquid consonants is changed into *e*. According to this, one would believe that, besides *y*, certain other consonants had the power of changing an *o* following them into *e*. Dobrowsky understands—which, however, as far as I know, he nowhere expressly says—under “*consonæ liquidæ*,” those which, in consequence of a following *yer* (*y*), have retained a more flowing and softer pronunciation; while he calls the consonants without *yer* “*consonæ solidæ*” (comp. l. c. p. 267); so that no consonant is by nature and of itself alone liquid, but receives this quality through a following *yer* (a *y* without a vowel). Thus, in Dobrowsky's second masculine declension, the consonants *r*, *kh*, and *z*, in *xary*, “king,” *vrakhy*, “physician,” and *knyažy*, “prince,” are liquid. But as these words in the instrumental form *xarem*, *brakhem*, *knyažem*, Dobrowsky ascribes the *e* for *o*, to the influence of a liquid consonant; while, according to my opinion, the consonants in these forms have no concern whatever in transforming *o* into *e*, but for *xarem*, &c. *xaryem* must originally have stood. And as in this form the *y* is the full semi-vowel, not entirely without a vowel sound, and therefore not the expression of the *yer* without a vowel which softens the consonant preceding it—as in the abbreviated nominative *xary*—so the *r* also, in *xaryem*, was not liquid, and has not, according to my opinion, become liquid after the dropping of the semi-vowel; at least, I find it nowhere stated that the *r* and other consonants, in forms like *xarem*, *knyažem*, *golûbem*, *lebedem*, are differently pronounced from what they are in *pirom*, *vožom*, *lobom*, *adom*, of Dobrowsky's first masc. decl. The difference in the two classes of words is only this, that the former have a *y* for the last letter but one of their theme, which, by the power of assimilation, has changed the following *o* into *e*, which *e*, after the *y* has been dropped, does not again become *o*.

256. We must now, in order to be able to compare the true case-suffixes of the Old Slavonic with those of the kindred languages, first of all endeavour to ascertain the final letter of the kinds of base which occur, as they have for the most part been rubbed off in the singular nominative, whence it has appeared as if these letters, where they again present themselves in the oblique cases, either belonged to the case termination, or were an addition equally foreign to the base and to the termination, which has been termed "augment" by Dobrowsky. After becoming acquainted with the true base, the case terminations assume, in many points, an entirely different shape from what Dobrowsky has represented (p. 460.), with whom we cannot concede to the neuter a nominative ending *o* or *e*, but perhaps the advantage of having preserved, in preference to the masculine, the final vowel of the theme in this case. For the practical use of the language, and to keep simply within the limits of the Slavonic language, all might, notwithstanding, be assumed as inflexion which is usually represented as such. It is not, however, here our object to consider those syllables as supplying the place of grammatical relations which present themselves to the feeling of the speaker as such, but only those which may be so traced through the history of the language, and which, for thousands of years, have subsisted as Grammatical forms.

257. To the masculine and neuter bases in *a* correspond, in the Old Slavonic as well as in Greek, bases in *o*,\* which vowel has disappeared in the nominative and accusative singular: so the corresponding *a* has disappeared in Gothic, except in the neuter (as Gothic *blinda-ta*,

---

\* Dialectically the older *a* has, in certain cases, maintained itself, as in the Carniolan, before all inflections beginning with *m* in the three numbers, as *posla-m*, "through the domestic," *posla-ma*, "the two domestics." This word appears to be identical with पुत्र *putra*, "son," Persian *puser*, "son," "boy," "young man," and to owe its meaning to familiar address.

"*cæcum*," in contrast with *blind*'-s, "*cæcus*"): it has also maintained itself frequently in the beginning of compounds in the Gothic and Old Greek, where, according to the oldest principle, the naked theme is required; as, *nov*, "*novus*," appears in many compounds as *novo* (*novo-grad*, "new-town"), but is then not to be considered as the neuter *novo*, "*novum*," but as the common theme of the masculine and neuter, in which as yet no difference of sex is pointed out. The clearest proof that the class of nouns under discussion corresponds to the Indian, Lithuanian, and Gothic nouns in *a*, is afforded by their feminine bases in *a* (for  $\text{आ } \bar{a}$ ); so that to the form *rab* (for *rabo*), "servant," corresponds a feminine *raba*, "a maid": that is to say, all Old Slavonic primitive adjectives, *i.e.* those with an indefinite declension, correspond to the Sanscrit in *a-s*,  $\bar{a}$ , *a-m*, Greek *o-s*,  $\eta(\alpha)$ , *o-v*, Latin *u-s*, *a*, *u-m*; much as one might be led astray by outward appearance to seek in the adjectives, which in the nominative masculine end in *y* (*yer*), and in the neuter in *e*, as *siny*, "*cæruleus*," *syne*, "*cæruleum*," an analogy to Latin adjectives like *miti-s*, *mite*.

258. But I recognise in adjectives like that just mentioned, and in similarly-constituted substantives, as *knyažy*, "prince," *more*, "the sea," bases of such a nature as, without the euphonic form mentioned at §. 255. (*n.*), must have terminated in *yo*, whence *ye*; and hence, in the nominative masculine—according to the suppression of the final vowel of the base, *y* in this case—and in the neuter *e* retaining the vowel and dropping the *y*. These bases, therefore, correspond to the Indian in  $\text{य } ya$ , the Greek and Latin in *io*, *iu* ( $\bar{\alpha}\gamma\iota o-s$ ,  $\bar{\alpha}\gamma\iota o-v$ , *sociu-s*, *præliu-m*); that is to say, *serdze* (nominative and accusative neuter), "heart," corresponds to the Sanscrit  $\text{हृदयम् } hṛidaya-m$ , which is likewise neuter. The feminines, again, afford a practical proof of the justice of this theory, for the Slavonic bases in *ya* correspond to the Sanscrit feminine bases in  $\text{या } yā$  (Greek  $\iota\alpha$ , Latin

*ia*); and this form, in the uninflected nominative, stands opposed to the masculine termination *y* and neuter *e*, as *sinya*, "*cærulca*," to *siny*, "*cæruleus*," and *sine*, "*cæruleum*." When an *i* or other vowel precedes the last *y* but one of the base, the *y* in the nominative and accusative masculine is changed into the vowel *ĩ*; as, *nyetiĩ*, "*nepos ex sorore*" (Dobrowsky, p. 282). The corresponding feminine form is *iya*, and the neuter *ye*, the *y* of which has arisen from *i* of the form *iye*, which is to be supposed the original, after dropping the last *y* but one. To the Sanscrit सव्यस् *savya-s*, सव्या *savyā*, सव्यम् *savya-m* (*sinister, a, um*), corresponds thus *shūā*, *shūya*, *shūe* (compare Dobrowsky, p. 285).

259. The Old Slavonic masculine and neuter bases in *yo*,\* with their feminines in *ya*, are, according to their origin, of four kinds:—1. Those in which, as in *SHŪYO* = सव्य *savya*, both the semi-vowel and the vowel following, from the earliest period of the language, belong to the base of the word; and this case is perhaps the most rare. 2. Such as originally end in *i*, to which an unorganic *o* has been added; as, in the Lithuanian, the bases in *i*, in many cases, change into the declension in *ia* (*ie*) (§. 193. and p. 174, Rem. \*). To this class belongs *MORYO*, nom. *more*, "the sea," the *e* of which therefore differs widely from the *mare* in Latin, corrupted from *mari*; so that the Slavonic *y*, which again makes its appearance in the genitive *morya*, dative *moryū*, corresponds to the Latin *e* spoken of. The Latin word must, however, in order to be

---

\* Where I fix the theme, I leave the euphonic law contained in §. 255. (n.) unregarded, and I give *SERDZYO* as the theme of *serdze* ("heart," nom. acc.), although the latter is no other than the theme modified according to that euphonic law, *i.e.* without inflection, as in the Sanscrit *vāch* is laid down as the theme, although *ch* cannot stand at the end of a word, but passes into *k*, as in the nominative *vāk*, which is properly identical with the theme.

classed with the Slavonic, be pronounced in the nominative *mariu-m*. Neuter bases in *i*, without an unorganic augment, are entirely wanting in the Slavonic. Among the masculines of this class of words, *khervy*, "a worm" (theme *KHERVYO*), agrees with the Sanscrit कृमि *krimi* and the Latin *VERMI*, Old High German *WURMI*; and *ŷyaty* (*ŷYATYO*), "gener," with the Sanscrit जाति *jāti*, feminine, "familia," "genus," from जन् *jan*, "to be born."\* The third kind of bases in *yo* is that where the unorganic *y* precedes a final *o*, according to the euphonic disposition mentioned in §. 255. (n.). So *gúsyo* (*GŪSYO*) corresponds to the Indian हंस *haṇsa*, "goose" (§. 255. g.). In the fourth place there exist among bases in *yo* the words in which the *y* as well as the following vowel is an unorganic addition. Thus nouns of the agent in *TARYO* correspond to the Sanscrit in तर् *tar* (तृ *tri*, in the strong cases तर् *tār*), to the Latin in *tōr*, and to the Greek in τῆρ, τωρ; hence the nominatives *my-tary*, *schī-tary*, and *ŷlatary* (Dobrowsky, p. 295), and, with *y* for *a*, *pas-tyry*, "shepherd." Of this kind, also, are the nouns of the agent in *TELYO*, the *l* of which is clearly an interchange with *r* (§. 20.), so that this suffix also conforms itself to the Sanscrit तर् *tar*; hence the nominatives *blago-dyetely*, "beneficus," *pye-tely*, "a cock," from the base *pye*, "to sing," *schately*, "messor," *spas-i-tely*, "salvator."†

---

\* *ŷ* frequently answers to the Sanscrit ज् *j*, and indeed is so pronounced: ज्ञा *jñā*, "to know," in the Slavonic *ŷna* (infinitive *ŷnati*).

† As these words stand in analogy with the infinitive in *ti*, in so far that their suffix begins with a like consonant, Dobrowsky (pp. 292, 293) derives them from the infinitive, and allows them simply *ely* as suffix (as also simple *ary* for *tary*), as it has been the custom to derive also, in the Latin, *tor* and *turus* from the supine. However, it is certain the suffixes *TOR*, *TURU*, and the Slavonic *TARYO*, *TELYO*, used to borrow their *t* not at first from another syllable of formation so commencing. They form primitive words from the roots themselves, and not derivatives from other words.

260. To the Sanscrit feminine bases in ङा *ā* correspond, as has been already remarked, Old Slavonic in *a*. To this class of words, however, belong also some masculines, particularly proper names, which are then declined entirely as feminines, as in Latin *nauta*, *cœlicola*, &c. (§. 116.), on which we will not here dwell further. Among the bases in *i* there are, in Old Slavonic, no neuters, and only a very small number of masculines—as in Lithuanian—which Dobrowsky, p. 469, represents as anomalous, as though they were only irregulars of his second declension masculine: they are, however, in reality, foreign to it, for this very reason, that they end their theme with *i*, but the former with *yo*, and in part with *yy* (§. 263.). It is only in the nominative and accusative singular that these three classes of words, from various reasons, agree; and, *gosty*, “guest,” from *GOSTI*\* (Gothic *GASTI*, Latin *HOSTI*) agrees with *knyažy*, “prince,” from *KNYAŽYO*, and *vrakhy*, “medicus,” from *VRAKHY*. The masculine bases originally ending with *n*—there are but a few of them—form most of their cases from a base augmented by *i*; *KAMEN*, “stone” (Sanskrit अश्मन् *aśman*), is extended to *KAMENI*, and then follows *GOSTI*.

261. To the Sanscrit feminine bases in ङी *ī* correspond numerous Old Slavonic bases of a similar termination (Dobrowsky, decl. fem. iv.); that is to say, the Slavonic agrees with the Sanscrit in the formation of feminine abstracts in *TI*, as *PA-MYA-TI*, “memory,” nom. *pamyaty*, from the root *MAN*, as in Sanscrit मति *mati* (for *manti*),

---

\* Thus, also, *PŪTI*, “a way” (Sanskrit पथिन् *pathin*), and *LYŪDI*, pl. *num*, nom. *lyūdy-a*, “people,” Gothic *LAUDI*, nom. *luuths*, “a person,” the *au* of which, according to §. 255. (*f.*), is represented by *û* (ʊ), and, according to §. 255. (*m.*), has gained a prefixed *y*. *GOSPODI*, “a master” (comp. पति *pati*, Lithuan. *PATI* and Gothic *FADI*) is in fact irregular, as it passes into several kinds of theme in its declension.

“spirit,” “meaning,” from मन् *man*, “to think”\* (compare *memini*). These words weaken, indeed, in the nominative and accusative, their *i* to *yer*, but in no case overstep their original base by an unorganic addition; and hence they must not, on any account, be looked upon as of the same base with the majority of masculines terminating similarly in the nominative and accusative singular. But Dobrowsky’s third feminine declension is of a mixed nature (*zerkovy*, “a church”): in this we recognise some words which have, by Guna, changed a Sanscrit final ऋ *û* to *ov*; and from this form several cases, as from a base ending with a consonant—e.g. *zerv-e*, genitive singular and nominative plural—but so that the *o* is suppressed before vowel terminations. In some cases the theme extends itself by an unorganic *i*, in others by *a*; and also before these extensions of the base the *o* of the syllable *ov* is suppressed\* ; e.g. *zerviy-û*, “per ecclesiam,” *zerv-i*, “ecclesia,” *zervii*, “ecclesiarum,” *zerv-a-m*, “ecclesiis,” *zerv-a-ch*, “in ecclesiis,” *zerv-a-mi*, “per ecclesias.” The dative locative *zerv-i* is doubtful, as this case could have no other sound than *zerv-i*, whether it come from *ZERKOV* or from *ZERKVI*.

---

\* Dobrowsky (p. 355) imputes, in my opinion wrongly, the *n* of *po-myanû*, “I remember,” and some similar bases, to derivation, instead of supposing that the radical *n* is suppressed before *t*, in analogy with the Sanscrit, and as, in Greek, *τάσις* from *TAN*, Sanscrit तन्तिस् *tati-s*, “a line” (as extended), for तन्तिस् *tanti-s*.

† The example given by Dobrowsky, *zerkovy*, “a church,” nevertheless does not apply to monosyllables, as *krov-y*, “blood” (Sanskrit कृव्य *kravya*, neuter, “flesh”), nor to those polysyllables in which two consonants precede the syllable *ov*; for *yatr-ovach* and *krov-ach* would be equally impracticable (comp. *Gretsch* by *Reiff*, p. 163). *Brov-y*, “eyebrow,” also appears to form all its cases from a theme *BROVI*, an extension of the Sanscrit भ्रू *bhrû*, feminine, by the addition of *i*, with a Guna of the ऋ *û*. The nominative plural is hence *brovi* (Dobrowsky, p. 115), not *brov-e*.

Some words of this class have, in the nominative, *y*, and thus *svekry* agrees with ऋषूस् *śvaśrū-s*, “*socrus*” (§. 255. c.); others have, at will, *ovy* or *vi*, with *o* suppressed; hence *zerkovy* or *zerkvi*.

262. Among bases in *u* (Greek *υ*) of the kindred languages, only masculines have maintained themselves in the Old Slavonic. They, like the bases in *o*, suppress their final vowel in the nominative and accusative, but in the remaining cases this letter shews itself either with Guna changed to *ov* or *ú* (§. 255. f.), or without Guna, as *o* (§. 255. c.); and in the latter form it appears also in the beginning of compound words as a naked theme. Hence it is more probable, that anciently for *syn*, “*filius*,” “*filium*,” stood *syno* rather than *syny* (§. 255. c.).\* With this similar conformation of theme of the old bases in *a* and *u*, it is not surprising that two kinds of bases, which in their origin are widely different, run very much into one another in the Slavonic declension; and that, in the more modern dialects, these two declensions, which were originally so strictly separate, have fallen almost entirely into one.

263. As in the *o* bases which have arisen from ऋ *a*, a *y* preceding introduces a difference of declension, which we, in §. 258., have represented as purely euphonic, the same phenomenon makes its appearance also in the *y* bases, by means of which their Guna form is articulated *ev* (for *yev*) instead

---

\* We term this class of words, nevertheless, bases in *y*; for although their final letter never occurs as *y*, still, according to §. 255. (c.), *y* is the most legitimate, even if it be the most rare, representative of the Sanscrit उ *u*. But should it be wished to call them bases in *o*, they would not be distinguished from the order of words, which, according to §. 257, bear this name with more right. The term *u* bases would be appropriate only so far as here, under the *u*, might be understood, not the Old Slavonic *z* (etymologically = ऋ *o*), but the Sanscrit उ *u* or the Latin *u* of the fourth declension, which, in the Old Slavonic, has no real existence.



of *ov*.\* If, however, with Dobrowsky we divide the Old Slavonic masculines—with the exception of the bases in *i*, §. 260.—into two declensions, and in doing this desire, as is natural, to ground the division on the final letters of the bases, we must place *knyažy*, “prince” (nominative) of Dobrowsky’s second declension in the first, and by the side of *rab*, “a servant”: on the other hand, the words *syn*, “son,” and *dom*, “a house,” of Dobrowsky’s first masculine declension must be transferred to the second declension as mutilated *y* forms. Of the paradigm here given by Dobrowsky, *vrakhy*, “*medicus*,” adheres most strictly to the true *y* declension, and, according to §. 255. (n.), opposes *ev* to the *ov* of *SYNY*. On the other hand, words inflected like *zary*, “a king” (nominative), clearly form the nominative and genitive plural from bases in *i*; hence *zary-e*, “kings,” *zariŭ*, “of kings,” from *ZARI*; as *gosty-e*, “*hospites*,” and *gostiŭ*, “*hospitum*,” from *GOSTI*. In the dative plural and instrumental singular the form *zare-m* is doubtful: in this and other words, also, of obscure origin, it remains uncertain whether the more contracted theme in *i*, or the more extended in *yy*, is the older; but it is certain that several old *i* bases have migrated into this declension by an unorganic addition; for instance, *ogny*, “fire” (nom.), dative *ognev-i*, from *OGNYY*, agrees with the Sanscrit अग्नि *agni*, Latin *IGNI*, Lithuanian *UGNI*.† It deserves here

---

\* Without Guna, the final of the base is pronounced *e* for *ye* from *yo* (§. 255. n.); and hence, in the cases without Guna the *yy* bases are just as little to be distinguished in their inflection from the *yo* bases, as, in the instrumental singular, *syno-m* (from the theme *SYNY*) from *rabo-m* (theme *RABO*). In the beginning of compound words, also, the *yy* bases end like those in *yo*, with *e* for *ye*.

† As regards words inflected with *mraviŭ*, the only proof which could bring them under the head of the *y* bases is the vocative sing. *mraviyŭ*: that they, however, although they have borrowed this case from the *y* declension, originally belong to the *o* declension, is proved by their feminine in *iyu* and neuters in *iyē* or *ye* (Dobrowsky, p. 282).

to be further remarked, that in the more modern dialects of the Slavonic base, the two masculine declensions here spoken of have been transfused almost entirely into one, which has taken several cases regularly from the old *u* declension, in which, however, from the point of view of the more recent dialects, *e.g.* in the genitive plural of the Polish and Carniolan, *ov*, *ov*, forms an exception as a case termination. In the Old Slavonic, also, *rab* (theme *RABO*), "a servant," can at will form several cases from a theme *RABY* (for *rabŭ*); and for *rab*, "*servorum*," we may also have *rabov*: and in the nominative plural of this class of words we find also *ov-e*, according to the analogy of *synov-e*. On the other hand, the adjective masculine *o* bases (the indefinites) of the *y* declension have admitted no irregular trespassings, any more than the pronouns.

264. Bases ending in a consonant are, under the limitation of §. 260., entirely foreign to the masculine: on the other hand, there are neuter bases in *en*, *es*, and *at* (*yat*), which are important for the system of declension, because the case suffix, commencing with a vowel, divides itself so much the more distinctly from the base ending with a consonant. The bases in *en* correspond to the Sanscrit in अन् *an*, and have preserved, too, in the uninflected nominative, accusative, and vocative, the old and more powerful *a*, but with the euphonic prefix of a *y* (see §. 255. *n.*), and with the suppression of *n* of the base (see §. 139.). All of them have an *m* before the termination *en*; so that *men* is to be considered as the full formative suffix of the word, which answers to the Sanscrit मन् *man*—*e.g.* in कर्मन् *karman* neut., "deed"—and to the Latin *men*; that is to say, *SYEMEN* (nominative *syemya*, "seed," from the base *sye*) answers to the Latin *se-men*; and *imen*, "a name," is a mutilation of नामन् *nāman*, "*nomen*." The bases in *es* answer to the Sanscrit neuter bases in *as*, as *nebes*,

“heaven,” Sanscrit नभस् *nabhas*. In the nominative, accusative, and vocative, they relinquish the concluding *s* (according to §. 255. *l.*), and afterwards strengthen the *e* to *o* (§. 255. *a.*). We cannot, therefore, any longer compare the *o* of *nebo* with the Sanscrit-Zendian *o*, which has arisen out of *a + u*. As in this abbreviation of *es* to *o* the neuter *es* bases in the cases mentioned become similar to the *o* bases, it is then—on account of the influence of these cases, and because the nominative principally gives the tone in the declension, and shews in the oblique cases as inflection that which is in itself deficient,—it is then, we say, not surprising, if the original *o* bases at times admit an *es* in the oblique cases, sometimes in the original great extension of these neuter bases terminating in *s* (compare §. 241.), which induces the conjecture, that many words, now declined as *o* bases, were originally domiciled in the bases in *es*. On the other hand, Dobrowsky proves that there is no admixture of *es* in the thoroughly legitimate adjective *o* bases. It is also clear, from §. 255. (*l.*), that the roots in *yat*\* in the uninflected cases must lay aside the *t*, and follow *σῶμα*, not महत् *mahat* (“*magnum*”) and *caput*.

265. Of the class of words in *r* mentioned in §. 144. two feminine words have remained in the Old Sclavonic which derive most of their cases from the genuine *r* bases, but in others increase the original base by an unorganic *i*, or also by *ya* (compare the Lithuanian in §. 144.): in the nominative singular, however, in accordance with the Sanscrit and Lithuanian, they suppress the *r*. These are, *mati*, “mother,” and *dshchi*, “daughter”; in the latter only occurs the increase of the base by *ya* (in the nominative accusative and dative plural); the declension of the former springs

---

\* They are all derivatives from names of animals, and denote the young of the animal mentioned.

partly from *MATER*, e.g. *mater-e*, “*matris*,” and *matres* (μᾱτέρ-ες), partly from *MATERI*, e.g. *matery*, “*matrem*.”

266. In order now to pass over to the formation of cases, the nominative and accusative have lost the case signs *s* and *m*, with the exception of the bases in *a*, which present, in the diphthong *â* (*æ*), a contraction of the vocalized nasal with the final vowel of the base shortened to *o* (see §. 255. *g.*); hence *vodû*, “*aquam*,” from *vodo-ũ*. The instrumental has, in the feminine, and the pronouns which have no gender, preserved the genuine Sanscrit inflection; but it is to be remarked of the feminine bases in *i* that they change this vowel before the termination *û* (for *â*, see §. 255. *h.*), not into simple *y*, but into *iy*; so that in this respect the Old Slavonic agrees more closely with the Pali, which, in the corresponding class of words, changes the final *i* before all the vowel endings into *iy*, than with the Sanscrit. Hence, let *kostiy-û*, from *KOSTI*, “*bones*,” be compared with the Pali पीतिया *pîtiy-â* (from *pîti*, “*joy*”), for the Sanscrit प्रीत्या *prîty-â*. Masculines and neuters have *m* for their instrumental ending; and this is, I have no doubt, an abbreviation of the Lithuanian *mi*, and therefore from *bi* (§. 215.).

267. The dative has, in the singular, a common ending with the locative, and, in fact, the Old Sanscrit *i* (§. 195.); hence, *imen-i*, “*in nomine*,” and “*nomini*”; *synov-i*, “*filio*,” *brachev-i*, “*medico*,” from *SYNY* and *BRĀKHYY* (§. 263.), with Guna.\* If the case-sign is suppressed, the preceding *ov* becomes *û*, and *ev* (from *yov*) becomes *yû*; hence, also, *synû*, “*filio*,” with *synov-i*, and *zaryû*, “*regi*,” with *zarev-i*. The *o* bases, also, in the dative, follow throughout the analogy of

---

\* Hence I am now disposed, contrary to §. 177., to assume for the Lithuanian a common origin for the two cases, although in their received condition they are externally separated from one another, as is the case in Old Slavonic, also, in several classes of words.

the *y* bases, but prefer, however, the abbreviated form *û*; hence *rabû*, from *RABO*, more rarely *rabov-i*. The *o* bases of the adjectives, among which there are, in the masculine and neuter, only *o* bases, and those of the neuter substantives have alone the uninflected form in *û*; hence *blagû*, "bono," masc. neut.; *sinyû*, "caeruleo," masc. neut.; *slovû*, "verbo," *moryû*, "mari": not *blagov-i*, *sinev-i*, *slovov-i*, *morev-i*. In masculine names of inanimate things this uninflected form in *û* extends itself also to the genitive and locative; hence *domû*, "of the house," "to and in the house": but in the dative is also found *domov-i*, and in the locative *domye*.\* The pronouns of the 3d person masculine and neuter—with exception of the reflective—have in the dative, in like manner, the uninflected *û*; for the form *mû* in *to-mû*, "to this," is clearly from the Sanscrit adherent pronoun *स्म sma* (§. 165. &c.), which has extended itself in the kindred European languages so much, and under such different forms, which, in the Old Sclavonic, would necessarily give the base *SMO*, from which, after dropping the *s*, would come the dative *mû*, as *rabû* from *RABO*.

268. While the *o* bases, as has been shewn above, have borrowed their dative from the *y* declension, the *y* bases appear, in the locative, to have intruded on the *o* class; for *synye* agrees with *rabye*, from *RABO* from *RABA* (§. 255. *a.*); but the *ye* of *rabye* is, according to §. 255. (*e.*), clearly from the Sanscrit *इ ई* of *वृके vrikê* from *वृक् vrika*, and agrees with the Lithuanian *wilkê* from *WILKA* (§. 197.). As, however, in Lithuanian, from *SUNU* comes *sunu-ye*, so may also the Old Sclavonic *synye* require to be divided into

---

\* Masculine names of inanimate things all follow the declension of *dom* (theme *DOMY*), although very few among them, according to their origin, fall into the class of the old *उ u*, i.e. of the Latin fourth declension, but for the most part correspond to Sanscrit bases in *अ a*.

*syn'-ye*: and this is rendered the more probable, as the feminine *a* bases, also, have in the locative *ye* for *a-ye*; hence *vod'-ye*, "in aqua," from *VODA*, answers to the Lithuanian *ranko-ye* (for *ranka-ye*) from *ranka*.\* In bases in *i*, masculine and feminine, it might appear doubtful whether *i*, with which they end in the dative locative—e.g. *pûti*, "in the way," *kosti*, "in the bone"—is to be ascribed to the theme or to the inflection: as, however, in the genitive, to which belongs an *i*, though not through any inflection, they have just the same sound, and otherwise never entirely give up the *i* of the base, except in the instrumental plural, it is more natural to consider the forms *pûti*, *kosti* uninflected, just like *domû*, "in the house." We may also look upon the *i* in the dative and locative of those bases, which have *y* as the last letter but one, as nothing else than the vocalization of this *y*; the *i*, therefore, of *knyažî*, "mori," *brakhi*, "voli," represents nothing else than the *y* of the masculine bases *KNYAŽYO*, *VRACHYY*, and the neuter *MORYO*, and feminine *VOLYO*.

269. In the genitive the terminations *as*, *os*, *is*, which, in the kindred languages, are joined to bases ending with a consonant, must, according to §. 255. (l.), drop the *s*, but the vowel appears as *e* in all the bases ending with a consonant (§§. 260. 264.): hence *imen-e*, "of the name,"

---

\* It must be allowed that here occurs the very weighty objection, that the feminine form *rankoye* in the Lithuanian, and *vodye* in the Slavonic, might stand in connection with the Sanscrit *आयाम् âyâm* in *जिह्वायाम् jihvây-âm* (§. 202.); so that, after dropping the *m*, as in the Zend (§. 202.), the preceding vowel, which in the Zend is already short, would, through the euphonic influence of the *y*, become *e*. As the bases in *i* in the Lithuanian, down to a few exceptions, are feminine, so might also *awiye* from *awi-s*, "a sheep," be divided into *awiy-e*, and compared with *मयाम् maty-âm*, from *mati* or *भियाम् bhiy-âm* from *bhî* (comp. in §. 266. *kostiy-û*, for *kosty-û*, from *KOSTI*).

answers to नाम्नस् *nāmn-as*, “*nomin-is*”; *nebes-e*, “of the heaven,” to नभस् *nabhas-as*, “*véφe(σ)-os*”; *mater-e* to *matr-is*, “*μητρός*.” The pronominal forms also follow this analogy: “*men-e*, “*mei*,” *teb-e*, “*tui*,” *seb-e*, “*sui*,” because, in the oblique singular cases, *MEN*, *TEB*, *SEB* are their themes. We recognise the fuller Sanscrit genitive ending स्य *sya* in the pronominal genitive termination *go*, as *to-go* = तस्य *ta-sya* (§. 188.). This comparison might alone be sufficient in place of all proof; but, over and above, is to be remarked the easily adopted hardening of the semi-vowel *y* to *g* (comp. p. 121.), and in the Prakrit to ञ् *j* (§. 19.); finally, let the high degree of improbability be considered, that the Sclavonic should have formed an entirely new genitive ending, foreign to all the kindred languages. Now, if the *g* of the termination *go* is taken for a hardening from *y* (य् *y*), then the Old Sclavonic has preserved exactly as much as the Greek of the termination *sya*; and *go* answers to the Greek *io*, and *to-go*, “*hujus*,” to the Greek *ro-îo*. As, however, in Sclavonic, the sibilants are easily interchanged with gutturals (see §. 255. *m.*), one might also conjecture the *g* of *go* to be a corruption of the Sanscrit *s* and the semi-vowel of स्य *sya*, which had been lost. This conjecture cannot entirely be put aside; but in any case, even in this supposition, the termination *go* remains connected with स्य *sya* and *io*. As, however, in the Old Sclavonic, *g* is elsewhere exchanged only with *ǵ* and *sch* (Dobr. p. 41.), but not with *s*, in my opinion the derivation of *g* from *y* (य् *y*) is to be preferred to that from *s*.

270. The substantive and adjective (indefinite) *o* bases, in disadvantageous comparison with the pronouns which hold fast the old form, have lost the genitive ending *go*; but for it, in compensation for the lost termination, they have retained the old *a* of the base, instead of, according to §. 255. (*a.*), weakening it to *o*; hence *raba*, “*servi*,” *nova* (= Sanscrit *nava-sya*) “*novi*.” Now, although the *y* bases in the

genitive end in *a*, the comparison of the form *syna*, "*filii*," with the Lithuanian and Gothic *sunai-s*, *sunau-s*, and the Sanscrit *súnó-s* (from *súnau-s*), teaches that the *a* here is only a Guna element, but foreign to the proper base, as well as to the case-suffix, which, according to §. 255. (b.), must disappear.

271. The feminine bases in *a*, with the exception of those which have a penultimate *y*, change that *a* in the genitive into *y*; hence *vody*, "*aquæ*," from *VODA*, but *volya*, "*voluntatis*," with unaltered base, from *VOLYA*. I ascribe that *y*, as well as that in the nominative plural, to the euphonic influence of the *s*, which originally ends the form (see §. 255. d.): this, however, does not obtain if a *y* precedes the *a*; hence *volya*, "*voluntatis*," is identical with the theme. On the other hand, the feminine pronominal bases in *a* have preserved a remarkable agreement with the Sanscrit pronominal declension; for if *ta*, "this" (at the same time the theme), forms *to-ya* in the genitive, I do not doubt of the identity of the ending *ya* with the Sanscrit *syás* (§. 172.), as in the word तस्यास् *tasyás*, of the same import, for the final *s* must, according to §. 255. (l.), give way; but the *a* of the Slavonic *ya* directs us, according to §. 255. (a.), to an Indian ऋ *a*, just as the preceding *o* points to a short अ *a*. The irregularity, therefore, in the shortening of the Slavonic termination lies only in the dropping of the sibilant before *y*, as, in the Greek, *roîo*, from तस्य *ta-sya*, and in the *to-go*, for *to-(s)yo*, mentioned in §. 269.

272. In the vocative, which in the kindred languages is without any case-suffix (§. 204.), *o* is weakened to *e* (e) and *a* to *o* (§. 255. a.); hence *nove* (from *NOVO*, "new"), for Sanscrit नव *nava*, is identical with the Latin *nŏvē*, and answers to the Greek *vé(F)e*: from *VODA*, "water," comes *vodo*; but from *VOLYA*, according to §. 255. (n.), *vole* for *volyo*: and so from *KNYAŹYO*, "prince," *knyashe*\* for

---

\* *Ź* before *e* becomes *sh*.



*knyažye*. Bases in *yy* change their *y* by Guna to *ū* (§. 255. *f.*), in analogy with §. 205.; hence *vrachyū*—more commonly, with *y* suppressed, *vrachū*—"medice!" from *VRACHYY*. On the other hand, *y* bases without *y* for their penultimate letter commonly omit the Guna, and weaken their final vowel, like the *o* bases, to *e*; hence *syne*, "oh son!" more rarely *synū* (Dobr. p. 470), = Gothic *sunau*, Lithuanian *sunai*, Sanscrit *sūnō* from *sunau*.

## DUAL.

273. By preserving a dual, the Old Slavonic surpasses the Gothic, in which this number is lost in the noun: it exceeds, in the same, the Lithuanian in the more true retention of the terminations, and it is richer than the Greek by one case. The agreement with the Sanscrit and Zend is not to be mistaken: let the comparison be made.

	SANSKRIT.	ZEND.	OLD SCLAVONIC.
N. Acc. V. m.	<i>ubhā</i> ( <i>ambo Vêda</i> ),	<i>ubā</i> ,	<i>oba</i> .
f. n.	<i>ubhē</i> ,	<i>ubē</i> ,	<i>obye</i> (§. 255. <i>n.</i> ).
I. D. Ab. m. f. n.	<i>ubhā-bhyām</i> ,	<i>ubōi-bya</i> ,	I. D. <i>obye-ma</i> (§. 215.).*
G. L. m. f. n.	<i>ubhay-ōs</i> ,	<i>ubōy-ō</i> ,	<i>oboy-ū</i> .†

\* The *ye*, which precedes the termination *ma*, may be compared with the Sanscrit *ē* in plural forms, as *वृक्षेभ्यस्* *vṛikṣebhyas*: *ye-ma*, however, occurs in the Old Slavonic only in *dye-ma*, "duobus," "per duos," and some pronouns. The usual form of substantive *o*-bases before this ending is that with an unchanged *o*, as *sto-ma*, from *sto*, "a hundred"; and the final *a* of feminine substantives also remains unchanged, as *dyeva-ma*, from *DYEVA*, "a girl."

† The form *ū*, for the Sanscrit ending *ōs*, is, according to §. 255. (*f.*) and (*l.*), necessary: the Zend certainly approaches the Old Slavonic in casting away the *s* voluntarily. The *oy*, which precedes the termination *ū*, clearly corresponds to the Sanscrit *अय्* *ay* (see §. 225.) and the  
Zend

The Sanscrit *ubhé*, as neuter, comes, according to §. 212., from the theme *ubha*, in union with the case-suffix *í*; and the feminine *ubhé* is an abbreviation of *ubhay-āu*, and therefore without a case termination (§. 213.). The Old Slavonic, which runs parallel to the Sanscrit in both genders, and, according to §. 255. (l), opposes *ye* to the Indian *ए* *é*, no longer recognises the origin of this *ye*, and regards it entirely as a case-suffix, before which the final vowel of the theme appears to be suppressed. Therefore, also, neuter bases ending in a consonant make *ye* their termination, if the *imenye*, "two names," given by Dobrowsky, p. 513., actually occurs, and is not a theoretic formation. In feminines, however, the termination *ye* extends, exactly as in Sanscrit, only to bases in *a* (for Sanscrit *ā*, §. 255. *a*); but in such a manner, that those with *y* as the last letter but one in the theme reject the termination *ye*, and vocalize the *y* of the theme; hence *dyeve*, "two girls," from *dyeva*, but *steži*, "two steps," from *STEŽYA*. The feminine bases in *i*, in the dual case under discussion, answer to the Sanscrit and Lithuanian forms mentioned at §§. 210. 211., as *patí*, "two sirs," from *पति* *patí*; *amí*, "two sheep," from *AWI*; only that, according to §. 255. *b*.), the *i* in the Slavonic is not lengthened; as *dlani* from *DLANI* (nominative singular *dlany*),

---

Zend *dy* or *ay* (see p. 277); but that occurs only in *dvoy-ū* = Sanscrit *dvay-ós*, "of two," "in two" m. f. n., and in *toy-ū* = Sanscrit *tay-ós*, "of these two," m. f. n. The genitive locatives of the two first persons also rest on this principle, only retaining the older *a* — *nayū*, *vayū*. For the rest, however, the final vowel of the theme is rejected before the termination *ū*, as *st'-ū* (Sanskrit *shatay-ós*) from *STO*, "a hundred," *dyev'-ū* from *DYEVA*, "a girl"; and thus occurs, also, together with *dvoyū*, the syncopated form *dvū*. Although the Lithuanian generally does not drop the final *s*, still the *ū* mentioned in §. 225. may be identical with the Slavonic *ū*; as in the Zend, also, in this termination the *s* is often dropped.

"*vola manus.*" On the other hand, the masculine *y* bases do not follow this principle, but suppress the final vowel before the case-suffix *a*; hence *syn'-a*, "two sons," from *SYNY*.

#### PLURAL.

274. In the plural, the masculine nominative termination *e* (*e*) for the most part answers to the Greek *ες*, and, according to a universal rule of sounds, omits the *s* (§. 255. l.); hence *synov-e*, "the sons," for *सूनवस् sīnav-as*: compare *βότρυ-ες*, *kamen-e*, "the stones," for *चश्मानस् aśmān-as* (§. 21.); compare *δαίμων-ες*, *gosty-e*, "guests" (theme *GOSTI*), for the Gothic *gastei-s*, and Greek forms like *πόσι-ες*. The bases in *o* take, as in Lithuanian do the corresponding bases in *a*, *i* as their termination (see §. 228.), but before this reject the *o* of the base; hence *rab'-i*, "servants," for *rabo-i* (comp. *λύκο-ι*), as in Latin *lup-ī* for *lupo-i*. Neuters have *a* for their ending, like the cognate dialects, with the exception of the Sanscrit with *i* for *a*; nevertheless *slova*, "*verba*," from *SLOVO*—as *δῶρα* from *ΔΩΡΟ*—answers to Vêda forms like *vandā*, "woods," from *vana*; and the same thing obtains which, §. 231. p. 267., has been said of Gothic, Greek, and Latin, regarding the relation of the *a* of the termination to the *o* of the theme. As regards the bases ending in a consonant, let *imen-a*, "names," be compared with the Latin *nomin-a* and Gothic *namōn-a*; *nebes-a*, "the heavens," with *νεφε(σ)-α*; and *telyat-a*, "calves," with Greek forms like *σώματ-α*. Feminines, with the exception of the class of words in *ov* mentioned at §. 261., have lost the nominative ending; hence *volya*, "*voluntates*," is the same as the theme and the nominative singular; and from *KOSTI*, "bones" (Sanskrit *asthi*, neuter) comes the nominative singular *kosty*, and the plural like the theme.

275. The accusative plural is, in feminine and neuter nouns, the same as the nominative, and therefore in the former

mostly without inflection, exactly as in the few masculine bases in *i*; hence *gasti* for the Gothic *gasti-n*s. Bases in *o*, without *y* preceding, like *RABO*, change this *o* into *y*, as *raby*, “*servos*”; at least I cannot believe that this *y* is to be looked upon as the case-suffix; and I pronounce it to be the euphonic alteration of the *o* of the base, through the influence of the consonant of the inflection which has been dropped (comp. §. 271.): as in Lithuanian, also, the corresponding class of words often changes the final vowel (*a*) of the base into *u*; hence *wilkù-s*, “*lupos*,” answering to the Gothic *vulfa-n*s and Sanscrit *vriká-n*. But if the Old Slavonic bases in *y*, of animate creatures, form *omy* in the accusative plural, and thus *synovy*, “*filios*,” answers to the Lithuanian *sunù-s* (from *SUNU*), this very Lithuanian form, as well as the Gothic and Sanscrit *sunu-n*s, *सुनुन् sînú-n*, prove that the Slavonic form is unorganic, and formed from an augmented theme *SY-NOVO*, according to the analogy of *raby*. Bases in *yy* in this case follow bases in *yo* (from *ya*, §. 255. *a*), which, preserving the old *a* sound, give *ya*, as in the genitive singular (see §. 270.); hence *vrachya*, “*medicos*,” like *knyažya*, “*principes*”: but forms, also, like *doshdevy*, analogous with *synovy*, occur, following the euphonic rule, §. 255. (*n*).

276. The view here given is the more incontrovertible, as in the dative, also, *synovo-m*, “*filii*s” (compare *rabo-m*), is clearly formed from a theme *SYNOVO*, increased by *o*, corresponding to the Lithuanian *sunu-ms*. This dative suffix *m*, for the Lithuanian *ms* (from *mus*, §. 215.), according to §. 255. (*l*), extends itself over all classes of words, and appears to be included in bases terminating with a consonant by a conjunctive vowel *e*; but, in fact, it is to be considered that these, in the cases mentioned, as also in the locative (see §. 279.), pass over into the *i* declension, as a final *i*, before the signs of case *m* and *kh*, becomes *e*: and a similar metaplasm occurs in the Lithuanian, and, indeed,

to a much greater extent (§. 125. *sub finem*, comp. §. 126.); hence *imene-m*, *imene-kh*, from *IMENI* from *IMEN*, "names," as *koste-m*, *koste-kh*, from *KOSTI*, "bones."

277. Less general is the instrumental ending *mi*, answering, subject to the loss required by §. 255. (1.), to the Lithuanian *mis*, Sanscrit *bhis*, and Zend *bīs*. This termination *mi* is, however, in masculine and neuter nouns for the most part lost (comp. *Dobr.* pp. 473. and 477.); and is preserved principally, and indeed without exception, in feminines, as well as in a few masculine *i* bases: a final *i* of the base is, however, suppressed before the termination *mi*. Let *kost'-mi* be compared with अस्थिभिस् *asthi-bhis*, from अस्थि *asthi*, "bone"; *vdova-mi* with विधवाभिस् *vidhavā-bhis*, from विधवा *vidhavā*, "a widow." The instrumentals *raby*, *synovy*, are, like the accusatives of similar sound, uninflected (§. 275.); the *i* of *knyažī*, *vrachi*, is the vocalization of the *y* of the bases *KYNAŽYO*, *VRACHYY*, after the loss of the final vowel; and the *y* of neuters terminating in a consonant is to be explained by a transition into the *o* declension, and is therefore analogous to *raby*, *slavy*, similarly to the *o* of the Greek dual forms like δαιμόνων (p. 318. Rem. 2.)

278. Dobrowsky (p. 461.) represents *ov*, *y*, *iž*, *ev*, *en*, *yat*, and *es*, as plural genitive terminations; but in reality the suffix of this case has entirely disappeared, and in bases in *o*, *a*, and *y*, has also carried away those final vowels with it, while bases in *i* double that vowel; hence *rab*, "servorum," from *RABO*; *vod*, "aquarum," from *VODA*; *syn*, "filiorum," from *SYNY*; *kostiž*, "ossium," from *KOSTI*; *imen*, "nominum," from *IMEN*; *nebes*, "cælorum," from *NEBES*. The *n* and *s* of *imen*, *nebes*, would, without the former protection, have fallen under the head of a successive termination, as in Slavonic we have only a second generation of final consonants; while the former, with the exception of a few monosyllabic forms, has, according to §. 255. (1.), disappeared.

279. The termination of the locative plural is *kh* throughout all classes of words, and has been already, at §. 255. (*m.*), recognised as identical with the Indian *सु सु*, and therefore, also, with the Greek *σι*: compare, also, the Zend *𐬕𐬀 kha*, for the Sanscrit *sva*, in §. 35. Before this *kh*, *o* passes into *ye*, exactly as the corresponding Sanscrit *अ* into *ए* (see §. 255. *e.*); hence *rabye-kh*, “in servis,” answers to *वृक्षेषु vṛikṣe-shu*, “in lupis.” Bases in *yo*—and those in *yy* follow their analogy—suppress, however, before this *ye*, their preceding *y*, as in similar cases; hence *knyažye-kh*, “in principibus,” not *knyažyy-kh* from *KNYAŽYO*. A final *a* remains unchanged; hence *vdova-kh*, “in viduis,” answers to the Sanscrit *vidhavā-su*. For bases in *i*, and consonants, see §. 276.

280. For an easier survey of the results obtained for the Old Slavonic case-formation, we give here, in order to bring under one point of view all the kinds of theme existing in Old Slavonic, and to render their comparison with one another easy, the complete declension of the bases: *RABO*, *m.* “a servant,” *KNYAŽYO*, *m.* “a prince,” *SLOVO*, *n.* “a word,” *MORYO*, *n.* “a sea” (Dobr. p. 476. §. 11.), *VODA*, *f.* “water,” *VOLYA*, *f.* “will,” *GOSTI*, *m.* “a guest,” *KOSTI*, *f.* “a bone,” *SYNY*, *m.* “a son,” *DOMY*, *m.* “a house,” *VRACHYY*, *m.* “a physician,” *KAMEN*, *m.* “a stone,” *IMEN*, *n.* “a name,” *MATER*, *f.* “a mother,” *NEBES*, *n.* “heaven,” *TELYAT*, *n.* “a calf.”\* In those

---

\* The above examples are arranged according to their final letters, with the observation, however, that *o* represents an original short *a*, and hence precedes the *a* for Sanscrit *ā* (§. 255. *a.*). All bases in *t* have a *y* before the preceding *a*; this semi-vowel is, however, readily suppressed after sibilants; hence *ovcha* for *ovchya*, Dobr. p. 475; and hence, also, from *lisyo* come (nom. *lise*) the genitive dative and nominative accusative plural *lisa*, *lisû*, for *lisya*, *lisyû*. If in bases in *yo*, *m. n.*, and in feminines in *ya* an *i* precedes the semi-vowel, this involves some apparent variations

forms of the following table in which a part of the word is not separated from the rest, thereby shewing itself to be the inflection, we recognise no inflection at all, *i.e.* no case-suffix; but we see therein only the bare base of the word, either complete or abbreviated; or also a modification of the base, through the alteration of the final letter, occasioned by the termination which has been dropped (compare §. 271.). In some cases which we present in the notes, base and termination have, however, been contracted into one letter, by which a division is rendered impossible. With respect to the dual, which cannot be proved to belong to all the words here given as specimens, we refer to §. 273.

---

variations in the declension, which require no particular explanation here (see, by Dobr. *mravŭ*, m. p. 468; *ladiya*, f. p. 478; and *ŭchenye*, n. p. 474. With regard to *sary*, "a king," see §. 263.).

## SINGULAR.

THEME.	NOM.	ACCUS.	INSTR.	DATIVE.	GEN.	LOC.	VOC.
<i>RABO</i> , m. <sup>1</sup>	<i>rab'</i> ,	<i>rab'</i> ,	<i>рабо-м</i> ,	<i>rabû</i> , <sup>18</sup>	<i>raba</i> , <sup>21</sup>	<i>rabye</i> , <sup>25</sup>	<i>rabe</i> .
<i>KNYAŽYO</i> , m. <sup>2</sup>	<i>knyažy'</i> ,	<i>knyažy'</i> ,	<i>knyaže-м</i> ,	<i>knyažyû</i> ,	<i>knyažya</i> , <sup>21</sup>	<i>knyaži</i> ,	<i>knyashe</i> .
<i>SLOVO</i> , n. <sup>3</sup>	<i>slovo</i> ,	<i>slovo</i> ,	<i>slovo-м</i> ,	<i>slovû</i> ,	<i>slova</i> , <sup>21</sup>	<i>slovye</i> , <sup>25</sup>	. . . .
<i>MORYO</i> , n. <sup>2</sup>	<i>more</i> ,	<i>more</i> ,	<i>more-м</i> ,	<i>moryû</i> ,	<i>morya</i> , <sup>21</sup>	<i>mori</i> ,	. . . .
<i>VODA</i> , f. <sup>4</sup>	<i>voda</i> ,	<i>vodû</i> , <sup>18</sup>	<i>vodoy-û</i> , <sup>16</sup>	<i>vod'-ye</i> , <sup>19</sup>	<i>vody</i> , <sup>22</sup>	<i>vod'-ye</i> , <sup>25</sup>	<i>vodo</i> .
<i>VOLYA</i> , f. <sup>4</sup>	<i>volya</i> ,	<i>volyû</i> , <sup>18</sup>	<i>voley-û</i> , <sup>16</sup>	<i>voli</i> ,	<i>volya</i> ,	<i>voli</i> ,	<i>vole</i> .
<i>GOSTI</i> , m. <sup>5</sup>	<i>gosty</i> ,	<i>gosty</i> ,	<i>goste-м</i> , <sup>17</sup>	<i>gosti</i> , <sup>20</sup>	<i>gosti</i> ,	<i>gosti</i> , <sup>20</sup>	<i>gosti</i> ?
<i>KOSTI</i> , f. <sup>5</sup>	<i>kosty</i> ,	<i>kosty</i> ,	<i>kostiy-û</i> , <sup>16</sup>	<i>kosti</i> , <sup>20</sup>	<i>kosti</i> ,	<i>kosti</i> , <sup>20</sup>	<i>kosti</i> .
<i>SYNY</i> , m. <sup>6</sup>	<i>syn'</i> ,	<i>syn'</i> ,	<i>syno-м</i> , <sup>17</sup>	<i>synov-i</i> ,	<i>syna</i> , <sup>21</sup>	<i>synye</i> , <sup>25</sup>	<i>synû</i> . <sup>26</sup>
<i>DOMY</i> , m. <sup>7</sup>	<i>dom'</i> ,	<i>dom'</i> ,	<i>domo-м</i> ,	<i>domov-i</i> ,	<i>domû</i> ,	<i>domû</i> ,	<i>dome</i> .
<i>VRACHYY</i> , m. <sup>8</sup>	<i>vrachy'</i> ,	<i>vrachy'</i> ,	<i>vrache-м</i> ,	<i>vrachev-i</i> ,	<i>vrachya</i> , <sup>22</sup>	<i>vrachi</i> ,	<i>vrachyû</i> .
<i>KAMEN</i> , m. <sup>9</sup>	<i>kamy'</i> , <sup>14</sup>	. . . .	<i>kamene-м</i> ,	<i>kamen-i</i> ,	<i>kamen-e</i> , <sup>24</sup>	<i>kamen-i</i> ,	. . . .
<i>IMEN</i> , n. <sup>10</sup>	<i>imya</i> ,	<i>imya</i> ,	<i>imene-м</i> ,	<i>imen-i</i> ,	<i>imen-e</i> , <sup>24</sup>	<i>imen-i</i> ,	. . . .
<i>MATER</i> , f. <sup>11</sup>	<i>mati</i> ,	. . . .	. . . .	<i>mater-i</i> ,	<i>mater-e</i> , <sup>24</sup>	<i>mater-i</i> ,	. . . .
<i>NEBES</i> , n. <sup>12</sup>	<i>nebo</i> ,	<i>nebo</i> ,	<i>nebese-м</i> ,	<i>nebes-i</i> ,	<i>nebes-e</i> , <sup>24</sup>	<i>nebes-i</i> ,	. . . .
<i>TELYAT</i> , n. <sup>13</sup>	<i>telya</i> ,	<i>telya</i> ,	<i>telyato-м</i> ,	<i>telyat-i</i> ,	<i>telyat-e</i> , <sup>24</sup>	<i>telyat-i</i> ,	. . . .

<sup>1</sup> Comp. p. 273. &c.<sup>2</sup> See §§. 258. 259.<sup>3</sup> Comp. pp. 275. 276.<sup>4</sup> Comp. p. 285.<sup>5</sup> Comp. p. 286.<sup>6</sup> Comp. p. 288.<sup>7</sup> See p. 337. Rem.<sup>8</sup> See §. 263.

<sup>9</sup> Comp. p. 304. The cases wanting come from *KAMENI* (see §. 260.); whence, also, *kamene-м*, *kamene-ikh* (§. 266.); and whence, also, might be derived the dative locative *kamen-i*, which I prefer, however, deriving from the original theme, just like *MATER*.

<sup>10</sup> Comp. §. 139.<sup>11</sup> See §. 265. and comp. p. 305.<sup>12</sup> Comp. p. 306. and §. 147.<sup>13</sup> See §. 264.<sup>14</sup> Dobr. p. 287.<sup>15</sup> See §. 216.<sup>16</sup> Comp. Sanscrit *jihvay-a*, &c. See §. 266.<sup>17</sup> Comp. Lith. *pati-mi*, *sunu-mi*.<sup>18</sup> Or *rabori*, §. 267.<sup>19</sup> See §. 268.

<sup>20</sup> The *i* may also be ascribed to the mark of case, and the dropping of the final letter of the base may be assumed; but in the genitive of the same sound, the *i* clearly belongs to the theme.

<sup>21</sup> See §. 270.<sup>22</sup> See §. 271.<sup>23</sup> More commonly *vracha*, and in the vocative *vrachû*. See p. 346. Rem.<sup>24</sup> See §. 269.<sup>25</sup> See §. 268.<sup>26</sup> Or *syne*.



## PLURAL.

NOM. VOC. <sup>1</sup>	ACCUS. <sup>2</sup>	INSTR. <sup>3</sup>	DATIVE. <sup>6</sup>	GEN. <sup>7</sup>	LOCATIVE. <sup>8</sup>
<i>rab'-i,</i>	<i>raby,</i>	<i>raby,</i>	<i>rabo-m,</i>	<i>rab',</i>	<i>rabye-kh.</i>
<i>knyaž'i,</i>	<i>knyažya,</i>	<i>knyaž'i,</i>	<i>knyaže-m,</i>	<i>knyaž'y',</i>	<i>knyaže-kh.</i>
<i>slova,</i>	<i>slova,</i>	<i>slovy,</i>	<i>slovo-m,</i>	<i>slov',</i>	<i>slovye-kh.</i>
<i>morya,</i>	<i>morya,</i>	<i>mori,</i>	<i>more-m,</i>	<i>mory',</i>	<i>morye-kh.</i>
<i>vody,<sup>2</sup></i>	<i>vody,</i>	<i>voda-mi,</i>	<i>voda-m,</i>	<i>vod',</i>	<i>voda-kh.</i>
<i>volya,</i>	<i>volya,</i>	<i>volya-mi,</i>	<i>volya-m,</i>	<i>voly',</i>	<i>volya-kh.</i>
<i>gosty-e,</i>	<i>gosti,</i>	<i>gost'-mi,</i>	<i>goste-m,</i>	<i>gostī,</i>	<i>goste-kh.</i>
<i>kosti,</i>	<i>kosti,</i>	<i>kost'-mi,</i>	<i>koste-m,</i>	<i>kostī,</i>	<i>koste-kh.</i>
<i>synov-e,</i>	<i>synovy,<sup>4</sup></i>	<i>synovy,<sup>4</sup></i>	<i>synovo-m,<sup>4</sup></i>	<i>synov,</i>	<i>synovye-kh.<sup>4</sup></i>
<i>domov-e,</i>	<i>domy,</i>	<i>domy,</i>	<i>domo-m,</i>	<i>domov,</i>	<i>domo-kh.</i>
<i>vrachev-e,</i>	<i>vrachya,</i>	<i>vrachi,</i>	<i>vrache-m,</i>	<i>vrachev,</i>	<i>vrache-kh.</i>
. . . .	. . . .	. . . .	<i>kamene-m,</i>	. . . .	<i>kamene-kh.</i>
<i>imen-a,</i>	<i>imen-a,</i>	<i>imeny,</i>	<i>imene-m,</i>	<i>imen,</i>	<i>imeno-kh.</i>
<i>mater-e,</i>	. . . .	<i>mater-mi,</i>	<i>matero-m,</i>	. . . .	. . . .
<i>nebes-a,</i>	<i>nebes-a,</i>	<i>nebesy,</i>	<i>nebese-m,</i>	<i>nebes,</i>	<i>nebesye-kh.<sup>9</sup></i>
<i>telyat-a,</i>	<i>telyat-a,</i>	<i>telyaty,</i>	<i>telyato-m,</i>	<i>telyat,</i>	<i>telyato-kh.</i>

<sup>1</sup> See §. 274.<sup>2</sup> See §. 271.<sup>3</sup> See §. 275.<sup>4</sup> From *SYNOVO*, see §. 275. In the locative occurs also *synovo-ch* and *synove-kh*.<sup>5</sup> See §. 277.<sup>6</sup> See §. 276.<sup>7</sup> See §. 278.<sup>8</sup> See §. 279.<sup>9</sup> One would expect *nebese-kh*; but in this case *ech* and *yekh* are frequently interchanged with one another, and the form *yech* appears to agree better with the preceding *s* (comp. Dobrowsky, p. 477).

## ADJECTIVES.

281. The declension of the adjective is not distinct from that of the substantive; and if some inflected forms, which in the Sanscrit and Zend belong only to the pronouns, have, in the cognate languages, emerged from the circle of the pronouns, and extended themselves further, they have not remained with the adjectives alone, but have extended themselves to the substantives also. As regards the Greek, Latin, and Slavonic, we have already explained at §§. 228. 248. and 274. what has been introduced from pronominal declension in those languages into general declension: we will here only further remark that the appended syllable *sma*, in §. 165. &c., which, in Sanscrit, characterises only the pronominal declension, may in the Pali be combined also, in several cases, with masculine and neuter substantive and adjective bases, and indeed with all bases in *a*, *i*, and *u*, including those which, originally terminating in a consonant, pass by augment or apocope into the vowel declension; thus the ablative and locative singular of *kēsa*, "hair," is either simply *kēsā* (from *kēsāt*, see p. 300), *kēsē*, or, combined with *sma* or its variation *mha*, *kēsa-smā*, *kēsa-mhā*, *kēsa-smin*, *kēsa-mhi*. In the Lithuanian, this syllable, after dropping the *s*, has, in the dative and locative singular, passed over to the adjective declension, without imparting itself to that of the substantive, and without giving to the adjective the license of renouncing this appended syllable; as, *gēram*, "bono," *geramē*, "in bono." According to this principle it would be possible, and such indeed was lately my intention,

to explain the agreement of the Gothic full adjective dative, as *blindamma* (from *blindasma*, §. 170.), with pronominal datives like *tha-mma*, "to this," *i-mma*, "to him"; but the examination of the Old Slavonic declension, in which the indefinite adjectives remove themselves from all admixture of the pronominal declension, and run entirely parallel to the German strong substantive, not to the weak, has led me to the, to me, very important discovery, that Grimm's strong and Fulda's abstract declension form of adjectives diverges in not less than nine points from the strong substantives (*i. e.* those which terminate in the theme in a vowel), and approaches to the pronominal declension for no other reason than because, like the definite adjectives in the Slavonic and Lithuanian, they are compounded with a pronoun, which naturally follows its own declension. As, then, the definite (so I now name the strong) adjectives are defined or personified by a pronoun incorporated with them, it is natural that this form of declension should be avoided, where the function of the inherent pronoun is discharged by a word which simply precedes it; thus we say *guter*, or *der gute*, not *der guter*, which would be opposed to the genius of our language; for it still lies in our perception that in *guter* a pronoun is contained, as we feel with regard to pronouns in *im*, *am*, although the pronoun is here no longer present in its original form, but has only left behind its case-termination. In comprehending, however, the definite adjective declension, the science of Grammar, which in many other points had raised itself far above the empirical perception of the language, was here still left far behind it; and we felt, in forms like *guter*, *gutem*, *gute*, more than we recognised, namely, a pronoun which still operated in spirit, although it was no longer bodily present. How acute, in this respect, our perception is, is proved by the fact that we place the definite form of the adjective beside the *ein* when deprived

of its definitive pronominal element; but in the oblique cases, beside the definite *eines*, *einem*, *einen*, the indefinite *ein grosses*, *eines grossen* (not *grosses*), *einem grossen* (not *grossen*). In the accusative, *grossen* is at the same time definite and indefinite; but in the former case it is a bare theme, and therefore identical with the indefinite genitive and dative, which is likewise devoid of inflection; but in the latter case the *n* evidently belongs to the inflection.

282. The pronominal base, which in Lithuanian and Old Slavonic forms the definite declension, is, in its original form, *ya* (= Sanscrit य *ya*, "which"); and has, in the Lithuanian, maintained itself in this form in several cases (see below). In the Old Slavonic, according to §. 255. (a.), *yo* must be formed from *ya*; and from *yo* again, according to §. 255. (n.), *ye* or *e*: but the monosyllabic nature of the form has preserved it from the suppression of the *y*, which usually takes place in polysyllabic words. In some cases, however, the *y* has vocalized itself to *i* after the vowel has been dropped. It signifies in both languages "he"; but in Old Slavonic has preserved, in union with *she*, the old relative meaning (*i-she*, "which"). The complete declension of this pronoun is as follows:—

## SINGULAR.

	LITHUANIAN.		OLD SLAVONIC.		
Nominative,	m. <i>jis</i> ,	f. <i>ji</i> ,	m. <i>i</i> ,*	f. <i>ya</i> ,*	n. <i>ye</i> .*
Accusative,	m. <i>jin</i> ,	f. <i>jen</i> ,	m. <i>i</i> ,	f. <i>yû</i> ,	n. <i>ye</i> .
Instrumental,	m. <i>yû</i> ,	f. <i>yè</i> ,	m. n. <i>im</i> ,	f. <i>yeyû</i> ,	
Dative,	m. <i>yám</i> ,	f. <i>yèi</i> ,	m. n. <i>yemû</i> ,	f. <i>yèi</i> ,	
Genitive,	m. <i>yo</i> ,	f. <i>yós</i> ,	m. n. <i>yego</i> ,	f. <i>yeya</i> ,	
Locative,	m. <i>yamè</i> ,	f. <i>yoyè</i> ,	m. n. <i>yem</i> ,	f. <i>yèi</i> ,	

---

\* Occurs only as the relative in union with *she*.

## PLURAL.

		LITHUANIAN.	OLD SCLAVONIC.
Nominative,	m.	<i>yie</i> ( <i>yi</i> ), f. <i>yos</i> ,	m. <i>i</i> ,* f. n. <i>ya</i> .*
Accusative,	m.	<i>yūs</i> , f. <i>yes</i> ,	m. f. n. <i>ya</i> .
Instrumental,	m.	<i>yeis</i> , f. <i>yomis</i> ,	m. f. n. <i>imi</i> .
Dative,	m.	<i>yiems</i> , f. <i>yoms</i> ,	m. f. n. <i>im</i> .
Genitive,	m. f.	<i>yû</i> ,	m. f. n. <i>ikh</i> .
Locative,	m.	<i>yūsè</i> , f. <i>yosà</i> ,	m. f. n. <i>ikh</i> .

## DUAL.

		LITHUANIAN.	OLD SCLAVONIC.
Nominative,	m.	<i>yu</i> ( <i>yû</i> ), f. <i>yì</i> ,	. . . .
Accusative,	m.	<i>yun</i> , f. <i>yin</i> ,	. . . .
Dative,	m.	<i>yiém</i> , f. <i>yom</i> ,	Instr. Dat. m. f. n. <i>yima</i> .
Genitive,	m. f.	<i>yû</i> ,	Gen. Loc. m. f. n. <i>yeyû</i> .

283. The Lithuanian unites, in its definite declension, the pronoun cited—which, according to Ruhig (Mielcke, p. 52.), signifies the same as the Greek article—with the definitive adjective; so that both the latter, and the pronoun, preserve their full terminations through all the cases; only the pronoun in some cases loses its *y*, and the terminations of the adjective are in some cases somewhat shortened. *Géras*, “good,” will serve as an example.

## MASCULINE.

	SINGULAR.	DUAL.	PLURAL.
Nominative,	<i>gérasis</i> ,†	<i>gerûyu</i> ,	<i>gerieyi</i> .
Accusative,	<i>geranyan</i> ,	<i>geruyun</i> ,	<i>gerûsus</i> ,
Instrumental,	<i>gerûyu</i> ,	. . . .	<i>geraiseis</i> .
Dative,	<i>gerámyam</i> ,	<i>giriemsiom</i> ,‡	<i>geriemsiems</i> .
Genitive,	<i>geroyo</i> ,	. . . .	<i>gerûyû</i> .
Locative,	<i>geramyame</i> ,	. . . .	<i>gerûsûse</i> .
Vocative,	<i>gerasis</i> ,	<i>gerûyu</i> ,	<i>gerieyi</i> .

\* See Note on preceding page.

† Or *gerassis*, by assimilation from *gerasyis*, as, in the Prakrit, *y* frequently assimilates itself to a preceding *s*, as *tassa*, “hujus,” for तस्य *tasya*.

‡ The *s* of the adjective is here not in its place, and appears to be borrowed from the plural.

	FEMININE.		
	SINGULAR.	DUAL.	PLURAL.
Nominative,	<i>geroyi,</i>	<i>gerieyi,</i>	<i>gerosos.</i>
Accusative,	<i>geraniyēn,</i>	<i>geriyin,</i>	<i>gerases.</i>
Instrumental,	<i>gerayè,</i>	. . . .	<i>geromsomis.</i>
Dative,	<i>geraiyei,</i>	<i>gerómsom,*</i>	<i>geromsoms.</i>
Genitive,	<i>gerosiés,</i>	<i>gerúyû,</i>	<i>gerúyû,</i>
Locative,	<i>geroyoye,</i>	. . . .	<i>gerososa.</i>
Vocative,	<i>geroyi.</i>	<i>geriyi,</i>	<i>gerosos.</i>

284. The Old Slavonic, differing from the Lithuanian, declines only in some cases the adjective together with the appended pronoun, but in most cases the latter alone. While, however, in the Lithuanian the appended pronoun has lost its *y* only in some cases, in the Old Slavonic that pronoun has lost, in many more, not only the *y* but also its vowel, and therefore the whole base, and the termination alone is left. For more convenient comparison we insert here, over against one another, the indefinite and definite declension : *svyat* (theme *svyato*), "holy," may serve for example :

	SINGULAR.			
	MASCULINE.		FEMININE.	
	<i>Indef.</i>	<i>Def.</i>	<i>Indef.</i>	<i>Def.</i>
Nominative,	<i>svyat,</i>	<i>svyaty-î,<sup>1</sup></i>	<i>svyata,</i>	<i>svyata-ya,</i>
Accusative,	<i>svyat,</i>	<i>svyaty-î,<sup>1</sup></i>	<i>svyatû,</i>	<i>svyatû-yû,<sup>3</sup></i>
Instrumental,	<i>svyatom,</i>	<i>svyaty-m,<sup>1</sup></i>	<i>svyatoyû,</i>	<i>svyato-yû,<sup>3</sup></i>
Dative,	<i>svyatû,</i>	<i>svyato-mû,</i>	<i>svyatye,</i>	<i>svyato-i,<sup>4</sup></i>
Genitive,	<i>svyata,</i>	<i>svyata-go,</i>	<i>svaty,</i>	<i>svaty-ya,</i>
Locative,	<i>svyatye,</i>	<i>svyato-m,<sup>2</sup></i>	<i>svyatye,</i>	<i>svyato-i,<sup>4</sup></i>

\* See Note † on preceding page.

<sup>1</sup> See §. 255. *d.*      <sup>2</sup> Or *svaty-m*, in which, as in the Lithuanian, the adjective is inflected at the same time.

<sup>3</sup> The indefinite and definite forms are here the same, for this reason, that *svato-yeyû*, as the latter must originally have been written, has dropped the syllable *ye*. The adjective base *svyata* has weakened its *o* to *a* before the pronominal addition (§. 255. *a.*), just as in the dative locative *svyato-i*, where an external identity with the indefinite form is not perceptible.

<sup>4</sup> Or *svyatye-i*. Comp. Rem. 2.

PLURAL.				
	MASCULINE.		FEMININE.	
	<i>Indef.</i>	<i>Def.</i>	<i>Indef.</i>	<i>Def.</i>
Nominative,	<i>svyati,</i>	<i>svyati-i,</i>	<i>svyaty,</i>	<i>svyaty-ya,</i>
Accusative,	<i>svyaty,</i>	<i>svyaty-ya,</i>	<i>svyaty,</i>	<i>svyaty-ya,</i>
Instrumental,	<i>svyaty,</i>	<i>svyaty-imi,</i> <sup>5</sup>	<i>svyata-mi,</i>	<i>svyaty-imi,</i> <sup>7</sup>
Dative,	<i>svyatom,</i>	<i>svyaty-imi,</i> <sup>5</sup>	<i>svyata-m,</i>	<i>svyaty-im.</i> <sup>7</sup>
Genitive,	<i>svyat,</i>	<i>svyaty-ikh,</i>	<i>svyat,</i>	<i>svyaty-ikh.</i>
Locative,	<i>svyatyekkh,</i>	<i>svyaty-ikh,</i> <sup>5</sup>	<i>svyata-kh,</i>	<i>svyaty-ikh.</i> <sup>7</sup>

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	<i>Indef.</i>	<i>Def.</i>	<i>Indef.</i>	<i>Def.</i>
Nom. Accus.	<i>svyato,</i>	<i>svyato-e,</i>	<i>svyata,</i>	<i>svyata-ya.</i>

The rest like the masculine.

<sup>5</sup> I give those forms which, according to Dobrowsky (p. 302.), occur in the oldest MSS., in place of the more ordinary forms, which have lost the *i* of the pronominal base: *svyaty-mi*, *svyaty-m*, *svyaty-kh*.

<sup>6</sup> Although in the pronominal declension the genitive plural is externally identical with the locative, we must nevertheless, in my opinion, separate the two cases, in respect to their origin. I find, however, the reason of their agreement in this, that the Sanscrit, which in this case is most exactly followed by the German and Slavonic, in pronouns of the third person begins the plural genitive termination with *s*, Sanscrit *sām*, Gothic *se* (for *se*, §. 248.). This *s*, then, has, in Old Slavonic, become *kh*, just like that of the locative characteristic *су* (§. 279.). The nasal of *साम्* *sām* must, according to rule, be lost (§. 255. l.): the vowel, however, has, contrary to rule, followed it, as also in the ordinary declension the termination *ām* has entirely disappeared (§. 278.); and the same relation which *imen*, “*nominum*,” has to the Gothic *naman-ē*, *tye-kh*, “*horum*,” has to *thi-se*. This *tye-kh*, however, answers as genitive to the Sanscrit *तेषाम्* *tē-shām*, and as locative to *तेषु* *tē-shu*; *ye* being used in both for *ē*, according to §. 255. (e.)

<sup>7</sup> See Rem. 5 and 6. The identity with the masculine neuter forms arises from this, that the grave *a* of the feminine adjective base is changed into the lighter *o*; and this again, as in the masculine and neuter, is converted, according to §. 255. (d.), into *y*.

285. As in the Sanscrit the preponderating majority of adjective bases end in the masculine and neuter in *a*, and in the feminine in *ā*; and as this class is, in the Old Slavonic, only represented by bases in *o*, *yo* in the masculine and neuter (see §. 257.), and *a*, *ya* in the feminine; it is not surprising that in German also, with the exception of a few in *u* (of the comparative and participle present), all other adjective bases, in their original condition, end in *a*, feminine *o* for *ā* (§. 69.). It is, however, remarkable, and peculiar to the German, that its adjectives, in their indefinite condition, have all lengthened their theme by an unorganic *n*, and that in substantives the class of words in *n* appears to be the most generally made use of, inasmuch as a large number of words, whose bases in Gothic terminate in a vowel, have, in the more modern dialects, permitted this to be increased by *n*. The reason, however, why the indefinite adjectives—not simply in part, and for the first time in the more modern dialects, but universally, and so early as in Gothic—have passed into the *n* declension, is to be sought for in the obtuseness of the inflection of this class of words, which, according to §§. 139. 140., in common with the Sanscrit, Latin, and Greek, omits the nominative sign, and then, in variance from the older languages, dispenses also with the dative character, upon the loss of which, in Old High German, has followed, also, that of the dative character. This absence of the animating and personifying mark of case might belong to the indefinite adjective, because it feels itself more exactly defined through the article which precedes it, or through another pronoun, than to the definite adjective, the pronoun of which, incorporated with it, has for the most part left behind only its case terminations. In the Lithuanian and Slavonic, in which the article is wanting, and thereby an inducement further to weaken the declension of the indefinite adjectives, the latter stand on an



equal footing with Grimm's strong declension of substantives, *i.e.* they maintain themselves, without an unorganic consonant augment, in the genuine, original limits of their base.

286. As the feminine, where it is not identical, as in adjective bases in *i* in the Sanscrit, Greek, and Latin, with the theme of the masculine and neuter, is always, in the Indo-European family of languages, made to diverge through an extension or an addition to the end, it is important for German Grammar to remark—and I have already called attention to this point in another place—that the feminine of the German indefinite adjective, in variance from the principle which has been just given, has not arisen from its masculine, but from an older form of the feminine; *e.g.* the primitive *BLINDA* m. n., “blind,” has extended itself in the indefinite to *BLINDAN*, and the primitive feminine *BLINDŌ* to *BLINDŌN*: one must not, therefore, derive the latter, although it is the feminine of *BLINDAN* m., from this, as it is entirely foreign to the Indo-European family of languages to derive a feminine base through the lengthening of the last letter but one of the masculine neuter. As far as regards the declension of *BLINDAN* m., it follows precisely that of *AHMAN* (p. 322.), and *BLINDAN* n., that of *NAMAN* (p. 176. &c.): the fem. *BLINDŌN* differs from the masculine only by a more regular inflection, since its *ō* remains everywhere unchanged, while *a*, in the genitive and dative singular, is, according to §. 132., weakened to *i*; therefore—

MASCULINE.		NEUTER.		FEMININE.	
Theme, <i>BLINDAN</i> .		<i>BLINDAN</i> .		<i>BLINDŌN</i> .	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. V. <i>blinda'</i> , <sup>1</sup>	<i>blindan-s</i> ,	<i>blindō'</i> , <sup>2</sup>	<i>blindôn-a</i> , <sup>2</sup>	<i>blindō'</i> ,	<i>blindôn-s</i> .
Acc. <i>blindan</i> ,	<i>blindan-s</i> ,	<i>blindō'</i> , <sup>2</sup>	<i>blindôn-a</i> , <sup>2</sup>	<i>blindôn</i> ,	<i>blindôn-s</i> .
Dat. <i>blindin</i> , <sup>1</sup>	<i>blinda'-m</i> .	<i>blindin</i> , <sup>1</sup>	<i>blinda'-m</i> ,	<i>blindôn</i> ,	<i>blindō'-m</i> .
Gen. <i>blindin-s</i> , <sup>1</sup>	<i>blindan-ê</i> ,	<i>blindin-s</i> , <sup>1</sup>	<i>blindôn-ê</i> , <sup>2</sup>	<i>blindôn-s</i> ,	<i>blindôn-ô</i> . <sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> See §. 140.

<sup>2</sup> See §. 141.

<sup>3</sup> See §. 245.

287. In order, then, to examine the definite declension of adjectives in Gothic, we will, in the first place, for the purpose of bringing into view their agreement and discrepancy with substantives and simple pronouns, place by the side of each other the declension of the definite *BLINDA* m. n. and *BLINDŌ* f., and that of *VULFA* m., "wolf," *DAURA* n., "a gate," *GIBŌ* f., "a gift," and the interrogative *HVA* m. n., "who?" "what?" *HVŌ* f.; further, that of *MIDYA* m. n. (*medius*), *MIDYŌ* f., by that of *HARYA* m., "an army," *BADYA* n., "a bed," *KUNTHYŌ* f., "news," and *HVARYA* m. n., "who?" "what?" *HVARYŌ* f.

MASCULINE.					
SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
N. <i>vulf's</i> ,	<i>blind's</i> ,	<i>hva-s</i> , <sup>1</sup>	<i>vulfōs</i> , <sup>2</sup>	<i>blindai</i> ,	<i>hvai</i> , <sup>3</sup>
A. <i>vulf'</i> ,	<i>blindana</i> ,	<i>hva-na</i> ,	<i>vulfa-ns</i> ,	<i>blindans</i> ,	<i>hva-ns</i> .
D. <i>vulfa</i> , <sup>4</sup>	<i>blindamma</i> ,	<i>hva-mma</i> , <sup>5</sup>	<i>vulfa-m</i> ,	<i>blindaim</i> ,	<i>hvai-m</i> .
G. <i>vulfi-s</i> ,	<i>blindis</i> ,	<i>hvi-s</i> ,	<i>vulf'-ē</i> ,	<i>blindaizē</i> ,	<i>hvi-zē</i> .
V. <i>vulf'</i> ,	<i>blind's</i> ,	. . . .	<i>vulfōs</i> ,	<i>blindai</i> ,	. . . .
N. <i>haryi-s</i> , <sup>6</sup>	<i>midyis</i> , <sup>7</sup>	<i>hvaryi-s</i> ,	<i>haryōs</i> , <sup>2</sup>	<i>midyai</i> ,	<i>hvaryai</i> . <sup>3</sup>
A. <i>hari</i> , <sup>8</sup>	<i>midyana</i> ,	<i>hvarya-na</i> ,	<i>harya-ns</i> ,	<i>midyans</i> ,	<i>hvarya-ns</i> .
D. <i>harya</i> ,	<i>midyamma</i> ,	<i>hvarya-mma</i> ,	<i>harya-m</i> ,	<i>midyaim</i> ,	<i>hvaryai-m</i> .
G. <i>haryi-s</i> ,	<i>midyis</i> ,	<i>hvary-is</i> ,	<i>hary-ē</i> ,	<i>midyaizē</i> ,	<i>hvaryaizē</i> .
V. <i>hari</i> ,	<i>midyis</i> ,	. . . .	<i>haryōs</i> ,	<i>midyai</i> ,	. . . .

<sup>1</sup> See §. 135.<sup>4</sup> See §. 160.<sup>5</sup> See §. 171.<sup>2</sup> See §. 227.<sup>3</sup> See §. 228.<sup>6</sup> From *harya-s*, see §. 135.

<sup>7</sup> The nominative in adjective bases in *ya* does not occur, unless perhaps in the fragments which have last appeared; and I have here formed it by analogy with *haryis* and *hvaryis*. Grimm gives *midis* (I. 720.). If, l. o., the form *ysis* is considered as unorganic, and, in regard to *midis*, if its analogy with *hardus* is remembered, then Grimm is wrong in taking *midi* for the theme, as in reality *hardu* is the theme of *hardus*. The true theme *MIDYA* occurs, however, in the comp. *midya-sveipains*, "deluge," and answers

## NEUTER.

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
N. A. V. <i>daur'</i> ,	<i>blindata</i> , <sup>9</sup>	<i>hva</i> . <sup>9</sup>	<i>daura</i> , <i>llinda</i> , <i>hvó</i> . <sup>10</sup>

The rest like the masculine.

N. A. V. <i>badi</i> ,	<i>midyata</i> , <sup>9</sup>	<i>hvarya-ta</i> .	<i>dadya</i> , <i>midya</i> , <i>hvarya</i> .
------------------------	-------------------------------	--------------------	---

The rest like the masculine.

## FEMININE.

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
N. <i>giba</i> ,	<i>blinda</i> ,	<i>hvó</i> .	<i>gibós</i> , <sup>2</sup> <i>blindós</i> , <sup>2</sup> <i>hvós</i> . <sup>2</sup>
A. <i>giba</i> ,	<i>blinda</i> ,	<i>hvó</i> . <sup>11</sup>	<i>gibó-s</i> , <i>blindós</i> , <i>hvó-s</i> .
D. <i>gibai</i> , <sup>12</sup>	<i>blindai</i> , <sup>12</sup>	<i>hvizai</i> . <sup>13</sup>	<i>gibó-m</i> , <i>blindaim</i> , <i>hvai-m</i> .
G. <i>gibó-s</i> ,	<i>blindaizós</i> , <sup>13</sup>	<i>hvizó-s</i> . <sup>13</sup>	<i>gib'-ó</i> , <i>blindaizó</i> , <i>hvi-zó</i> .
V. <i>giba</i> ,	<i>blinda?</i>	. . . .	<i>gibós</i> , <i>blindós</i> , . . . .
N. <i>kunthi</i> , <sup>14</sup>	<i>midya</i> ,	<i>hvarya</i> .	<i>kunthyós</i> , <sup>2</sup> <i>midyós</i> , <sup>2</sup> <i>hvaryós</i> . <sup>2</sup>
A. <i>kunthya</i> ,	<i>midya</i> ,	<i>hvarya</i> .	<i>kunthyó-s</i> , <i>midyós</i> , <i>hvaryó-s</i> .
D. <i>kunthyai</i> , <sup>12</sup>	<i>midyai</i> , <sup>12</sup>	<i>hvaryai</i> . <sup>12</sup>	<i>kunthyó-m</i> , <i>midyóm</i> , <i>hvaryó-m</i> .
G. <i>kunthyó-s</i> ,	<i>midyaizós</i> ,	<i>hvaryaizós</i> , <sup>13</sup>	<i>kunthy'-ó</i> , <i>midy'ó</i> , <i>hvary'ó</i> .
V. <i>kunthi</i> ,	<i>midya</i> ,	. . . .	<i>kunthyós</i> , <i>midyós</i> , <i>hvaryós</i> .

answers to the Sanscrit मध्य *madhya*. Formed from *midya* as theme, *midyis* would be clearly more organic than *midis*. Adjective *i* bases, which could be referred to *hardu-s* as *u* base, do not exist, but only substantive, as *GASTI*, nom. *gasts*.

<sup>9</sup> Compare Zend forms like 𐬔𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬎𐬭𐬀 *tûirim*, "quantum," from 𐬔𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬎𐬭𐬀𐬀𐬎𐬭𐬀 *tûirya* (§. 42.).

<sup>9</sup> *Hva*, with suppressed termination, for *hvata*, Old High German *huaz*, see §§. 155. 156. ; for *blindata* also *blind* ; and so for *midyata* also *mid*.

<sup>10</sup> The form *hvó*, which, like some others of this pronoun, cannot be shewn to occur, is, by Grimm, rightly formed by analogy from *thó*, "hæc." Grimm here finds, as also in the accusative singular, the *ó* in opposition to the *a* of *blinda* surprising: the reason of the deviation, however, is fixed by §§. 69. 137. 231.

<sup>11</sup> See p. 173. Rem. †.

<sup>12</sup> See §. 161.

<sup>13</sup> §. 172.

<sup>14</sup> For *kunthya*, from *kunthyó*, by suppression of the final vowel of the base, which again appears in the accusative, but shortened to *a* (see §. 69.); but here, also, the final vowel can be dropped; hence *kunthi* as accusative. Luc. 1. 77.

If, then, it is asked which pronoun is contained in the German definite adjective, I answer, the same which, in Slavonic and Lithuanian, renders the adjective definite, namely, the Indian relative *ya* (य *ya*). This pronoun in German, indeed, in disadvantageous comparison with the Lithuanian and Slavonic, does not occur isolated in its inflected state; but it is not uncommon in the history of languages, that a word has been lost in regard to its isolated use, and has been preserved only in composition with other words. It should be observed, too, that a demonstrative *i* base must be acknowledged to belong to the Sanscrit, which, in Latin, is completely declined; in Gothic almost completely; but in Sanscrit, except the neuter nominative accusative *idam*, "this," has maintained itself only in derivative forms, as इति *i-ti*, इत्थम् *it-tham*, "so," इयम् *iy-at*, "so much," ईदृश *ī-drīśa*, "such." The case is the same in Gothic, with the pronominal base *ya*: from this comes, in my opinion, the affirmative particle *ya*, as in other languages, also, affirmation is expressed by pronominal forms (*i-ta*, तथा *ta-thā*, "so," οὕτως), and further *yabai*, "if," analogous with *ibai*, "whether," *ibaini*, "not with that"; as also, in Sanscrit, यदि *yadi*, "if," comes from the same base, to which, as I now believe, the Greek *ei*—the semi-vowel being laid aside—has the same relation as in Prakrit, in the 3d person singular present, *ai*, भमइ *bhamai*, "he wanders" (Urvasi by Lenz, p. 63.), has to the more usual अदि *adi*, Sanscrit अति *ati*. In Prakrit, too, जइ *jai* (l. c. p. 63. on *j* for *y*, see §. 19.), really occurs for *yadi*; so that in this conjunction, as in the 3d person of the present (λέγει from λέγεται), the Greek runs parallel to the corruption of the Prakrit. If, however, in *ei* the Sanscrit य *y* has disappeared, as in the Æolic ὅμμες = Sanscrit *yushmē*, it appears as *h* in ὅς, which has nothing to do with the article ὁ, ἡ, where *h* falls only to the nominative masculine and feminine, while in ὅς it runs through all the cases, as

in Sanscrit the य *y* of यस् *ya-s*. To this यस् *yas*, ὅς, in regard to the rough breathing, bears the same relation as ὑμεῖς to युष्मे *yushmê*, ἄζω, ἄγιος to यज् *yaj*, "to adore," "to sacrifice," यज्या *yajya*, "to be adored;" ὑσμίν to युष् *yudh*, "to strive," युष्म *yudhma*, "strife" (comp. Pott, pp. 236. 252.). But to return to the Gothic *YA*, let us further observe *yah*;<sup>\*</sup> and also, with *h* enclitic, whence later *yu*, "now," i.e. "at this time," "already" (comp. Latin *jam*). It also clearly forms the last portion of *hvar-yis* (for *yas*), as, in the Slavonic, this pronoun often unites itself with almost all others, and, for example, is contained in *ky-i*, "who?" although the interrogative base also occurs without this conjunction.

288. In Gothic definite adjectives the pronominal base *YA* shews itself most plainly in bases in *u*. Of these, indeed, there are but a few, which we annex below,<sup>†</sup> but a *ya* shews itself in all the cases, and these in *blinds* differ from the substantive declension, to such an extent that before the *y* the *u* of the adjective is suppressed, as in Sanscrit before the comparative and superlative suffixes *īyas*, *ishtha*; e.g. *laghīyas*, "more light," *laghishtha*, "most light," for *laghv-īyas*, *laghv-ishtha* from *laghu*; and as, even in Gothic, *hard'-izô*, "more hard" (according to

---

\* The *h* may assimilate itself to the initial consonant of the following word, and thus may arise *yag*, *yan*, and *yas*, and in conjunction with *thê*: *yatthê*, "or" (see Massman's Gloss.).

† *Aggvus*, "narrow," *aglus*, "heavy," *glaggvus*, "industrious," *hardus*, "hard," *manvus*, "ready," *thaurusus*, "dry," *thlaqvus*, "tender," *seithus*, "late," *fihus*, "much," and, probably, *hnasqvus*, "tender." Some occur only as adverbs, as *glaggvu-ba*, "industriously." In addition to the adverb *filu*, "much," since Grimm treated this subject the genitive *filaus* has been found (*filaus mais*, "for much more," see Massmann's Gloss.), which is the more gratifying, as the adjective *u* bases had not yet been adduced in this case.

Massmann, p. 48.), for *hardv-izô* from *HARDU*. Hitherto, however, only the accusative singular masculine *thaurô-yana*, “*siccum*,” *manv'-yana*, “*paratum*”; the accusative singular neuter *manv'-yata*; the dative plural *hnasqv'-yaim*; are adduceable, if Grimm, as I doubt not, is right in ascribing to this word, which is not to be met with in any other case, a nominative *hnasqvus*.\* Finally, also, the accusative plural masculine *unmanv'-yans*, ἀπασκευάστους (2 C. 9. 4.), although, in this case, *blindans* is not different from *vulfans*. These examples, then, although few, furnish powerful proof; because, in the cases to be met with, they represent an entire class of words—viz. the definite adjective in *u*—in such a manner, that not a single variety of form occurs. It may be proper to annex here the complete definite declension of *MANVU*, as it is either to be met with, or, according to the difference of cases, is, with more or less confidence, to be expected:—

MASCULINE.		FEMININE.	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. <i>manvu-s</i> ,	<i>manv'-yai</i> ),	<i>manvu-s</i> ,	( <i>manv'-yô</i> s).
Ac. <i>manv'-ya-na</i> ,	<i>manv'-ya-ne</i> ,	( <i>manv'-ya</i> ),	( <i>manv'-yô</i> s).
D. ( <i>manv'-ya-mma</i> ),	<i>manv'-yai-m</i> ,	( <i>manv'-yai</i> ),	( <i>manv'-yaim</i> ).
G. <i>manvau-s</i> ,	( <i>manv'-yaizê</i> ),	( <i>manv'-yaizô</i> s),	( <i>manv'-yaizô</i> s).
NEUTER,			
SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
Nom. Accus. <i>manv'-ya-ta</i> ,*		( <i>manv'-ya</i> ).	

\* I am the more inclined to agree with him, as a few other adjective bases in *vu* occur. Perhaps a euphonic influence of the *v* on the vowel which follows it is also at work; as at times one finds in the Prakrit a final *a* changed through the influence of a preceding ण *n*, र् *r*, or ल *l* to उ *u*. So *Urvasi*, p. 72, *âlu*, *tâlu*, *âvaranvu*, for *kâla*, *tâla*, *âvarana*; p. 71, *manô-paru* for *manôpara*.

\* Without inflection and pronom. *manvu*, as स्वादु *svâdu*, ण्डु, Lithuanian *darkù*.

“ Remark 1.—Grimm finds (I. 721.) the identity of the feminine with the masculine remarkable, since he, as it appears, looks upon *s* for an originally mere masculine termination (comp. l. c. 824, 825. <sup>2.</sup> <sup>3.</sup>). That, however, the feminine has equal claim to *s* as the nominative character, and that it is entirely without inflection where this is wanting, I think I have shewn in §§. 134. 137. Adjective bases in *i*, which in the Gothic, as in the Lithuanian and Slavonic, are wanting, end, in the Sanscrit, Greek, and Latin, in the nominative of both genders, in *is*; and only the neuter is devoid of inflection: compare शुचिस् *śuchi-s* m. f., “clean,” *śuchi* n., with ἰδρις, ἰδρι, *facili-s*, *facile*. Adjectives in *u*, in Sanscrit, frequently leave, in like manner, the feminine base undistinguished from the masculine neuter, and then end, according to §. 234., in the nominative in *u-s*; so पण्डु-*s* m. f., agrees with *manvu-s* above, and the neuter पण्डु with *manvu*. If two consonants do not precede the final उ *u*, as in पण्डु, the feminine base may, except in compound words, be lengthened by an *ī*, which is particularly characteristic of this gender; and thus स्वाद्वी *svādvī*, “the sweet” (theme and nominative), answers to the Greek word ἡδεῖα, which is lengthened by an unorganic *a* (§. 119.), for ἡδῖα; and *svādu-s* answers both as feminine and masculine nominative to the Gothic *manvus*. In the Sanscrit, also, a short *u* in the feminine base may be lengthened, and thus the feminine of तनु *tanu*, “thin,” is either like *tanu* or *tanū*, whence the nominative *tanū-s*; and *tanvī*, as substantive, means the “slender woman.” The Lithuanian has adjective bases in *u*, as *szwiesu-s*, m. “light,” “clear,” (compare चेत *śvêta*, “white,”) which nevertheless, in several cases, replace the *u* by *a*; as, *szwiesám dangui*, “to the bright heaven”: in some, too, they prefix an *i* to the *a*, the assimilating power of which changes the *a* into *e* (comp. p. 169. Rem.); as, *szwiesiems dangums*, “to the bright heavens.” The feminine is, in the nominative, *szwiesi*, the

final *i* of which is evidently identical with the Sanscrit  $\text{इ}$  *i* in *svādvi*. In the oblique cases, however, an unorganic *a* also is added to the Lithuanian *i*, as it has been in  $\eta\delta\epsilon\acute{\iota}\alpha$ : this *ia*, however, becomes either, by euphony, *e* (comp. p. 174. Rem. \*), e. g. accus. *szwiesėi*, accus. plural *szwiesės*; or it happens in the majority of cases that the *i* is entirely suppressed, so that *SZWIESA* passes as the theme; as *szwiesės rankės*, "of the bright hand" (gen.), *szwiesai rankai* (dat.). The *i* of *ia*, however, appears, as with the participles, to have communicated itself from the feminine to the masculine.

"Remark 2.—With the accusative *manvyana* which has been cited, the conjectured dative *manvyamma* is least doubtful. That Grimm should suggest forms like *hardv-amma*, *hardv-ana*, arises from his regarding *amma*, *ana*, as the dative and accusative terminations of the pronoun and adjective; while, in fact, the terminations are simply *mma* and *na*. When, therefore, *HARDU*, in the dative and accusative, without annexing a pronoun, follows nevertheless the pronominal declension, the cases mentioned must be written *hardu-mma*, *hardu-na*, analogous with *tha-mma*, *tha-na*, *i-mma*, *i-na*. If, however, contrary to all expectation, forms like *hardvamma*, *hardvana*, shew themselves, they must be deduced from *hardu-ya-mma*, *hardu-ya-na*; so that after suppressing the *y*, the preceding *u*, in the place in which it would be left, has passed into *v*. With regard to *blindamma*, *blindana*, *blindata*, it is doubtful whether they ought to be divided *blind'-(y)amma*, *blind'-(y)ana*, *blind'-(y)ata*, as analogous with *manv(u)-yamma*, *manv(u)-yana*, *manv(u)-yata*, or *blinda-(ya)mma*, &c.: I have therefore left them, as also the corresponding forms from *MIDYA*, undivided. If the division *blinda-mma*, &c. is made, nothing is left of the pronoun, as in the Old Slavonic dative *svyato-mu*, and as in our expressions like *beim*, *am*, *im*, except the case-termination, and the adjective base



has preserved its *a*. If, however, the division *blind'-amma*, &c. is made, to which I now give the preference, and which is also adopted by Grimm, though from a different point of view, then the pronoun has only lost its *y*, as in some cases of the Lithuanian definite, *e.g.* in *gerūs-us* for *gerūs-yus* (see p. 353); and with respect to the *y* which has been dropped and the vowel which is left, *blind'-amma* would have the same relation to *blind'-yamma* as *midums*, "the middle man" (theme *MIDUMA*), to its Sanscrit kindred form of the same import, मध्यम *madhyama*, whose relation to *MIDUMA* I thus trace—the latter has softened the first *a* to *i*, and has changed the middle *a*, through the influence of the liquid, into *u*; and both, however, have, according to §. 66., suppressed the semi-vowel.

"Remark 3.—Although, in the accusative plural masculine, *blindans* is not different from *vulfans*, and the simple word *BLINDA* could not form aught but *blinda-ns*; nevertheless the word *manv'-yans*, mentioned above, which is of the highest importance for the Grammar, as well as the circumstance that where any inflections peculiar to the pronoun admonish us of the existence of an inherent pronoun in the definite adjective, this inherence really exists;—these two reasons, I say, speak in favour of dividing thus, *blind'-an*, and of deducing it from *blind-yans*. Just in the same manner the dative *blindaim*, both through the *aim*, which occurs elsewhere only in pronouns, as through the word *hnasqv'-yaim*, mentioned above, declares itself to be an abbreviation of *blind'-yaim*; but *blindai* proves itself only by its pronominal inflection (compare *thai*, *hvai*, Sanscrit ते *té*, के *ké*) to be an abbreviation of *blind'-ya*.

"Remark 4.—In the Sanscrit, in some cases an *i* blends itself with the final *a*, which, with the *a* of the base, becomes *é*: hence the instrumental plural of the Vêda dialect and of the Prakrit, अश्वेभिस *asvé-bhis* from *asva*, कुसुमेहि *kusumé-hi* from *kusuma*. To this *é* answers the *ai* in

Gothic pronominal datives like *hvai-m*, “*quibus*,” *thai-m*, “*his*”; as the German dative, in accordance with its origin, is identical with the old instrumental. We were, however, compelled, before we had a reason for seeking the pronoun *YA* in the Gothic definite adjective, to give to the extension of the base a wider expansion in German by an *i* which means nothing, than it has in the Sanscrit; while we have now every reason, where, in Gothic definites, an *i* unsubstantiated by the oldest grammar shews itself, to recognise in the *i* a remnant of the pronominal base *YA*, either as a vocalization of the *y*, which so often occurs in the Slavonic (see p. 354.), or the *i* may be considered as an alteration of the *a* of *YA*, as in the Lithuanian *geras-is* for *geras-yis* (p. 353.) The latter view pleases me the better because it accords more closely with *blind'-amma*, *blind'-ana*, &c., from *blind'-yamma*, *blind'-yana*. The vowel, then, which in *blind'-amma*, &c., maintains itself in its original form, appears, in this view, as *i* in the feminine singular genitive *blindaizōs*—which is to be divided *blinda-izōs*—from *blinda-yizōs*; and this *yizōs* is analogous with *hvizōs*, *thizōs*, from *hvazōs*, *thazōs*, = Sanscrit *kasyās*, *tasyās* (§. 172.). We must not require *blindō-izōs*—because *BLINDŌ* is the feminine adjective base—for there is a reason for the thinning of the *ō*, in the difficulty of placing the syllables together, and *a* is the short of *ō* (§. 69.). For the rest, let it be considered, that in the Slavonic the graver feminine *a* before its union with the pronoun is weakened to the lighter masculine *o* (p. 354. Rem. 3.); and that a diphthong *oi* in the Gothic is never admissible; on which account *salbō*, “I anoint,” in the conjunctive suppresses the *i*, which belongs to this mood (*salbōs*, *salbō*, for *salbōis*, *salbōi*). In the feminine dative one should expect *blindaizai* for *blindai*, which is simple, and answers to *gibai*, while the remaining German dialects are, in this case, compounded in the very

same manner : in Old High German the genitive is *plintera*, and the dative *plinteru*.\* In the genitive plural masculine and neuter the *ai* in *blindaize* might be substantiated through the Sanscrit *इ* *é* of the pronominal genitive, as *तेषाम् tēshām*, “*horum*”; and therefore the division *blindai-ze* or *blind’-(y)aizé* should be made : as, however, the monosyllabic pronominal bases, in which one would rather expect a firm adherence to the old diphthong (comp. § 137.), do not retain it, and *thi-zé*, “*horum*,” *hvi-zé*, “*quorum*,” as weakened forms of *tha-zé*, *hva-zé*, are used ; and in the feminine *thi-zô*, *hvi-zô*, for *thô-zô*, *hvô-zô*, = Sanscrit *tâ-sâm*, *kâ-sâm* ; I therefore prefer to substantiate in a different way the *ai* in *blindaizé* m. n., and *blindaizô* f., than by the Sanscrit *é* of *tē-shām* m. n. (f. *tâ-shām*), which, moreover, would not be applicable to the feminine form *blindaizô* ; and I do it, in fact, by the pronominal base *YA*, so that *blinda-izé* *blinda-izô*, is the division to be made according to the analogy of *blinda-izôs*.

“ Remark 5.—The nominative masculine and feminine has kept itself free, in Gothic, from union with the old relative base, and has remained resting upon the original, as received from the Sanscrit, Greek, and Latin. The masculine *blinds*, also, through the very characteristic and animated *s* (see §. 134.), has cause to feel itself personified and defined determinately enough. Even if *blinds* could be looked upon as an abbreviation of *blindeis* (comp. *altheis*, “old,” from the base *ALTHYA*, according to Massmann), or of *blindais*, to which the Old High German *plinter* would give authority, I should still believe that neither the one nor the other has existed in Gothic, as the *u* bases, even,

---

\* The Gothic *ai* would lead us to expect *é*, and this, too, is given by Grimm. As, however, with Kero, the doubling of the vowel, and, with Notker, the circumflex is wanting, I adopt in preference a shortening of the *e*, or leave the quantity undecided.

like *manu-s* above, which, in the oblique cases, shew so clearly the pronominal base *YA*, have not received it in the nominative singular of the personal genders. In Old High German, however, the pronoun spoken of has had time, in the space of almost four centuries which intervene between its oldest memorials and Ulfilas, to raise itself up from the oblique cases to the nominative; which was the more desirable, as the Old High German substantive declension in the nominative masculine, in disadvantageous comparison with the Gothic, omits the mark of case. *Plintêr* (the length of the *ê* is here rendered certain) is contracted from *plinta-ir* (for *plinta-yir*); for the Old High German *ê* corresponds, according to §. 78., to the Gothic *ai*. In the feminine, therefore, the form *plintyu*, which occurs in the chief number of strict Old High German authorities, and those which, as Grimm remarks, are the oldest of all, has good substantiation, and corresponds very fitly to the masculine *plintêr*; and in the nominative accusative plural and neuter the form *plint-yu*, with regard to the retaining the *y* of the pronoun, is more genuine than the Gothic *blind-a* for *blind-ya*. The form *plintyu*, moreover, answers to feminine pronominal forms like *dys*, "the," *syu*, "they," *dësyu* (*dë-syu*), "these,"\* and to the instrumental masculine and neuter *dys* (in the interrogative *huu*), where all authorities concur in retaining the *i* or *y*; while in the adjective, Otfrid, and, as Grimm remarks, here and there Isidore and Tatian, have *u* for *yu*. For explanation,

---

\* As in the Old High German *i* and *j* (*y*) are not distinguished in writing, it remains uncertain in many, if not in all cases, in what places of the memorials which have come down to us the sound *j*, and in what that of *i* is intended; as even where the Gothic has a *j*, it may become *i* in the Old High German. If, however, in the analogous adjective forms like *plintju* one reads *j*, which is supported by the Gothic (p. 362.), we must, in my opinion, leave it in the above forms also. Grimm writes *diu*, *siu*, but *dëju*; and expresses, p. 701, his opinion regarding the *i*.

however, of the pronominal forms which have been mentioned, it is important to consider, that in the Sanscrit the pronominal base *ta*, or the *sa* which supplies its place in the nominative masculine and feminine, unites itself with the relative base य *ya*, by which the first pronoun loses its vowel. Compare, then—

SANSKRIT.	OLD HIGH GERM.	OLD SCLAVONIC.
स्या <i>syá</i> (= <i>syá</i> ), " <i>hæc</i> ,"	<i>syu</i> , <i>dyu</i> ,	<i>ta-ya</i> .
स्याम् <i>tyām</i> , " <i>hanc</i> ,"	<i>dya</i> ,	<i>tû-yû</i> .
स्ये <i>tyé</i> , " <i>hi</i> ,"	<i>dyé</i> ,	<i>ti-i</i> .
स्यास् <i>tyās</i> , " <i>hæ</i> ," " <i>has</i> ,"	<i>dyô</i> ,	<i>ty-ya</i> .
स्यानि <i>tyāni</i> , " <i>hæc</i> ,"	<i>dyu</i> ,	<i>ta-ya</i> .

Here, then, in a manner as remarkable as convincing, the relation is proved in which the Old High German forms mentioned stand to the Gothic *sô*, *thô*, *thai*, *thôs*, *thô*: one must first transpose these into *syô*, *thyô*, &c., before they can pass as original forms for the Old High German. Our mother tongue, however, in the case before us, obtains more explanation through the Sclavonic, where the demonstrative base *TO* may indeed be simply inflected through all the cases: in several, however, which we have partly given above, it occurs also in union with *YO*. It is most probable, that in the Old High German the conjunction of the base of the article with the old relative pronoun has extended itself over all the cases of the three genders; for that it does not belong to the feminine alone is seen from the masculine and neuter instrumental form *dyu* (*d'-yu*), and from the dative plural, where together with *dēm* occurs also *dyēm* (*diēm*), and, according to Notker, always *dien*. According to this, I deduce the forms *dër*, *dës*, *dëmu*, &c., from *dyer*, *dyes* (for *dyis*), *dyemu* (from *dyamu*); so that, after suppression of the vowel following the *y*, that letter has vocalized itself first to *i* and thence to *ë*. According to this, therefore, *dës*, and the Gothic genitive

*thi-s*, would be, in their origin, just as different as in the accusative feminine *dya* and *thô*. In the neuter, on the other hand, *dax*—for *dyaz*, as Gothic *blind'-ata* for *blind-yata*—the vowel of the base *DYA* is left, and the semi-vowel, which above had become *ë* (from *i*) has disappeared. Farther support of my views regarding the difference of bases in the Gothic *tha-na* and the Old High German *dë-n* (I give the accusative intentionally) is furnished by the demonstrative *dësér*, which I explain as compounded, and as, in fact, a combination of the Sanscrit ऋ *tya*, mentioned at p. 369., for *taya*, and स्य *sya* for *sa-ya*, the latter of which has a full declension in the Old Slavonic, also, as a simple word. *Dësér* stands, therefore, for *dya-säir* (*ë = ai*); and our Modern German *dieser* rests, in fact, upon a more perfect dialect form than that which is preserved to us in the above *dësér*, namely, upon *dya-sér* or *dia-sér*; referred to which the Isidorean *dhëa-sa*, mentioned by Grimm (I. 795.), at least in respect of the first syllable, no longer appears strange, for *dhëa* from *dhia* for *dhya*,\* answers admirably to the Sanscrit ऋ *tya*, and the final syllable *sa* answers to the Sanscrit-Gothic nominative form *sa* (Greek *ó*), which has not the sign of case.

“Remark 6.—The adjective bases which, according to Haus, end in *ya*, as *MIDYA* = Sanscrit *madhya*, are less favourable to the retention of the *y* of the definite pronoun; for to the feminine or plural neuter *plint'-yu* for *plinta-yu* a *midy'-yu* would be analogous, which, on account of the difficulty of pronouncing it, does not occur, but may have originally existed in the form *midya-yu*, or *midya-ya*; for the masculine nominative *midyér* is from *midya-ir* for *midya-yar*, as, in Gothic, the feminine genitive form *midyaizós* from *midya-yizós*. If, however, according to this, even *hvar-yaizós* (*hvar-yayizós*) be used, and analogous

---

\* *D*, *th*, and *dh* are interchanged according to different authorities.

forms in several other cases, so that the base *YA* is therein doubled, we must recollect, that in the Lithuanian also the base *JA*, besides its composition with adjectives, combines itself, also, with itself, for stronger personification; and, indeed, in such a manner, that it is then doubly declined, as *yis-sai* (for *yis-yai*\*), 'he'; *yo-yo*, 'of him,' &c."

289. The participle present has, in Gothic, preserved only the nominative singular masculine of the definite declension, e.g. *gibands*, "giving," which may be deduced, as well from a theme *GIBAND*, according to the analogy of *fiyand-s* (see p. 164.), as from *GIBANDA*, according to the analogy of *vulf-s* (§. 135.). The Pali (see p. 300.) and Old High German support the assumption of a theme *GIBANDA*, as an extension of the original *GIBAND*; whence, then, by a new addition, the indefinite theme *GIBANDAN* has arisen, as, above, *BLINDAN* from *BLINDA*; and it is very probable that all unorganic *n* bases have been preceded by an older with a vowel termination: for as all bases which terminate in a consonant (*nd*, *r*, and *n*, §. 125.) are in their declension, with the exception of the nominative *nd-s*, alike obtuse; so it would not be necessary for *GIBAND*, in order to belong, in the indefinite adjective, to a weak theme, or one with a blunted declension, to extend itself to *gibandan* (compare p. 302.), unless for the sake of the nominative *gibanda* (see §. 140.).

290. In the Pali, no feminine theme *charantī* has been formed from the unorganic theme *charanta*, for the mascu-

---

\* Ruhig (by Mielke, p. 68) wrongly gives *ai* as the emphatic adjunct, as the doubling of the *s* in *tassai*, *ssissai*, *yissai* is clearly to be explained through the assimilative power of the *y* (see p. 353. Rem. †). The termination *ai* answers to the neuter *tai*, mentioned at §. 157., for *tat*, which latter is contained in the compound *tat-tai* (comp. *kok-tai*, *tok-tai*). After two consonants, however, the *y* is entirely dropped; hence *kurs-ai*, not *kurs-sai*.

line and neuter form *charanta* has arisen from the necessity of passing from a class of declensions terminating in a consonant into one more convenient, terminating with a vowel in the theme. The Sanscrit, however, forms from bases terminating in a consonant the feminine theme by the addition of a vowel (*i*, see §. 119.); e.g. from *charant* m., comes *charanti*, and there was therefore no reason in the Pali to give also to the more recent form *charanta* a feminine theme *charantā*. Here, again, the Gothic stands in remarkable accordance with the Pali, for it has produced no feminine base *GIBANDŪ* from the presupposed *GIBANDA*; and therefore, also, the indefinite *GIBANDAN* has no feminine, *GIBANDŪN*, nom. *gibandō*, answering to it (as *BLINDŪN* to *BLINDAN*); but the feminine form *gibandei* (*ei* = *i*, §. 70.), which has arisen from the old theme *GIBAND*, in analogy with the Sanscrit *charanti*, has become *GIBANDEIN*, by the later addition of an *n*. Hence, according to §. 142., in the nominative *gibandei* must have arisen. It is not, however, right to regard this nominative as a production of the more recent theme, but as a transmission from the ancient period of the language, for it answers to the feminine Sanscrit nominative *charanti* (§. 137.), and to Lithuanian forms like *sukanti*, "the turning," for which a theme *sukantin* is nowise admissible. In Latin, bases in *i* or *i*, originally feminine, must have arisen from adjective bases terminating with a consonant; thus *FERENTI* from *FERENT* (compare §. 119. *genitri*-*c-s*): and this feminine *i*, as is the case in Lithuanian, as well with the participles (see p. 174. Rem.) as with the adjective bases in *u* (p. 363.), has in some cases no longer remembered its original destination, and been imparted to the other genders: hence the ablatives in *i* (for *i-a*), genitive plural in *i-um*, neuter plural in *ia* (*ferenti*(*d*), *ferenti-um*, *ferenti-a*); and hence is explained, what must otherwise appear very surprising, that the



participles, when standing as substantives, freely take this *i*, which is introduced into them from the feminine adjective (*infante, sapiente*).

“Remark.—In the *yu* of *këpantyu*, the Old High German feminine of *këpantër*, I recognise the regular defining element, as above in *plintyu*, answering to the masculine *plintër*. On account of the participial feminines in *yu*, therefore, no masculines in *yër* are required, according to the analogy of *midyër*, *midyu*, *midyaz*, partly as *këpentër* and *këpantaz*, incline, in none of their cases, to the declension of *midyër*; *midyaz*, and also as the derivative indefinite base in *an* has sprung from *KËPANTA*, and not from *KËPANTYA*: therefore m. *këpanto* (= Gothic *gibanda*), f. n. *këpanta* (= Gothic *gibandô*). This only is peculiar to the Old High German participle present, in relation to other adjectives, that in its uninflected adverbial state it retains the defining pronominal base *YA* in its contraction to *i*; therefore *këpanti*, “giving,” not *kepant*, like *plint*. It is, however, to be observed, that there is far more frequent occasion to use this form divested of case terminations in the participle present, than in all other adjectives, as the definite form in *nds* in Gothic, in the nominative singular masculine, corresponds to it; and as it may be assumed, that here the *i* supplies the place of the case termination, which has been laid aside; so that it is very often arbitrary whether the definite form of the participle, or the uninflected form in *i*, be given. So in Grimm’s hymns (II. 2.), *sustollens* is rendered by the uninflected *ufpurrenti*, and *baptizans* by *taufantër*, although the reverse might just as well occur, or both participles might stand in the same form, whether that of the nominative or adverbial. As regards the Old Saxon forms mentioned by Grimm, namely, *slâpandyes* or *slâpandear*, “*dormientis*,” *gnornondyê*, “*mœrentes*,” *buandyum*, “*habitantibus*,” they should, in my opinion, be rather adduced in

proof of the proposition, that the participle present has, in the dialect mentioned, preserved the defining element more truly than other adjectives; and that those forms have maintained themselves in the degree of the Gothic forms like *mauryana*, mentioned at p. 362., than that a theme in *ya* belonged to the Old High German participle present before its conjunction with the pronominal syllable."

#### DEGREES OF COMPARISON.

291. The comparative is expressed in Sanscrit by the suffix *tara*, feminine *tardā*, and the superlative by *tama*, feminine *tamdā*, which belong to the theme of the positive, which is common to the masculine and neuter; e.g. *punya-tara*, *punya-tama*, from *punya*, "clean"; *śuchi-tara*, *śuchi-tama*, from *śuchi*, "clean"; *balavat-tara*, *balavat-tama*, from *balavat*, "strong." In the Zend, through a perversion of the language, 𐬔𐬀𐬭𐬀 *tara* and 𐬔𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀 *tēma* unite themselves with (in place of the theme) the nominative singular masculine; e.g. 𐬕𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀 *huskôtara* (Vend. S. p. 383.) from *huska*, nominative masculine 𐬕𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀 *huskô*, "dry"; 𐬔𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀 *spēntōtēma* from *spēnta*, "holy"; 𐬔𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀 *vērēthrazanštēma* (Vend. S. p. 43.) from *vērēthrazant*, nom. *vērēthrazanš*, "victorious" (verbatim, "Vritra-slaying").\* According to my opinion 𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀 *tara* owes

---

\* The participle present *sant*, the nominative of which I recognise in 𐬔𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀 *vērēthra-sanš*, rests on the analogy of the frequently-occurring 𐬕𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀 *upa-zōit*, "he struck"; since, in fact, the base *san* (Sanskrit हन् *han*) suppresses its final vowel, and has treated the *a* which remains according to the analogy of the conjugation vowel of the first and sixth class (see p. 104). The Sanscrit base हन् *han*, "slaying," which appears in वृत्रहन् *Vritra-han*, "Vritra slaying," and similar compounds, has, in Zend, taken the form *jan*, the nominative of which is 𐬕𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀 *jáo* (Vend. S. p. 43)

its origin to the root  $\pi$   $t\bar{r}i$  (*tar*, §. 1.), "to step beyond," "to place beyond" (e.g. "over a river"); hence, also, the substantive *tara*, "a float." In the Latin, as Lisch has acutely remarked, with this base are connected the preposition *trans*, and also *terminus*, as that which is overstepped, and probably also *tra*, in *in-tra-re*, *penetra-re*. The superlative suffix I explain, with Grimm (III. 583.), from that of the comparative, although I assume no theoretic necessity that the superlative must have passed through the degree of the comparative. But *tama*, as a primitive, presents no satisfactory etymology. I formerly thought of the base  $\pi$   $tan$ , "to extend," whence, also,  $\tau\alpha\tau\omicron\varsigma$  could be explained; but then  $\pi$   $tama$  would be no regular formation, and I now prefer recognising in it an abbreviation of *tarama*, partly because the superlative suffix  $\pi$   $ish\bar{t}ha$  may be satisfactorily considered as a derivation from its comparative *iyas*, through the suffix *tha*, which, in the Greek, is contained in the form of  $\tau\theta$ , as well in  $\iota\sigma\text{-}\tau\omicron\varsigma$  as in  $\tau\alpha\tau\omicron\varsigma$ , for  $\tau\alpha\rho\tau\omicron\varsigma$  or  $\tau\alpha\rho\tau\omicron\varsigma$ . In this manner, therefore, is formed  $\tau\alpha\tau\omicron\text{-}\varsigma$  and  $\pi$   $tama\text{-}s$ : they both contain the same primitive, abbreviated in a similar manner, but have taken a different derivation suffix, as in  $\pi\acute{\epsilon}\mu\pi\text{-}\tau\omicron\varsigma$  contrasted with  $\pi$   $panchama$ , "the fifth": the vowel, however, is more truly retained in the derivative  $\tau\alpha\tau\omicron\varsigma$  than in its base  $\tau\epsilon\rho\omicron\varsigma$ . In Latin,  $\pi$   $tama\text{-}s$  has become *timu-s* (*optimus*, *intimus*, *extimus*, *ultimus*); and, by the exchange of the *t* with *s*, which is more usual in Greek than in Latin, *simus*; hence,

---

p. 43), and is analogous to the Sanscrit *panthās*, from *panthan*, mentioned at p. 308. More usually, however, *do* in Zend nominatives stands in the place of the Sanscrit *ān* of the suffix *vant* and *vāns*; so that, in Zend, the sign of the nominative has taken the place of the Indian *n*, the said sign being *o* for *s*, according to §. 56<sup>b</sup>. In  $\xi\omega\gg$  *vāo*, from  $\chi\acute{\alpha}\nu\varsigma$  *vāns*, the Zend *o* may also be looked upon as belonging to the base (comp. Burnouf's *Yaçna*, Notes, p. cxxviii. &c.).

*maximus* (*mac-simus*) for *mag-simus*. However, the *simus* is generally preceded by the syllable *is*, which we will hereafter explain.

292. As in comparatives a relation between two, and in superlatives a relation between many, lies at the bottom, it is natural that their suffixes should also be transferred to other words, whose chief notion is individualized through that of duality or plurality: thus they appear in pronouns, and कतारस् *katara-s* is "which of two persons?" and कतमस् *katama-s*, "which of more than two persons?" एकतारस् *ekataras* is "one of two persons," and *ekatama-s* "one of more than two." It is hardly necessary to call attention to similar forms in Greek, as πότερος (for κότερος), ἐκάτερος. In ἑκάστος the superlative suffix (στος for ιστος) presents a different modification from that in *ekatama-s*, and makes "the one person," "the former person," instead of making "the one of many persons." In Latin and German, indeed, the suffix *tara* is not in use in genuine comparatives, but has maintained itself in pronouns in Latin in the form of *TERU* (*ter*, *teru-m*), and in Gothic in that of *THARA*; hence *uter*, *neuter*, *alter*; Gothic, *hva-thar*,\* "which of two persons?" Old High German, *huëdar*, which has remained to us in the adverb *neder*, as an abbreviation of the Middle High Ger-

---

\* The Gothic resembles the Latin in withdrawing the sign of the nominative from its masculine bases in *ra*, as the latter does from its corresponding bases in *ru*. Hence, above, *hvathar* for *hvathar(a)s*, as *alter* for *alterus*; so also *vair*, "man," = Latin *vir* for *viru-s*. This suppression has, however, not extended itself universally in both languages. In the Gothic, as it appears, the *s* is protected by the two preceding consonants; hence *akrs*, "a field" (comp. Grimm, p. 599); still the adjective nominatives *giurs*, "mournful" (the *Gaura*, comp. Sanscrit घोर *ghôra*, "terrible"), and *svérs*, "honoured," occur, where this cause is wanting, where, however, the preceding long vowel and the diphthong *au* may have operated. In *vair*, indeed, a diphthong precedes; but the *a* is here first introduced through the euphonic law 82. If, in Latin, in adjective bases in *ri*, only the masculine has predominantly given up the *s*, with the preceding

man, combined with a particle of negation *nemëder*. *Anthar*, also, our *anderer*, belongs here, and answers to the Sanscrit *अन्तरस्* *antara-s*, whose initial syllable is the same which in *अन्य* *anya*, “*alius*,” has united itself with the relative base *य* *ya*. From this *अन्य* *anya* comes *anyatara*, “*alter*,” If, however, *अन्तर* *antara* means, in general, “the other,” the comparative suffix is here intended to denote the person following after, passing over this thing; so is, also, the Latin *ceterus* to be considered, from *ce* as demonstrative base (compare *ci-s*, *ci-tra*); and so, also, in Sanscrit, *itara*, “the other,” comes from the demonstrative base *i*, as, in Latin, the adverb *iterum* from the same base.\* In our German, also, *wieder* is the comparative suffix, and the whole rests, perhaps, on a pre-existing Old High German word *huia-dur* or *hnyadar*, with a change of the interrogative meaning into the demonstrative, as in *weder*, *ent-weder*. The *wie* in *wieder*, therefore, should be regarded as, p. 370, *die* in *dieser*; and herein we may refer to the Isidoric *dhëa-sa*.

293. In prepositions, also, it cannot be surprising if one finds them invested with a comparative or superlative suffix, or if some of them occur merely with a comparative termination. For at the bottom of all genuine prepositions,

---

preceding *i*, while the feminine *acris* might have permitted its *is* to have been removed, just as well as the masculine, I can find the reason of this firm adherence of the feminine to the termination *is* only in the circumstance that the vowel *i* particularly agrees with that gender, as it is in Sanscrit (although long), according to §. 119., the true vowel of formation for the feminine base. In Gothic, the suppression of the nominative sign *s* is universal in bases in *sa* and *si*, in order that, as the final vowel of the base is suppressed, two *s* should not meet at the end of the word; hence the nominatives *drus*, “a fall,” from *DRUSA*; *garuns*, “a market,” from *GARUNSI*, f.

\* I have traced back the comparative nature of this adverb, which Voss derives from *iter*, “the journey,” for the first time in my Review of Forster’s Sanscrit Grammar in the Heidelb. Jahrb. 1818. i. p. 479.

at least in their original sense, there exists a relation between two opposite directions—thus, “over,” “from,” “before,” “to,” have the relations “under,” “in,” “towards,” “from,” as their counter-poles and points of comparison, as the right is opposed to the left; and in Latin, also, *dexter* (दक्षिण *dakṣhiṇā*), *sinister*, are always expressed with comparative suffixes. As, however, the comparative nature of these formations is no longer recognised in the present condition of the Latin, the suffix *ter* admits of the further addition of the customary *ior* (*dexterior*, *sinisterior*, like *exterior*, *interior*); while the superlative *timus* has affixed itself to the core of the word (*dextimus* or *-tumus*, *sinistimus*). The prepositions which, in Latin, contain a comparative suffix, are *inter*, *præter*, *propter*, the adverbially-used *subter*, and probably, also, *obiter* (compare *audacter*, *pariter*).\* To *inter* answers the Sanscrit अन्तर् *antar*, “among,” “between”; for which, however, a primitive *an* is wanting, as in Sanscrit the relation “in” is always expressed by the locative. Notwithstanding this, *antar*, in regard to its suffix, is an analogous word to प्रातर् *prātar*, “in the morning,” from the preposition *pra*, “before,”† with a lengthened *a*, as in the

---

\* I was of opinion, when I first treated this subject (Heidelb. Jahrb. 1818, p. 480), that *ob-i-ter* must be so divided, and *i* looked upon as the vowel of conjunction. As, however, the preposition *ob* is connected with the Sanscrit अभि *abhi*, “to,” “from,” the division *obi-ter* might also be made, and the original form of the preposition recognised in *obi*: observe the Sanscrit derivation अभितस् *abhi-tas*, “by,” from *abhi* with the suffix *tas*. The common idea, however, that *obiter* is compounded of *ob* and *iter* cannot entirely be disproved, partly as then *obiter* would be a similar compound to *obvium*.

† Comp. *nī*, *parī*, *pratī*, for *ni*, &c. in certain compounds. Formations which do not quite follow the usual track, and are rendered intelligible by numerous analogies, are nevertheless frequently misunderstood by the Indian Grammarians. Thus Wilson, according to native authorities, derives अन्तर् *antar* from *anta*, “end,” with *rā*, “to arrive at,” and the  
analogous

Greek  $\pi\rho\omega\iota$  from  $\pi\rho\sigma$ . For the relation "under," the Sanscrit has the preposition  $\text{अधस्}$  *adhas*, which I have elsewhere explained as coming from the demonstrative base  $\text{अ}$  *a*; from which, also,  $\text{अधर}$  *a-dhara* and  $\text{अधम}$  *a-dhama*, "the under one," or "the most under," to which *inferus* and *infimus* are akin, as *fumus* to  $\text{धूमस्}$  *dhūma-s*, "smoke," and, with a nasal prefixed, as in  $\text{ἀμφί}$  in relation to  $\text{अभि}$  *abhi*, and in  $\text{ἀμφω}$ , "*ambo*," answering to  $\text{убоу}$  *ubhāu*, Old Slavonic *oba*. The suffixes  $\text{धर}$  *dhara* and  $\text{धम}$  *dhama* are, in my opinion, only slightly-corrupted forms of the *tara* and *tama* mentioned in §. 291.; as also in  $\text{प्रथम}$  *prathama*, "the first (man)," from *pra*, "before," the *T* sound of the suffix is somewhat differently transposed. The suffix *dhas* of *adhas*, "beneath," however, has exactly the same relation to *tas*, in  $\text{अतस्}$  *atas*, "from here," as *dhara*, *dhama*, has to *tara*, *tama*; and therefore *adhas*, as a modification of *atas*, is, in respect to its suffix, a kindred form of *subtus*, *intus*. The usual intention of the suffix  $\text{तस्}$  *tas*, like that of the Latin *tus*, is to express distance from a place. In this, also, the Greek  $\theta\epsilon\nu$  (from  $\theta\epsilon\varsigma$ , comp. §. 217.) corresponds with it, which, in regard to its *T* sound, rests on the form  $\text{अधस्}$  *dhas* in  $\text{अधस्}$  *adhas* (§. 16.), as the latter also serves as the pattern of the Old Slavonic suffix *dū*, which only occurs in pronouns, and expresses the same relation as  $\text{तस्}$  *tas*,  $\theta\epsilon\nu$ , *tus*; e.g. *ovo-ūdū*, "hence,"\* *ono-ūdū*, "thence." The form *dū*, however, corresponds to the euphonic alteration, which a final *as* in the Sanscrit must suffer before sonant letters (§. 25.), viz. that into  $\delta$  (see §. 255. *f.*), which in Zend has become fixed (§. 56<sup>b</sup>).

---

analogous word *prātar* from *pra*, with *at*, "to go." A relation, nevertheless, between *anta*, "end," and *antar*, "under," cannot perhaps be denied, as they agree in the idea of room. They are, however, if they are related, sister forms, and the latter is not an offshoot of the former.

\* The demonstrative base *OVO* answers remarkably to the Zend  $\text{अवा}$  *ava*, with *o* for *a*, according to §. 255. (*a*).

“Remark.—Dobrowsky p. 451 gives *údû* as the full form of the suffix, just as he also lays down a suffix *údye*, which forms adverbs of place, as *kúdye*, “where?” *onúdye*, “there.” As, however, the definitive pronoun, which has been treated of at p. 353, &c., exists in these two adverbs, *údû*, *údye*, and forms, with *she*, *údûshe*, *údyeshe*, for *yúdû*, &c.; and as this pronoun is, in general, so frequently compounded with other adverbs, there is every reason to assume that it is also contained in *ovo-údû*, *ono-údû*, *on'-údye*, *t'-údye*, and others. But how is the *û* itself in *û-dû*, *yû-dye*, to be explained? I cannot speak with confidence on this point; but as, according to §. 255. (g.), in the last element of the diphthong *û* a vocalized nasal is sometimes recognised, *yúdû*, *yúdye* might be regarded as corruptions of *yondû* *yondye*, and, in respect to their nasal, be compared with the Latin *inde*, *unde*, from *I*, *U*. *Yúdye*, *yúdyû* might also have proceeded from the feminine accusative *yû*, which would again conduct us to a nasal (§. 266.): this accusative would then stand as theme to the derivative adverb, as our preposition *hinter*, Old High German *hintar*, has arisen from *hin*, a petrified accusative, on which the Gothic *hina-dag*, “this day,” “to-day,” throws light. Before the suffix *dye*, however, elder form *de*, occur also the pronouns in a simple form, as *gdye*, “where?” (more anciently *kde*, with the final vowel of the base *KO* suppressed); *zdye* (older *sde*), “here”; *idyesheshe*, “where” (relative). As *e* (ε), according to §. 255. (b.), frequently stands as the corruption of an older *i*, I recognise in the suffix *de* the Sanscrit *धि* *dhi*, from *अधि* *adhi*, “over,” “upon,” “from” (from the demonstrative base *a*), which, in Greek, is far more widely diffused in the form of *θι* (πόθι, ἄλλοθι).”

294. In German, even more than in Latin, the prepositions show themselves inclined to combine with the comparative suffix. To the Sanscrit *अन्तर* *antar*, Latin *inter*, mentioned above (at p. 378), corresponds our *unter*, Gothic



*undar*, with *u* for the old *a*, according to §. 66.\* If, however, the, in my opinion, incontrovertible original identity of the latter with the two former is recognised, one must not, with Grimm (III. 260.), derive *undar* from the preposition *und*, "as far as," &c., by a suffix *ar*, and so again divide the *dar*; for *undar*,† as transmitted from an ancient period of the language, was already formed, before the existence of a German dialect, and the abovementioned preposition has only to dispose itself according to the relations of sound mentioned in §§. 66. 91. The matter is different with the Old High German *af-tar*, "after," for the primitive language, or languages, transmit to us only अप *apa*, ἀπό, "from;" whence, in the spirit of अन्तर *antar*, *inter*, *subter*, &c., the old comparative suffix has first formed itself upon German ground. In Gothic, *aftra* means "again," which I look upon as an abbreviation of *aftara*, as in Latin *extra*, *intra*, *contra*, and others, as feminine adjectives, from *extera*, &c. In regard to the termination however, *aftra*, and similar forms in *tra*, *thra*, appear to me as datives, i.e. original instrumentals (§. 160.), as also, in the Sanscrit, this case occurs as an adverb, e.g. in अन्तरेण *antaréna*, "between." Perhaps, also, the Sanscrit pronominal adverbs in *tra*, although they have a locative meaning, like यत्र *yatra*, "where," are to be regarded as instrumental forms, according to the principle of the Zend language (§. 158.), and of the gerund in य *ya* (Gramm. Crit. §. 638. Rem.), so that their *tra* would be to be derived from त्र *tará*: compare forms like मनुष्या *manushya-trá*, "inter homines" (Gramm. Crit.

---

\* Regarding *dar* and *tar* for *thar*, see §. 91.

† Grimm however, also, at II. 121. &c., divides *bróth-ar*, *oat-ar* ("brother," "father"), although the many analogous kindred words in the German and the cognate languages clearly prove the *T* sound to belong to the derivation suffix (see Gramm. Crit. §. 178. Rem.).

§. 252. suff. *trá*). As *aftra* is related to *aftar*, so is the Gothic *vithra*, "against," to the Old High German *vidar*, our *wider*, the primitive of which is supplied by the Sanscrit through its inseparable preposition *वि* *vi*, which expresses separation, distraction, e.g. in *visrip*, "to go from one another," "to disperse." Exactly similar is the Sanscrit *नि* *ni*, to which I have first proved the meaning "below" to belong,\* and whence the adjective नीच *nícha*, "low" (Gramm. Crit. §. 111.), the base of our *nieder*, Old High German *ni-dar*.† From *hin-dar*, Old High German *hin-tar*, our *hin-ter* is now said (p. 394., compare Grimm. III. 177. c.). In the Old High German *sun-dar*, Gothic *sun-dró*, "*seorsim*," afterwards a preposition, our *sondern*, *dar* is, in like manner, clearly the comparative suffix, and the base appears to me, in spite of the difference of signi-

---

\* It is usual to attribute to it the meaning "in," "into," which cannot in any way be supported.

† Grimm assents to my opinion, which has been already expressed in another place, regarding the relationship of *नि* *ni* and *nidar* (III. 258, 259): he wishes, however, to divide thus *nid-ar*, and to suppose a Gothic verb *nithan*, *nath*, *néthun*, to which the Old High German *gináda* (our *Gnade*) may belong. Does, however, *gi-náda* really signify *humilitas*? It appears that only the meaning *gratia* can be proved to belong to it; and this is also given by Grimm, I. 617. and II. 235. *gratia*, *humanitas*, where he divides *ki-ná-da*, which appears to me correct, and according to which *ná* would be the base, and *da* the derivation suffix; as in the etymologically clear *ki-wá-da*, "*afflatus*," to which the Sanscrit gives वा *wa*, "to blow," as base, the Gothic gives *vó* (§. 69.) (*vaia*, *vaivó*). To *gi-ná-da*, indeed, the Sanscrit supplies no base *ná*, but perhaps *nam*, "to bend oneself," the *m* of which, according to the laws of euphony, is suppressed before *t*, which does not take the Guna; as *nata*, "bent," *nati*, "bending," with the preposition *sam*, *san-nati*, which Wilson explains by "reverence," "obeisance," "reverential salutation." As the Gothic inseparable preposition *ga*, Old High German *gi* or *ki*, is, as Grimm first acutely remarked, identical with the Sanscrit *sam*, *gi-ná-da* has much the same formation with *san-na-ti*: it would, however, still better agree with the feminine  
passive

fication, related to the Sanscrit सम् *sam*, "with" (compare Gothic *samath*, "together with," Old High German *samant*), and the *n*, therefore, is from *a*, according to §. 66. The Latin *con-tra*, however, is nearly just as much opposed in meaning to its primitive *cum*; and as *cum* (compare σύν) belongs, in like manner, to सम् *sum*, so *sundar*, *sundrô*, and *contra*, would be, in a double respect, sister forms. Observe, also, the Gothic *samath*, Old High German *samant*, "together with": the latter answers surprisingly to the Sanscrit समन्त *samanta* (from *sam* + *anta*, "an end"), the ablative of which, *samantât*, as also the adverb, *samantatas*, means "everywhere." Perhaps, too, in all other Old High German adverbs in *nt* (Grimm. III. 214.), the said अन्त *anta* is contained, for the meaning "end," cannot be unexpected in adverbs of place and time, and, like "middle,"

---

passive participle *san-na-tâ*. Be that as it may, so much is certain, that there is no necessity for a hypothetic Gothic base *nith* or *nath*, either for the substantive *gi-nada* or for the preposition *nidar*, as they can be fully set at rest by the existence of a Sanscrit primitive नि *ni*, "below," and the comparative suffix *dar*, which frequently occurs in prepositions. And as the circumstance that genuine original prepositions never come from verbs, but are connected with pronouns, I must, with regard to its etymology, keep back every verb from our *nidar*. Grimm wishes also to divide the Gothic preposition *vi-thrâ*, Old High German *wi-dar*, into *vith-ra*, *wid-ar*, and to find their base in the Anglo-Saxon preposition *widh*, English *with*, Old Slavonic *wid*, Old Norman *vidh*, Swedish *vid*, Danish *ved*, which mean "with," and, according to appearance, are wanting in the Gothic and High German. If, however, one considers the easy and frequent interchange of *v*, *b*, and *m* (वारि *vâri*, "water," = *mare*, βρωτός = मृतस् *mṛitas*, "mortuus"), one would rather recognise, in the above prepositions, dialectic variations of sound from the Gothic *mith*, which is of the same import with them (=the Zend मथ *mat*), and which, in most of the dialects mentioned, maintains itself equally with the other forms; as it often occurs, in the history of languages, that the true form of a word is equally preserved with a corruption of it.

(compare "in the midst") and "beginning," it attaches itself first to the prepositional ideas: therefore *hinont*, "this side," *enont*, "that side," would be the same as "this end," "that end." With regard to the comparative forms there is, further, the Old High German *for-dar*, *fur-dir* ("porro," "amplius"), our *für-der* to be mentioned, whence *der vordere*, *vorderste*.

"Remark 1.—As we have endeavoured above to explain the Gothic *af-tra* and *vithra* as datives, I believe I can with still more confidence present the forms in *thrô* or *tarô* as remarkable remains of ablatives. Their meaning corresponds most exactly to that of the Sanscrit ablative, which expresses the withdrawing from a place, and to that of the Greek adverbs in *θεν*; thus *hva-thrô*, "whence?" *tha-thrô*, "thence," *yain-thrô*, "hence," *alya-thrô*, "from another quarter," *inna-thrô*, "from within," *uta-thrô*, "from without," *af-tarô*, "from behind," *dala-thrô*, "from under," and some others, but only pronouns, and, what is nearly the same, prepositions. I might, therefore, derive *dalathrô*, not from *dal*, "a valley," but suppose a connection with the Sanscrit *अधरा* *adhara*, "the under person," with aphæresis of the *a* and the very common exchange of the *r* with *l* (§. 20.). Perhaps, however, on the contrary, *thal* is so named from the notion of the part below. As to the ablative forms in *tarô*, *thrô*, the *ô* corresponds to the Sanscrit *ât* (§. 179.), with *ô*, according to rule, for *अ* *â* (§. 69.), and apocope of the *t*; so that *ô* has the same relation to the to be pre-supposed *ât* that in Greek *οὐτω* has to *οὐτως*, from *οὐτωτ* (§. 183. Rem.). Many other Gothic adverbs in *ô*, as *sinteinô*, "always," *sniumundô*, "hastily," *sprantô*, "suddenly," *thridyô*, "thirdly," &c., might then, although an ablative meaning does not appear more plainly in them than in the Latin *perpetuo*, *cito*, *subito*, *tertio*, and others, be rather considered as ablatives than as neuter accusatives of indefinite (Grimm's weak) forms; so that *thridyô* would

answer to the Sanscrit ablative *tritiyāt*, while the common Gothic declension extends the ordinal bases in *a* by an unorganic *n*; thus *THRIDYAN*, nom. *thridya*. It must be further observed, that all unorganic adjective bases in *an* are, in general, only used where the adjective is rendered definite through a pronoun preceding it; that therefore the forms in *ō*, which pass for adverbial, are, for the very reason that no pronoun precedes them, better assigned to the definite (strong) declension than to the indefinite; partly as most of them are only remains of an old adjective, which is no longer preserved in other cases, and, according to their formation, they belong to a period where the indefinite adjective declension had not yet received the unorganic addition of an *n*. . As to the translation of *τοὐναντίον*, 2 Cor. ii. 7., by *thata andaneithō*, here of course *andaneithō* is the neuter accusative; but the inducement for using the indefinite form is supplied by the article, and *τοὐναντίον* could not be otherwise literally rendered. The case may be similar with 2 Cor. iv. 17., where Castiglione takes *thata andavairthō* for the nominative, but Grimm for the adverbial accusative: as it would else be an unsuitable imitation of the Greek text, where *τὸ* does not belong to *αὐτίκα*, but to *ἐλαφρόν*. In my opinion, however, it can in no case be inferred from these passages that the adverbs in *ō*, without an article preceding them, belong to the same category. Moreover, also, *andaneithō* and *andavairthō* do not occur by themselves alone adverbially. As, then, *thrō* has shewn itself to us to be an abbreviation of *thrōt*, it is a question whether the suppression of the *t* by a universal law of sound was requisite, as in Greek, and in the Prakrit, all *T* sounds are rejected from the end of words, or changed into *Σ*. It is certain that the *T* sounds (*t*, *th*, *d*), which, in the actual condition of the Gothic, are finals, as far as we can follow their etymology, had originally a vowel after them; so that



*avadha* and *ἄδα-dha* (Vend. S. p. 164). To the Zend-Vêda suffix *dha* corresponds most exactly the Greek *θα*, in *ἐνθα* and *ἐνταῦ-θα*, "here." Perhaps *ἐνθα* and *ἄδα* *i-dha*, *इहा iha*, are, with regard to their base, identical; *ἐνθα*, therefore, is for *ἴνθα* from *ἴθα* (comp. *in*, *inde*), as nasals are easily prefixed to another consonant, and thus *ἀμφί* answers to *अभि abhi*, *ἄμφω* to *उभौ ubhau*, Old Slavonic *oba*; but *αὐθα*, in the triple compound *ἐν-τ'-αὐθα*, is completely the Zend *ἄδα avadha*, whose theme *ava* has been contracted in the Greek to *αὐ* (compare *αὐ-θι* and *αὐ-τός*, the latter being combined with the article), but in the Old Slavonic it is more correctly preserved in the form of *OVO*.\* To the word *इहा ihatya*, "of this place," which is derived from *इहा iha* through the suffix *त्या tya*, corresponds the Greek *ἐνθάσιος*, with *σ* from *τ*; compare, with regard to the suffix, the Latin *propitius* from *prope*, and, in the Gothic, *frama-thya*, "a foreigner," through which the preposition *fram* shews itself to be an abbreviation of *frama*. As in the Sanscrit the suffix *त्या tya* belongs only to local adverbs and prepositions, so might also the Gothic *ni-thyis*, "cousin" (for *ni-thyas*, §. 135.), as *propinquus*, or one who stands somewhat lower in relationship than a brother, &c.,† be derived from the

---

\* Before my acquaintance with the Zend, and deeper examination of the Slavonic, I believed I could make out the Greek base *αὐ* to agree with the Sanscrit *amu*, "ille," by casting out the *m* (as *κοῦρος* with *kumâra*): now, however, *ἄδα ava* and *OVO* have clearly nearer claims to take the Greek forms between them.

† Terms of relationship often express the relation, of which they are the representatives, very remotely, but ingeniously. Thus *नप्तृ naptṛi*, "a grandson," is, I have no doubt, compounded of *na*, "not," and *pitṛi*, "father"; and "not-father" is regarded as a possessive compound, "not having as father," in relation to the grandfather, who is not the father of the grandson. In Latin it would be difficult to find the etymology of *nepos* (*nepot-*)—and the same may be said of our word *neffe*—without the aid of the word *Vater*, which is fully preserved from the Sanscrit. In the

ancient preposition *ni*, mentioned at p. 382, from which, in Sanscrit, *nitya* actually comes, but differently related, and with a signification answering less to the meaning of the preposition, namely, *sempiternus*. In consideration of the aspirates in Greek being easily interchanged, and, in the Doric, ὈPNIX is said for ὈPNIΘ, one may also recognise in the syllable *χο*, in forms like *παντα-χό-θεν*, *παντα-χό-σε*, *πολλαχόσε*, and others, a cognate form of the suffix *θα*, *dha*, or of the corruption *η* *ha* (comp. §. 23.). At the bottom of these forms lies, in my opinion, as the theme, the plural neuter, which need not be wondered at, as *πάντα* and *πολλά*, also, are used as first members of compounds (*πολλά-σημος*, *παντά-μορφος*). *Πανταχο* might, in the identity of its suffix with *θα*, *dha*, or *ha*, mean "everywhere"; whence may then be said *πανταχό-σε*, "from everywhere," &c., as we combine our locative adverbs *wo* and *da* with *her* and *hin* (*woher*, *wohin*); and in Greek, also, *ἐκεῖθι*, *ἐκεῖσε*, *ἐκεῖθεν*, which might literally mean *in illic*, *versus illic*, *ab illic*, as *ἐκεῖ* is a local adverb. Forms in *χο*, however, are in a measure raised to themes capable of declension, though only for adverbs, and constitute, also, case-forms, as *πανταχοῦ*, *πανταχοῖ* (old locative and dative), *πανταχῇ*. The addition of new suffixes or terminations to those already existing, and which are obscured, appears to me assuredly more natural than, as Buttmann supposes, the introduction of an unmeaning *αχ* or even *αχο*, in which case we should have to divide *παντ-αχό-θεν*, &c. But as the *χο* under discussion has arisen from *θα*, *dha*, I think I recognise in the *χι* of *ἦχι* a corruption of the suffix *θι*, from *θη* *dhi*; in which respect might be compared *ἄγχι*, as a sister form to

---

meaning of *neffe* the negation of the relationship of father points to the uncle. The Indian Grammarians, according to Wilson, see in *naptri* the negation, but not the father, but the root *pat*, "to fall," and a Unâdi suffix *tri*.



अधि *adhi*, “to,” “from,” with a nasal introduced. As a third form in which the Vêda-Zend suffix *dha* appears in Greek, I notice *σε*, with *σ* for *θ*, *ध* *dh*, as *μεσος* from मध्य *madhya*, “the middle,” the *y* of which has assimilated itself, in the form *μέσος*, to the *σ*. The suffix *σε*, however, in that it is altered from its original intention to denote rest in a place, to the expression of motion to a place, answers to the Gothic *th* or *d*, whence we set out in this examination, in forms like *hva-th*, *πό-σε*, “whither?” also *hvad*—John xiii. 3. *hvad gaggis*, *ποῦ ὑπάγεις*—*yain-d*, *ἐκεῖ-σε*, *alya-th*, *ἄλλο-σε*. To the Zend *idha*, Greek *ἐνθα*, corresponds *i-th*; which, however, contrary to the original intention of the form, does not mean “thither,” but is used as a conjunction—“but,” “if,” “then” (1 Cor. vii. 7.). To this class, also, belongs *ath*, which only occurs in combination with *than*—*ath-than*, “but,” like *ith-than*; and it has the Vêda-Zend *a-dha* as prototype (§. 337.). *Thad*, in combination with the relative particle *ei*, which is probably connected with *य* *ya*, has preserved the original locative meaning together with the accusative, and *thad-ei* may be cited as “where” and “whither.” The *d* in these forms, answering to the Greek *θ*, agrees with the rule for the transmutation of sounds (§. 87.); and it is to be observed that medials at the end of a word freely pass into aspirates—compare *bauth*, *bu-dum* (§. 91.);—so that the Gothic *T* sound of the suffix under discussion, after it has, in one direction, diverged from the Greek, has, in another, again approached it.

“Remark 2.—As we have above recognised ablatives in the formations in *thrô*, *tarô*, so we find in this comparative suffix, also, a remnant of the Sanscrit locative; in which, however, as in the adverbs in *th*, *d*, the expression of repose in a place is changed into that of motion to a place—in *hidré*, “hither,” Mark xi. 3. Luke xiv. 21.; *hva-dré*, “whither?” John vii. 35. On the other hand, *yaindré* actually occurs with a locative meaning; *tharei leik*, *yaindré*

*galisand sik arans*, 'ὅπου τὸ σῶμα, ἐκεῖ συναχθήσονται οἱ αἰετοί.' Compare these forms with the Sanscrit, as, *adharé*, "in the lower," and the Lithuanian *wilké* (§. 197.). That, however, the Gothic *ē*, which in the genitive plural masculine and neuter answers to the Sanscrit *आ d* (§. 69.), moreover corresponds to *इ ē*, is proved by preterites like *nēmum*, 'we took,' answering to the singular *nam*; as, in Sanscrit, *नेमिन् nēmima*, 'we bent ourselves,' answers to *ननम nanama* or *ननान nandama*, 'I bent myself.'"

295. The superlative suffix *तम tama* occurs in the Gothic also in the form of *TUMAN*, nominative *tuma*, or, with *d* for *t* in prepositional derivations, either simply or in combination with the common superlative suffix *ISTA*; thus, *af-tuma*, "posterus," *af-tumists*, "postremus," *hin-dumists*, "extremus." If one considers the Indian suffix *तम tama*, with apocope of the *a*, as in Latin, also, *timus* appears abbreviated to *tim*—in adverbs like *virī-tim*, *caterva-tim*, which I have already, in another place (Heidelb. Jahrb. 1818. p. 480), explained, together with forms like *legi-timus*, as superlatives—one may look for that *tam* in the Gothic corrupted to *tana*, after the analogy of the accusative masculine of pronouns, like *tha-na* = *तम् tam*, *τόν*; *hva-na* = *कम् ku-m*, "whom"; and thereupon regard the prepositional derivations in *tana*, *dana*, as superlative forms; thus, Gothic *af-tana*, "behind"; *hindana*, *πέραν*, Old High German *ni-dana*, "under" (compare our *hie-niedan*). As, however, in Old High German there exist, also, formations in *ana* without a preceding *t* sound (Grimm III. 203, &c.), it is a question whether *innana*, "within," *ūzana*, "abroad," *forana* shortened to *forna*, "from the beginning," *ferrana*, *πόρρωθεν*, *rūmana*, "from a distance," *hōhana*, *ὕψόθεν*, *heimina*, *οἴκοθεν*, have lost a *t* or a *d* preceding the *a*; or if they are formed after those in *tana*, *dana*, in the notion that the whole of the suffix consists merely of *ana*; or, finally, whether they rest on some other principle. The prepo-

sition *obar*, "over," Gothic *ufar*, which answers to the Sanscrit उपरि *upari*, Greek ὑπέρ, has, in the same manner, an adverb *obana*, "above," corresponding to it.

296. In the Sanscrit the appellations of the quarters of the heavens come from prepositions in conjunction with the base अङ् *anch*, "to go"; thus the east is denoted as that which is before, प्राङ् *prānch*, from प्र *pra*, "before"; the west as that which is over against it, प्रत्यङ् *pratyanch*, from प्रति *prati*, "opposite"; the south as that below, अधोऽङ् *adhōnch*, from अध *ava*, "below"; and its opposite pole, the north, as that above, is called उदङ् *udanch*, from उप् *ut*, "upon." Now it is remarkable that in German the names of the quarters of the world shew themselves to be obscured prepositional derivations, through their terminations, Old High German in *tar* and *tana*, or *dar*, *dana*, as they so frequently occur in prepositions. The custom of the language disposes of the forms in *r* and *na* in such a manner, that the former expresses the direction whither (Grimm. III. 205.), the latter the direction whence, which, however, was not, perhaps, the original intention of the terminations, both which seem adapted to express the same direction; the former comparatively, with a glance at that which is opposite, the latter superlatively, in relation to all the quarters of the globe, as, p. 376, एकतर *ēkatara*, "one of two persons," but एकतम *ēkatama*, "one of many persons." The west may perhaps be most satisfactorily explained as being, in fact, etymologically pointed out as that which lies over against the east, as in Sanscrit. For this object we betake ourselves to the prepositional base *vi*, mentioned at p. 382, whence the comparative *vi-dar*. We do not, however, require to deduce *wēs-tar*,\* "towards the west," *wēs-tana*,

---

\* By writing *wē*, Grimm marks the corruption of the *e* from *i*, in which I readily agree with him.

“from the west,” from the derivative *widar*; but we may keep to its base *wi*, with the assumption of a euphonic *s*; as in the Sanscrit, also, some prepositions terminating in vowels in certain combinations, and before consonants which are disposed to have an *s* before them, assume this letter; *e. g.* *pratishkaśa* for *pratikasa*; and as in Latin, *abs*, *os* (for *obs*), from *ab*, *ob* (§. 96.). But if it were preferred to deduce *wëstar*, *wëstana*, from the derivative *widar*, it would then be necessary to force the *d* of derivation into the base, and, according to §. 102., change it into *s*. The east is more difficult of explanation than the west—Old High German *ôst-tar*, “towards the east,” *ôst-tana*, “from the east,”—for several prepositions start up together that would gladly sustain this quarter of the heavens. It is not necessary that the preposition after which the east is named should elsewhere, also, be received as a German preposition; for in this appellation a preposition might have incorporated itself, which, except in this case, is foreign to the practice of the German language. It may therefore be allowable for us, first of all, to turn to a preposition which, in the Indian language, is prefixed to the south, and, in the German, may have changed its position to the east; the more so, as, with prepositions, the principal point is always where one stands, and the direction to which one is turned; and one may, with perfect justice, turn that which is at the bottom to the uppermost, or to the front. In Zend, *ava*, which in Sanscrit signifies “below,” exists as a pronoun, and means “this”; and as this pronoun is also proper to the Slavonic (*OVO*, nom. *ov*), and occurs in Greek as *αὖ* (*αὖ θι*, *αὐτό*; see p. 387), it need not surprise us to find an obscured remnant of this base in German, and that the east is taken as the side opposed to the west. Here it may be necessary to observe, that in Sanscrit the preposition *ava*, in like manner, annexes a euphonic *s*; from

*avas*, therefore, by suppressing the last *a* but one, would arise (as in Greek *av*) *aus* (different from our *aus*, Old High German *ûz*, Gothic *ût*, in Sanscrit उत *ut*, "upon"), and hence, according to §. 80., *as*: the old northern form is *austr*, *austan*. The Latin *aus-ter* might then—to which Grimm has already alluded (Wiener Jahrb. B. 28. p. 32)—be placed with more confidence beside the Old High German as a sister form, and led back by the hand of our comparative suffix to the preposition, which in Sanscrit has given its name to the south, bold as it at the first glance might appear, if we declared *aus-ter* and अवन्त *avānt* (*ava* + *ant*), "southern," to be related. The derivations from *haurio*, or *avw*, certainly deserve less notice. As, however, the juxta-position of *austar* with the Latin *auster* and the Indian preposition *ava*, *avas*, is most suitable, we refrain from giving other prepositional modes in which one might arrive at the appellation of the east in German. As the most natural point of departure, we cannot place it in so subordinate a position to the west as to mark it out as "not west" (*a-ustar* from *a-mëstar*). We betake ourselves to the south, in Old High German *sun-dar*, "towards the south," *sundana*, "from the south," the connection of which with the *sundrô*, *sundar*, mentioned at p. 383, is not to be mistaken. The south, therefore, appeared to our ancestors as the remote distance, and the reason for the appellation of this quarter of the heavens being clearly in allusion to space, is a new guarantee for the prepositional derivation of the names for east and west. The designation of the north, too, has subjected itself to a preposition, although it is still more veiled in obscurity than that of the three sister appellations. We cannot, however, omit calling attention to the Sanscrit preposition निस् *nis*, which signifies "from," and before sonant letters, to which *d* belongs (§. 25.) according to a universal law of euphony, appears

in the form of *nir*, which it is also usual to represent as the original form.

297. In the Old Slavonic the Indo-Greek comparative suffix occurs in *vtoryi*, "the second man," in which the definitive pronoun is contained (p. 352): *vtory-i*, then, is formed from *vtoro-i* (§. 255. d.), in which the cardinal number *dva* is melted down to *v*, corresponding in this respect to the Zend *b* in *b-yarē*, "two years," but singular, with *b* as a hardened form from *v*. To the Sanscrit कतार *katara*, "which man of two?" (Gothic *hva-thar*) and यतार *ya-tara*, "which of both?" corresponds etymologically, the Old Slavonic *ko-tory-i* (as definitive), older *ko-tery-i* and *ye-ter*, feminine *ye-tera* (*ye-tepa*), neuter *ye-tera*. The origin of these two pronouns is, however, forgotten, together with their comparative meaning; for *kotoryi* means "who?" and *yeter*, "some one" (compare p. 352). Dobrowsky, however, in which he is clearly wrong, divides the suffix into *ot-or*; for although the interrogative base *KO* may lay aside its *o*, and combine with the demonstrative base *to* (*kto*, "quis?" Dobr. p. 342), still it is more in accordance with the history of language to divide *ko-toryi* than *kot-oryi* or *koto-ryi*, as the formation *or* would there stand quite isolated; and besides this the pronoun *i*, "he," from *yo*, does not occur in combination with the demonstrative base *to*, and yet *ye-ter* is said.

298. A small number of comparatives are formed in Sanscrit by ईयस् *īyas*, and the corresponding superlative by इष्ट *ishtha*, in which *ishtha*, as has been already remarked (§. 389.), we recognise a derivation from *īyas* in its contraction to *ish* (compare *ish-ta*, "offered," from *yaj*), so that the suffix of the highest degree is properly ष्ठा *tha*, through which, also, the ordinal numbers चतुर्थस् *chatur-thas* (τέταρτος), and षष्ठस् *shash-thas* (ἕκτος), are formed, for the notion of the superlative lies very close to the ordinal

numbers above two, as that of order does to the superlatives, and hence the suffix तम *tama* occurs in ordinal numbers; e.g. विंशतितमस् *vinśati-tama-s*, "the twentieth," wherefore *ma*, in forms like पञ्चमस् *pancha-ma-s*, "the fifth," may be held to be an abbreviation of *tama*. To the form *ish*, contracted from *īyas*—euphonic for *is*—in Greek and Zend *is*, corresponds the Latin *is*, in the superlatives in *is-simus*, which I deduce through assimilation from *is-timus* (comp. §. 101.); the simple *is*, however, which, viewed from Latin, is a contraction of *iōs* (§. 22.), appears in the simple form in the adverb *mag-is*, which may be compared with *μεγίς* in *μέγιστος*. In the strong cases (§. 129.) the Indian comparative shews a broader form than the *īyas* above, namely, a long *ā* and a nasal preceding the *s*, thus ईयांस *īyāns* (see §. 9.). This form, however, may originally have been current in all the cases, as the strong form in general (§. 129.), as is probable through the pervading long *ō* in Latin, *iōris*, *iōri*, &c., if one would not rather regard the length of the Latin *o* as compensation for the rejected nasal: compare the old accusative *mel-iōsem*, mentioned in §. 22., with Sanscrit forms like गरीयांसम् *gar-īyāns-am* (*graviozem*). The breadth of the suffix, which is still remarkable in the more contracted form *īyas*, may be the cause why the form of the positive is exposed to great reductions before it; so that not only final vowels are rejected, as generally before Taddhita suffixes\* beginning with a vowel, but whole suffixes, together with the vowel preceding them, are suppressed (Gramm. Crit. §. 252.); e.g. from मतिमत् *mati-mat*, "intelligent," from *mati*, "understanding," comes *mat'-īyās*; from *balāvat*, "strong" ("gifted with strength,"

---

\* The Taddhita suffixes are those which form derivative words direct from the base itself.

from *bala + vat*), *bal-īyas*; from *kshipra*, “quick” (from the base *kship*, “to throw”), comes *kshēp-īyas*; from *kshudra*, “insignificant,” *kshēd-īyas*; from *tripra*, “satisfied,” *trap-īyas*; since with vowels capable of Guna the dropping of the suffix is compensated by strengthening the syllable of the base by Guna, as in the Zend *vaēdistā*; which Burnouf (*Vahista*, p. 22) deduces, as it appears to me, with equal correctness and acuteness from *vidvas* (*vīdvō*, §. 56<sup>b</sup>., Sanscrit *vidvas*), “knowing.” With respect to *trapīyas*, from *tripra*, let it be observed that *ar*, as Guna of *ri*, is easily transposed to *ra* (*Gramm. Crit.* §. 34<sup>b</sup>.): compare the Greek ἔδρακον for ἔδαρκον; πατράσι for παταρσι (see p. 290). In a similar manner M. Ag. Benary explains the connection of *varīyas* with *uru*, “great,” with which he rightly compares the Greek εὐρύς (*Berl. Jahrb.* 1834. I. pp. 230, 231). But *varīyas* might come from *vara*, “excellent,” and *uru* might be an abbreviation of *varu*, which easily runs into one. To the superlative ~~वृषि~~ *varishtha*, which does not only mean *latissimus* but also *optimus*, the Greek ἄριστος (therefore *Φάριστος*) is without doubt akin, the connection of which with εὐρύς one could scarcely have conjectured without the Sanscrit. Remarkable, too, is the concurrence of the Greek with the Sanscrit in this point, that the former, like the latter, before the gradation suffix under discussion, disburthens itself of other more weighty suffixes (compare Burnouf’s *Vahista*, p. 28); thus, ἐχθιστος, αἰσχιστος, οἴκτιστος, κύδιστος, μήκιστος, ἄλγιστος, from ἐχθρος, &c., exactly as above *kshēpishthas* and others from *kshipra*; and I believe I can hence explain, according to the same principle, the lengthening of the vowel in μήκιστος, μᾶσσον, from μακρός, on which principle also rests the Guna in analogous Sanscrit forms—namely, as a compensation for the suppression of the suffix. The case is the same with the lengthened vowel in forms like θᾶσσον, ᾶσσον, where Buttmann (§. 67. Rem. 3. Note †) assumes that



the comparative *i* has fallen back and united itself with the *a* (*α*); while, in my opinion, a different account is to be given of what has become of the *i* in forms like *θάσων*, *βράσων* (§. 300.). The formation of *μέγιστος* from *μέγας*, from *μέγαλο-ς*, is similar to the origin, in Sanscrit, of *बंहिश॑त्* *bañhishṭha*, from *bahula*, "much"; from *bahu*, "much" comes *bhūyishṭha*; and *μέγ-ιστος*, in relation to *ΜΕΓΑΛΟ*, has lost as much as *bañh-ishṭha*, from *bahula*, only that the Sanscrit positive base is compensated for the loss of *ula* by the addition of a nasal; which therefore, as Ag. Benary (l. c.) has very correctly remarked, rests on the same principle with the Guna in *kshēpishṭha*.\*

"Remark.—It will then, also, be necessary—as Burnouf (*Yajna*, p. 131) first pointed out, but afterwards (*Vahista*, p. 25), in my opinion, wrongly retracted—to explain the *ῥ ε* of *śréyas*, "better," *śrēshṭha*, "the best," as coming from the *i* of *śrī*, "fortune," by Guna, instead of the common view, in which I formerly concurred, of substituting a useless *śra* as positive, and hence, by contraction with *īyas*, *ishṭha*, forming *śréyas*, *śrēshṭha*. From *śrī* comes the derivation *śrímat*, "fortunate," from which I deduce *śrē-yas*, *śrē-shṭha*, by the prescribed removal of the suffix,<sup>†</sup> although one might

---

\* The Guna, however, in the gradation forms under discussion, might also be accounted for in a different way, namely, by bringing it into connection with the Vṛiddhi, which occurs before many other Taddhita suffixes, especially in patronymes, as *वैवस्वत्* *vaivasvata*, from *विवस्वत्* *vivasvat*. On account of the great weight of the gradation suffixes *īyas*, *ishṭha*, which has given rise to the suppression of the suffix of the positive base, the initial vowel also of the same would accordingly be raised by the weaker Guna, instead of by the Vṛiddhi, as usual (§. 26.). Be that how it may, one must in any case have ground to assume an historic connection between the Grecian vowel-lengthening in *μήκιστος*, *θάσων*, and others, and that of Sanscrit forms like *kshēpīyas*, *kshēpishṭha*.

† If there existed, as in Zend, a *shrīra*, one might hence also derive the above gradations.

expect in the superlative *śray-ishtha*, euphonic for *śrē-ishtha*; and on this ground it is that Burnouf takes his objection. But as in Greek *ἑκα-στος*, *ὀπό-στος* (see p. 376), in spite of the want of the *i* of *ιστος*, are nevertheless nothing else than superlative forms, I do not see why, in certain cases, in Sanscrit, also, the suppression of an *i* may not hold good. This happens, moreover, in *sthē-shtha* from *sthi-ra*, "fast," *sphē-shtha* from *sphi-ra*, "swollen," and *prē-shtha* from *priy-a*, "dear." In the latter case, after removing the suffix *a*, the preceding *y*, also, must retire, since *priy* is only a euphonic alteration of *prī* (Gramm. Crit. §. 51.) As to the derivation, however, of the meanings *melior*, *optimus*, from a positive with the meaning "fortunate," it may be further remarked, that, in Sanscrit, "fortune" and "splendour" are generally the fundamental notions for that which is good and excellent; hence, *bhagavat*, "the honourable," "the excellent," properly, "the man gifted with fortune"; for our *besserer*, *bester*, also Gothic *bat-iza*, *bat-ists*, are associated with a Sanscrit base denoting fortune (*bhad*, whence *bhadra*, "fortunate," "excellent"), which Pott was acute enough first to remark (Etymol. Inquiries, p. 245), who collates also *bōtjan*, "to use." The old *d* gives, according to §. 87., in the Gothic *t*, and the Sanscrit *bh* becomes *ḍ*. It might appear too daring if we made an attempt to refer *melior* also to this base; but kindred words often assume the most estranged form through doubled transitions of sound, which, although doubled, are usual. It is very common for *d* to become *l* (§. 17.), and also between labial medials and the nasal of this organ there prevails no unfrequent exchange (comp. §. 63.). If, also, the Greek *βελτίων*, *βέλτιστος*, should belong to this class, and the *τ* be an unorganic addition, which is wanting in *βέλ-τερος*, *βέλ-τατος*, *βελ* would then give the middle step between *ἡ bhad* and *mel*. The ideal positive of *βελτίων*, namely *ἀγαθός*, might be connected with *अग्रा* *agādhā*, "deep," with which, also, the Gothic *gōths* (theme

*gāda*) is to be compared, with *ó*, according to rule, for *चा d* (§. 69.), and medials for Greek aspirates, according to §. 87.

299. From the strong theme *इयांस* *íyāns*, mentioned at §. 298., comes the nominative *íyān*, with the suppression of the final letter rendered necessary through §. 94. The vocative has a short *a*, and sounds *íyan*. To *íyān* answers the Greek *ἰών*, and to the vocative *íyan* answers *ἰόν*; to the neuter *íyas* (N. A. V.), identical with the weak theme, corresponds the Latin *ius* (§. 22.). The Greek, however, cannot become repossessed of the *s*, which is abandoned in Sanscrit in the nominative and vocative masculine for legitimate reasons, since it declines its comparative as though its theme terminated from the first with *ν*; hence accusative *ἰόν-α* for the Sanscrit *इयांसम्* *íyāns-am*, Latin *iōr-em* (*iōs-em*, §. 22.), genitive *ἰόν-ος* for *íyas-as*, *iōr-is*. However, one might, as Pott has already, I believe, noticed somewhere, reduce the contracted forms like *βελτίω*, *βελτίους*, to an original *ἰσσα*, *ἰσσεσ*, *ἰσσας*, corresponding to *íyānsam*, *íyānsi* (neuter plural), *íyāns-as*, *íyas-as*, the *σ* of which, as is so common between two vowels, would be rejected.\* On the other hand, *ν*, except in comparatives, on the presupposition that the contracted forms have rejected an *ν* and not *σ*, is suppressed only in a few isolated words (*Ἀπόλλω*, *Ποσειδῶ*, *εἰκῶ*, *ἀηδοῦς*, and a few others), which, however, the theoretic derivation of the comparative *Σ* renders very embarrassing. We would therefore prefer giving up this, and assuming, that while the Sanscrit of *ns* in the weak, i.e. in the majority of cases, has abandoned the former consonant, the Greek, which was still less favourable to the *νσ*-, has given up the latter, as perhaps one may suppose in the oldest, as it were, pre-Grecian period, forms like *βελτιονσα*. It is, however, remarkable, that while all other European sister lan-

---

\* Comp. pp. 305, 306, &c.



𐬨𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬨𐬀 *maśas*, "great" (*maśō*, *maśah*, *maśanh*, §§. 56<sup>a</sup>. 56<sup>b</sup>.), and confirms, like other Zend forms, the theory which holds good for the Sanscrit, that other suffixes fall away before the exponents of the comparative and superlative relation under discussion. If *yēhī* is compared with the Sanscrit feminine base *īyasī*, the loss of the *i* shews itself, and then the *a* has, through the power of assimilation of the *y* (§. 42.), become *ē*, and *s* has, according to §. 53., become *h*. In the loss of the *i* the Zend coincides with the Sanscrit forms like *śrē-yas*, mentioned at p. 397, with which, also, *bhū-yas*, "more," and *jyā-yas*, "older," agree. Greek comparatives with a doubled *σ* before *ων*, as *κρείσσων*, *βράσσων*, *ἐλάσσων*, are based on this; which, according to a law of euphony very universally followed in Prakrit, have assimilated the *y* to the preceding consonant, as elsewhere *ἄλλος* from *ἀλγος*, Gothic *alja-*, Latin *aliu-s*, Sanscrit *anya*, are explained (Demonstrative Bases, p. 20). In Prakrit, in the assimilations which are extremely common in this dialect, the weaker consonant assimilates itself to the stronger, whether this precedes or follows it; thus *anna*, "the other," from *anya*, corresponds to the Greek *ἄλλος*; the Sanscrit *tasya*, "hujus," becomes *tassa*; *bhavishyati*, "he will be," becomes *bhavissati*,\* *divya*, "heavenly," *divva*; from

---

is simpler, and closer at hand, although the other cannot be shewn to be impossible; for it is certain that if the *y* of *iyas* had disappeared in Zend, it would fall to the turn of the preceding *i* to become *y*.

\* Comp. *ἔσσομαι*, from *ἐσσομαι*, with *स्यामि syāmi*, in composition with attributive verbs. It may be allowed here preliminarily to mention another interesting Prakrit form of the future, which consists in this, that the Sanscrit *s* passes into *h*, but the syllable *य ya* is contracted to *i*, herein agreeing with the Latin *i* in *eris*, *erit*, *amabis*, *amabit*, &c.; as, *karīhisi*, "thou wilt make," from *karishyasi*; *sahīhimi*, "I will endure," from *sahishyāmi*, instead of the medial form *sahishyē* (*Urvasī*, by Lenz. p. 59).

which it is clear that *v* is stronger than *y*, as it also is more powerful than *r*; hence *savva* from *sarva*, "the former." It is remarkable that the *i* also of *iti* thus assimilates itself to the following *t*; hence *tti*, which, in pronunciation, naturally leans upon the word preceding. Therefore one might thus also, without presupposition of a form *yων*, establish the assimilation from *ῖων*. As to the transition of the consonant of the positive base into *σ* (*κρέι-σων*, *βράσ-σων*, *βάσ-σων*, *μάσ-σων*, *ἐλάσ-σων*, &c.), to which the *y* has assimilated, the transition of *τ*, *δ*, *θ*, into *σ* need least of all surprise us (see §. 99.); but with regard to the gutturals, the Old Slavonic may be noticed, in which, besides what has been remarked in §. 255. (*m*), *y*, *i*, and *e*—which latter comes very near the vowel combined with a *y*, and is frequently the remainder of the syllable *ye*—exert an influence on a guttural preceding them, similar to that which the comparative *y* or *i* produces in Greek. Before the *i*, namely, of the nominative plural, and before *ye* in the dative and locative singular, as before *i* and *ye* of the imperative, *kh* becomes *s*; e.g. *gryes-i* from *gryekh*, as *θάσ-σων* from *θάσ-γων*, from *ταχ-*; *g* becomes *ζ*, e.g. *πράζι* from *πράg*, as *μείζων*, *ὀλίζων*, from *μειζγων*, *ὀλιζγων*, from *μεγ-*, *ὀλιγ-*; *k* becomes *ch*, while in Greek *κ* is modified in the same way as *χ*. On account of the contracted nature of the *ζ* (= *δσ*) no assimilation takes place after it, but the *y* entirely disappears, or, in *μείζων*, is pressed into the interior of the word (comp. §. 119.), as in *ἀμείνων*, *χείρων*, which latter may be akin to the Sanscrit *अधरा adhara*, "the under (man)," consequent upon aphæresis of the *a* (comp. §. 401.). With the superlative *μέγιστος* compare the Zend *maxista*, where *ζ* *z*, according to §. 57., answers to the Sanscrit *h* of *महत् mahat*, "great"; while in the above *mas'yéhi*, as in the positive *masas* (euphonically *masô*), *s* stands irregularly for *z*, as if the Zend, by its permutation of consonants in this word, would vie with the Greek; but

we find, Vend. S. p. 214,  $\text{𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬭𐬀}$  *mazyô*, with *z*, which I hold to be a neuter comparative; thus,  $\text{𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬭𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬭𐬀}$  *mazyô vîdvâo*, "the more (literally greater) wise."

301. As in the Latin comparative a suffix has raised itself to universal currency, which in Sanscrit and Greek is only sparingly applied, but was, perhaps, originally, similarly with the form in *tara*,  $\tau\epsilon\rho\omicron\text{-}\varsigma$ , in universal use; so the German, the Slavonic, and Lithuanian, in their degrees of comparison everywhere attach themselves to the more rare forms in Sanscrit and Greek; and indeed in the Gothic the suffix of the comparative shews itself in the same shortened form in which it appears in the Sanscrit, Zend, Greek, and Latin, in its combination with the superlative suffix (see p. 278); namely, as *is*, most plainly in adverbs like *mais*, "more," whose connection with comparatives in the Sanscrit, &c., I first pointed out in the Berl. Jahrb. (May 1827, p. 742). We must divide, therefore, thus, *ma-is*; and this word, as well in the base as in the termination, is identical with the Latin *mag-is* (comp.  $\mu\acute{\epsilon}\gamma\iota\sigma\text{-}\tau\omicron\varsigma$ , p. 402); whence it is clear that the Gothic form has lost a guttural (compare *ma-jor* for *mag-ior*), which, in *mikils*, "great"—which has weakened the old *a* to *i*—appears, according to the rule for the removal of letters (§. 87.), as *k*. *Mais*, therefore, far as it seems to be separated from it, is, in base and formation, related to the Zend *maz-yô* (from *maz-yas*), which we have become acquainted with above (p. 403) in the sense of "more."

"Remark.—There are some other comparative adverbs in *is*, of which, the first time I treated of this subject, I was not in possession, and which Grimm has since (III. 589, &c.) represented as analogous to *mais*. He has further, l. c. p. 88, considered, with Fulda, *hauhis*,  $\alpha\nu\acute{\omega}\tau\epsilon\rho\omicron\nu$ , as the genitive of the positive *hauhs*, "high." For the rest, *hauhis* stands in exactly the same relation to *hauhiza*, "the higher," that *mais* does to *maiza*, "the greater."

Compared with the Zend *max-yô* and Greek *μείζων*, one might believe the *z* in *maiza* belonged to the positive base, partly as the Old High German adds a second comparative suffix to its adverb *mêr*, answering to the Gothic *mais* (*mêriro*, "major") because in *mêr* no formal expression of the comparative relation is retained. *Raihtis*, which Grimm wishes to leave under the forms which, III. p. 88, are considered as genitive, seems to me properly to signify *potius*, or our *rechter*; and I consider it, therefore, as a comparative, although the Old High German *rêhtes*, examined from the point of view of the Old High German, can only be a genitive, and the comparative adverb is *rêhtôr*. The comparative *ga-raihtôza*, "justior," which may be cited in Gothic, does not prevent the assumption that there may have been also in use a *raihtiza*, as in all adjectives *iza* may just as well be expected as *ôza*; for, together with the comparative adverb *frumôzô*, "at first" (R. xi. 35), occurs the superlative *frumists*. Perhaps, however, the genius of the Old High German language has allowed itself to be deceived through the identity of the comparative suffix *is* with the genitive termination *i-s*; and taking some obscure comparatives, which have been transmitted to it for genitives, left them the *s*, which, in evident comparatives, must pass into *r*; but it is also still retained as *s* in *wirs*, 'pejus,' I prefer to consider, also, *allis*, 'omnino,' as a comparative, in order entirely to exclude the Gothic apparent genitive adverbs from the class of adjectives. In the Old High German, together with *alles*, 'omnino,' exists *alles*, 'aliter,' which, according to its origin, is an essentially different word—through assimilation from *alyes*, as above (p. 401) ἄλλος—in which the comparative termination, in the Latin *ali-ter* and similar adverbs, is to be observed. The probability that these forms, which, to use the expression, are clothed as genitives, are, by their origin, comparatives, is still further increased thereby, that together with *eines*,



'*semel*,' and *anderes*, '*aliter*,' there occur, also, forms in the guise of superlatives, namely, *eīnest*, 'once' (see Graff, p. 329), and *anderest*, 'again.' Some comparative adverbs of this sort omit, in Gothic, the *i* of *is*; thus *min-s*, 'less' (compare *minor*, *minus*, for *minior*, *minius*), perhaps *vair-s*, 'worse,' which is raised anew into *vairsiza*, '*pejor*,' and may be connected with the Sanscrit *avara*, '*posterus*,' as above *χείρων* was compared with *अधरा* *adhara*; *seith-s*, '*amplius*' (from *seithu*, 'late'); and probably, also, *suns*, '*statim*,' and *anaks*, '*subito*.'

302. The comparative-suffix *is* required in Gothic, where the consonant *s* is no longer capable of declension,\* an unorganic addition, or otherwise the sibilant would have been necessarily suppressed. The language, however, preserved this letter, as its meaning was still too powerfully perceived, by the favourite addition *an*, which we have seen above, though without the same urgent necessity, joined to participial bases in *nd* in their adjective state (§. 289.). As, then, *s* comes to be inserted between two vowels, it must, by §. 86. (5.), be changed into *z*: hence the modern theme *MAIZAN*, from the original *MAIS*, which has remained unaltered in the adverb. The nominatives masculine and neuter are, according to §§. 140. 141., *maiza*, *maizô*. On the other hand the feminine base does not develop itself from the masculine and neuter base *MAIZAN*—as in general from the unorganic bases in *an* of the indefinite adjectives

---

\* A base in *s*, as the abovementioned *mais*, would not be distinguished from the theme in all the cases of the singular, as also in the nominative and accusative plural, as, of a final double *s*, the latter must be rejected (comp. *drus*, "fall," for *drus-s* from *drusa-s*, p. 377, Rem.). In the nominative and genitive singular, therefore, the form *mais-s* must become *mais*; just as, in the nominative and accusative plural, where *ahman-s* comes from the theme *ahman*. The dative singular is, in bases ending in a consonant, without exception devoid of inflection; and so is the accusative, in substantives of every kind.



brought its feminine comparatives into the more usual path, and gives, as corresponding to the Gothic *minnizeī*, "the lesser" (fem.), not *minnirī*, but *minnira*. The Gothic *s*, however, was, in the High German comparatives, in the earliest period transmuted into *r*, whence, in this respect, *minniro*, *minnira*, has more resemblance to the Latin *minor* than to the Gothic *minniza*, *minnizeī*.

303. The comparative suffix in the Gothic, besides *is*, *iz-an*, exhibits also the form *ōs*, *ōz-an*: it is, however, more rare; but in the Old High German has become so current, that there are more comparatives in it in *ōro* (nominative masculine), *ōra* (nominative feminine and neuter), than in *iro*, *ira*, or *ëro*, *ëra*. The few forms in *ŌZAN* which can be adduced in Gothic are, *svinthōza*, "fortior" (nominative masculine), *frōdōza*, "prudentior," *frumōza*, "prior," *hlaōza*, "hilarior," *garaihtōza*, "justior," *framaldrōza*, "provectior ætate," *usdawdoza*, "sollicitior," *unsvikunthōzā*, "inclarior" (Massmann, p. 47), and the adverbs *sniumundōs*, "σπουδαιότερως," and *alyaleikōs*, "ἐτέρως." How, then, is the *ō* in these forms to be explained, contrasted with the *i* of *IS*, *IZAN*? I believe only as coming from the long *a* of the Sanscrit strong themes *īyāns* or *yañs* (§§. 299. 300.), with *ō*, according to rule, for *ā* (§. 69.). If one goes from the latter form, which, in the Zend, is the only one that can be adduced, then, beside the nasal, which is lost also in the Latin and in the weak cases in the Sanscrit, *yañs* has lost in the Gothic either the *ā* or the *y* (=j), which, when the *ā* is suppressed, must be changed into a vowel. The Gothic *ōs*, *ōz*, and still more the Old High German *ōr*, correspond, therefore, exactly to the Latin *ōr* in *minor*, *minōr-is*, for *minior*. There is reason to assume that, in the Gothic, originally *y* and *ō* existed in juxta-position to one another; and that for *minniza*, "the lesser," was used *minnyōza*, and for *frōdōza*, "the more intelligent," *frōdyōza*.

The forms which have lost the *y* are represented in Latin by *minor*, *minus*, and *plus*, and those with *ð* suppressed by *mag-is*. One cannot, however, in Gothic, properly require any superlatives in *ŌSTA*, nom. *ðst'-s*, corresponding to the comparatives in *ðs*, *ðz*; because this degree in the Sanscrit, Zend, Greek, and Latin always springs from the form of the comparative, contracted to *is*, *ish*. It is, however, quite regular, that, to the *frumôza*, "*prior*," corresponds a *frumists*, "*primus*," not *frumôsts*. To the remaining comparatives in *ðza* the superlative is not yet adduced; but in the more recent dialects the comparatives have formed superlatives with *ð*, after their fashion; and thus, in the Old High German, *ðst* usually stands in the superlative, where the comparative has *ðr*: the Gothic furnishes two examples of this confusion of the use of language, in *lasivôsts*, "*infirmisissimus*" (1 Cor. xii. 22.), and *armôsts*, "*miserimus*" (1 Cor. xv. 19.).

304. In the rejection of the final vowel of the positive base before the suffixes of intensity the German agrees with the languages of the cognate base; hence *sul'-iza*, from *SUTU\**, "*sweet*"; *hard'-iza*, from *HARDU*, "*hard*"; *seith-s* (*thana-seiths*, "*amplius*"), from *SEITHU*, "*late*"; as in the Greek *ἡδίων* from *ἡΔΥ*, and in the Sanscrit *laghîyas* from *laghu*, "*light*." *Ya* also is rejected; hence *spêd'-iza*, from *SPEDYA*, "*late*" (see p. 358. Rem. 7.); *reik'-iza*, from *REIKYA*, "*rich*." One could not therefore regard the *ð*, in forms like *frôðôza*, as merely a lengthening of the *a* in *FRŌDA* (§. 69.), as it would be completely contrary to the principle of these formations, not only not to suppress the final vowel of the positive base, but even to lengthen it. The explanation of the comparative *ð* given at §. 303. remains therefore the only one that can be relied upon.

---

\* The positive does not occur, but the Sanscrit *svâdu-s* and Greek *ἡδύς* lead us to expect a final *u*.

305. In the Old Slavonic, according to Dobrowsky, p. 332, &c., the comparative is formed in three ways, namely,

(1) By masculine *ŭ*, feminine *shi*, neuter *yee*; as *ŭnŭ*, "of the better persons"; *ŭnshi*, "the better persons"; *ŭnyee*, "the best thing," from a positive which has been lost, as *batiza*, *melior*, and *ἀμείνων*; and it is perhaps connected in its base with the latter, so that *α* may have become *o* (§. 255. a.), but *μ*, *ŭ*, as frequently occurs with *n*; and this *ŭ*, with the preceding *o*, becomes *ŭ* (*z*).<sup>\*</sup> *Mnŭ*, "the lesser," fem. *menshi*, neuter *mnyee*, spring, in like manner, from a positive which has been lost. *Boliŭ*, "the greater," fem. *bolshi*, neuter *bolyee*, may be compared with the Sanscrit *balīyān*, "the stronger" (p. 396), fem. *balīyasī*, neuter *balīyas*.<sup>†</sup> For *bolŭ* is also used *bolyeŭ*; and all the remaining comparatives which belong to this class have *yeŭ* for *iŭ*, and thus answer better to the neuter form *yee*. If, as appears to be the case, the form *yeŭ* is the genuine one, then *ye* answers to the Sanscrit *yas* of *jyā-yas*, *bhā-yas*, *śrē-yas*, &c. (§. 300.), and the loss of the *s* is explained by §. 255. (l.); the final *i* of *ye-i*, however, is the definitive pronoun (§. 284), for comparatives always follow, in the masculine and neuter, the definite declension. In the feminine in *shi* it is easy to recognise the Sanscrit *sī* of *īyas-i* or *yas-i*, and herewith also the Gothic *zei* (oblique theme *ZEIN*,

---

\* The *α* in *ἀμείνων* appears to me to be privative; so that *μείνων* would seem to be a sister form to the Latin *minor*, Gothic *minniza*, Slavonic *mnŭ*; and *ἀμείνων* would properly signify "the not lesser," "the not more trifling." Perhaps this word is also inherent in *omnis*; so that *o* for *α* would be the negation, which, in Latin, appears as *in*; in which it may be observed, that, in Sanscrit, *a-sakṛit*, literally "not once," has taken the representation of the meaning "several times."

† The positive *velŭ*, with *v* for *b* and *e* for *o*, occurs only in this definite form (Dobr. p. 320); the primitive and indefinite form must be *vel*. With respect to the stronger *o* corresponding to the weaker letter *e* (§. 255. a.), *bolŭ*, in the positive, answers to the manner in which vowels are strengthened in Sanscrit, as mentioned at §. 298.

p. 404); that is to say, *bol-shi*, "the greater" (fem.), corresponds to the Sanscrit बलीयसी *balīyasī*, "the stronger," and *menshi*, "the lesser," to the Gothic *minn-izei*. While, therefore, the Sclavonic masculine and neuter have lost the *s* of the Sanscrit *yas*, the feminine has lost the *ya* of *yas-i*.\* This feminine *shi*, also, in departure from (2) and (3), keeps free from the definite pronoun. There are some comparative adverbs in *e*, as the abbreviation of *ye* (§. 255. n.), which in like manner dispense with the definite pronoun; thus, *ūne*, "better"; *bole*, "greater"—in Servian MSS. *ūnye*, *bolye*; *pache*, "more," probably related to *παχύς*, *πάσσων*; so that (which is very obscure) the final vowel of *pache* for *pach-ye*, for reasons which have been given before, is, in fact, identical with the Greek *σο* of *πάσ-σον* for *πασ-γον*. The *ch* of *pache* may, according to p. 402, be regarded as a modification of *k*, as the first *σ* of *πάσσων* has developed itself from *χ*. Thus the *ζ* of *dolʒ-ye*, "longer" (neuter and adverb), as euphonic representative of the *g* of *dolg*, *dolga*, *dolgo* (*longus*, -a, -um), answers remarkably to the Greek *ζ* in *μείζων*, *ὀλίζων*, for *μείγων*, *ὀλίγων*. That, however, the positive *dolg* is connected with the Greek *δολιχός* needs scarce to be mentioned. Somewhat more distant is the Sanscrit दीर्घ *dirgha-s*, of the same meaning, in which the frequently-occurring interchange between *r* and *l* is

---

\* It may be proper here to call remembrance to the past gerund, properly a participle, which in the strong cases *vāns*, nom. masc. *vān* for *vāns*, fem. *ushi*, neuter *vat* for *vas*, corresponds to the Sanscrit of the reduplicated preterite in *vas*. The old Sclavonic has here, in the nominative masculine, where the *s* should stand at the end, lost this letter, according to §. 255. (l.); as *by-v*, "qui fuit," but *by-vshi*, "quæ fuit"; and in the masculine also, in preference to the comparative, the *s* again appears in the oblique cases, because there the Sanscrit exhibits after the *s* terminations beginning with a vowel; so in *rek-sh*, "eum qui dixit," the *sh* corresponds to the Sanscrit *vāns-am*, as *rurud-vāns-am*, "eum qui ploravit."

to be noticed (§. 20.). The *i* of *δολιχός*, however, shews itself, by the evidence of the Slavonic and Sanscrit, to be an unorganic addition. Let *garyee*, "*pejus*," be compared with the Sanscrit *garīyas*, "*gravius*," from *guru*, "*heavy*"—according to Burnouf's correct remark from *garu*, as this adjective is pronounced in Pali—through the assimilating influence of the final *u*, to which the kindred Greek *βαρὺς* has permitted no euphonic reaction.

(2) The second, by far the most prevalent form of the Old Slavonic comparative, is nominative masculine *shiŭ*, feminine *shaya*, neuter *shee*. The *i* of *shiŭ* is the definitive pronoun, which, in the feminine, is *ya*, and in the neuter *e* for *ye* (§§. 282. 284.). After the loss, then, of this pronoun, there remains *shi*, *sha*, *she*; and these are abbreviations of *shyo*, *shya*, *shye*, as we have seen, p. 332, the adjective base *SINYO* (nominative *siny*), before its union with the defining *i*, contracted to *sini* (*sini-i*, neuter *sine-e* for *sinye-y*). The definite feminine of *SINYO* is *sinya-ya*; and as to the feminine comparatives not being *shya-ya* but *sha-ya*, this rests on the special ground that sibilants gladly free themselves from a following *y*, especially before *a* (Dobrowsky, p. 12); so in the feminine nominatives *dúsha*, *súsha*, *chasha*, for *súsyā*, &c. (Dobr. p. 279). The relation of the comparative form under discussion to the Sanscrit *यस् yas* and Zend *yas* (p. 401) is therefore to be taken thus, that the *ya* which precedes the *s* is suppressed, as in the above feminines in *shi*; but for it, at the end, is added an unorganic *YO*, which corresponds to the Gothic-Lithuanian *YA* in the themes *NIUYA*, *NAUYA*, "*new*," answering to *नव nava*, *NOVU*, *NEO*, Slavonic *NOVO*. This adjunct *YO* has preserved the comparative sibilant in the masculine and neuter, which, in the first formation, must yield to the euphonic law, §. 255. (1.) Examples of this second formation are, *ún-shiŭ*, "*the better*," masculine and feminine

*úm-shaya*, neuter *úm-shee*; *púst-shiř* from *púst*, theme *PŪSTO*, "desert." Hence it is clear that the final vowel of the positive base is rejected, as in all the kindred languages, however difficult the combination of the *t* with *ř*. Even whole suffixes are rejected, in accordance with §. 298.; as, *glúb-shiř* from *glúbok*, "deep" (definite, *glúboky-ř*), *sladshiř* from *sladok*, "sweet."\*

(3) Masculine *yeřshiř*, feminine *yeřshaya*, neuter *yeřshee*; but after *sch*, *sh* and *ch*, *ař* stands for *yeř*: and this *ař* evidently stands only euphonically for *yař*, since the said sibilants, as has been already remarked, gladly divest themselves of a following *y*: hence *blasch-ařshiř*, "the better" (masculine), from *blag* (theme *BLAGO*), "good,"† since *g*, through the influence of the *y* following, gives way to a sibilant, which has subsequently absorbed the *y*; compare *ὀλίζ-ων*, for *ὀλιγ-ίων*, *ὀλιγ-γων* (p. 402): so *tish-aishiř*, from *tikh* (theme *TIKHO*), "still,"‡ as in the Greek *θάσ-ων* from *ταχύς*. As example of the form

---

\* I hold *ko*, whence in the nom. masc. *k*, for the suffix of the positive base, but the preceding *o* for the final vowel of the lost primitive; and this *o* corresponds either to a Sanscrit *a*, according to §. 255. (a.), or to an *u*, according to §. 255. (c.); for example, *tano-k*, "thin," theme *TANOKO*, corresponds to the Sanscrit *tanu-s*, "thin," Greek *τανν*; and *slado-k* to the Sanscrit *svádu-s*, "sweet," with exchange of the *v* for *ř*, according to §. 20. Thus the above *slud-shiř* shews itself to be originally identical, as well in the suffix of the positive as of the other degrees with the Greek *ῥδ-ίων* and Gothic *sut-isa* (§. 304.), far as the external difference may separate them; and to the Slavonic is due, as to the truer preservation of the fundamental word, the preference above the Greek and Gothic, although, on account of the unexpected transition of the *v* into *ř*, the origin of the Slavonic word is more difficult to recognise.

† Dobrowsky says (p. 334) from *blagyi* (this is the definite, see §. 284.): it is, however, evident that the comparative has not arisen from the adjective compounded with a pronoun, but from the simple indefinite one.

‡ Compare the Sanscrit adverb *túshñim*, "still," with the remark at §. 255. (m.).



with *yeĩ*, *yún-yeĩshiĩ*, "junior," from *yún*, may serve. Whence comes, then, the *yeĩ* or *ai* (for *yai*), which this formation shews before the second? It might be supposed that to the first formation in *yeĩ*, where, for example, also *yún-yeĩ*, "the younger (man)," occurs, that of the second has also been added, as in Old High German *mérero*, "the greater" (masculine), and in Gothic, probably, *vairsiza*, "the worse" (p. 405), are raised twice to the comparative degree; and as, in Persian, the superlatives in *terín*, in my opinion, contain, as their last element, the comparative ईयांस *íyáns*, which forms, in the nominative masculine, *íyán*, and from this could be easily contracted to *ín*. In Persian the comparative is formed through *ter*; as, *behter*, "the better," whence *behterín*, "the best." Now it deserves remark, that in Old Slavonic the formation before us frequently occurs with a superlative meaning, while in the more modern dialects the superlative relation is expressed through the comparative with *nai*, "more," prefixed (probably from *mai* = Gothic *mais*, according to §. 255. (1.). The only objection to this mode of explanation is this, that the element of the first formation *ye-ĩ* has not once laid aside the definitive pronoun *i*, which is foreign to the comparative; so that therefore in *yún-yeĩshiĩ* the said pronoun would be contained twice. There is, however, another way of explaining this *yeĩshiĩ* or *(y)aiishiĩ*, namely, as an exact transmission of the Sanscrit *íyas* or *yas*, from which the second formation has only preserved the sibilant; but the third, together with this letter, may have retained also that which preceded. Still, even in this method, the *i* of *yeĩ*, *(y)ai*, is embarrassing, if it be not assumed that it owes its origin to a transposition of the *ĩ* of *íya*.

306. As to the remark made at p. 400, that among the European languages the Greek only has preserved the nasal, which the Sanscrit shews in the strong cases of the comparative suffix *íyáns*, I must here admit a limitation in



with which the Lithuanian, even to the present day, continues to use the Sanscrit comparative suffix *īyāns*, or rather its more rare form preferred in Zend *yāns*.

307. The Lithuanian superlative suffix is only another modification of the comparative. The nasal, that is to say, which in the latter is transposed, is, in the superlative, left in its original place: it is, however, as often happens, resolved into *u*,\* and to the *s* which ends the theme in the Sanscrit, which, in Lithuanian, is not declinable (§. 128.), is added *ia*: hence *GERAUSIA*, the nominative of which, however, in departure from *gerénis*, has dropped, not the *a*, but the *i*; thus *gerausa-s*, gen. *gerausio*, and, in the feminine, *gerausa*, *gerausiós*; in which forms, contrary to the principle which is very generally followed in the comparative and elsewhere, the *i* has exercised no euphonic influence.

“Remark.—With respect to the Sanscrit gradation-suffixes *tara*, *tama*, I have further to add, that they also occur in combination with the inseparable preposition *उत्* *ut*; hence *ut-tara*, ‘the higher,’ *ut-tama*, ‘the highest,’ as above (§. 295.) *af-tuma*, and in Latin *ex-timus*, *in-timus*. I think, however, I recognise the base of *ut-tara*, *ut-tama*, in the Greek *ύς* of *ύσ-τερος*, *ύσ-τατος*, with the unorganic spir. asp., as in *έκάτερος*, corresponding to the Sanscrit *ékatara-s*, and with *σ* from *τ* (compare §. 99.), in which it is to be remarked that also in the Zend for *ut-tara*, *ut-tama*, according to §. 102., *us-tara*, *us-těma*, might be expected.

---

\* Comp. §. 255. (*y*.); in addition to which it may be here further remarked, that in all probability the *u* also in Gothic conjunctives like *haitau*, *haihaityau* is of nasal origin.

## NUMERALS.

## CARDINAL NUMBERS.

308. I. In the designation of the number *one* great difference prevails among the Indo-European languages, which springs from this, that this number is expressed by pronouns of the 3d person, whose original abundance affords satisfactory explanation regarding the multiplicity of expressions for *one*. The Sanscrit *ēka*, whose comparative we have recognised in the Greek *ἐκάτερος*, is, in my opinion, the combination of the demonstrative base *ē*, of which hereafter, with the interrogative base *ka*, which also, in combination with *api*, “also” (nom. masc. *kōpi*), signifies “whoever”; and even without this *api*, if an interrogative expression precedes, as Bhagavad-Gîtâ, II. 21, कथं स पुरुषः पार्थ कङ् घातयति हन्ति कम् *kathan sa purushah Pârtha kan ghâtayati hanti kam*, “How does this person, O Pârthas, leave one dead, slay one?” The Zend *aêva*, is connected with the Sanscrit pronominal adverbs *ēva*, “also,” “only,” &c., and *ēvām*, “so,” of which the latter is an accusative, and the former, perhaps, an instrumental, according to the principle of the Zend language (§. 158.). The Gothic *ain*’-s, theme *AINA*, our *einer*, rests on the Sanscrit defective pronoun *ēna* (§. 72.), whence, among others, comes the accusative masculine *ēna-m*, “this.” To this pronominal base belongs, perhaps, also the Old Latin *oinos*, which occurs in the Scipionian epitaphs, from which the more modern *ūnus* may be deduced, through the usual transition of the old *ō* into *u*, being lengthened to make up for the *i* which is suppressed. Still *ūnus* shews, also, a surprising resemblance to the Sanscrit *ūna-s*, which properly means “less,” and is prefixed to the higher numerals in order to express diminution by one; as, *ūnavinshati*, “undeviginti,” *ūmatrinshat*, “undetriginta.” This *ūnas* would

have appeared in Latin, most accurately retained under the form of *ūnu-s*, or, more anciently, *ūno-s*. The Greek 'EN is founded, it is highly probable, in like manner, on the demonstrative base *एन éna*, and has lost its final vowel, as the Gothic *AINA*, in the masculine nominative *ains*: with respect to the *é* for *ê* compare *ἐκάτερος*. On the other hand, *οἶος*, "*unicus*," if it has arisen from *οἶνος* (compare *oinos*), as *μείζω* from *μείζονα*, has retained the Indian diphthong more truly, and has also preserved the final vowel of *एन éna*. If *ὄνος*, the number one in dice, really has its name from the idea of unity, one might refer this word to the demonstrative base *अन ana*, Slavonic *ONO* (nominative *on*, "the former"), which also plays a part in the formation of words, where *ωνη* corresponds to the Sanscrit suffix *āna* (feminine of the masculine and neuter *ana*), if it is not to be referred to the medial participle in *āna*, as *μυνη* to *māna*. The Old Slavonic *yedin*, "one," is clearly connected with the Sanscrit *आदि ādi*, "the first," with *y* which has been prefixed according to §. 255. (n.): on the other hand, in the Lithuanian *wiena-s*, if it is connected with the Gothic *AINA* and Sanscrit *एन éna*, an unorganic *w* has made its appearance. In regard to the *ie* for *ê* compare, also, *wies-te*, "knowledge," with *वेदि vēdmi*, "I know."

"Remark.—The German has some remarkable expressions, in which the number *one* lies very much concealed as to its form, and partly, too, as to its idea: they are, in Gothic, *haihs*, "one-eyed," *hanfs*, "one-handed," *halts*, "lame," and *halbs*, "half." In all these words the number one is expressed by *ha*; and in this syllable I recognise a corruption of the abovementioned Sanscrit *क ka* for *एक éka*, "one," which is founded on the universal rule for the mutation of consonants (§. 87.). It would be erroneous to refer here to the Zend *𐬨𐬀 ha* of *𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀 ha-kērēt*, "once" (Sanskrit *सकृत् sakṛit*), as the Zend *𐬨 h*



disposition of the *h* to *ai* was already satisfied. We must further draw remembrance to the Latin *cocles*, in which, however, the notion of unity is evidently represented only by the *c*, for the *o* must be left to the *ocles* as a derivation from *oculus*: *cæcus*, however, if *æ* is the correct way of writing, and if the number one is contained therein, would spring from *ca-icus*; and the Indian *a*, therefore, is weakened, as in Gothic, to *i*, which, in Latin compounds, is the usual representative of an *a* of the base (§. 6.). Let us now examine the one-handed. Its theme is, in Gothic, *HAUFA*, nominative abbreviated *haufs*; so that here, as in a skein, two bases and a pronominal remnant, as mark of case, lie together. The numeral is here the most palpable element: it is more difficult to search out the hand. In the isolated state no theme *nfa* could be expected; but in contractions, and also in prefixed syllables of reduplication, a vowel of the base is often rejected; as, in the Sanscrit *जग्मिज jagmima*, "we went," of the base *गम् gam*, only *gm* is left; and in the Greek, *πίπτω* for *πιπέτω*, *ΠΕΤ*, which corresponds to the Sanscrit *पत pat*, "to fall," is abbreviated to *πτ*. We shall, therefore, be compelled to assume that a vowel has fallen out between the *n* and *f* of *HA-NFA*. If it was an *i* which was displaced, then *NIFA* might pass as a transposition of the Sanscrit *पाणि pāni*, "hand," with *f* for *p*, according to §. 87. In *HA-LTA*, "lame"—nominative *halts*—must *ha* again pass for a numeral and *ha-lta* may originally signify "one-footed," for it is (Mark ix. 45.) opposed to the Gothic *tvans fōtuns habandin*, "having two feet," where it is said 'it is better for thee to enter into life with one foot, than having two feet to be cast into hell.' It is at least certain, that a language which had a word for one-footed would very fitly have applied it in this passage. The last element, however, in *HA-LTA* means the foot, so we must remember that, in Sanscrit, several appellations of this member are derived from bases which mean "to go." Now, there is, in

Gothic, a base *LITH*, "to go," with an aspirated *t*, indeed; but in contractions the consonants do not always remain on the same grade which they adopt in the simple word; e.g. the *t* of *quatuor* appears as *d* in many derivations and contractions, without this *d* thereby dissembling its original identity with the *t* of *quatuor* and चतुर् *chatur*. So, then, *HA-LTA* may stand for *HA-LITHA*; and it may be remarked, that from the base *LIT* comes, also, *lithus*, "the limb," as that which is moveable. Before I pass on to the explanation of *halb*, I must mention that J. Grimm divides the pronoun *selber*, as it appears to me very properly, into two parts; so that the syllable *si* of the Gothic *silba* devolves on the reciprocal (*sci-na*, *si-s*, *si-k*). With respect to the last portion, he betakes himself to a verb *leiban*, "to remain," and believes that *silba* may, perhaps, have the meaning of "that which remains in itself, enduring." Be this as it may, it is clear that *halbe*—the theme is *HALBA*—might be, with equal right, divided into two parts; and it appears to me, that, according to its origin, this word can have no better meaning than, perhaps, "containing a part"; so that the ideas *one* and *a part*, *remnant*, or something similar, may be therein expressed, and, according to the principle of the Sanscrit possessive compounds, the notion of the possessor must be supplied, as in the already explained *haihs*, "having one eye." In the Gothic, also, *laiba* means "remnant." It scarcely needs remark, that *halb* is no original and simple idea, for which a peculiar simple word might be expected, framed to express it. The half is one part of the whole, and, in fact, equal to the absent part. The Latin *dimidius* is named after the mean through which the division went. The Zend has the expression नैमा, *naēma*, for *halb*, according to a euphonic law for *nēma*, which in Sanscrit, among other meanings, signifies "part": this is probably the secondary meaning, and the half, as part of the whole,



the original. If it is so, नेम *néma* appears to me a very ingenious designation for a half, for it is a regular contraction of न *na*, "not," and इम *ima*, "this or that"; and the demonstrative therefore points at the "this or that" portion of the whole excluded by the negative *na*. In Sanscrit, *halb* is termed, among other appellations, सामि *sāmi*, in which one recognises both the Latin *semi* and the Greek ἥμι; and the three languages agree in this also, that they use this word only without inflection at the beginning of compounds. As to its origin, सामि *sāmi* may be viewed as a regular derivation from सम *sama*, "equal," "similar," by a suffix *i*, by which the suppression of the final vowel, and widening of the initial vowel of the primitive, become necessary. If this explanation is well founded, then in this designation of *halb* only one part of the whole, and, indeed, one equal to the deficient part, would be expressed, and the सामि *sāmi* would be placed as ἕτερον over against the deficient ἕτερον; and the Sanscrit and German supply each other's deficiencies, so that the former expresses the equality, the latter the unity, of the part; i.e. each of the two languages only half expresses the half. As to the relation, however, of the Greek ἥμις to ἥμι, it follows from what has been already said—that the latter is not an abbreviation of the former, but the former is a derivation from the latter; and indeed I recognise in *सु* the Sanscrit possessive *sva*, "*suus*," which, remarkably enough, in Zend enters into combinations with numerals with the meaning "part"; e.g. त्रिश्वा *thri-shva*, "a third part," चतुश्वा *chathru-shva*, "a fourth part." In the accusative these words, according to §. 42., are written त्रिशुम् *thri-shū-m*, चतुशुम् *chathru-shū-m*, of which the last member comes very near to the Greek *सु* of ἥμις. ἥμις means, therefore, "having one equal part," and the simple ἥμι means only the equal. The Sanscrit designation of "the whole" deserves further to be mentioned, सकलम् *sa-kala-s*,

which, as that which enters into the parts and unites them, is opposed to the German *halb* as applying to one part, and in a measure furnishes a commentary and guarantee for the correctness of my view of the latter. The word **सकल** *sakala* consists, though this is scarcely perceptible, of **स** *sa*, "with," and **कल** *kalá*, "part," so that, if the latter is regarded in the dual relation—and the last member of a compound may express each of the three numbers—**सकल** *sakala* expresses that in which the two parts are together. Thus the word **समग्र** *sam-agra*, "full," is used especially in regard to the moon, as a body with points, i. e. that in which the two points rest. Transposed into Greek relations of sound *sakala-s* would give, perhaps, **όκαλος**, or **όκελος**, or **όκολος**; but from this the present **όλος** has rejected the middle syllable, as is the case in **κόρος**, **κούρος**, compared with **कुमार** *kumára-s*, "a boy."

309. II. The theme of the declension is, in Sanscrit, *dva*, which is naturally inflected with dual terminations: the Gothic gives for it *tva*, according to §. 87., and inflects it, in the want of a dual, as plural, but after the manner of pronouns: nominative *tvaí*, *tvós*, *tva*; dative *tvaim*; accusative *tvans*, *thvós*, *tva*.\* The Sanscrit displays in the dual

---

\* One would expect *tvó*, on account of the form being monosyllabic (§. 231.). In the genitive masculine and neuter I should look for *tvi-sé*, after the analogy of *thi-sé*, "*horum*," from *THA*, or *tvaisé*, according to the analogy of the definite adjectives (§. 287.), and according to the common declension *tv'-é* (p. 276). Now, however, the form *tvaddyé* occurs three times in the sense of *duorum*; whence it is clear that the genitive of the base *TVA* was no longer in use in the time of Ulfilá. The form *tvaddy'-é* belongs to a theme *TVADDYA* (as *hary'é* from *HARYA*), and appears, from the ordinal number, which in Sanscrit is *dvi-tíya* for *dva-tíya*, to have introduced itself into the cardinal number. From *tvaddyé*, by rejecting both the *d*—of which one is, besides, superfluous—and by changing the *y* into a vowel, we arrive at the Old High German *zueiô*, according to Isid. *zueiyó*, as *fior* from *fidvor*; also definite, *zueiéró*, which, in Gothic, would be *tvaddyaisé*. Grimm appears, on the other hand, to have

no difference between the pronominal declension and the ordinary one, and *dvāu* is declined like *ṛikāu* (p. 274), *dvē* feminine like *dhārē* (p. 285), and *dvē* neuter like *dānē* (p. 276). As, however, the notions of number are much akin to those of the pronouns; and as *अल्प* *alpa*, "a little," forms, in the nominative plural masculine, *अल्पे* *alpē* (§. 228.); so from the masculine theme *dva*, if it had a plural, might be expected *dvē*, to which, according to §. 78., the Gothic *tvai* would correspond, which it is not requisite to regard like adjectives terminating similarly, as if compounded with a definite pronoun, principally because a genitive *tvaižē*, which would make the latter view necessary, does not occur. To *tvai* corresponds, also, *bai*, "both," from the theme *BA*, neuter *ba*, dative *baim*, accusative and masculine *bans*, which is to be deduced through aphaeresis from the Sanscrit base *ubha*, Old Slavonic *oba* (nominative and accusative dual), from the base *OBO*. In Zend the masculine of the number two is *𐬔𐬀𐬎𐬌* *dva* (for *dvā*, §. 208.), with which the Old Slavonic *dva* is identical, while the feminine neuter *dye* answers to the Sanscrit *dvē* (§. 255. e.). The Zend neuter is *duyē*, with euphonic *y* (§. 43.), and the *v* resolved into *u*. In the Greek and Latin *δύω*, *duo*, the

---

have taken occasion, from the Old High German forms, to suppose a Gothic *tvaiyē* and *tvaiiaizē*, in which I cannot agree with him. The Old Northern, by exchanging the dental medials with gutturals, gives *tvaggya* for the Gothic *tvaddyē*. In the accusative plural feminine is found, in Gothic, together with *tvós* also *tveihnós*, which presupposes a masculine and neuter base *TVEIHNA*, fem. *TVEIHNŌ*; and in which the entrance of the *HNA* reminds us of the appended pronoun *स्मा* *sma*, discussed at §. 165. &c., which, by metathesis, and with the alteration of the *s* into *h*, has in Prakrit and Pali taken the form *mha* (comp. §. 169.). On this Gothic *TVEIHNA* are based the Old High German nominative and accusative masculine *zuénē* with loss of the *h*. The feminine, however, appears in Old High German free from this addition, and is in the nominative and accusative *zuô*, also abbreviated *zua* (comp. §. 69.).

old *v* is, in the same way, resolved into the *u*, but the final vowel of the base is not abandoned:  $\delta\acute{\upsilon}\omega$  answers to the Veda masculine *dva* (§. 208.); but in distinguishing the genders the Greek is surpassed by the Latin and the other European sister languages. The Lithuanian has *du* in the nominative masculine, and *dvi* in the nominative feminine; with the closer explanation of which, and their dual declension, we will not here occupy ourselves further. It is, however, to be remarked of the Sanscrit numeral, that the *a* of *dva* is, in the beginning of compounds, weakened to *i* (compare §. 6.): hence *dvi*, which is represented by the native grammarians as the proper theme (comp. p. 102). The Greek, in which  $\delta\acute{\upsilon}$  is inadmissible, gives in its stead  $\delta\iota$ ; hence  $\delta\iota\mu\acute{\eta}\tau\omega\rho = \text{द्विमातृ} dvimātri$  (theme), "having two mothers." The Zend and Latin agree in the corruption of this *dvi* very remarkably, in this point, that they have both dropped the *d* and have both hardened the *v* to *b*; hence  $\text{𐬀𐬕𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬔𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬎𐬌} bipaitistana$ , "with two nipples," as *biceps*, *bidens*, and others. From this abbreviated *bi* comes, in both languages, also the adverb *bis*, "twice," corresponding to the Sanscrit *dvīs* and Greek  $\delta\acute{\iota}\varsigma$ : the Greek  $\delta\iota$ , however, in compounds, cannot be regarded as an abbreviation of  $\delta\acute{\iota}\varsigma$ , as is wont to be done. The German dialects, with exception of the Old High German, require, according to §. 87., *tvi* for *dvi*, as the initial member of compounds: this is furnished by the Anglo-Saxon in compound words like *tvi-fēte*, "*bipes*," *tvi-finger*, "*duos digitos longus*," *tvi-hive*, "*bicolor*." The Old High German gives *zui* (= *zvi*) or *qui*; e.g. *zui-beine*, "*bipes*," *qui-falt*, "*duplex*" (Grimm III. 956.). The adverb *zuiro*, more fully *zuirot*, also *quiro*, "twice," belongs, according to its formation, but not without the intervention of another word, to the above *dvīs*,  $\delta\acute{\iota}\varsigma$ , *bis*; but it is clear, from the Old Northern *tris-var*, that *ro* has arisen from *sva* by apocope of the *a* and vocalization of the *v*, perhaps more

anciently to *u*, and thence to *o* (§. 77.), as in *dēo* (also *diu*), "a servant," genitive *dime-s*, from the base *DIWA*. Whence comes, however, the Old Northern *svar*, which occurs in *thrisvar*, "thrice," and with which the English *ce* in twice, thrice, is connected. I believe that the *s*, which precedes the *var*, is certainly identical with the *s* of द्विस् *dvis*, "δῖς," and त्रिस् *tris*, "τρίς," but the annexed *var* corresponds to the Sanscrit substantive *vāra*, which signifies period and time; hence *ēkavāra*, "once" (see Haughton), and *vāramvāram*, "repeatedly." Hence comes the Persian *bār*, e.g. *bār-i*, "once"; and as the original meaning of this word is "time," and we have already seen, in Persian, the transition of the *v* into *b*, we may hence very satisfactorily explain the Latin *ber* in the names of months; and *Septem-ber*, therefore, is literally the seven-time, i.e. the seventh-time segment of the year. But to return to the Old Northern *svar*, in *trisvar*, *thrisvar*, which we must now divide into *tris-var*, *thris-var*, according to the explanation which has been given, the idea of time is expressed therein twice, which is not surprising, as in the Old High German *mériro*, also mentioned above, the comparative suffix is twice contained, because the first time, from the genius of the language, it is no longer felt with sufficient clearness. As then, in Old High German, first the *r*, and more lately also the *o* (from *v*), of *s-var* has been dropped, we see, in the Middle High German *drir* from *dris*, the form again returned into the original limits of the Sanscrit-Greek *tris*.

310. III. The theme is, in the Sanscrit, Greek, Latin, Lithuanian, and Old Slavonic, *TRI*, whence in the Gothic, according to §. 87., *THRI*, and in Zend, according to another law of sound (§. 47.), exactly the same. The declension of this base is, in most of the languages mentioned, perfectly regular: it is only to be remarked of the Gothic, in which, however, all the cases cannot be

adduced, that on account of the word being monosyllabic, the *i* is not suppressed before vowel terminations, but becomes *iy* (compare the Pali, §. 266.): hence the genitive *thriy-ē*, and nominative neuter *thriy-a* (§. 233.). Besides these, the dative *thri-m* and the accusative *thri-ns* may be cited. The Sanscrit forms the genitive from an extended theme *traya*,\* hence *trayā-n-ām*; while the Zend *thry-āim* or *thray-āim* comes from the original base. Both languages, however, agree in this, that 𑂔𑂩 *tri*, 𑂔𑂩𑂪𑂰 *thri*, is only a theme of the masculine and neuter; and although, according to its termination, it might quite as well be assigned to the feminine, nevertheless the feminine number has an appellation peculiar to it, which is rather different from *tri*, *thri*, of which the theme is *tisar* (𑂔𑂩𑂪𑂰 *tisri*, §. 1.), the *a* of which, in the Sanscrit nominative, accusative, and vocative, is regularly suppressed; hence 𑂔𑂩𑂪𑂰𑂪𑂰 *tisras*† for *tisaras*, Zend 𑂔𑂩𑂪𑂰𑂪𑂰𑂪𑂰 *tisarō*.

311. IV. The Sanscrit feminine theme 𑂔𑂩𑂪𑂰𑂪𑂰 *chatasar* (*chatasri*), follows the analogy of the *tisar* just mentioned; and the similarity between the two forms is so great that it appears, which is perhaps the fact, that the number three is contained in the fourth numeral; so that *tisr-as* would be a weakened form of *tasr-as*, and the *cha* prefixed to the number four would be identical with the particle, which means “and,” and which, in other places, is attached to the end of the word. If one wished to press still farther into the deep mystery of the appellations of numbers, one might moot the question whether

---

\* With this extended theme one may compare the Old High German nominative masculine *driē* in Isidor, which belongs to a theme *DRIA*, with pronominal declension. The feminine *driō*, from the base *DRIO*, of the same sound, presupposes in like manner a masculine and neuter theme *DRIA*.

† In the accusative, *tisras* is more organic than 𑂔𑂩𑂪𑂰𑂪𑂰 *tis̄is*, as it must stand according to the common rule (comp. §. 242.).

the syllables *tasa* in the theme *cha-ta-sar*, might not be considered as identical with the demonstrative bases of the same sound. I do not think, at least, that any language whatever has produced special original words for the particular designation of such compacted and peculiar ideas as three, four, five, &c.; and as the appellations of numbers resist all comparison with the verbal bases,\* the pronominal bases remain the only means by which to explain them. Without attempting to resolve the difficulties in the individual numbers, we will express the conjecture, that the operation of speech with regard to the numbers might originally be expounded nearly in this manner—that one might perhaps say, “it, this, that, and it, and this,” &c.: thus the pronouns might actually suffice better than they appear to do in the forms of numerals which lie before us. But an obscuration of the original clearness of this method, which would occur in the course of time, would be owing also to this, that a simple or compound word might undertake immediately to designate this or that number, and no other one, though equally adapted to denote it.

312. The masculine and neuter of the number four have, in Sanscrit, चत्वारि *chatvār* as the strong theme, and चतुर् *chatur* as the weak\*; hence, nom. masc. *chatvār-as*, accus. *chatur-as*, nom. accus. voc. neut. *chatvār-i* the gen. masc. and neut. is irregularly *chatur-ṇ-ām* for *chatur-ām*, since, according to the analogy of bases terminating with a vowel, a nasal

---

\* Only in three might one perhaps think of the Sanscrit base तृ *tṛi*, “to pass over,” and consider three, therefore, as the more (than two). This verbal notion of passing over, adding, is, however, also the only possible one which could be blended with the names of numbers.

† To §. 129. is further to be added, that from the strong theme springs also the form of the nom., acc., and voc. plural of the neuter; while this kind forms the whole singular and dual from the weak theme.

is introduced (§. 246.). In the Zend the strong theme is 𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬎𐬭𐬀 *chathmār*, according to §. 47.; hence, nom. masc. 𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬎𐬭𐬀𐬀𐬭𐬀 *chathmārō*; and the weak theme is, by transposition, 𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬎𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀 *chathru*; as, *chathru-māhīm*, "four months" (accus. sing.), Vend. S. p. 248. For the Sanscrit genitive चतुर्णाम *chaturṇām*, we find 𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬎𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬎𐬭𐬀 *chathrusnaīm* (l. c. pp. 204 and 206, with *a* inserted, 𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬎𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬎𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬎𐬭𐬀 *chathrusanaīm*); but in the beginning of compound words it is more frequently found 𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬎𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀 *chathmarē*; so that the weakening consists merely in the shortening of the *ā*, and, according to §. 44., an *ē* is added to the *r*; as *chathmarē-paitistanyō*, "of her with four teats" (gen. fem.), Vend. S. p. 83. As to the European sister languages, one must expect, according to §. 14., for *ch*, gutturals and labials, hence, in Gothic *fidvōr*, and aspirates for smooth letters, according to §. 87. This *fidvōr* rests on the strong theme चत्वार *chatvār*, but in the state of declension extends the theme by an unorganic *i*, hence dative *fidvōri-m*, the only adduceable case. In Old Northern the nom. masc. is *fiōri-r*. The original theme *fidvōr* appears in the compound *fidvōr-tiguns*, "forty" (accus.): on the other hand, *fidur* in *fidur-dōgs*, "four days," is referable to the Indian weak theme *chatur*; whence, however, it should not be said that the weak theme of the German, Lithuanian, and Slavonic has been brought from an Asiatic original site; for it was as easy for the Gothic, by suppressing the last vowel but one, to contract its *fidvōr* to *fidur*—like *thiu-s*, "servant," from *thiva-s*, gen. *thivi-s*—as for the Sanscrit to abbreviate *chatvār* to *chatur*. The Lithuanian theme follows the example of abbreviation in its interior, but extends the theme at the end; the masc. nom. is *keturi*, and the feminine *keturios*: *KETURIA* serves the latter as theme: the masculine *keturi* is analogous with *geri*, "the good" (see p. 251. Rem. <sup>†</sup>), and therefore has *KETURIE*, euphonic for *KETURIA*, as its base. The genitive and



accusative masculine *keturi-ŭ*, *keturi-s*, proceed from the base *KETURI*. The Old Slavonic gives *CHETYRI* as the masculine and feminine theme, and inflects the masculine like *GOSTI*, and the feminine like *KOSTI* (p. 349); hence nom. *chetyry-e*, *chetyri*, just as in the third numeral *triy-e*, “*tri*”; and the feminine form may, in both, represent also the masculine, and always supplies the neuter. But the collective *chetvero*, and the ordinal number *chetverty-ŭ*, stand in closer agreement with the Indian strong theme चत्वारः *chatvār*: the Latin *quatuor*, also, which, in disadvantageous comparison with the kindred languages, has lost the capability of declension, and the Greek τέσσαρες, τέτταρες, rest on the strong चत्वारस् *chatvāras*; so that τέτταρες, just like the Pali form चत्तारो *chattārō*, has gained its last *t* by assimilation of the semi-vowel. The Prakrit form, also, which I am not able to quote, will scarcely be other than *chattārō* (comp. §. 300). With regard to the initial *τ* let reference be made to §. 14., by which this *τ* is accommodated with the Æolic πέντες, which refers itself to the weak theme चतुर् *chatur*. With the Zend transposition of the weak theme to *chathru* (p. 439.), at the beginning of compounds, agrees surprisingly the Latin *quadru*, in *quadrupes* and other words. The adverbial *s*, by which द्विस *dvīs*, “twice,” and त्रिस *tris*, Zend *thris*, “thrice,” are formed, is, in the Sanscrit *chatur*, suppressed by the rule of sound mentioned in §. 94.; hence *chatur*, “four times,” for *chatur-s*. That the latter has originally existed one learns from the Zend transposed form चθुरु *chathrus*. The Latin has already, in the number three, without being forced by a compulsory law, dropped the *s*, and hence *ter* and *quater* appear only as internal modifications of the cardinal numbers.

313. V. Sanscrit पञ्च *panchan*, Zend پنچ *panchan*, Lithuanian *penki*,\* Greek πέντε, Æolic πέμπε, Gothic

---

\* This is the nominative masculine: the feminine is *penkios*, and holds the

*fimf*,\* Latin *quinque*, Old Slavonic *pyaty*.† The Sanscrit-Zend *panchan* is the theme, and the genders are not distinguished in this and the following numbers; hence the nominative, accusative, and vocative have always singular neuter forms (therefore *pancha*, according to §. 139.): the other cases shew plural terminations; as, genitive पञ्चानाम् *panchānām*, Zend 𐬨𐬀𐬯𐬭𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬭𐬀 *panchananm* (Vend. S. p. 52). By this irregularity in the declension the Sanscrit and Zend prepare us in a measure for complete want of inflection in Greek and Latin. Moreover, it is remarkable that not one of the European languages will at all recognise the final nasal, while, nevertheless, that of *saptan*, *navan*, and *daśan* is found also in Gothic and Lithuanian; and in Lithuanian, also, that of अष्टन् *ashtan*, “eight” (*asztūni*). The Greek has frequently preserved an old *a*

---

the same relation to it that *keturios* does to *keturi* (p. 428). The same obtains with the appellations of the numbers 6, 7, 8, 9, of which we give only the masculine.

\* Occurs only uninflected: in the declined theme, the unorganic addition of an *i* must be expected, as in *FIDVŌRI*; and is also actually the case in Old High German in this number, and the appellations for six to ten inclusive. In Gothic, however, occur also *saihs*, “six,” *sibun*, “seven,” *ahtau*, “eight,” and *taihun*, “ten,” only uninflected, and therefore without the unorganic *i*; but from *niun*, “nine,” comes the genitive *niun-ē*, which indeed might also have proceeded from a theme *NIUN* or *NIUNA*, but which I doubt not comes from *NIUNI*.

† The theme is *PYATI*, and is inflected like *KOSTI* (p. 348), and with singular terminations; so that one has to look upon this numeral as a feminine collective, beside which the object numbered stands in apposition in like cases. The same obtains with the appellations for the numbers 6 to 10 inclusive. As to the formal relation of *PYATI* to *panchan*, we must observe, that of the latter, in Slavonic, only the syllable *pa* is represented by *pya* (§. 255. n.); but *TI* is a derivational suffix, as in *SHESTI*, “six,” *DEVYATI*, “nine,” and *DESYATI*, “ten,” and corresponds to the Sanscrit suffix *ti* in the multiplied numbers *viṅśati*, “twenty,” *śaṣṭi*, “sixty,” &c.

before a nasal originally there, while it has preferred weakening the same to *e* before other consonants; hence ἔτυψα(μ, ν), ἔτυψαν, but ἔτυψε(τ); τέτυφα(μι) but τέτυφε(τι); and so ἑπτα, ἐννέα, δέκα: not πέντα, however, but πέντε. It might therefore well be assumed, that the nasal in Indo-Zend numerals is a later addition, but that *cha* is the particle signifying "and," which, in the number four, we have taken for the prefix (§. 311.). In Latin, also, *quinque* is, in regard to its termination, similar to words connected with the particle *que*, as in πέντε the enclitic τε, which is akin to *que* and *cha* (see §. 14.) appears to be contained. This being the case, I would prefer regarding *pan* in पञ्च *pancha* as euphonic for *pam*, and the *m* as a neuter case-sign; but the *pa* which remains over as a pronoun, and indeed as identical with the *ka* which occurs in the number one (§. 308.), in regard to which one might advert to the old Latin *pidpid* for *quidquid*, ποῖος for κοῖος, &c. Five would, therefore, literally mean "and one," and in fact that one which is to be added to the four.\*

314. VI. Sanscrit पञ्च *shash*, Zend 𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬭𐬀 *csvas*, Lithuanian *szeszi*, Old Slavonic *shesty* (theme *SHESHTI*, p. 430, Rem. †), Gothic *saihs* (see §. 82.), Latin *sex*, Greek ἑξ. One may justly suppose that the guttural which begins the Zend word has also existed in Sanscrit, for instance, षष्

---

\* Ag. Benary, who likewise recognises in *pancha* the particle "and," seeks to compare the preceding syllable with *pāni*, "hand" (Berl. Jahrb. 1833. II. p. 49). If, however, a connection exists between the appellations of the hand and five, the former word might be named from the number of the fingers; as one might also venture an attempt to explain *digitus* and δάκτυλος with the number "ten," and our "finger," Gothic *figgrs* (= *fingrs*), theme *FIGGRA*, with *fünf* (*fimf*); so that in this word no transition of the guttural organ into the labial has taken place. I do not think it probable that *finger* is named from *fangen*, "to seize"; also, as far as regards the Greek and Latin, the appellation of each single finger is more likely to be derived from the total number than from pointing (δείκνυμι).

*kshash*, for *sh* is otherwise not an initial syllable in Sanscrit, and also no original sound, but that sibilant which is only admissible with a preceding *k* (§. 21.). In Latin, Greek, and German the guttural appears to be transposed, for *sex* is the transposition of *xes*.

315. VII. Sanscrit सप्तन् *saptan*, Zend 𐬯𐬀𐬎𐬭𐬀, *haptan*, nominative and accusative सप्त *sapta*, 𐬯𐬀𐬎𐬭𐬀 *hapta* (see §. 313.), Greek ἑπτα, Latin *septem*, Lithuanian *septyni*, Old Slavonic *sedmy* (theme *SEDMI*). The *m* of *septem* and *sedmy* seems to me to have been introduced from the ordinal number, which is, in Sanscrit, *saptama*, nom. masc. *saptama-s*, and in Slavonic *sedmyi*. The same holds good of the termination of *osmy*, "eight," and the Latin *novem*, *decem*, Sanscrit *navama-s*, "the ninth," *daśama-s*, "the tenth"; for it is not probable that the *n* of the Sanscrit cardinal number has become *m* in the abovementioned languages, as *m* is very frequently corrupted to *n*, especially at the end of words, where, in Greek, this transition is necessary; while the reverse method of the *n* to *m* scarcely occurs anywhere.

316. VIII. Sanscrit अष्टन् *ashtan* or अष्टौ *ashtāu*; from the former the nominative and accusative *ashta*, from the latter again *ashtāu*; Zend 𐬯𐬀𐬎𐬭𐬀 *astan*, nominative 𐬯𐬀𐬎𐬭𐬀 *asta*, Lithuanian *asztūni*, Gothic *ahtau*, Greek ὀκτω, Latin *octo*, Old Slavonic *osmy* (theme *OSMI*). The Sanscrit *ashtāu* and the analogous ὀκτω appear, as it were, in a dual dress (see §. 206.); nevertheless, *ashtāu* is, in my opinion, just as much as *ashtan*, a bare theme, and has perhaps proceeded from the latter form, which occurs only in Zend by the resolution of the *n* to *u*, which is so common (comp. p. 415, Rem.), and the lengthening of the *a*; if it is not preferred to develop it from *ashtāś*, according to the analogy of §. 206. From अष्टौ *ashtāu* comes, by suppression of the last element of the diphthong, *ashtā-bhis*, *ashtā-bhyas*, *ashtā-su*, as *rā-bhis*, &c., from *rāi*, "thing," "riches," while *ashtān*, in the cases mentioned, forms regularly *ashtābhis*, *ashtā-*

*bhyas*, *ashīdsu* (comp. p. 304). The genitive has only one form, namely, *अष्टानाम्* *ashṭānām*. The strength of the *āu* of *ashtāu* is preserved, also, in the kindred languages, and indeed in the Latin *octav-us*, Greek *ὀγδοος* for *ὀγδοῦς*, and in German forms as *ahtome-n*, dative, according to Notker the cardinal number from *ahtomi-m*, from the theme *AHTOWI*. But if *ashtāu* were connected in its base with *चतुर्* *chatur*, "four," there would be reason for considering the former form as the dual, expressing four twice, and for assuming, with the theme, an unorganic corruption of a dual termination, which made its appearance in the earliest antiquity.

317. IX. Sanscrit *नवन्* *navan*, Zend *𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬀* *navan* (nominative and accusative *nava*), Gothic *niun*—by contracting the *va* to *u* and weakening the *a* to *i*, as is so common, §. 66.—Latin *novem* (see §. 315.), Greek *ἐννέα*, Lithuanian *dewyni*, Old Slavonic *devyaty* (theme *DEVYATI*). The last two appellations appear foreign to the system of the other sister languages: they are based, however, as I have already remarked in another place,\* on the facile interchange of a nasal with the medial congruent with the organ, on which, among others, rests the relation between *βροτός* and *मृतश्च* *mṛiśch*, "*mortu-us*." As regards the origin of this numeral term, there exists a close connection in respect of form with the expression for "new" (Sanskrit *nada*). That, however, a relation of ideas actually exists between the two designations, as Ag. Benary first acutely conjectured (Berl. Jahrb. 1832. ii. p. 50), appears to me just as probable; for without recognising a dual in *ashtāu*, and without excluding the thumbs in reckoning by the fingers, the number nine can still only be thought of with reference to the earlier numbers, and as next to eight; and

---

\* Historical and Philological Transactions of the Academy of Letters for the year 1833, p. 168.

nine, in contrast with eight or all the preceding numbers, is just as much a new number, as that which is new itself is always a something later and successive, a *this* corresponding to the old *that*. As a case in point, observe the Latin *secundus* from *sequor*. One must also admit that it would not be surprising if any former number whatever, excluding one, were named after the idea of that which is new, and that this origin is most intimately connected with the pronominal origin of other numerals.

318. X. Sanscrit दशन् *daśan*, Zend 𐬔𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬎𐬀 *daśan* (nominative and accusative *daśa*), Greek δέκα, Latin *decem*, Lithuanian *deszimt*, *deszimt'-s* and *deszintis* (the two first indeclinable), Old Slavonic *desyaty* (theme *DESYATI*, see §. 313. Rem.), Gothic *taihun*. Concerning the *ai* and *u* of *taihun*, see §§. 66. and 82.: the consonants have obeyed the law of removal (§. 87.). The Greek, rather than the Sanscrit, therefore serves as prototype to the Gothic in regard to the second consonant; and we have laid down in §. 21. the Sanscrit ऌ *ś* as a proportionably modern sound. If, then, in this corruption, the Lithuanian and Slavonic agree with the Sanscrit, this may be so explained, that these languages, guided independently by the Sanscrit and Zend, but with the same euphonic feeling, have transformed an old guttural to a sibilant;\* in which change of sound, however, the Slavonic, in other cases, goes farther than the Sanscrit (comp. p. 402). If, however, we desire to base on historical tradition the peculiar coincidence with the Sanscrit and Zend in the case before us, and some others, we must arrive at this through the assumption that the Lithuanian and Slavonic races at some period wandered from their original settlement in Asia, when corruptions

---

\* But not universally, where, in Sanscrit, ऌ *ś* is found; for *aśman*, “a stone,” nom. *aśmā*, is, in Lithuanian, *AKMĖN*, nom. *akmũ* (§. 139.), and in Old Slavonic *KAMEN*, nom. *kamy*.

had already entered into the language, which did not exist at the time when the Greeks and Romans transplanted the Asiatic original language to Europe.

319. XI—XX. The smaller numbers are connected with the expression for ten : Sanscrit एकादशन् *ékādaśan*, द्वादशन् *dvaḍaśan*, त्रयोदशन् *trayōdaśan*, चतुर्दशन् *chaturdaśan*, &c.; Zend اَہَوانداسان *aēvandaśan* (?), دِوانداسان *dvadaśan*;\* Greek ἑνδεκα, δώδεκα, τρισκαίδεκα, τεσσαρεσκαίδεκα; Latin undecim, duodecim, tredecim, quatuordecim; Lithuanian wieno-  
lika, dvylika, trylika, keturólíka; Gothic ainlif (1 C. xv. 5.), tvalif,\* fimftaihun, “fifteen”; Old Slavonic chetyrinadesyaty,  
“fourteen,” pyatynadesyaty, “fifteen,” &c.

“ Remark.—Before the simple *dasan* (from *dakan*) had been changed in the Gothic into *taihun*, according to the

\* These may be deduced from the ordinals *aēvandaša*, *dvađaša* (*Vend.* S. p. 120). So also *chathruđasan*, "fourteen," *pañchadaśan*, "fifteen," from *chathruđaša*, "the fourteenth," *pañchadaša*, "the fifteenth." The nasal in *aēvandaša* appears to have proceeded from *m*, and to be an accusative sign, for the whole stands l. c. in the accusative (*aēvandašēm*). By this, doubt is thrown on the *aēvandaśan* given above, and perhaps *aēvōdaśan*, or, according to the original principle of the compound, *aēvadaśan* might be expected. In one other passage, indeed, occurs the nominative of the ordinal *aēvandašo* (l. c. p. 230): it is, however, clearly a false reading, and the sense requires the accusative, as governed by 𐬰𐬀𐬎𐬭𐬵𐬀𐬯𐬭𐬀𐬢𐬀𐬌𐬀 *frāснаōiti*, which Anquetil renders by *a atteint*; thus, 𐬰𐬀𐬎𐬭𐬵𐬀𐬯𐬭𐬀𐬢𐬀𐬌𐬀 𐬀𐬊𐬶𐬀𐬎𐬭𐬵𐬀𐬯𐬭𐬀𐬢𐬀𐬌𐬀 *aēvandašēm frāснаōiti*, "he touches the tenth"; and in the following analogous constructions the ordinal number also stands always in the accusative. The form *aēvandašēm*, from *aēvamdašēm*, is remarkable, also, in a phonetic respect, because elsewhere in Zend a final *m* is not governed by the organ of the following letter.

† I do not take the *tva* here, with Grimm (II. 947.), for the neuter, but, according to the principle of genuine compounds, for the theme (compare §. 112.), whence the nom. masc. *tvai*. *Tva* may also—and this appears to me more correct—be regarded, without the Gothic being conscious of the formation, precisely as the abbreviation of the Sanscrit *dvā*, which is a lengthening of the theme *dva*, as *ēkā* from *ēka*.

comparatively recent law for the alteration of sounds (compare §. 82.), it may have happened that, through the very widely-diffused disposition for exchanging the *d* with *l*, and through the not less common commutation between gutturals and labials—through which, among others, the relation of *fidvôr* to the Lithuanian *keturi* and Latin *quatuor* becomes explicable—the *daśan* contained in *ekā-daśan*, “eleven,” and *dvā-daśan*, “twelve” (from *dakan*), may have passed, in Gothic, into *LIBI*. Through the dative *tva-libi-m*, genitive *tva-lib’-ē*, *LIBI* is preserved, in fact, as the true theme; so that each *a* of *daśan* is weakened to *i*. The *f* of the uninflected *tvalif* is, therefore, not to be explained according to §. 87., but according to §. 93<sup>a</sup>.; and if the theme *libi* has not obeyed the law for the mutation of sounds, the objection, which has been raised by Graff (Old High German Thesaurus, p. 317) against my explanation, is removed by what has been remarked in §. 89., for we refer to *fidvôr*, not *fithvôr*. The Latin *quadraginta*, also, for *quatraginta*, and the Greek ὀγδοός for ὀκτοός, ἑβδομος for ἑπτομος, and several others, may be noticed, in support of the proposition that the numeral formations in the choice of the degree of the organ of the consonants have not always remained in the customary path; and in cumbrous compounds the medials are more admissible than the smooth letters and aspirates.\* To remove the objection which may be taken on the ground that *LIBI* is so very different from the form of *taihun*, we may remark, that, in French

---

\* The Anglo-Saxon *endleofan*, *endlufan*, compared with *twelf*, and the Old Friesian *andlova* with *twilif*, should not make us doubt, since the Anglo-Saxon *eo* corresponds to the Sanscrit *a* of *daśan* and Gothic *i* of *lif*, as in the relation of *seofon* (Old Friesian *singon*) to the Sanscrit *saptan*, Gothic *sibun*. Let, then, the Old Friesian *o* of *lova* be regarded like that of *singon*. To the Sanscrit *chatvâr*, Gothic *fidvôr*, correspond the Anglo-Saxon *feover*, Old Friesian *fluwer*.



also, the number ten, in compounds like *on-ze*, *dou-ze*, *trei-ze*, is so remote from the expression of the simple ten, that one would hardly venture to pronounce the syllable *ze* to be akin, or originally identical with *dix*, if it were not historically certain that *onze*, *douze*, &c., have arisen from *undecim*, *duodecim*, and that therefore *ze* is a corruption of *decim*, as *dix* is a less vitiated form of *decem*. If, then, *onze*, *douze*, &c., have been simplified through the great alteration of the expression for the number ten contained in them, the same holds good with regard to our *eilf* and *zwölf*, in which, perhaps, as in *onze* and *douze*, a connection with *ein* and *zwei* may be recognised, but none with *zehn*; and in the English eleven, also, the relation to one is entirely obliterated. But with regard to our using for thirteen, fourteen, &c., not *dreilf*, *vierlf*, or similar forms in *lf*, but *dreizehn*, *vierzehn*, &c., in which *zehn* is just as unaltered as the *drei* and *vier*, this arises from the Germans having forgotten the old Indo-European compounds for these numbers, and then having compacted the necessary expressions anew from the elements as they exist uncompounded. Nay, even the Greek has reconstructed afresh, as well as it could, its numerals from thirteen upwards, after that the old more genuine compounds had fallen into disuse; but this has been done, I must say, in a clumsy, awkward fashion, by which the addition of a particle signifying *and* was found requisite in an attempt at extreme perspicuity, while *ένδεκα*, *δώδεκα*, move more freely, and are suited to the spirit of the ancient compounds. The literal meaning, too, of *τρισκαίδεκα* (for *τρίδεκα*) is "thrice and ten," and the numeral adverb *τρίς*, instead of the bare theme *τρι*, is here just as much a mistake as the masculine plural nominative serves as a reproach to the *τεσσαρεσκαίδεκα*, and is inferior in purity to the Sanscrit *chatur-dāśan*, not *chatvāras-dāśan* (*chatvārō-dāśan*). On the other hand, the Sanscrit, in the designation of the number

thirteen, commits a similar error, and awkwardly gives instead of *tri-daśan*, *trayō-daśan*—euphonic for *trayas-daśan*—where the masculine plural nominative instead of the theme, which is adapted for all genders, is not well selected. The Latin *tre-decim* is therefore a more pure formation, as it dispenses with a case-sign in the first member of the compound: just so the Lithuanian *try-lika*, not *trys-lika*. This *lika*, which concludes the form, in all Lithuanian adding numerals (eleven to nineteen), exchanges the old *d* for *l*, as in German, and is therefore as far estranged from the simple *deszimt's* as the Gothic *libi* from *taihun*; partly, as the second consonant in *lika* has maintained itself in its oldest form received from the Greek, and has not become a sibilant; so that *lika* and *δέκα* resemble each other very closely. The Lithuanian *lika*, therefore, is derived, like the Gothic *libi* and the French *ze in onze, douze, &c.*, from the old compound which has been handed down, and cannot, therefore, be censured for its want of agreement with the simple number ten: it is no longer conscious of its meaning, and, like an inanimate corpse, is carried by the living inferior number. As, however, the smaller number in these compounds is still living, so that in the feeling of the speaker the numbers *wieno-lika, dwy-lika, &c.*, do not appear as independent simple designations of numbers—as, perhaps, *septyni* is felt to be independent of each of the earlier numbers—so, naturally, in these compounds the first member has kept tolerably equal pace with the form which it shews in its isolated state; on which account *wieno-lika*, if it is regarded as an ancient compound from the time of the unity of language, or perhaps as derived from *एकदशन् êkā-daśan*, has nevertheless undergone, in its initial member, a renovation; as also in Gothic *ainlif*, in Greek *ένδεκα*, in Latin *undecim*, have regulated their first member according to the form which is in force for the isolated number one. On the other hand, *δώδεκα* is almost entirely the Sanscrit *dva-daśa* (*ω*

for *d*, according to §. 4.), and is as similar to it as possible, as *υ* (*F*) in Greek cannot be pronounced after consonants, and in the first syllable, also, could not assimilate itself to the preceding consonant (compare *τέτταρες* from *τέτFαρες*), for *δδώδεκα* could not be uttered. In Latin, *duodecim* has formed its first member exactly after the simple form: on the other hand, the French has paid no regard to the form in which the preceding number appears in its isolated state, but has left the composition entirely in the old form, only with the abbreviations which time has by degrees introduced. With reference to the isolated state of the smaller number, it would have been, perhaps, necessary in French to have said *unze*, *deuze*, *troize*, &c. After what has been stated, I think no one can any longer doubt, that in our *eilf* (*elf*) and *zwölf*, strange as it at the first glance may appear, a word is contained expressing the number ten, and identical in its origin with *dasán*, *δέκα*, and *zehn*. If, however, the older *LIBI*, *lif*, and Lithuanian *lika*, be regarded without the suspicion arising, that in them corrupt though very common permutations of sound may have preceded, then one would propose in Lithuanian a base *lik*, and in Gothic *lif* or *lib* (Gothic *af-lifnan*, “*relinqui, superesse*,” *laibós*, “*reliquiæ*”), which both signify to remain, and are also connected with each other and with the Greek *λείπω* (ΛΙΠ). Grimm, who has recognised (II. 946) the original identity of our *lif* and the Lithuanian *lika*, has perhaps allowed himself to be led astray by Ruhig in the meaning of these expressions, and deduces the latter from *likti*, “*linqui, remanere*,” the former from *leiban*, “*manere*.” Ruhig, according to Mielcke, p. 58, holds *lika* for the 3d person plural, since he says, “Composition in the cardinal numbers from ten to twenty takes place by adding the 3d person plural number present indicative *lika* (from *likù* s. *liekmi*); scil., the tenth remains undisturbed with the simple number, e.g. one, two, &c.; which addition, however, in composition degenerates into a declinable noun of

the feminine gender, according to which, also, the preceding simple number must be regulated."\* The languages, however, do not proceed so pedantically; and if they hold any thing understood, as very commonly happens, they do not expressly state that any thing remains over to be expressed. It is certain, however, that the Slavonic languages, in their expressions for eleven to twenty, do not keep back any thing to be understood, but form those expressions, after the loss of the old, no longer intelligible compounds, anew, with the annexed preposition *na*, "over"; e. g. in Old Slavonic, where the numbers eleven, twelve, thirteen, no longer occur, *chetyri-na-desyaty*, "four over ten." The ordinal numbers for eleven and twelve are *yedinyi-na-desyaty*, "the first over ten," *vtoryi-na-desyaty*, "the second over ten." In the same manner proceeds the twin sister of the Lithuanian—accompanying it, but corrupted—the Lettish, in which *weenpazmit* signifies "eleven," as it appears to me, with contraction of the *d(e)s* of *desmit*, "ten," to *z*, and overleaping the *e*. This procedure in Lettish has no doubt originated from the older *lika's* being no longer intelligible. If it was to be so understood, as Ruhig has taken it, its form would be palpable, and the Lettians might have been satisfied with it. With reference to the composition of the numerals under discussion, there remains to be noticed a most remarkable coincidence of the Lithuanian and German with a Prakrit dialect, which coincidence, when I formerly touched upon this

---

\* Grimm's view is certainly much more natural, "ten and one over, two over." Only it would be to be expected, if the language wished to designate the numbers eleven and twelve as that which they contain more than ten, that they would have selected for combination with one and two a word which signifies "and over, or more," and not an exponent of the idea "to leave," "to remain." It would, moreover, be more adapted to the genius and custom of the later periods of the language, not to forget the number ten in the newly-formed compounds, like the Lettish and Slavonic.

subject,\* was not yet known to me, and which has been since then observed by Lenz in his edition of *Urvasi* (p. 219). In this dialect, then, the number ten is pronounced simply दह *daha*—approaching closely to the Gothic *taihun*—but at the end of the compounds under notice *raha* : *r* and *l*, however, are, according to §. 17., most intimately connected. Hitherto only, बारह *vāraha*, “twelve,” from द्वादश *dvādaśa*, and अठ्ठारह *aṭṭhāraha*, “eighteen,” from अष्टादश *aṣṭādaśa*, can be cited, but still from them it is probable that the other numerals too, which fall under this category, have an *r* for *d*, apparently to lighten the word loaded by the prefixing of lesser numbers, by exchanging the *d* for a weak semi-vowel. Now it is a remarkable coincidence that if we were desirous of not seeing a mutation of letters in this *raha* we should be led to the base *rah*, “to leave,” which is probably identical with the verb, to which recourse has been had for the explanation of the corresponding Lithuanian and German numeral forms.† I thought I had exhausted this subject, when I was led by other reasons to the Hindústāni grammar, where I was agreeably surprised by perceiving that here, also, the number ten, in the designation of eleven, twelve, &c., has taken another lighter form than in its simple state, in which it is pronounced *des*. But in the compounds under discussion this becomes *reh*, and, for example, बāreh, “twelve,” answers to the abovementioned Prakrit बारह *bāraha*, and, like this, has proceeded directly from the

---

\* Influence of the Pronoun on the formation of Words, p. 27; and *Histor. Philol. Trans. of the Academy* from the year 1833, p. 178, &c.

† The *a* of *rah* has been weakened in the kindred languages to *i*: hence *linguo*, Lithuanian *likù*, Greek λείπω (ἐλιπον), Gothic *af-lif-na*. In respect to the consonants, we refer the reader to §§. 20. 23.: remark, also, the connection of the Lithuanian *lakù*, “I lick,” with the Sanscrit base *lih*, “to lick.”

Sanskrit original form द्वादश *dvādaśa*, without observing the form of the simple *du*, “two,” and *des*, “ten.” It may be proper here to quote all the Hindústáni compounds which belong to this subject, together with the corresponding Sanskrit words of which they are the corruptions. We annex, also, the number twenty, and nineteen which is related to it as being twenty less one, as also the simple lower numbers in Hindústáni.

HINDUSTÁNI.				SANSKRIT, NOMINATIVE.	
<i>ék</i>	1,	<i>igā-reh</i>	11,	<i>ékādaśa</i>	11.
<i>du</i>	2,	<i>bā-reh</i>	12,	<i>dvādaśa</i>	12.
<i>tín</i>	3,	<i>tē-reh</i>	13,	<i>trayōdaśa</i>	13.
<i>chār</i>	4,	<i>chau-deh</i>	14,*	<i>chaturdaśa</i>	14.
<i>panch</i>	5,	<i>pand-reh</i>	15,	<i>pañchādaśa</i>	15.
<i>cheh</i>	6,	<i>sō-leh</i>	16,†	<i>shōdaśa</i>	16.
<i>sāt</i>	7,	<i>set-reh</i>	17,	<i>saptadaśa</i>	17.
<i>āth</i>	8,	<i>atthā-reh</i>	18,	<i>ashṭādaśa</i>	18.
<i>nau</i>	9,	<i>unnīs</i>	19,	<i>ūnaviṁśati</i> (“ <i>undeviginti</i> ”)	19.
<i>des</i>	10,	<i>bīs</i>	20,	<i>viṁśati</i>	20.

320. XX—C. The idea of ten is expressed in Sanscrit by दश *śati*, दश *śat*, or दश *ti*; in Zend by ده *śaiti*, ده *śata* or ده *ti*; and the words therewith compounded are substantives with singular terminations, with which, in Sanscrit, the thing numbered agrees in case, as in apposition, or is put, as in the Zend, in the genitive, as

---

\* The retention of the *d* is here clearly to be ascribed to the circumstance that the lesser number ends with *r*, although in the Hindústáni corruption this is no longer present. The Bengali has assimilated the *r* to the following *d*, hence *chāuddo*; but, as a general rule, the Bengali in these compounds changes the *d* into *r*, and in all cases suppresses the Hindústáni *h*; as *ēgāro*, “eleven,” *bāro*, “twelve,” *tēro*, “thirteen.”

† This form merits particular notice, as, through its *l* for the *r* found elsewhere, it comes so near to the Lithuanian and German *lika*, *lif*. The Bengali is *shólo*.

dependent upon it. Occasionally, too, one finds these numerals in Sanscrit used adjectively, with plural endings. Compare,

SANSKRIT.	ZEND.	GREEK.	LATIN.
20, विंशति <i>vinśati</i> ,	𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬨𐬀 <i>viśaiti</i> ,	εἴκατι	<i>viginti</i> .
30, त्रिंशत् <i>trinśat</i> ,	𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬀 <i>thriśata</i> ,*	τριάκοντα	<i>triginta</i> .
40, <i>chatvārinśat</i> ,	<i>chathwarēśata</i> ,	τεσσαράκοντα,	<i>quadraginta</i> .
50, <i>pañchāśat</i> ,	<i>pañchāśata</i> ,	πεντήκοντα,	<i>quinguinta</i> .
60, <i>śaṣṭi</i> ,	<i>ṣvasti</i> ,	ἑξήκοντα,	<i>sexaginta</i> .
70, <i>saptati</i> ,	<i>haptāiti</i> ,	ἑβδομήκοντα,†	<i>septuaginta</i> .
80, <i>aṣṭi</i> ,	. . . .	ὀγδοήκοντα,	<i>octoginta</i> .
90, <i>navati</i> ,	<i>navaiti</i> ,	ἐνενήκοντα,	<i>nonaginta</i> .
100, <i>śata-m</i> ,	<i>śatē-m</i> ,	ἑ-κατό-ν,	<i>centu-m</i> .

“Remark.—I hold *śati*, *śat*, *śata*, *ti*, to be abbreviations of *daśati*, *daśat*, *daśata*, and therefore derivations from *daśan*, “ten,” by a suffix *ti*, *ta*, or *t*: the former is,

---

\* The numerals in *śata*, answering to the Sanscrit forms in *śat*, are neuters, and occur, like the forms in *ti*, very frequently in the 6th and 12th Fargard of the Vendidad, but only in the accusative singular, in which *śatēm* might also belong to a theme *śat*. That, however, *śata* is the theme and the neuter form is clear from Vend. S. p. 230. (in the 7th Fargard), where *panchu śatēm* (*pañchāśatēm*), “fifty,” stands as nominative. From *ṣvasti*, “sixty,” *haptāiti*, “seventy,” and *navaiti*, “ninety,” we find the accusative *ṣvastīm*, *haptāitīm*, *navaitīm*: on the other hand, in the 12th Fargard, occurs several times *viśaiti* (also written *viśati* and *viśati*) as accusative of *viśaiti*, which perhaps is a dual neuter form (two decades), and according to this would stand for *viśaiti* (§. 210.). But if the final vowel is retained in its original form it is a singular neuter. It is, however, remarkable, that only this final *i*, and no other, is again found in the kindred Latin and Greek forms.

† This and the following number are renovated forms, in which the first member proceeds unorganically from the ordinal number. We might have expected *ἐπτήκοντα*, *ὀκτώκοντα*, for the latter Ion. *ὀγδώκοντα*. In *ἐνενήκοντα* the two *ν* are separated from each other: the epic form *ἐννήκοντα* is more genuine.

in Lithuanian and Slavonic, already contained in the simple *deszimt's*, *deszintis*, Old Slavonic *desyaty*. With regard, however, to the ten being expressed without abbreviation in the languages mentioned, in compounds, also—as in Lithuanian *dwideszinti* (or *tis*), “twenty,” *trysdészinti* (or *tis*), “thirty,” and in Old Slavonic *četyridesyaty*, “forty,”\* *pyatydesyaty*, “fifty”—I do not consider this as a more true retention of the original form, but as a new formation. The Lithuanian, too, from forty upwards, separates the two numbers, and puts the former in the feminine plural, e.g. *keturios deszintis*, “forty,” *penkios deszintis*, “fifty”; in which it is surprising that *deszintis*, also, does not stand in the plural. The Gothic method in this numeral category is of comparatively recent date: it has lost, as in thirteen, &c., the ancient compound, and gives, in the numbers under seventy (sixty does not occur), *tigus*, masculine, as the expression for ten, and declines this, and in twenty, thirty, the lesser number also, with regular plural terminations: hence the accusatives *tvanstiguns*, *thrinsliguns*, *fidvórtiguns*, *fimftiguns*, genitive *thriyétigvé*. The substantive *tigus*, however, is the etymological quaver to *taihun* and *LIBI*: it is related to the former essentially, the aspirate having become a medial (see §. 89.), thus rendering the *a*, which, in *taihun*, is brought in by the rule of sound mentioned in §. 82., superfluous. Advert, also, to the Latin medials in *ginti*, *ginta*, contrasted with the Greek *κατῑ*, *κοῦτα*, which answer better to *δέκα*. *Tigu-s* may be identical with the Sanscrit ordinal *daśa*, nominative masculine *daśa-s*, which occurs only in compounds, as *dvādaśa-s*, “the twelfth.” To this *daśa-s*, therefore, is related *tigu-s* in regard to its *u*, as *fótu-s* to *pāda-s*, “a foot.” In the numbers seventy, eighty, and ninety, ten is denoted by the neuter

---

\* Twenty and thirty do not occur.



substantive *téhund* (theme *TEHUNDA*, genitive *téhundi-s*); hence *sibun-téhund*, "seventy," *ahtau-téhund*, "eighty," *niun-téhund*, "ninety." The *é* of this *TEHUNDA* stands as the representative of the *ai* of *taihun*, and I hold *DA* to be the ordinal suffix, which has introduced into the common ordinals another unorganic *N*, or, according to Grimm, follows the weak declension; hence *TAIHUNDAN*, nominative *taihunda*, "*decimus*." Hereby, then, it becomes still more probable that the abovementioned *tigus* also is originally an ordinal number. In our New German this word has transformed itself to *zig* or *ssig* (*dreissig*), and is found also in *siebenzig*, *achtzig*, *neunzig*, Old High German *sibunzog*, *ahtozog*, *niunzog*, or *-zoc*, and *zēhanzog* (*zoc*), Gothic *taihuntéhund*, "a hundred." The Sanscrit-Zend *śata*, "a hundred," which is a neuter substantive—nominative *शतम् śatam*, *𐬰𐬀𐬎𐬎𐬎 śatēm*—in my opinion owes its designation to the number ten (*daśan*), whence it is formed by the suffix *ta*—the suppression of the final nasal is regular;—so that it is to be regarded as an abbreviation of *daśata*, as above, *शति śati*, *शत् śat*, and the Zend *𐬰𐬀𐬎𐬎 śata* for *daśati*, &c. This abbreviation, however, which has given to the word the stamp of a primitive expression specially created for the idea "a hundred," is proved to be of the highest antiquity by the consentaneous testimony of all the kindred languages, Greek *κατόν* (*ἐκατόν* is, verbatim, "one hundred"), Latin *centum*, Lithuanian *szimta-s* (masculine), Old Slavonic *sto* (at once theme and nominative and accusative neuter).\* The Gothic *hund* and Old High German *hunt* (theme *HUNDA*, *HUNTA*) occur only in compounds, as *tva-húnda*, *thria-hunda*, *zuei-hunt*, *driu-hunt*, where the lesser number is likewise inflected. That also *शति śati*, *शत् śat*, and the corresponding words

---

\* In Zend *śta* occurs more frequently for *śata*, and just so in the numbers compounded therewith.



*triṇśat*, *chatvāriṇśat*, is surprising, and one might imagine a transposition of the nasal, so that in the Latin *ginti*, *ginta*, *centum*, and in the Gothic *HUNDA*, "one hundred," it would stand in its proper place. For the rest, *chatvāriṇśat* shews its relation to the neuter *chatvāri* (see §. 312.); as also *τρια*, *τεσσαρα* in *τριάκοντα* *τεσσαράκοντα*, are, in my opinion, plural neuter forms, with the termination lengthened in *τριᾶ*, and originally, also, in *τεσσαρα*, as the Ionic *τεσσαρήκοντα*, Doric *τετρώκοντα*,\* Latin *quadraginta*, prove. These forms excite the conjecture, that, in Sanscrit, the introduction of the nasal may, contrary to the explanation attempted above, have the same object that, in Greek, the lengthening of the termination has, namely, an emphatic repetition of the prefixed number, which is also perceptible in the long *i* of the Zend *vīśaiti*, as in the long *a* of *पञ्चाशत्* *pañchāśat*, *ἑξήκοντα* *pañchāśatēm* from *panchan* (§. 318.), and to which again the length of *πεντήκοντα*, *quinguaginta*, runs parallel. The Zend *chathwarē*, in *ἑξήκοντα* *chathwarēśata*, "forty" (Vend. S. p. 380.), is likewise stronger than *cha-thru-śata*, which might have been expected from §. 312. As *ἑξήκοντα* *śata* is a neuter, to which, in Greek, *κατον* or *κοντον* would correspond, *κοντα* therefore, and the Latin *ginta*, are best explained as neuters in the plural, by which the neuter nature of *τριᾶ* and *τεσσαρα* is still more authenticated. An auxiliary vowel, which merely facilitated the combination, and which might be assumed in *ἑξήκοντα*, would at least be very superfluous in the theme *TPI*; and it is much more probable that *ἑξη*, too, is a lengthened plural neuter. Compare *ἑξά-κισ*, *ἑξαπλοῦς*, and the remarks on *πάντα* and *πολλά*, p. 388.

---

\* The *ω* for *ā* is explained by §. 4. As to the suppression of the vowel before the *ρ*, *τετρω* answers to *τετρα* in *τετράκισ* *τετραπλοῦς*, which in like manner are based on plural neuter forms instead of the theme.



that also *𑂣𑂗𑂢𑂰* *pug-dhó*, "the fifth," belongs more to the European kindred languages, in which it comes nearest to the Lithuanian *penk-ta-s*. The Lithuanian, however, is more true to the original form, as its sister, the Zend, has softened two original smooth letters, as in Greek, *ὄγδοος* for *ὄκτοος*; and, besides this, has aspirated the last, rejected the nasal (comp. p. 94, *basta* from *bandh*), and irregularly changed the *a* to *u*, as in *ONYX*, corresponding to the Sanscrit *नख* *nakha*, "a nail." In the numbers from eleven to twenty the superlative suffix, in Sanscrit and Zend, is abbreviated still more than in the simple *दशम* *daśama*, *𑂔𑂩𑂣𑂰𑂔𑂰* *daśēma*, and of all the derivational suffix only the *a* is left, before which the *a* of the primitive word must fall away, according to a universal principle for the derivation of words; as, *द्वादश* *dvā-daśa*, *𑂔𑂩𑂣𑂰𑂔𑂰𑂔𑂰* *dvadaśa*, "the twelfth"; *चतुर्दश* *chaturdaśa*, *𑂔𑂩𑂣𑂰𑂔𑂰𑂔𑂰𑂔𑂰* *chathrudaśa*, "the fourteenth." The Latin appears to prove that this abbreviation is comparatively of recent date, and it goes beyond both the Asiatic sisters by its *undecimus*, *duodecimus*, not *undecus*, *duodecus*; but has, as it were, exhausted itself in the effort which the continuance of these heavier forms has cost it; and has given up the analogous formations in the very place in which the German cardinal numbers have lost the old compound in *lif*: hence, *tertius decimus* for the lost *tredecimus*, &c. An imitation, however, of the abbreviation which we have just remarked in the Sanscrit-Zend *daśa* is supplied by the Greek and Latin in the forms *octav-us*, *ὄγδο(F)-ος*, where, of the ordinal suffix, in like manner, only the final vowel is left: we might have expected *ὄγδομος*, *octomus*. In the very remarkable coincidence which here exists between the said languages, it must seem strange that, in the remaining designations of the ordinal numbers, the Latin is a much truer colleague to its Asiatic sisters than to the Greek; and it preserves this character, also, in abandoning, from twenty upwards, the full superlative suffix *simu-s* (from *timu-s* = *तमस्* *tama-s*); thus *vicesimus* or *vige-*

*simus, trigesimus*, as in Sanscrit *viṁsatitama-s, trīṁsattama-s*.\* In Latin, however, the termination *nti* or *nta* of the primitive is rejected, and in compensation the preceding vowel is lengthened in the form of *ē*. Compare, in this respect, the comparative formations discussed in §. 298. The Greek shews its more rare superlative suffix, corresponding to the Sanscrit *इष्टा* *ishṭha*, in the ordinal numbers like *εἰκοστὸς, τριακοστὸς*, with the loss of the *ι* of *ιστος*, as in *ἑκατὸς, πόστος*. Here also, therefore, as in Latin, the *τι, σι,* and *ντα* of the cardinal number are rejected. The German languages give in like manner the superlative suffix in numbers from twenty upwards: hence, Old High German *drī-zugōsto*, “the thirtieth,” *fior-zugōsto*, “the fortieth”: but in the numbers from four to nineteen the *TAN* or *DAN*, in Gothic, corresponds, according to the measure of the preceding letter (§. 91.), to the suffix of the kindred languages, as in *चतुर्थे चaturtha-s, τέταρτο-ς, quartu-s, ketwir-ta-s*. The *N*, however, is an unorganic addition, after the principle of the indefinite adjective declension (§. 285.), which is followed by the ordinal numbers, with the exception of one and two in the older dialects; while the New German has also introduced the definite—fourth, fifth, &c.; hence, Gothic *FIMFTAN*, nom. masc. *fimfta*.†

322. From the weakened base *द्वि* *dvi*, “two” (p. 424), and from the *त्रि* *tri*, “three,” contracted to *तृ* *tri*, the Sanscrit forms the ordinal numbers by a suffix *tīya*; hence *द्वितीया-s, तृतीया-s*. This suffix is easily recognised in the Latin *tertius*,

---

\* However, this and the higher numbers may follow the analogy of *ekādaśa-s*, “the eleventh”; hence, also, *viṁśa, trīṁś-a*, &c. In Zend I am unable to quote the ordinal numbers from twenty upwards.

† In compounds like *fimftataihunda*, “the fifteenth,” the lesser number has either preserved the original theme while still free from the *n*, which was added more lately,—for the lesser number in these compounds does not partake of declension,—or *fimfta* is here the regular abbreviation of the theme *FIMFTAN*, since, as I have already elsewhere remarked (Berl. Ann. May 1827. p. 759), bases in *n*, in strict accordance with the Sanscrit, drop the *n* in the beginning of compounds.

as also in the Old Slavonic *tretiĭ*, fem. *tretiya*, which, like all the ordinal numbers, has only a definite declension, in which, however, the particular case occurs, that the defining element is brought with it direct from the East, while the *tyĭ* of *chetvertyĭ* and others, in which, in like manner, a connection with तीय *tīya* might be easily conjectured, is, in fact, connected with the च *tha*, TO, TU of चतुर्थे *chaturtha*, τέταρτος, *quartus*, and has arisen from the indefinite theme in TO (comp. the collective *chetvero*, §. 312.), according to §. 255.(d.), although the simple word in most of the formations falling under this category no longer exists. The same relation, then, that *chetvertyĭ*, *shestyĭ*, have to *chaturtha-s*, *shashṭa-s*, *sedmyĭ*, *osmyĭ*, have to सप्तम *saptama*, अष्टम *ashtama*; and *pervyĭ*, "the first," to पूर्व *pūrva*, "the former"; which expressions, in Slavonic, remain only in combination with the pronominal base YO (§. 282.). The Zend has rejected the *i* of the suffix *tīya*, and abbreviated *dvi* to *bi*; hence बित्या *bitya*, बित्रित्या *thritya*, in which it is to be remarked that the *y*, which is thus by syncope united with the *t* at a comparatively later period, has gained no aspirating influence (§. 47.). To this Zend *tya* corresponds, by similar suppression of the middle *i*, the Gothic *DYAN* (from *dya*, §. 285.) in *THRIDYAN*, nom. masc. *thridya*, the *y* of which in the Old High German *dritto*, has assimilated itself to the preceding *t*, in analogy with the Prakrit forms and Greek comparatives, like θάσσων, κρείσσων, κρείττων, mentioned at p. 402. Still closer, however, lies the comparison with διττός, τριττός (δισσός, τρισσός), which are evidently, in their origin, one with the corresponding Sanscrit-Zend ordinal numbers; and, in respect of their reduplicated consonant, have the same relation thereto that the Old High German *dritto* has to the Gothic *thridya*. Regarding *tvaddyé*, "duorum," see p. 422, Rem.: the place of the ordinal number is supplied by the pronoun *anthar* (see p. 377), Old High German *andar*, Modern High German *ander*. Our *zweiter*, however, is a new unorganic formation. The Old Slavonic *vtoryĭ* (see p. 277)

answers, in respect to its derivation, to the Greek δεύτερος, and, in abbreviation of the base, to the Zend *bitya*, only that it has lost also the *i* of the Sanscrit *dvi-tīya*, in regard to which we have, in §. 297., adverted to the Zend *𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀* *b-yārē*\*, "two years."

323. We give here a general view of the ordinal numbers in the feminine nominative singular, since in this case the agreement of all the languages strikes the eye more than in the nominative masculine. The Gothic forms which do not occur we give in parentheses, formed theoretically, and according to the Old High German.

## NOMINATIVE FEMININE.

SANSKRIT.	ZEND.	GR. DOR.	LATIN.	GOthic.	LITHUANIAN.	OLD SLAVONIC.
<i>prathamā,</i>	<i>frathēma,</i> <sup>1</sup>	<i>πρώτᾱ,</i>	<i>prima,</i>	<i>fruma,</i>	<i>pirmā,</i>	<i>perva-ya.</i>
<i>dvitīyā,</i>	<i>bitya,</i>	<i>δευτέρᾱ,</i>	<i>altera,</i>	<i>anthara,</i>	<i>antrā,</i>	<i>vtora-ya.</i>
<i>trītiyā,</i>	<i>thritya,</i>	<i>τρίτᾱ,</i>	<i>tertia,</i>	<i>thridyô,</i>	<i>tréchia,</i>	<i>trėti-ya.</i>
<i>chaturthā,</i> <sup>2</sup>	<i>tūirya,</i>	<i>τετάρτᾱ,</i>	<i>quarta,</i>	<i>(fidvôrdô'),</i>	<i>ketwirtā,</i>	<i>chetverta-ya.</i>
<i>panchamā,</i>	<i>pugdha,</i>	<i>πέμπτᾱ,</i>	<i>quinta,</i>	<i>fimftô,</i>	<i>penktā,</i>	<i>pyata-ya.</i> <sup>3</sup>
<i>shashthā,</i>	<i>cstvā,</i> <sup>4</sup>	<i>ἑκτᾱ,</i>	<i>sexta,</i>	<i>saihistô,</i>	<i>szésztā,</i>	<i>shesta-ya.</i>
<i>saptamā,</i>	<i>haptatha,</i>	<i>ἑβδόμᾱ,</i>	<i>septima,</i>	<i>(sibundô'),</i>	<i>sékma,</i>	<i>sedma-ya.</i>
<i>ashtamā,</i>	<i>astēma,</i>	<i>ὀγδόᾱ,</i>	<i>octava,</i>	<i>ahtudô,</i>	<i>úszma,</i>	<i>osma-ya.</i>
<i>navamā,</i>	<i>nāuma,</i>	<i>ἐννάτᾱ,</i>	<i>nona,</i>	<i>niundô,</i>	<i>devointā,</i> <sup>5</sup>	<i>devyata-ya.</i> <sup>5</sup>
<i>dāsamā,</i>	<i>dasēma,</i>	<i>δεκάτᾱ,</i>	<i>decima,</i>	<i>taihundô,</i>	<i>deszimtā,</i>	<i>desyata-ya.</i>
<i>ākādasā,</i>	<i>aēvandasā,</i> <sup>6</sup>	<i>ἐνδεκάτᾱ,</i>	<i>undecima,</i>	<i>(ainliftô'),</i>	<i>wienólikta,</i>	<i>yedina-ya-na-desyaty.</i>
<i>viṁsati-tamā,</i>	<i>visaititēma?</i>	<i>εἰκοστᾱ,</i>	<i>vicesima,</i>	....	<i>dwideszimtā,</i>	<i>vtoraya-na-desyaty.</i>

\* We should read thus §. 297. for *byarē*, as accusative singular (see Olshausen, Vend. S. 43).

<sup>1</sup> More usually *paoirya*, masc. *paoiryô*, by which the Slavonic *pervyi*, *pervaya*, is, as it were, prepared.

<sup>2</sup> Also *turiyā*, masc. *turiya-s*, on which is based the Zend *tūirya*, masc. *tūiryô*. The suppression of the syllable *cha* might announce the looser connection of the same with the remaining portion of the word, and thereby support the conjecture expressed at §. 311.

<sup>3</sup> The *t* of *pyataya*, masc. *pyatyi*, has nothing in common with the *t* of the cardinal number *pyaty*; the proper primitive is *pya* (see p. 430), whence *PYATI* by the suffix *TI*, and *PYATO*, fem. *PYATA*, by the suffix *TO*, fem. *TA* (see §. 322.). The same holds good with regard to *shestayā* in relation to *shesty*, &c.

<sup>4</sup> By transposition and syncope from *cvasta*, as must be expected from the cardinal number *𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀* *cvas*.

<sup>5</sup> Regarding the *d* for *n*, see §. 317.

<sup>6</sup> See §. 319. Rem. †.



“Remark.—As the old *a* of the preposition *pra* has been weakened to *i*—as in *quīnque*, answering to *panchan*—the Latin *prima* appears distinct from the preposition *pro*, and is decidedly not derived from a Roman soil, but is, as it were, the continuance of the Indian *prathamā*, the middle syllable being cast out. A similar weakening of the vowel is exhibited in the Greek adverb *πρίν*, which is hereby, in like manner, brought into connection with the preposition *πρό*. In the comparative *prior* only the *pr* of the preposition, which forms the base, is left, as the *i* belongs to the comparative suffix. In Lithuanian the *m* of the superlative formation has introduced itself also into the preposition *pirm*, ‘before’; but the unaltered *pra* stands as prefix. Here, however, belongs also *pri*, ‘by, before, behind,’ as well isolated as prefixed. The Gothic *fruma* shews the same relation to *prathamā* that the Latin and Lithuanian do: the *u* of *fru* has arisen from *a* through the influence of the liquid (§. 66.). In the kindred preposition *fram*, ‘before, by,’ &c., the original vowel has remained, and in this form, as in the Lithuanian *pirm*, the superlative *m* is contained. On *pra* rests, also, *faur*, ‘before,’ with transposition of the *u* of *fru-ma*, and with *a* prefixed, according to §. 82.

## NUMERAL ADVERBS.

324. The adverbs which express the ideas “twice,” “thrice,” “four times,” have been already discussed (p. 424, *et supra*). Let the following serve for a general view of them:—

SANSKRIT.	ZEND.	GREEK.	LATIN.	OLD NORMAN.
<i>dvis</i> ,	<i>bis</i> ,	<i>δῖς</i> ,	<i>bis</i> ,	<i>twis-var</i> (p. 425).
<i>tris</i> ,	<i>thris</i> ,	<i>τρίς</i> ,	<i>ter</i> ,	<i>thris-var</i> .
<i>chatur</i> ,*	<i>chathrus</i> ,	....	<i>quater</i> ,	....

---

\* According to §. 94. for *chatura*.

The Greek forms in *κῖς* like *τετράκις*, *πεντάκις*, &c., in regard to their suffix, do not belong here, but *κῖς* answers to the Sanscrit *śas* (§. 21.), the *a* being weakened to *i*; this *śas*, however, forms adverbs from words which express a great number, multitude or number, as *śataśas*, "by hundreds," *sahasraśas*, "by thousands," *bahuśas*, "of many kinds," *gaṇaśas*, "in swarms." The original idea of the suffix in both languages is that of repetition, but *śataśas* is an indefinite repetition of a hundred, while in *ἐκατοντάκις* the repetition is strictly defined by the numeral. How stands it, then, with the Latin forms like *quinquies*, *sexies*, &c.? I believe that in respect to their suffix they are connected neither with the forms in *s* like *duis*, *dis*, nor with those in *κῖς* (*śas*), by suppression of the guttural; but as *toties*, *quoties*, evidently belong to this class, which are also pronounced *quotiens*, *totiens*, this probably being the more genuine form, as in Greek, in a similar case, *τιθένς* is more genuine than *τιθείς* (§. 138.), I therefore prefer bringing these forms in *ens*, *es*, into conjunction with the Sanscrit suffix *vant* (in the weak cases *vat*), which signifies, in pronominal bases, "much," but elsewhere, "gifted with," and the nominative of which is, in Zend, *vañs*, e.g. *chvañs*, "how much," for *chivañs*. This suffix has, in Sanscrit, in combination with the interrogative base *ki*, and the demonstrative base *i*, laid aside the *v*; hence *kiy-ant*, *iy-ant*—weak form *kiyat*, *iyat*—nominative masculine *kiyān*, *iyān*; this *ant* for *vant* answers therefore to the Greek ENT (nominative masculine *εις*), e.g. in *μελιτόεις*, and also to the Latin *ens* in *totiens*, *quotiens*, which indeed are, in form, masculine nominatives, but must also be considered as neuters, as in *nt*, too, the masculine nominative has forced its way into the neuter. Now comes the question whether we ought to divide *toti-ens*, *quoti-ens*, or *tot-iens*, *quot-iens*? In the former case *tot*, *quot*, would have preserved, in this combination, the *i*

which belongs to them, for they are based on the Sanscrit तति *tati*, "so much," कति *kati*, "how much";\* and the *ens* in *toti-ens* would, according to that, express the "time," and *toti*, "so much." In the division *tot-iens*, however, we should have to assume that in *iens*, the abovementioned demonstrative इयन् *iyant*, "so much," is contained, but in such wise, that only the meaning of the suffix is still perceived. Under this supposition *quingu-ies* would, accordingly, express "five-somuch" (times); in the former case, however, the *i*, as *quîngui-es*, *octi-es*, would have to pass as representative of the *e* and *o* of *quinque*, *octo*, and that of *series* as a conjunctive vowel, or as an accommodation to the prevailing analogy. In any case, however, the identity of the suffix *ens*, *es*, with the Sanscrit *ant*, from *vant* is highly probable. The Sanscrit expresses the idea "times" from five upwards by *kṛitvas*; as, पञ्चकृत्वस् *panchakṛitvas*, "five times." This *kṛitvas* comes from *kṛit*, "making," which in *sakṛit*, "once," is sufficient of itself: the annexed *vas*, however, might, by exchange of the *t* for *s* (compare p. 172, Rem.), have arisen from *vat*, which should be given above as the weak theme for *vant*; as, *tāvat*, "so much," *yāvat*, "how much" (rel.). With *kṛit* from *kart* (§. 1.) is clearly connected the Lithuanian *karta-s*, "time," a masculine substantive, which, like the defining number, is put in the accusative, in order to make up for the adverbs under discussion; e.g. *wienañ kartañ*, "once," *dù kartù*, "twice" (accusative *du*), *tris kartùs*, "three times." In Old Slavonic the corresponding *krat* or *kraty* is not declined, and the former appears to be an abbrevia-

---

\* These are neuters, which, in common with the numerals पञ्चन् *panchan*, "five," &c. (§. 313.), have, in the nominative, accusative, and vocative, a singular form; in the other cases, plural terminations; while in Latin *quot*, *tot*, like *quinque*, &c., have become completely indeclinable.

tion of the latter, for it cannot be brought into direct comparison with the Sanscrit कृत् *kṛit* on account of §.255.(1.): *kraty*, however, is to be deduced from कृत्वस् *kṛitvas*, by suppression of the *v*. With regard to the *y* for *as* compare §. 271.

325. Through the suffix द्वा *dha* the Sanscrit forms adverbs in sense and in form, corresponding to the Greek in χα, which, therefore, have altered the *T* sound of the suffix into a corresponding guttural, by the usual exchange of organ in aspirates, as in OPNIX for OPNIΘ, and in the forms mentioned at p. 388. Compare,

द्विधा <i>dvi-dhā</i> ,*	δί-χα.
त्रिधा <i>tri-dhā</i> ,	τρί-χα.
चतुर्धा <i>chatur-dhā</i> ,	τέτρα-χα.
पञ्चधा <i>pancha-dhā</i> ,	πέντα-χα.

---

\* "Divided into two parts," Sav. V. 108.



**MADDEN AND MALCOLM'S**

**NEW**

**PUBLICATIONS.**



**8, LEADENHALL STREET.**



**8, LEADENHALL STREET, LONDON,**

**Oct. 1845.**

**MADDEN AND MALCOLM BEG LEAVE TO ANNOUNCE TO GENTLEMEN INTERESTED IN THE EAST, THAT THEY ESPECIALLY DEVOTE THEIR ATTENTION TO THE PUBLICATION AND SALE OF WORKS CONNECTED WITH THE MEDITERRANEAN, ARCHIPELAGO, TURKEY, EGYPT, PERSIA, AND INDIA, &c.**

**AUTHORS DESIROUS OF PUBLISHING WORKS REFERRING TO THE ABOVENAMED COUNTRIES, OR TO THE EAST IN GENERAL, WILL FIND MADDEN AND MALCOLM AT ALL TIMES READY TO ENTER INTO ARRANGEMENTS FOR EFFECTIVE PUBLICATION.**

**PUBLIC LIBRARIES AND LITERARY SOCIETIES MAY HAVE ON APPLICATION, FORWARDED ONCE A MONTH, FREE OF EXPENSE, A LIST OF THE NEW WORKS PUBLISHED IN ENGLAND AND FRANCE.**

**MISCELLANEOUS ORDERS EXECUTED WITH PUNCTUALITY AND DESPATCH.**

MADDEN AND MALCOLM'S NEW PUBLICATIONS.

8, LEADENHALL STREET,  
OCTOBER, 1845.

## MESSRS. MADDEN AND MALCOLM'S NEW PUBLICATIONS.

**Now Ready.**

PART I., CONTAINING SIX PLATES, IS NOW READY, PRICE 1*l.* 1*s.*, TO BE  
COMPLETED IN FIVE PARTS, WITH LETTER-PRESS DESCRIPTION,

### THE ORIENTAL ALBUM, A SERIES OF DRAWINGS OF THE COSTUMES OF EGYPT AND THE RED SEA.

THE design of the Oriental Album is faithfully to delineate some of the more remarkable features of the interesting countries of Egypt and those bordering on the Red Sea, by giving a series of Drawings (thirty in number) illustrative of the Costume and Scenery. These Drawings are executed in the finest style of lithographic art, under the immediate superintendence of the Author, E. PRISSE, Esq., the accuracy of whose local knowledge is guaranteed by a residence of sixteen years in Egypt. An equal number of Wood Engravings (even more beautiful than the Lithographs) will be introduced, in a most chaste and novel form, with the text, which will accompany each Plate, and be delivered with Part V. No expense has been spared to render this one of the most beautiful Works which have ever issued from the Press. A few copies, mounted and coloured, in imitation of the original Drawings, may be secured by entering the name as a Subscriber.

### RICHMOND, AND OTHER POEMS.

By CHARLES ELLIS, Esq.

In One Volume, foolscap 8vo., beautifully illustrated. Price 7*s.* 6*d.*

### MAY MORN.

A POEM.

By SWYNFEN JERVIS, Esq.

Second Edition, in foolscap 8vo. Price 2*s.* 6*d.*

8, LEADENHALL STREET.

THE FIRST VOLUME OF PROFESSOR H. H. WILSON'S

CONTINUATION OF

MILL'S INDIA.

VOL. II. IS NEARLY READY.

VOLUMES I. TO VI., FORMING "MILL'S INDIA," MAY BE HAD  
THROUGH ANY BOOKSELLER, PRICE 14s. PER VOLUME.

"The calm and composed character of the style is an appropriate accompaniment to its sustained power; and there is a gravity and impartiality in his judgments which show scrupulous conscientiousness and regard to truth. The train of reflection is solid and dignified; and the narrative carries the reader onward in a clear and flowing stream, whose sedateness and serenity give token of its depth and volume."—*Chronicle*, Dec. 19, 1844.

"Professor Wilson has produced a volume no way inferior, either in style or manner, or conclusiveness of reasoning, to the effort of the master mind that preceded him."—*Atlas*.

TRAVELS IN LURISTĀN AND ARABISTĀN;  
BEING A TOUR THROUGH SOUTH-WESTERN PERSIA

IN THE YEARS 1840 AND 1841.

By THE BARON CLEMENT AUGUSTUS DE BODE, &c. &c.

Followed by an Essay on the Marches of Alexander the Great and Amir Timur.

In Two Volumes 8vo., with Maps and numerous Illustrations. Price 28s.

"Simple and unaffected in his style, he avoids all details that are not new and interesting, while he is full and distinct when on new ground; and thus his work is a really valuable addition to geographical, antiquarian, and historical knowledge."—*Literary Gazette*, Dec. 21.

THE TIARA AND THE TURBAN;  
OR, IMPRESSIONS AND OBSERVATIONS ON CHARACTER  
WITHIN THE DOMINIONS OF THE POPE AND THE SULTAN.

By S. S. HILL, Esq.

In Two Volumes, post 8vo. cloth. Price 21s.

"A wide field of observation is announced by the writer of these Notes of Travel; and the reader will find that the promise of the title-page is not belied, as it is sometimes with other attractive titles. He avoids an error into which tourists are apt to fall, by giving too much of that sort of description of public buildings and curiosities which is now to be found in a hundred Guide-Books. He turns from these to give us speculations on morals and manners, remembering that

'The proper study of mankind is man.'

The style is pleasant and gossiping, and the perusal of the volumes will form an agreeable occupation for the leisure hours."—*Chronicle*.

"From these extracts it will be seen that Mr. Hill's Work contains much instructive as well as amusing matter."—*Atlas*.



## A JOURNEY FROM NAPLES TO JERUSALEM,

BY WAY OF ATHENS, EGYPT, AND THE PENINSULA OF SINAI;  
INCLUDING A TRIP TO THE VALLEY OF FAYOUM,  
Together with a Translation of M. Linant de Bellefond's "Mémoire sur le Lac Mæria."

BY DAWSON BORRER, ESQ.

In One Vol. 8vo., with numerous Illustrations, and a Map of the Valley of Fayoum. Price 14s.

"It is not only a pleasant but an attractive narrative from beginning to end, with which the reader never tires. In conclusion, we would say, that, with the strong lights—the deep shadows—the bold, though sometimes highly-coloured, pictures—the brief and rapid glances at Oriental life and habits and customs—but, above all, with the fresh and ever-buoyant spirit which pervades this work, we have been much interested."  
*Atlas, Dec. 28.*

## BOKHARA, ITS AMIR AND ITS PEOPLE;

FROM THE RUSSIAN OF KHANIKOFF.

BY THE BARON CLEMENT AUGUSTUS DE BODE.

In One Vol. 8vo., with a Portrait of the reigning Amir, and an Original Map of the Country.  
Price 12s.

"We recommend this account of Bokhara, its Amir and its People, as a valuable addition to our information upon Oriental subjects. It is not a book of amusement, but a valuable repertory of statistical facts, which bears upon its face the impress of accuracy."—*Times, Dec. 26.*

"His Work is worthy to be ranked with those of Meyendorff and Burnes, and the best of our eastern travellers."—*Morning Herald, Dec. 26.*

"Khanikoff's account is the best we have had. It is more temperate than either Masson or Burnes, and, on the whole, gives proofs of greater accuracy."—*Examiner.*

The Second Edition, in One Thick Volume. Price 12s.

## WHAT TO OBSERVE;

OR, THE TRAVELLER'S REMEMBRANCER.

BY COLONEL J. R. JACKSON,

SECRETARY TO THE ROYAL GEOGRAPHICAL SOCIETY.

In this portable volume are propounded questions on almost every subject of human investigation.

"This Volume may be declared to be a library in itself. It contains so much information in the shape of instruction to travellers 'what to observe,' that it makes travelling for the sake of acquiring knowledge almost superfluous."—*Literary Gazette, June 26.*

"A Work that should be put into the trunk of every traveller, and especially of those who travel with a view to publication."—*Westminster Review.*

"For directing an individual how to qualify himself to be an intelligent traveller, both at home and abroad, we know of no book equal to Colonel Jackson's 'What to Observe.'"—*The National.*

"This admirable Work has just reached a second edition."—*The League.*

"It is seldom that a book is published which can be recommended to every class of society; yet such is the case of this Volume. It has already gone through an edition, and deserves to go through many."—*Britannia.*

**THE ANGLO-INDIAN PASSAGE,  
OUTWARD AND HOMEWARD;**

**OR, A CARD FOR THE OVERLAND TRAVELLER FROM  
SOUTHAMPTON TO BOMBAY, MADRAS, AND CALCUTTA:**

**WITH NOTICES OF GIBRALTAR, MALTA, ALEXANDRIA, ADEN,  
BOMBAY, POINT DE GALLE, MADRAS, AND CALCUTTA.**

**By CAPTAIN DAVID LESTER RICHARDSON,  
AUTHOR OF "LITERARY LEAVES," &c.**

In One Vol., post 8vo., with numerous Illustrations and Maps. Price 5s.

"There is really much useful information in this work; and its descriptive passages are especially calculated to convey a correct impression of the places described."—*Atlas*.

**TRAVELS IN SOUTHERN ABYSSINIA.**

**By CHARLES JOHNSTON, M.R.C.S.**

In Two Volumes 8vo., with Map and Illustrations. Price 28s.

"He is the pleasantest traveller we have read since Bruce."—*Hunt's Journal*.

"Mr. Johnston is a most enthusiastic, intelligent, and courageous traveller; a man of great powers of observation, capacity, and perseverance; and he has produced a work which cannot be read without deep interest."—*Tablet*.

"The interest of the work is twofold;—a book of travels and a narrative of adventures."—*Court Journal*.

"Our lengthy notice is the best proof of how much we have been gratified with this work."—*Atlas*.

"It is refreshing to peruse these Volumes, after enduring the infliction of Capt. Harris's ambitious, inflated, and stilted style."—*Manchester Times*.

"We have been most gratified with the perusal of this work."—*Patriot*.

See "London and Westminster Review," Dec. 1844, for a lengthened notice in praise of this work.

**TRAVELS IN KORDOFAN, (WHITE NILE.)**

**By IGNATIUS PALLME.**

In One Volume 8vo. Price 12s.

"One of the most interesting books of travels in Africa we have long perused. . . . We regret that our space does not admit of further extracts, but it would be difficult to exhaust the interest of 'Travels in Kordofan.' We conclude by a cordial recommendation of the work."

*Westminster Review, December 1844.*

"The reader feels as if he were actually an observer of the scenes which have been described with such graphic power, and hurries on from page to page with ever-sustained interest."—*Advertiser*.

"This is a most valuable book of travels: no book of travels with which we are acquainted gives such detailed and interesting accounts of the country visited. We are confident that this book will prove of the utmost utility to men of science and commerce. To the Geographer, the Ethnologist, and the Natural Historian, it will be a mine from which they must glean materials for their labours; and we earnestly recommend the work to the general reader, as graphic, amusing, and ably written."—*Brighton Guardian*.

The "Morning Herald" of Aug. 29 devoted four columns to a review recommending the work in the strongest terms.

## TRAVELS IN THE PUNJAB.

JOURNAL OF A MARCH FROM DELHI TO PESHAWUR, AND FROM  
THENCE TO CABUL, WITH THE MISSION OF SIR C. M. WADE, K.C.B.

INCLUDING

TRAVELS IN THE PUNJAB, A VISIT TO THE CITY OF LAHORE,  
AND A NARRATIVE OF OPERATIONS IN THE KHYBER PASS.

BY LIEUT. W. BARR, ROYAL HORSE ARTILLERY.

In One Volume 8vo., with numerous Illustrations. Price 12s.

"We have been particularly gratified by the perusal of this work, which possesses a value far greater than can be found in works of a more elaborate character: there is much, very much, which will deeply interest the reader."—*Naval and Military Gazette*.

"To the military reader this Volume will prove particularly suitable. The increasing importance of our relations with the Punjab renders every information respecting that country desirable."—*United Service Gazette*.

"Lieut. Barr is an exceedingly pleasant and observant traveller."

*Hunt's Journal.*

## MEMOIR ON THE COUNTRIES ABOUT THE CASPIAN AND ARAL SEAS;

ILLUSTRATIVE OF

THE LATE RUSSIAN EXPEDITION AGAINST KHIVA.

TRANSLATED FROM THE GERMAN.

BY CAPTAIN MORIER, R.N.

WITH A MAP BY JOHN ARROWSMITH.

In One Volume 8vo. Price 7s. 6d.

"This is purely a scientific work, treated in a scientific manner, and as unlike the flashy, unsatisfactory, and ephemeral tours that are abundantly published, as light is to darkness. This book contains facts valuable to all ages, and is a sort of landmark by which to note that silent progress of alternation which is slowly changing the face of the crust of this globe. This book, though a small one, is eminently deserving of a conspicuous station in all well-provided libraries; and we recommend it, also, to the attention of the general reader."—*Metropolitan, March*.

EDITED BY MAJOR SABINE, F.R.S.

REAR-ADMIRAL VON WRANGELL'S

## NARRATIVE OF HIS EXPEDITION TO SIBERIA AND THE POLAR SEA.

UNDERTAKEN BY ORDER OF THE RUSSIAN GOVERNMENT, WITH A VIEW TO  
THE DISCOVERY OF A SUPPOSED POLAR CONTINENT.

In One thick Volume, with PORTRAIT and MAP, engraved from the  
Original Survey. Second Edition. Price 6s.

"The volume before us is almost the first work of the kind published under the authority of a Russian discoverer; and the value of its details is considerably increased by a sketch of former voyages of a similar nature, of which no account has ever appeared before."—*Atlas*.

MADDEN AND MALCOLM'S NEW PUBLICATIONS.

**NARRATIVE OF A JOURNEY  
FROM CAUNPOOR TO THE BORENDO PASS,  
IN THE HIMALAYA MOUNTAINS,**

VIA GWALIOR, AGRA, DELHI, AND BIRHIND :

**BY MAJOR SIR WILLIAM LLOYD.**

**WITH CAPTAIN ALEXANDER GERARD'S ACCOUNT OF AN  
ATTEMPT TO PENETRATE BY BEKHUR TO GAROO,  
AND THE LAKE MANSAROVARA, &c. &c.**

WITH MAPS.

**EDITED BY GEORGE LLOYD.**

**In Two Volumes, 8vo., cloth. Price 17. 1s.**

"Pioneers through a region daily acquiring a greater degree of national importance, the accounts of these various and toilsome journeys among the lofty Himalaya Mountains must excite a strong feeling of interest, not only in the minds of those connected with our Indian Empire, but of every reader for whom the grandest scenery of nature possesses attractions, and the daring spirit of human enterprise furnishes a theme of curiosity and admiration."—*Literary Gazette.*

**ACCOUNT OF KOONAWUR,**

**IN THE HIMALAYA, &c.**

**BY CAPTAIN ALEXANDER GERARD.**

**EDITED BY GEORGE LLOYD.**

The Volumes already published, (Major Sir W. LLOYD and Captain GERARD'S "Tours in the Himalaya," Two Vols. 8vo. 21s.,) together with what is contained in this, completes all Captain A. Gerard's Observations and Journeys in the Himalaya.

**In One Volume, 8vo., cloth, with large Original Map. Price 14s.**

"It is a *multum in parvo*. Unquestionably it will be regarded as a precious contribution to science and geographical knowledge. Every page of it exhibits enthusiasm, manly earnestness, and philosophical simplicity of character. There is an exactitude and good faith, together with a generous appreciation in all that is said of the tribes and races spoken of, that must endear the narrative to readers of every description."

*Atlas.*

**CREDIT THE LIFE OF COMMERCE ;**

**BEING A DEFENCE OF THE BRITISH MERCHANT AGAINST THE UNJUST  
AND DEMORALIZING TENDENCY OF THE ALTERATIONS IN THE LAWS  
OF DEBTOR AND CREDITOR :**

**WITH AN OUTLINE OF REMEDIAL MEASURES.**

**By J. H. ELLIOTT.**

**In One Volume, 12mo. Price 4s.**

8, LEADENHALL STREET.

**A POPULAR HISTORY  
OF  
BRITISH INDIA.**

**COMMERCIAL INTERCOURSE WITH CHINA AND THE INSULAR  
POSSESSIONS OF ENGLAND IN THE EASTERN SEAS.**

**BY W. COOKE TAYLOR, LL.D. M.R.A.S.,  
OF TRINITY COLLEGE, DUBLIN.**

**In One Volume, crown 8vo., of 508 closely-printed pages. Price 10s. 6d.**

"It is precisely such a summary as was wanted by the general reader, and will be most acceptable to those who have not the leisure or the opportunity to master more elaborate works on the subject. Such a volume, in particular, has long been wanted in our schools, where little is taught of India more than may be learnt as a geographical exercise; and yet the stirring and romantic interest of the theme, leaving out of view its importance, should recommend it to the teacher as likely to prove a welcome and animating addition to the usual course of historical instruction. Dr. Taylor confines himself, for the most part, to facts, avoiding a strong expression of political opinion one way or the other; and hence his work may be the more safely entrusted to the youthful reader."

*John Bull, November 13.*

**ANCIENT EGYPT;  
HER MONUMENTS, HIEROGLYPHICS, HISTORY, & ARCHÆOLOGY,  
AND OTHER SUBJECTS CONNECTED WITH HIEROGLYPHICAL LITERATURE.**

**BY GEORGE R. GLIDDON,  
LATE UNITED STATES' CONSUL AT CAIRO.**

**In small Folio, containing as much matter as an ordinary sized 8vo. Vol.,  
with nearly 100 Wood-Cuts. Price 1s. 6d.**

**Nearly 20,000 copies of this Work have been sold in America.**

**ترجمان انگليزي وعربي**  
**THE  
EASTERN TRAVELLER'S REMEMBRANCER;  
CONTAINING  
DIALOGUES, FAMILIAR PHRASES, &c., IN THE ARABIC AND  
ROMAN CHARACTERS,**

**FOR THE USE OF TRAVELLERS BY THE OVERLAND ROUTE.**

**BY ASSAAD YACOOB KAYAT.**

**In a neat Volume, 12mo. Price 10s. boards.**

**ARABIC SYNTAX,  
CHIEFLY SELECTED FROM THE HIDAYUT-OON-NUHVI,  
A TREATISE ON SYNTAX IN THE ORIGINAL ARABIC.**

**BY H. B. BERESFORD, B.C.S.**

**In One Volume, royal 8vo. Price 10s. 6d. cloth.**

SELECTIONS FROM THE KUR-ÂN,

COMMONLY CALLED, IN ENGLAND,

THE KORAN;

WITH

AN INTERWOVEN COMMENTARY,

TRANSLATED FROM THE ARABIC, METHODICALLY ARRANGED,  
AND ILLUSTRATED BY NOTES, CHIEFLY FROM SALE'S EDITION.

TO WHICH IS PREFIXED,

AN INTRODUCTION,

TAKEN FROM SALE'S PRELIMINARY DISCOURSE,

WITH CORRECTIONS AND ADDITIONS.

BY EDWARD WILLIAM LANE.

Author of "The Manners and Customs of the Modern Egyptians,"  
and Translator of "The Thousand and One Nights."

In One Volume, 8vo. Price 10s. 6d.

"Mr. Lane has set before us, for the first time, what we may venture to call the 'Scriptural Creed' of Islam; or, in other words, the Articles of the Mahomedan Faith, with the passages of the Koran by which they are supported, collected together and arranged, so far as it was possible, in the form of continuous argument. He has judiciously interwoven with the text the elucidations given by the best Commentators, without which many passages in the Koran would be unintelligible."—*Athenæum*.

—o—  
R O M E.

AS IT WAS UNDER PAGANISM, AND AS IT BECAME  
UNDER THE POPES.

In Two Volumes, 8vo., Price 24s., with Maps and Plates.

"A work of which no man ever read one page and left any other page unread."—*Edinburgh Review*.

"This is a very remarkable work. The Author, be he Protestant or Catholic, has succeeded in producing, on the Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire, and the reproduction, under new forms, of the Roman influence by the Popes and the Church, an original and most valuable Work."—*Tablet*, July 30.

"It is abundantly evident that the author is a zealous adherent to the Romish Church; that he is deeply read in ecclesiastical literature; that he places implicit reliance on the Fathers and the received lives of the Saints; and that he has a minute and accurate knowledge of the history he proposes to examine."—*Athenæum*, July 22.

"All, in truth, that could convey a vivid and re-animated likeness of what Rome was in the days of her external splendour, is brought together with a brilliancy, and power, and learning, unsurpassed in the literature of the present day. But it is not alone the restoration of the outward 'mother of dead empires' that we admire so much, as the knowledge of universal Roman life, its state of policy, religion, philosophy, customs, habits, feelings, which are displayed throughout every page."

*Dublin Monitor*, August 14.

"His familiarity with the localities of the scenes which he describes could only have been acquired by many years of residence upon the spot itself."—*Freeman's Journal*.

## FRANCE,

HER GOVERNMENTAL, ADMINISTRATIVE, AND SOCIAL ORGANIZATION,  
*Exposed and Considered,*

IN ITS PRINCIPLES, IN ITS WORKING, AND IN ITS RESULTS.

In One Volume, 8vo. Price 10s. 6d.

"It is indispensable that every individual, of whatever rank or party, who takes any interest in public affairs, should possess himself of the volume."—*Patriot*.

### CONTENTS.

#### FIRST PART.

CHAPTER I.—The Administrative Organization—II. Ministry of Interior—III. Ministry of Justice—Ministry of Public Worship—IV. Ministry of Public Instruction—V. Ministry of Public Works—VI. Ministry of Trade and Agriculture—VII. Ministry of Finances—VIII. Administration of the Post Office—IX. Administration of the Customs—X. Administration of the Indirect Taxes (Excise)—XI. Administration of the Forests—XII. Administration of Registration, Stamp Office, and Domains—XIII. Central Administration of Finances—XIV. Ministry of Foreign Affairs—XV. Ministry of War—XVI. Ministry of Marine and Colonies—Legion of Honour—Resumé of the First Part.

#### SECOND PART.

##### CONDITION AND ORGANIZATION OF THE PEOPLE.

CHAPTER I.—General Considerations—II. Statistics of the French Population—III. Municipal Organization—IV. Councils of Arrondissements and Departmental Councils—V. Chamber of Deputies—VI. The Courts of Justice and the Trial by Jury—VII. The National Guard—VIII. The Public Press—IX. Resumé of the Second Part.

#### THIRD PART.

##### WORKING AND RESULTS OF THE GOVERNMENTAL AND ADMINISTRATIVE SYSTEM.

CHAPTER I.—The Working of the Governmental and Administrative System—II. The Ministries of Interior and Justice tending only to enslave and oppress the people—III. The Ministry of Public Instruction tending to keep the People in ignorance, or to teach errors—IV. The Ministry of Finances absorbing all the resources of the country—V. The Ministry of Agriculture and Trade trammelling agriculture, manufactures, and trade—VI. The Ministry of Public Works an obstacle to, or a cause of failure in the execution of public works—VII. Ministries of War and Marine—VIII. Ministry of Foreign Affairs—IX. Conclusion and General Tables.

## FIRST AND SECOND SERIES OF THE UNITED IRISHMEN, THEIR LIVES AND TIMES.

BY DR. R. R. MADDEN.

In Four Volumes, post 8vo., with numerous Portraits. Price 4l. 4s.

Either Series may be had separately.

"We sincerely wish that these volumes may have a wide circulation. Never was a more timely publication. We have here a most potent persuasive to that justice to Ireland which is now more than ever the first duty and necessity of Great Britain. Our heart's desire is, that both there and here, by the Government and by the people, the lessons which come out from the 'Lives and Times of the United Irishmen' may be read, marked, learned, and inwardly digested."—*Westminster Review*, Aug.



MADDEN AND MALCOLM'S NEW PUBLICATIONS.

PROFESSOR H. H. WILSON'S INTRODUCTION  
TO THE  
GRAMMAR OF THE SANSKRIT LANGUAGE.

In One Volume, 8vo. Price 18s. cloth.

THE HITOPADÉSA.

THE FIRST BOOK, OR MITRA-LABHA.

The Sanscrit Text, with an Analytical Glossary, Sanscrit and English,  
shewing the Construction as well as the Signification of the Words.

BY PROFESSOR F. JOHNSON,

OF THE EAST-INDIA COLLEGE, HAILEYBURY.

In One Volume, 4to. Price 15s.

WORKS BY MR. JAMES R. BALLANTYNE,

OF THE SCOTTISH NAVAL AND MILITARY ACADEMY, EDINBURGH.

FORMING A COMPLETE COURSE OF HINDUSTANI INSTRUCTION.

HINDUSTANI GRAMMAR, with Brief Notices of the Braj and  
Dakhani Dialects. Second Edition. Royal 8vo. 10s. 6d.

KEY TO DITTO. Royal 8vo. 1s.

HINDUSTANI SELECTIONS. Third Edition. Royal 8vo.  
10s. 6d.

POCKET GUIDE TO HINDOOSTANEE CONVERSATION;  
containing Grammatical Principles, Familiar Phrases, and a  
Vocabulary, English and Hindoostanee. Fourth Edition.  
32mo. 3s.

PERSIAN CALIGRAPHY. Second Edition. Lithographed.  
4to. 6s.

ELEMENTS OF HINDI AND BRAJ BHAKHA. Prepared  
for the use of the East-India College, Haileybury. 4to. 8s.

MAHRATTA GRAMMAR. Lithographed. 4to. 10s. 6d.

THE PRACTICAL ORIENTAL INTERPRETER; or, Hints on  
the Art of Translating readily from English into Hindustani  
and Persian. Royal 8vo. 5s.

A CATECHISM OF SANSKRIT GRAMMAR. 24mo. 1s.

A CATECHISM OF PERSIAN GRAMMAR. 24mo. 1s.

8, LEADENHALL STREET.



آتشدہ

THE ATESH KEDAH, OR FIRE-TEMPLE.

BY HAJJI LUTF ALI BEG, OF ISPAHAN.

NOW FIRST EDITED FROM THE COLLATION OF ALL THE  
KNOWN MANUSCRIPTS.

BY N. BLAND, ESQ., M.R.A.S.

One Vol., royal 8vo. Price 5s.

CRANIA ÆGYPTIACA,  
OR, OBSERVATIONS ON EGYPTIAN ETHNOGRAPHY,  
DERIVED FROM ANATOMY, HISTORY, AND THE MONUMENTS.

BY SAMUEL GEORGE MORTON, M.D.

In One Volume, 4to., with numerous Illustrations. Price 21s.

*Also, by the same Author, in One Volume, Folio,*

CRANIA AMERICANA,  
OR, A COMPARATIVE VIEW OF THE SKULLS OF VARIOUS  
ABORIGINAL NATIONS OF NORTH AND SOUTH AMERICA.  
Illustrated by SEVENTY-EIGHT PLATES and a COLOURED MAP. 6l. 6s.

ARIANA ANTICUA ;

A DESCRIPTIVE ACCOUNT OF THE ANTIQUITIES AND COINS OF AFFGHANISTAN.

WITH A

MEMOIR ON THE BUILDINGS CALLED "TOPEs," BY C. MASSON, ESQ.

BY PROFESSOR H. H. WILSON, M.A. F.R.S.

In One Volume, 4to., with 35 PLATES and Large MAP.

EXTRACTS, MORAL AND ENTERTAINING.

BY THE COMPILER OF "POETICAL GLEANINGS."

Foolscap 8vo. cloth. 3s.

"This little volume exactly answers to its title. The extracts are judiciously selected, and the book may be taken up at any time to convey a thought, awaken an emotion, or suggest a train of reflection."—*Atlas*.

POETICAL GLEANINGS.

COMPILED BY THE SAME.

In One Volume. 2s.

"These are two little unpretending volumes, containing a vast quantity of useful and valuable matter."—*Conservative Journal*.

THE T'HAKOORINE ;

A Tale of Maandoo.

BY CAPTAIN JAMES ABBOTT,

BENGAL ARTILLERY.

In One Volume, foolscap. 5s.

"This is an Indian Poem, conceived on the Ruins of Malwa, once the abode of Moslem power, now supposed to be the stronghold of enchantment. The story is admirably told, and the interest very highly wrought ; equal, indeed, to that of the wildest romance."—*Naval and Military Gas.*

**PREPARING FOR THE PRESS,  
COMMENTARIES ON THE LAWS,  
AS ADMINISTERED IN BRITISH INDIA.**

**BY WILLIAM H. MORLEY,  
OF THE MIDDLE TEMPLE, BARRISTER AT LAW.**

**WORKS RECENTLY IMPORTED FROM THE EAST,  
BY MADDEN AND MALCOLM.**

**THE THOUSAND AND ONE NIGHTS**, in the Original Arabic.  
(Boulac Edition.) Neatly printed in Two Vols. 4to. Price 3*l.* 3*s.*

**KULLEYÁT ABI-L-BAKA.** Explanation of Terms of Science, &c.  
Folio. Price 2*l.* 2*s.*

**WORK ON ARABIC GRAMMAR AND SYNTAX.** By  
IBN-HICHAM. Octavo.

**KALILA AND DIMNA**, in Arabic. Small Folio.

**HISTORY OF THE ANCIENT PHILOSOPHERS**, in Arabic. 8vo.

**PREMARE NOTITIA LINGUÆ SINICÆ.** Quarto. 2*l.*s.

**MADDEN AND MALCOLM'S CATALOGUE of BOOKS  
and MANUSCRIPTS**, in the following Oriental Languages:—

ARABIC.	DUKHNEE.	MAHRATTA.	TARTAR.
ARMENIAN.	EGYPTIAN.	MALAYAN.	TELINGA.
BENGALÉE.	GEORGIAN.	MANDCHOU.	TIBETAN.
BUGIS.	GUZERATTEE.	ORIYA.	TURKISH.
BURMAN.	HEBREW.	PALI.	SANSCRIT.
CHALDAIC.	HINDOOSTANEE.	PERSIAN.	SIAMESE.
CHINESE.	JAPANESE.	PUNJABEE.	SYRIAC.
CINGALESE.	KURNATA.	TAMUL.	&c. &c.

This Catalogue contains nearly all the Works in Oriental Literature  
obtainable at the present day.

**HYDROPATHY,  
OR THE COLD-WATER CURE;**

AS PRACTISED BY VINCENT PRIESSNITZ, AT GRÄFENBERG; SHOWING  
HOW THIS EXTRAORDINARY MAN, BY THE SOLE AID OF WATER, AIR,  
AND EXERCISE, CURES ALL DISEASES WHICH CAN BE CURED BY ANY  
OTHER MEANS, AND MANY WHICH ARE DECLARED BY THE FACULTY  
BEYOND THE POWER OF THEIR ART.

BY CAPT. R. T. CLARIDGE.

The Eighth Edition may be had of any bookseller in the kingdom. Price 5*s.*

"The first point which impressed and struck me was the extreme and utter innocence of the water cure in skilful hands—in any hand not thoroughly new to the system. I fancied it must be a very violent remedy, and that it doubtless might effect great magical cures, but that if it failed it might be fatal. Now I speak not alone of my own case, but of the immense number of cases I have seen—patients of all ages, all species and genera of disease, all kinds and conditions of constitution—when I declare upon my honour, that I never witnessed one dangerous symptom produced by the water cure in any of the numerous institutions I have visited."—*Sir Edward Bulwer Lytton, on the Water Cure.*

## HAND-BOOK OF HYDROPATHY.

FOR THE USE OF MEDICAL MEN AND OTHERS,  
SHOWING HOW ALMOST EVERY DISEASE OUGHT TO BE TREATED,  
AND EXPLAINING THE WHOLE RATIONALE OF THE WATER CURE, AS  
PRACTISED BY VINCENT PRIESSNITZ AND HIMSELF FOR THE LAST  
FIFTEEN YEARS.

BY DR. WEISS,

OF FRIEWALDAU, NEAR GRÄFENBERG.

The Second Edition. Now ready, in One Volume, 8vo. Price 7s. 6d.

"Mr. Weiss understood and practised the water cure with greater safety, and more undeviating success, than any other of its professors, with the exception of Priessnitz himself."—*Vide Claridge's Hydropathy.*

## INITIA LATINA :

A GUIDE TO LATIN, FOR BEGINNERS.

BY THE REV. J. EDWARDS, KING'S COLLEGE.

AND

W. CROSS, QUEEN'S COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE.

The Second Edition, greatly improved, in One Volume, 12mo. 3s.

"A clear, simple, and efficient introduction to the study of Latin."—*Atlas.*

"Notwithstanding the many other 'Collectanea Sententiarum,' and 'Dilectus' used at schools, we consider this the most serviceable that has as yet issued from the press."—*Mirror.*

## ORAL EXERCISES

FOR BEGINNERS IN LATIN COMPOSITION ;

WITH A HAND-BOOK TO DITTO.

BY THE AUTHOR OF, AND INTENDED AS, A COMPANION TO THE  
"INITIA LATINA."

In Two Volumes, 12mo. 3s.

"We do not know that, in all our experience, we ever saw lessons better calculated to effect these objects, with ease both to the pupil and the master. Had we to commence our education again, they are just the books we would select for our instruction."—*Britannia.*

## MAXIMS, MORALS, AND GOLDEN RULES.

In Foolscap 8vo., cloth, gilt edges, 2s.

"The little unpretending volume before us contains a vast quantity of useful and valuable matter: as the title implies, it is a collection of aphorisms. These are culled from a variety of authors; Jeremy Taylor, Locke, Sir William Jones, &c. &c., and a great number of others, both ancient and modern. As regards the value of such a publication generally, we think we cannot do better than quote the words of Dr. Johnson placed on the title of the book. With regard to the selection of Maxims, &c., we cannot express too favourable an opinion. The Compiler has evinced great judgment; and the reader will soon discover that religious usefulness was one great object he had in view."—*Conservative Journal.*

MADDEN AND MALCOLM'S NEW PUBLICATIONS.

Published Quarterly. Price 1*l*. per annum.

## THE CALCUTTA JOURNAL OF NATURAL HISTORY.

EXHIBITING A VIEW OF THE PROGRESSIVE DISCOVERIES IN  
INDIAN ZOOLOGY, BOTANY, GEOLOGY, AND OTHER BRANCHES  
OF NATURAL SCIENCE.

CONDUCTED BY JOHN M'CLELLAND,

BENGAL MEDICAL SERVICE.

Embellished with Plates. Numbers I. to XVI. (April 1840 to Jan. 1844.)

"A work, the very name of which does credit to Calcutta."

*Englishman* (Calcutta Journal).

---

PUBLISHED QUARTERLY,

To Subscribers, 1*l*. per annum,

## JOURNAL OF THE BOMBAY-BRANCH ROYAL ASIATIC SOCIETY.

EDITED BY JAMES BIRD, ESQ.

Of this important and interesting Publication Eight Numbers are now published; and the first Seven Numbers, accompanied by a Preface and Index, make up the First Volume, which contains several Lithographs and Fac-similes of Inscriptions, &c. &c. Subscribers are solicited to enter their names, to ensure regular delivery, as very few copies beyond those actually subscribed for will be imported.

No. IX., TO BE PUBLISHED THIS QUARTER, WILL CONTAIN,

- i. Two Ancient Inscriptions in the Cuve character and Sanskrit language, translated into English.
- ii. An account of the Temple of Somnauth, and translation of a Sanskrit Inscription found there.
- iii. The late Mr. Prinsep's Correspondence relative to Indian Antiquities.
- iv. Hamaiyaric Inscriptions, from Aden and Saba, translated into English.
- v. Geological Observations on the Alluvial Soil of Sindh, and Hills in the neighbourhood of Hyderabad.
- vi. Observations on the Runic Stones of Letolond.
- vii. Notice on Hindu Gold Coins found in the Southern Koukan, and on the Gold Zodiac Coins of the Emperor Jehangir.
- viii. On the Origin of the Hamaiyaric and Ethiopic Alphabets.
- ix. Analysis of a Work entitled Historical Researches on the Origin and Classes of the several Cave-Temples of Western India.
- x. Literary and Scientific Notices.
- xi. Proceedings of the Society.

8, LEADENHALL STREET.







3 2044 038 399 317



